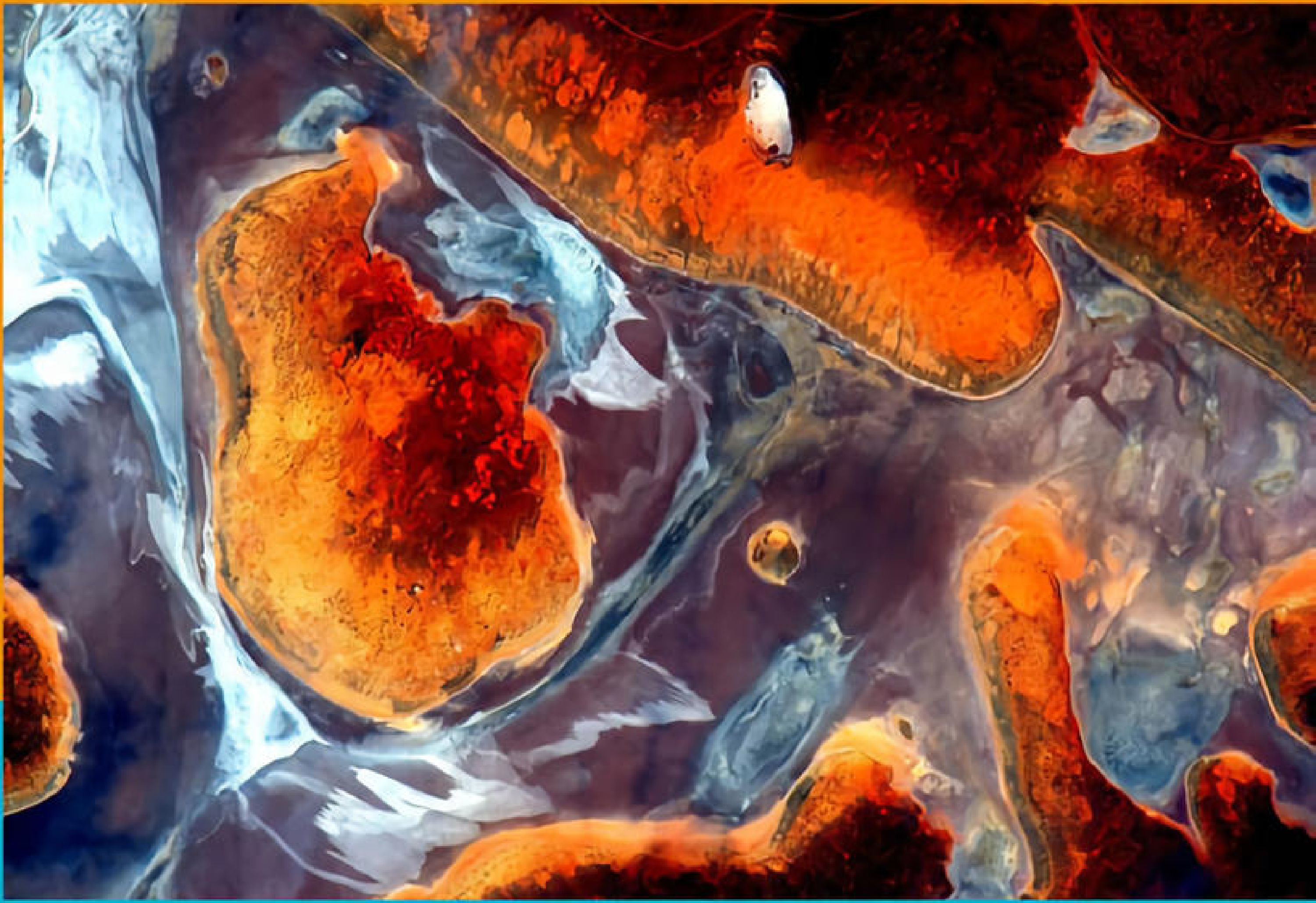
endorsed for
edexcel



EDEXCEL INTERNATIONAL GCSE (9–1)

CHEMISTRY

Student Book

Jim Clark, Steve Owen, Rachel Yu

eBook included

PEARSON EDEXCEL INTERNATIONAL GCSE (9–1)

CHEMISTRY

Student Book

Jim Clark
Steve Owen
Rachel Yu

Published by Pearson Education Limited, 80 Strand, London, WC2R 0RL.

www.pearsonglobalschools.com

Copies of official specifications for all Edexcel qualifications may be found on the website: https://qualifications.pearson.com

Text © Pearson Education Limited 2017
Edited by Lesley Montford
Designed by Cobalt id
Typeset by Tech-Set Ltd, Gateshead, UK
Original illustrations © Pearson Education Limited 2017
Illustrated by © Tech-Set Ltd, Gateshead, UK
Cover design by Pearson Education Limited
Cover photo © NASA

The rights of Jim Clark, Steve Owen and Rachel Yu to be identified as authors of this work have been asserted by them in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

First published 2017

20 19 18 17
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

ISBN 978 0 435 18516 9

Copyright notice
All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced in any form or by any means (including photocopying or storing it in any medium by electronic means and whether or not transiently or incidentally to some other use of this publication) without the written permission of the copyright owner, except in accordance with the provisions of the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 or under the terms of a licence issued by the Copyright Licensing Agency, Barnards Inn, 86 Fetter Lane, London EC4A 1EN (www.cla.co.uk). Applications for the copyright owner's written permission should be addressed to the publisher.

Printed by Neografia in Slovakia

Endorsement Statement

In order to ensure that this resource offers high-quality support for the associated Pearson qualification, it has been through a review process by the awarding body. This process confirms that this resource fully covers the teaching and learning content of the specification or part of a specification at which it is aimed. It also confirms that it demonstrates an appropriate balance between the development of subject skills, knowledge and understanding, in addition to preparation for assessment.

Endorsement does not cover any guidance on assessment activities or processes (e.g. practice questions or advice on how to answer assessment questions), included in the resource nor does it prescribe any particular approach to the teaching or delivery of a related course.

While the publishers have made every attempt to ensure that advice on the qualification and its assessment is accurate, the official specification and associated assessment guidance materials are the only authoritative source of information and should always be referred to for definitive guidance.

Pearson examiners have not contributed to any sections in this resource relevant to examination papers for which they have responsibility.

Examiners will not use endorsed resources as a source of material for any assessment set by Pearson. Endorsement of a resource does not mean that the resource is required to achieve this Pearson qualification, nor does it mean that it is the only suitable material available to support the qualification, and any resource lists produced by the awarding body shall include this and other appropriate resources.

Picture Credits
The author and publisher would like to thank the following individuals and organisations for permission to reproduce photographs:

(Key: b-bottom; c-centre; l-left; r-right; t-top)

123RF.com: 85t, 157tr, 167tr, Gregory Bruev 293c, Scandal 277cl, unlim3d 164c; **Alamy Stock Photo:** Aurora 163tl, 264bl, Bon Appetit 285tl, Trevor Chriss 81b, Ashley Cooper 305tr, Cultura Creative 163br, 167tl, Phil Degginger 9tl, DJC 165cl, Dpa picture alliance archive 288bl, Robert Gilhooly 164tl, LGPL / Ian Cartwright 157cl, Nikos Pavlakis 145tr, David Taylor 193-18.6t, World History Archive 30tl, Zoonar GmbH 306br; **Fotolia.com:** Chungking 98tl, Grinchh 17bl, Arpad Nagy-Bagoly 302c, Satit Srihin 290cl; **Getty Images:** In Pictures / Corbis / Gideon Mendel 223b, Miguel Malo 145tl, NASA / National Geographic 2r, PaulFleet 208tl, TASS / Maxim Grigoryev 122b; **Nature Picture Library:** Nature Production 235; **Pearson Education Ltd:** Oxford Designers & Illustrators Ltd 305tl; **Science Photo Library Ltd:** 130bl, 165c, 180, 193-18.8t, 193-18.10t, 235bl, 241, Andrew Lambert Photography 20c, 54tl, 57b, 130tr, 132r, 141tr, 142cl, 195t, 195br, Caia Image 287t, Carol and Mike Werner 254c, Martyn F Chillmaid 44tl, 70c, 123tr, 124cl, 127tl, 141cr, 155br, 162c, 170cl, 175tr, 177b, 180bl, 182, 184tl, 191bc, 192bl, 193cr, 193br, 194c, 207b, 215cr, 240bl, 284bl, 294bl, 302tl, Crown Copyright / Health and Safety Laboratory 190tc, Phil Degginger 209bl, Fundamental Photos 149bl, GIPhotoStock 168, 169bl, 186b, 193-18.9t, 227-20.2tc, Gusto Images 6tl, Mikkel Juul Jensen 75c, MARTYN F. CHILLMAID 182, 207b, Alfred Pasieka 263cl, Lea Paterson 255tl, PATRICK WALLET / EURELIOS 300t, Volker Steger 302tr, David Taylor 193-18.7t, Trevor Clifford 101tr, UIG / Dorking Kindersley 232tl, Charles D Winters 64tr, 89tr, 131br, 132l, 183tl, 246tl, 306; **Shutterstock.com:** 160cr, 272c, Aivolie 46t, Anastasios71 137tr, Galyna Andrushko 173tr, ArtisticPhoto 98tr, H E Benson 3tl, Bitt24 282tr, Sinisa Botas 271cl, Sherri R. Camp 227tl, Checubus 237, Marcel Clemens 36cl, Daizuoxin 303br, Dashu 268c, Demarcomedia 35cl, Dencg 14tc, Docent 310bl, Dr.OGA 255, Everett Historical 206c, Extender_01 82tl, Mike Flippo 164b, Peter Hermes Furian 82bl, Jiri Hera 94cl, IM photo 68tl, JPC Prod 297t, Anan Kaewkhammul 269tr, KDEdesign 94tl, Jatuporn Khuansuwan 56c, Ktsdesign 38t, Ilya Malov 227-20.3t, Musicman 271br, Mylisa 14tr, Romanova Natali 24br, Oleg1969 24bl, Palmaria 307b, Werayuth Piriyapornprapa 272t, Vadim Ratnikov 272b, Remedios55 94cr, Albert Russ 160cl, Aygul Sarvarova 305tc, Scanrail1 95cl, Jeff Schultes 227tr, Sam Strickler 255tr, Kuttelvaserova Stuchelova 67tl, Mary Terriberry 273bc, Dave Turner 125bl, VanHart 3tr, Ventin 36tl, XXLPhoto 273tc, Ron Zmiri 156cr

Cover images: *Front:* **NASA**

Inside front cover: **Shutterstock.com:** Dmitry Lobanov

All other images © Pearson Education

Neither Pearson, Edexcel nor the authors take responsibility for the safety of any activity. Before doing any practical activity you are legally required to carry out your own risk assessment. In particular, any local rules issued by your employer must be obeyed, regardless of what is recommended in this resource. Where students are required to write their own risk assessments they must always be checked by the teacher and revised, as necessary, to cover any issues the students may have overlooked. The teacher should always have the final control as to how the practical is conducted.

COURSE STRUCTURE iv
ABOUT THIS BOOK vi
ASSESSMENT OVERVIEW viii
UNIT 1: PRINCIPLES OF CHEMISTRY 2
UNIT 2: INORGANIC CHEMISTRY 122
UNIT 3: PHYSICAL CHEMISTRY 206
UNIT 4: ORGANIC CHEMISTRY 254
APPENDIX A: PERIODIC TABLE 320
APPENDIX B: COMMAND WORDS 321
APPENDIX C: A GUIDE TO PRACTICAL QUESTIONS 322
GLOSSARY 328
INDEX 336

UNIT 1

PRINCIPLES OF CHEMISTRY

1 STATES OF MATTER 03
2 ELEMENTS, COMPOUNDS AND MIXTURES 14
3 ATOMIC STRUCTURE 24
4 THE PERIODIC TABLE 30
5 CHEMICAL FORMULAE, EQUATIONS AND CALCULATIONS PART 1 **CHEMISTRY ONLY** 38
6 CHEMICAL FORMULAE, EQUATIONS AND CALCULATIONS PART 2 64
7 IONIC BONDING 75
8 COVALENT BONDING 85
9 METALLIC BONDING **CHEMISTRY ONLY** 98
10 ELECTROLYSIS **CHEMISTRY ONLY** 101

UNIT 2

INORGANIC CHEMISTRY

11 THE ALKALI METALS 123
12 THE HALOGENS 130
13 GASES IN THE ATMOSPHERE 137
14 REACTIVITY SERIES 145
15 EXTRACTION AND USES OF METALS **CHEMISTRY ONLY** 160
16 ACIDS, ALKALIS AND TITRATIONS 167
17 ACIDS, BASES AND SALT PREPARATIONS 173
18 CHEMICAL TESTS 190

UNIT 3

PHYSICAL CHEMISTRY

19 ENERGETICS 207

20 RATES OF REACTION 227

21 REVERSIBLE REACTIONS AND EQUILIBRIA 240

UNIT 4

ORGANIC CHEMISTRY

22 INTRODUCTION TO ORGANIC CHEMISTRY 255

23 CRUDE OIL 268

24 ALKANES 277

25 ALKENES 282

26 ALCOHOLS CHEMISTRY ONLY 287

27 CARBOXYLIC ACIDS CHEMISTRY ONLY 293

28 ESTERS CHEMISTRY ONLY 297

29 SYNTHETIC POLYMERS 302

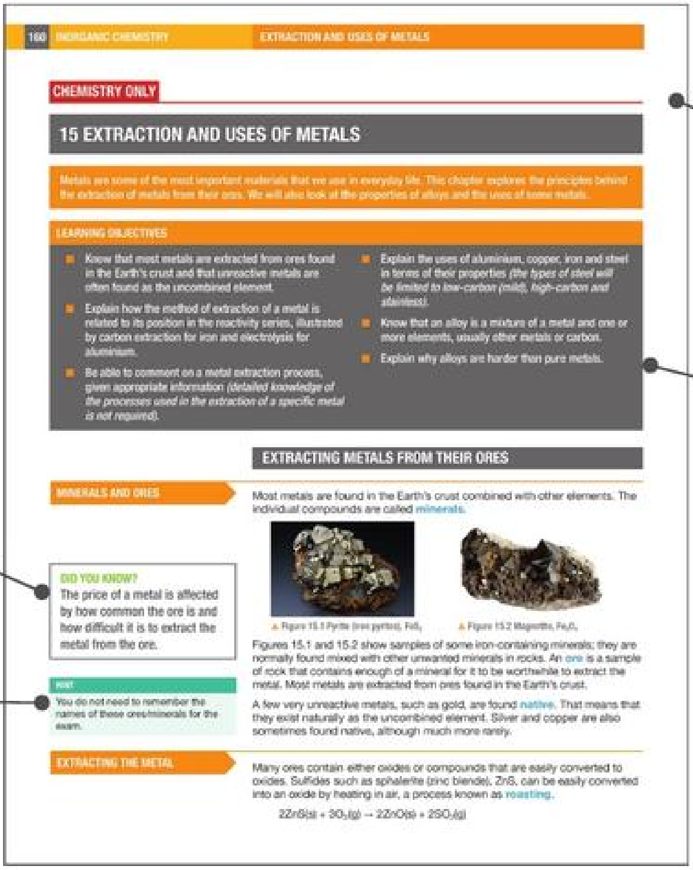
ABOUT THIS BOOK

This book is written for students following the Pearson Edexcel International GCSE (9–1) Chemistry specification and the Edexcel International GCSE (9–1) Science Double Award specification. You will need to study all of the content in this book for your Chemistry examination. However, you will only need to study some of it if you are taking the Double Award specification. The book clearly indicates which content is in the Chemistry examination and not in the Double Award specification. To complete the Double Award course you will also need to study the Physics and Biology parts of the course.

In each unit of this book, there are concise explanations and worked examples, plus numerous exercises that will help you build up confidence. The book also describes the methods for carrying out all of the required practicals.

The language throughout this textbook is graded for speakers of English as an additional language (EAL), with advanced Chemistry-specific terminology highlighted and defined in the glossary at the back of the book. A list of command words, also at the back of the book, will help you to learn the language you will need in your examinations.

You will also find that questions in this book have Progression icons and Skills tags. The Progression icons refer to Pearson's Progression scale. This scale – from 1 to 12 – tells you what level you have reached in your learning and will help you to see what you need to do to progress to the next level. Furthermore, Edexcel have developed a Skills grid showing the skills you will practise throughout your time on the course. The skills in the grid have been matched to questions in this book to help you see which skills you are developing. Both Skills tags and Progression icons are not repeated where they are same in consecutive questions. You can find Pearson's Progression scale and Edexcel's Skills grid at www.pearsonglobalschools.com/igscienceprogression along with guidelines on how to use them.



160 INORGANIC CHEMISTRY EXTRACTION AND USES OF METALS

CHEMISTRY ONLY

15 EXTRACTION AND USES OF METALS

Metals are some of the most important materials that we use in everyday life. This chapter explores the principles behind the extraction of metals from their ores. We will also look at the properties of alloys and the uses of some metals.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Know that most metals are extracted from ores found in the Earth's crust and that unreactive metals are often found as the uncombined element.
- Explain how the method of extraction of a metal is related to its position in the reactivity series, illustrated by carbon extraction for iron and electrolysis for aluminium.
- Be able to comment on a metal extraction process, given appropriate information *(detailed knowledge of the processes used in the extraction of a specific metal is not required).*
- Explain the uses of aluminium, copper, iron and steel in terms of their properties *(the types of steel will be limited to low-carbon (mild), high-carbon and stainless).*
- Know that an alloy is a mixture of a metal and one or more elements, usually other metals or carbon.
- Explain why alloys are harder than pure metals.

EXTRACTING METALS FROM THEIR ORES

MINERALS AND ORES

Most metals are found in the Earth's crust combined with other elements. The individual compounds are called minerals.

Figure 15.1 Pyrite (iron pyrites), FeS_2

Figure 15.2 Magnetite, Fe_3O_4

Figures 15.1 and 15.2 show samples of some iron-containing minerals; they are normally found mixed with other unwanted minerals in rocks. An ore is a sample of rock that contains enough of a mineral for it to be worthwhile to extract the metal. Most metals are extracted from ores found in the Earth's crust.

A few very unreactive metals, such as gold, are found native. That means that they exist naturally as the uncombined element. Silver and copper are also sometimes found native, although much more rarely.

DID YOU KNOW?
The price of a metal is affected by how common the ore is and how difficult it is to extract the metal from the ore.

HINT
You do not need to remember the names of these ores/minerals for the exam.

EXTRACTING THE METAL

Many ores contain either oxides or compounds that are easily converted to oxides. Sulfides such as sphalerite (zinc blende), ZnS, can be easily converted into an oxide by heating in air, a process known as roasting.

$$2ZnS(s) + 3O_2(g) \rightarrow 2ZnO(s) + 2SO_2(g)$$

Chemistry Only features show the content that is on the Chemistry specification only and not the Double Award specification. All other content in this book applies to Double Award students.

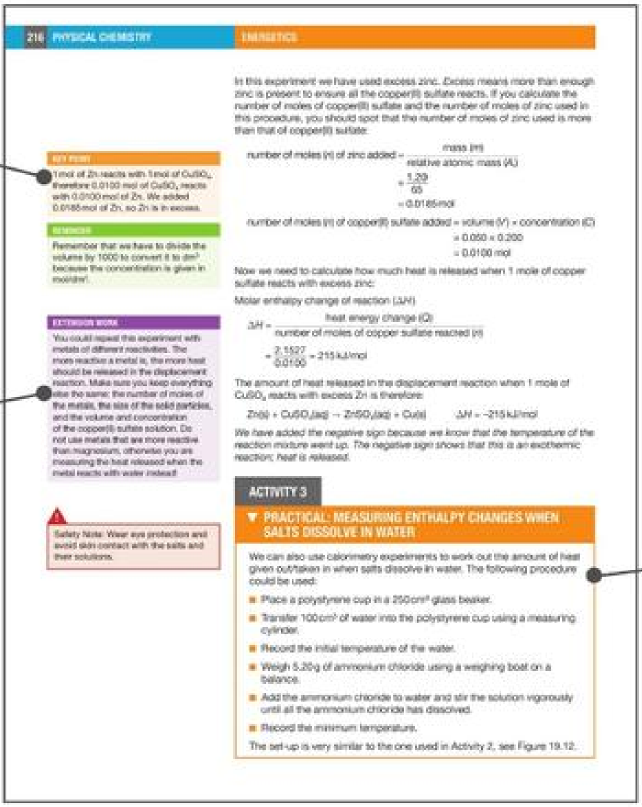
Learning Objectives show what you will learn in each chapter.

Did you know? Interesting facts to encourage wider thought and understanding around course texts.

Hint boxes give you tips on important points to remember in your examination.

Key Points boxes summarise the essentials.

Extension boxes include content which is not on the specification and which you do not have to learn for your examination. However, it will help to extend your understanding of the topic.

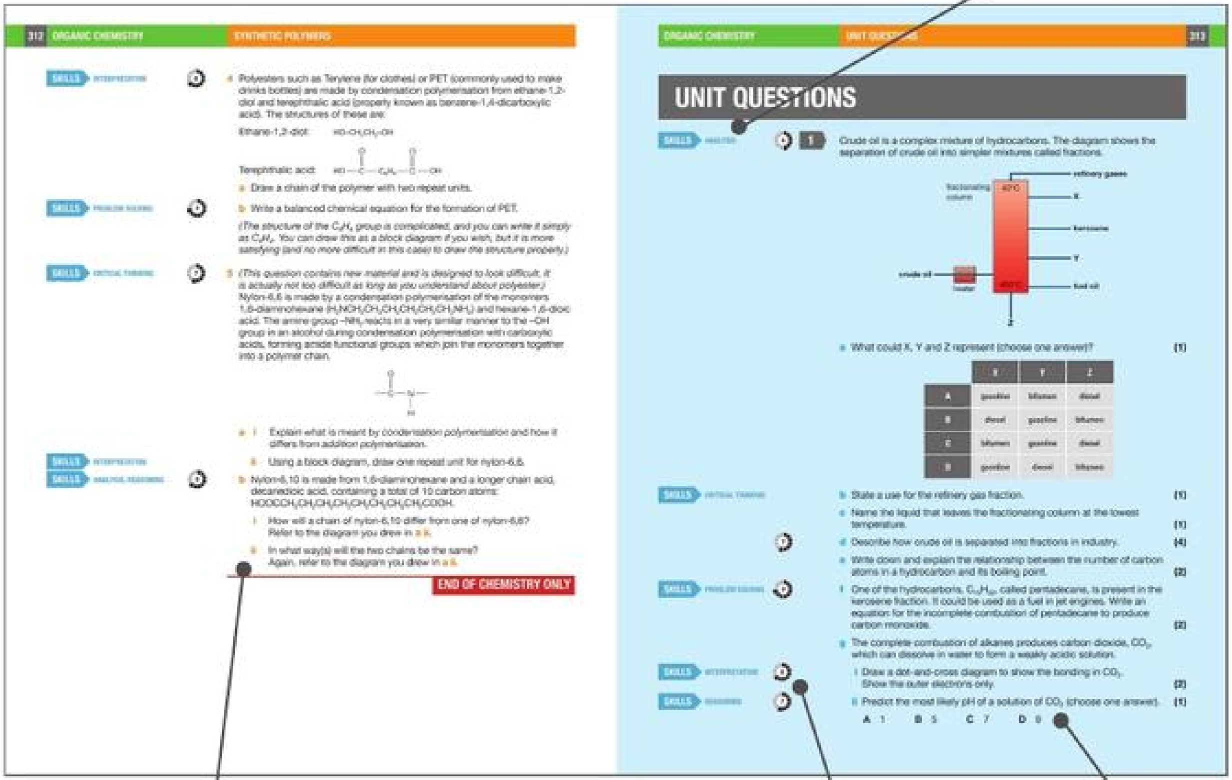


Looking Ahead tells you what you would learn if you continued your study of Chemistry to a higher level, such as International A Level.

Examples provide a clear, instructional framework.

Practicals describe the methods for carrying out all of the practicals you will need to know for your examination.

Transferable Skills are highlighted to show what skill you are using and where.



Chapter Questions test your knowledge of the topic in that chapter.

Progression icons show the level of difficulty according to the Pearson International GCSE Science Progression Scale.

Unit Questions test your knowledge of the whole unit and provide quick, effective feedback on your progress.

ASSESSMENT OVERVIEW

The following tables give an overview of the assessment for this course.

We recommend that you study this information closely to help ensure that you are fully prepared for this course and know exactly what to expect in the assessment.

PAPER 1	SPECIFICATION	PERCENTAGE	MARK	TIME	AVAILABILITY
Written examination paper Paper code 4CH1/1C and 4SD0/1C Externally set and assessed by Edexcel	Chemistry Science Double Award	61.1%	110	2 hours	January and June examination series First assessment June 2019
PAPER 2	**SPECIFICATION**	**PERCENTAGE**	**MARK**	**TIME**	**AVAILABILITY**
Written examination paper Paper code 4CH1/2C Externally set and assessed by Edexcel	Chemistry	38.9%	70	1 hour 15 mins	January and June examination series First assessment June 2019

If you are studying Chemistry then you will take both Papers 1 and 2. If you are studying Science Double Award then you will only need to take Paper 1 (along with Paper 1 for each of the Physics and Biology courses).

ASSESSMENT OBJECTIVES AND WEIGHTINGS

ASSESSMENT OBJECTIVE	DESCRIPTION	% IN INTERNATIONAL GCSE
AO1	Knowledge and understanding of chemistry	38%–42%
AO2	Application of knowledge and understanding, analysis and evaluation of chemistry	38%–42%
AO3	Experimental skills, analysis and evaluation of data and methods in chemistry	19%–21%

EXPERIMENTAL SKILLS

In the assessment of experimental skills, students may be tested on their ability to:

- solve problems set in a practical context
- apply scientific knowledge and understanding in questions with a practical context
- devise and plan investigations, using scientific knowledge and understanding when selecting appropriate techniques
- demonstrate or describe appropriate experimental and investigative methods, including safe and skilful practical techniques
- make observations and measurements with appropriate precision, record these methodically and present them in appropriate ways
- identify independent, dependent and control variables
- use scientific knowledge and understanding to analyse and interpret data to draw conclusions from experimental activities that are consistent with the evidence
- communicate the findings from experimental activities, using appropriate technical language, relevant calculations and graphs
- assess the reliability of an experimental activity
- evaluate data and methods, taking into account factors that affect accuracy and validity.

CALCULATORS

Students are permitted to take a suitable calculator into the examinations. Calculators with QWERTY keyboards or that can retrieve text or formulae will not be permitted.

STATES OF MATTER 3
ELEMENTS, COMPOUNDS AND MIXTURES 14
ATOMIC STRUCTURE 24
THE PERIODIC TABLE 30
CHEMICAL FORMULAE, EQUATIONS AND CALCULATIONS PART 1: 38, PART 2: 64
IONIC BONDING 75
COVALENT BONDING 85
METALLIC BONDING 98
ELECTROLYSIS 101

UNIT 1
PRINCIPLES OF CHEMISTRY

The universe is made of three things!

Up to the present day scientists have discovered 118 elements. Most of these have been made naturally in stars but some are made artificially. As far as we know these are the only elements in the universe, so we basically have a model kit containing 118 different atoms. Chemistry can be described as the study of how these different atoms are joined together in various ways to make everything around us, from a tree, to a person, to the tallest skyscraper. Many of these elements are not very common so most of the things we see around us are made up of different combinations of only about a quarter of these elements. What makes this even more amazing is that each atom is made up of just three subatomic particles, which are called protons, neutrons and electrons. So, the world around us is made of only three things arranged in different ways.

▲ Figure 1.1 Southern view of the Milky Way

1 STATES OF MATTER

Everything around us is made of particles that we can't see because they are so small. This chapter looks at the arrangement of particles in solids, liquids and gases, and the ways in which the particles can move around. The nature of the different sorts of particles will be explored in Chapter 3.

▲ Figure 1.2 Everything you look at is a solid, a liquid or a gas . . .

▲ Figure 1.3 . . . metals, concrete, water, air, clouds – everything!

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Understand the three states of matter in terms of the arrangement, movement and energy of the particles
- Understand the interconversions between the three states of matter in terms of:
  - the names of the interconversions
  - how they are achieved
  - the changes in arrangement, movement and energy of the particles
- Understand how the results of experiments involving the dilution of coloured solutions and diffusion of gases can be explained
- Know what is meant by the terms:
  - solvent
  - solute
  - solution
  - saturated solution

CHEMISTRY ONLY

- Know what is meant by the term solubility in the units g per 100 g of solvent.
- Understand how to plot and interpret solubility curves.
- Practical: Investigate the solubility of a solid in water at a specific temperature.

STATES OF MATTER

Solids, liquids and gases are known as the three states of matter.

THE ARRANGEMENT OF THE PARTICLES

Think about these facts:

- You can't walk through a brick wall, but you can move (with some resistance – it pushes against you) through water. Moving through air is easy.
- When you melt most solids their volume increases slightly. Most liquids are less dense than the solid they come from.
- If you boil about 5 cm^3 of water, the steam will fill an average bucket.

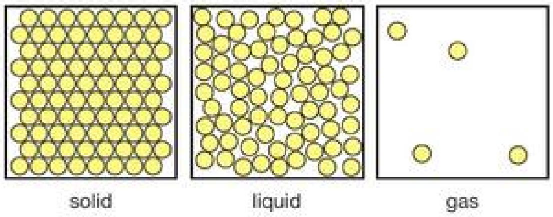
HINT

The packing in the solid might be completely different. What is important is that the particles are close together and, usually, regularly packed. When you draw a liquid, make sure the particles are mostly touching the particles next to them.

KEY POINTS

- You can't walk through a brick wall because of the strong forces of attraction between the particles – the particles can't move out of your way.
- You can swim through water because you can push the particles out of the way.
- It is easy to move through a gas because there are no forces between the particles.

The arrangement of the particles in solids, liquids and gases explains these facts.



▲ Figure 1.4 The arrangement of particles in different states of matter

In a solid, the particles are usually arranged regularly and packed closely together. The particles are only able to vibrate about fixed positions; they can't move around. The particles have strong forces of attraction between them, which keep them together.

In a liquid, the particles are still mostly touching, but some gaps have appeared. This is why liquids are usually less dense than solids. The forces between the particles are less effective, and the particles can move around each other. The particles in a liquid are arranged randomly.

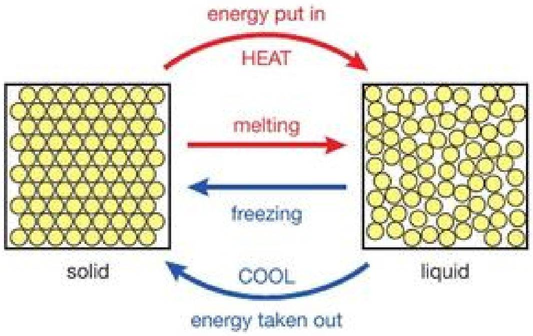
The particles in a gas are moving randomly at high speed in all directions. In a gas, the particles are much further apart and there are (almost) no forces of attraction between them.

The particles in a solid have less kinetic (movement) energy than the particles in a liquid, which have less kinetic energy than the particles in a gas.

INTERCONVERSIONS BETWEEN THE THREE STATES OF MATTER

CHANGING STATE BETWEEN SOLID AND LIQUID

If you heat a solid, the energy provided by the heat source makes the particles in the solid vibrate faster and faster. Eventually, they vibrate so fast that the forces of attraction between the particles are no longer strong enough to hold them together; the particles are then able to move around each other – the solid melts to form a liquid. The temperature at which the solid **melts** is called its **melting point**. The particles in the liquid have more kinetic energy than the particles in the solid so energy has to be supplied to convert a solid to a liquid.



▲ Figure 1.5 Melting to become a liquid – and freezing to become a solid.

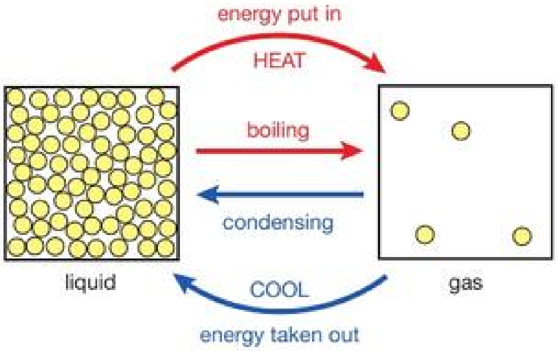
If the liquid is cooled again, the liquid particles will move around more and more slowly. Eventually, they are moving so slowly that the forces of attraction between them will hold them in a fixed position and the particles pack more closely together into a solid. The liquid **freezes**, forming a solid. The temperature at which this occurs is called the **freezing point**.

Although they are called different things depending which way you are going, the temperature of the melting point and that of the freezing point of a substance are exactly the same.

CHANGING STATE BETWEEN LIQUID AND GAS

There are two different ways this can happen, called **boiling** and **evaporation**.

BOILING



▲ Figure 1.6 Boiling to become a gas – and condensing to become a liquid.

Boiling occurs when a liquid is heated so strongly that the particles are moving fast enough to overcome all the forces of attraction between them. The stronger the forces of attraction between particles, the higher the boiling point of the liquid. This is because more energy is needed to overcome these forces of attraction.

If a gas is cooled, the particles eventually move slowly enough that forces of attraction between them start to form and hold them together as a liquid. The gas condenses.

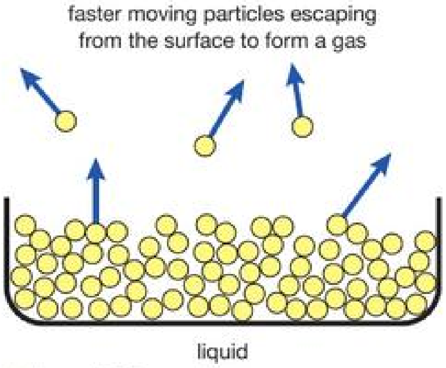
KEY POINT

Evaporation occurs at any temperature, but boiling only occurs at one temperature – the boiling point of the liquid. Puddles of water disappear quite quickly despite the outside temperature often being below 5 °C in the winter in the UK. The water in the puddles certainly does not boil at this temperature; the water evaporates. So water will evaporate at, for example, 5 °C but only boil at 100 °C.

EVAPORATION

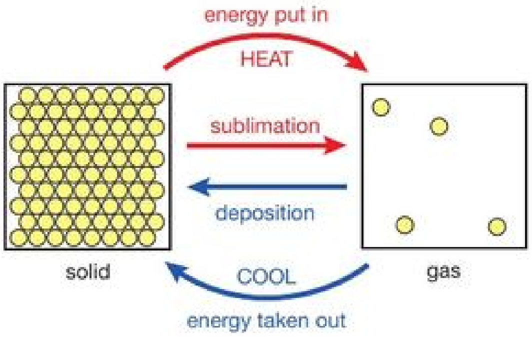
Evaporation is different. In any liquid or gas, the average speed of the particles varies with the temperature. But at each temperature, some particles will be moving faster than the average and others more slowly.

Some very fast particles at the surface of the liquid will have enough energy to overcome the forces of attraction between the particles – they will break away to form a gas. This is evaporation. You don't see any bubbling; the liquid just slowly disappears if it is open to the air. If the liquid is in a closed container, particles in the gas will also be colliding with particles at the surface of the liquid. If they are moving slowly enough they will be held by the attractive forces and become part of the liquid. In a closed container evaporation and condensation will both be occurring at the same time.


faster moving particles escaping from the surface to form a gas
liquid

▲ Figure 1.7 Evaporation.

CHANGING STATE BETWEEN SOLID AND GAS: SUBLIMATION



▲ Figure 1.8 This change of state goes directly from a solid to a gas and from a gas to a solid.

KEY POINT

The process of a gas changing into a solid is given various names. Some people call it 'de-sublimation' or 'deposition' and others just use the word 'sublimation' again.

A small number of substances can change directly from a solid to a gas, or from a gas to a solid, at normal pressure without involving any liquid in the process. The conversion of a solid into a gas is known as **sublimation** and the reverse process is usually called **deposition**.

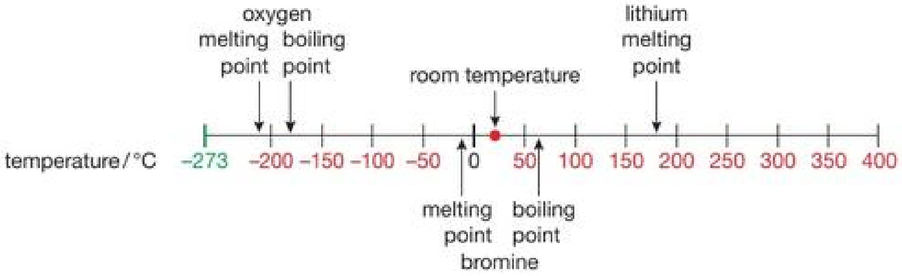
▲ Figure 1.9 Dry ice subliming. Notice the white solid carbon dioxide in the beaker. The white cloud is because the carbon dioxide gas produced is so cold that it causes water vapour in the air to condense. Carbon dioxide gas itself is invisible.

An example of a substance that sublimes is carbon dioxide. At ordinary pressures, there is no such thing as liquid carbon dioxide – it turns directly from a solid to a gas at −78.5 °C. Solid carbon dioxide is known as dry ice.

WORKING OUT THE PHYSICAL STATE OF A SUBSTANCE AT A PARTICULAR TEMPERATURE

A substance is a solid at temperatures below its melting point, between its melting point and its boiling point it is a liquid, and above its boiling point it is a gas.

In science we can decide whether a substance is a solid, a liquid or a gas at room temperature by looking at where its melting and boiling points are in relation to room temperature.



▲ Figure 1.10 A temperature line can be used to work out whether substances are solids, liquids or gases.

If we look at the temperature line in Figure 1.10 we can see that room temperature is above the boiling point of oxygen; this means that oxygen is a gas at room temperature.

Let's look at what happens when we heat bromine from −100 °C to 100 °C. As −100 °C is below bromine's melting point, bromine is a solid at −100 °C. As it is heated to −7 °C (its melting point) it becomes a liquid and it remains as a liquid until its temperature reaches the boiling point at 59 °C. Room temperature is between the melting point and the boiling point, which means that bromine is a liquid at room temperature. Above 59 °C bromine is a gas.

Lithium's melting point is above room temperature and so it is a solid at room temperature.

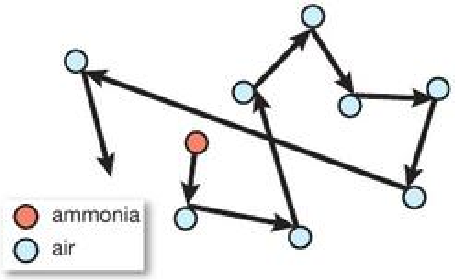
KEY POINT

Room temperature is different in different places but in science it is usually taken to mean a temperature between 20 and 25 °C. Because there is not just one fixed value, for changes of state that occur near room temperature we must be careful when making comparisons and make clear what value is being used as room temperature.

DIFFUSION

DIFFUSION IN GASES

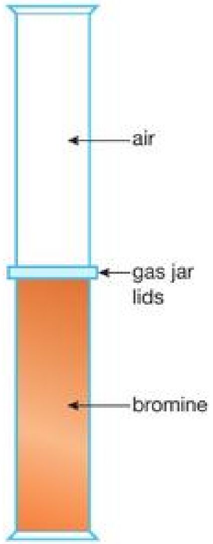
Suppose someone accidentally releases some smelly gas in the lab, ammonia for example. Within a minute or so, everybody in the lab will be able to smell it. That isn't surprising – particles in the gas are free to move around. What does need explaining, though, is why it takes so long.



▲ Figure 1.11 An ammonia particle bouncing off air particles.

At room temperature, ammonia particles travel at speeds of about 600 metres per second so they should be able to travel from one end of a lab to the other in less than 1/100 s (0.01 s). This would be the case if they travelled in a straight line without bumping into anything else. However, each particle is bouncing off air particles on its way. In the time that it takes for the smell to reach all corners of the lab, each ammonia particle may have travelled 30 or more kilometres!

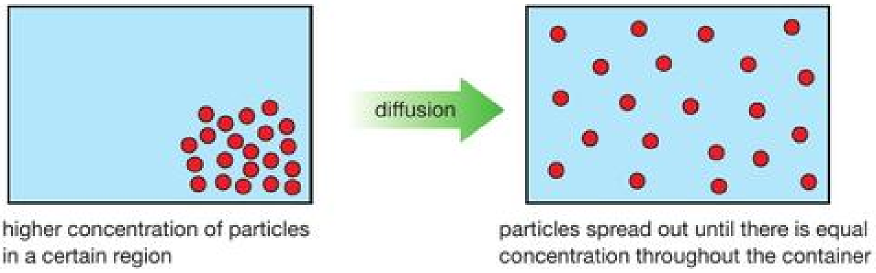
The spreading out of particles in a gas or liquid is known as **diffusion**. We say that ammonia particles *diffuse* through the air. A formal definition of diffusion is:


air
gas jar lids
bromine

▲ Figure 1.13 Demonstrating diffusion in gases

Safety Note: The teacher demonstration must be prepared in a working fume cupboard wearing eye protection and chemical-resistant gloves. Inhalation of bromine by anyone with breathing difficulties may produce a reaction, possibly delayed, requiring urgent medical attention.

Diffusion is the spreading out of particles from where they are at a high concentration (there are lots of them in a certain volume) to where they are at a low concentration (there are fewer of them in a certain volume).


diffusion
higher concentration of particles in a certain region
particles spread out until there is equal concentration throughout the container

▲ Figure 1.12 Diffusion involves the spreading out of particles.

You can show diffusion in gases very easily by using the apparatus in Figure 1.13. The lower gas jar contains bromine gas; the top one contains air. If the lids are removed, the brown colour of the bromine diffuses upwards until both gas jars are uniformly brown (the air particles also diffuse downwards). The bromine particles and air particles move around at random to give an even mixture – both gas jars contain air and bromine particles.

You can carry out the same experiment with hydrogen and air, but in this example you have to put a lighted splint in at the end to find out where the gases have gone. People often expect that the much less dense hydrogen will all go to the top gas jar. In fact, you will get identical explosions from both jars.

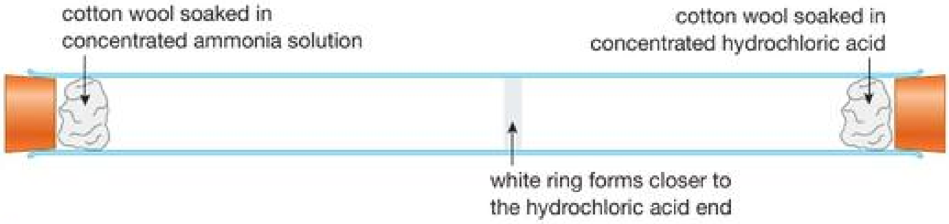
SHOWING THAT PARTICLES OF DIFFERENT GASES TRAVEL AT DIFFERENT SPEEDS

HINT

Don't worry if you don't know how to write symbol equations. This one is included here so that you can refer to it again in later revision.

This experiment relies on the reaction between ammonia (NH_3) and hydrogen chloride (HCl) gases to give white solid ammonium chloride (NH_4Cl):

$$NH_3(g) + HCl(g) \rightarrow NH_4Cl(s)$$


cotton wool soaked in concentrated ammonia solution
cotton wool soaked in concentrated hydrochloric acid
white ring forms closer to the hydrochloric acid end

▲ Figure 1.14 Demonstrating that particles in ammonia and hydrogen chloride travel at different speeds.

Safety Note: The teacher demonstration requires eye protection and the avoidance of skin contact and inhalation of any fumes. The apparatus has to be cleaned up in a working fume cupboard.

KEY POINT

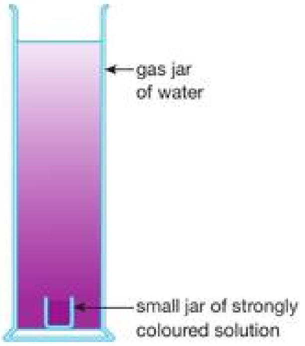
You will learn about relative molecular mass in Chapter 5. The relative molecular mass of ammonia is 17 and that of hydrogen chloride is 36.5.

Pieces of cotton wool are soaked in concentrated ammonia solution (as a source of ammonia gas) and concentrated hydrochloric acid (as a source of hydrogen chloride gas). These are placed in the ends of a long glass tube with rubber bungs to stop the poisonous gases escaping.

Ammonia particles and hydrogen chloride particles diffuse along the tube. A white ring of solid ammonium chloride forms where they meet. The white ring of ammonium chloride takes time to form (as it takes some time for the particles of ammonia and hydrogen chloride to diffuse along the tube), and appears *closer to the hydrochloric acid end*. Ammonia particles are lighter than hydrogen chloride particles and therefore move faster. The ammonia particles travel further in the same amount of time, which means that the ring forms further away from the ammonia end.

DIFFUSION IN LIQUIDS

Diffusion through a liquid is very slow if the liquid is completely still. For example, if a small jar of strongly coloured solution (such as potassium manganate(VII) solution) is placed in a gas jar of water, it can take days for the colour to diffuse throughout all the water. This is because *the particles in a liquid move more slowly than the particles in a gas*. The particles in a liquid are also much closer together than those in a gas and so there is less space for particles to move into without colliding with another one.



▲ Figure 1.15 Demonstrating diffusion in liquids

THE DILUTION OF COLOURED SOLUTIONS

Imagine you dissolve 0.01 g of potassium manganate(VII) in 1 cm^3 of water to make a deep purple solution. If we take the volume of 1 drop as 0.05 cm^3 we can work out that there are 20 drops in 1 cm^3 and each drop will contain 0.0005 g of potassium manganate(VII).

If you dilute this solution by adding water until the total volume is 10 000 cm^3, you should still just be able to see the purple colour.

There are now 200 000 drops in the solution. In order to see the colour each drop must contain at least one 'particle' of potassium manganate(VII), so there must be at least 200 000 'particles' in 0.01 g of potassium manganate(VII). This means that each 'particle' can't weigh more than 50 billionths of a gram (0.00000005 g).

This answer is not even close to the real answer. A potassium manganate(VII) 'particle' actually weighs about 0.00000000000000000000026 g and there are about 38 000 000 000 000 000 000 particles in 0.01 g! In reality, you need very large numbers of particles in each drop in order to see the colour.

REMINDER

Why the inverted commas around 'particle'? Potassium manganate(VII) is an *ionic compound* and contains more than one sort of particle. You will find out more about ionic compounds in Chapter 7.

THE SOLUBILITY OF SOLIDS

SOLUTES, SOLVENTS AND SOLUTIONS

When a solid dissolves in a liquid:

- the substance that dissolves is called the **solute**
- the liquid it dissolves in is called the **solvent**
- the liquid formed is a **solution**.

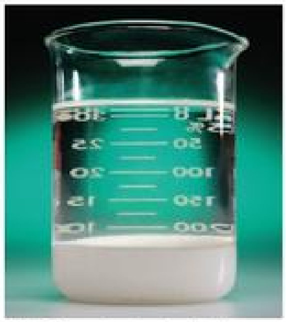
When you make a solution, the attractive forces between the particles in the solute (the solid) are being broken. At the same time, new attractive forces are being formed between the solvent particles and the solute particles. Whether a particular solid is soluble in any solvent depends on whether the new attractive forces are strong enough to overcome the old ones.

Only a certain amount of solute will dissolve in a fixed amount of solute at a particular temperature. When the maximum amount is dissolved a saturated solution is obtained. A **saturated solution** is a solution which contains as much dissolved solid as possible at a particular temperature. There must be some undissolved solute present.

MEASURING SOLUBILITY

CHEMISTRY ONLY

The **solubility** of a solid in a solvent at a particular temperature is usually defined as *'the mass of solute which must dissolve in 100 g of solvent at that temperature to form a saturated solution'*.



▲ Figure 1.16 A saturated solution

EXTENSION WORK

It is possible to get supersaturated solutions with some solutes. These contain more dissolved solid than you would expect at a particular temperature. If you add even one tiny crystal of solid to these solutions, all the extra solute will crystallise out, and you are left with a normal saturated solution. You don't have to worry about this at International GCSE. Having undissolved solid present when you make a saturated solution prevents supersaturated solutions forming.

In other words, it is the maximum mass of solute that dissolves in 100 g of solvent at a particular temperature.

For example, the solubility of sodium chloride (common salt) in water at 25 °C is about 36 g per 100 g of water.

ACTIVITY 1

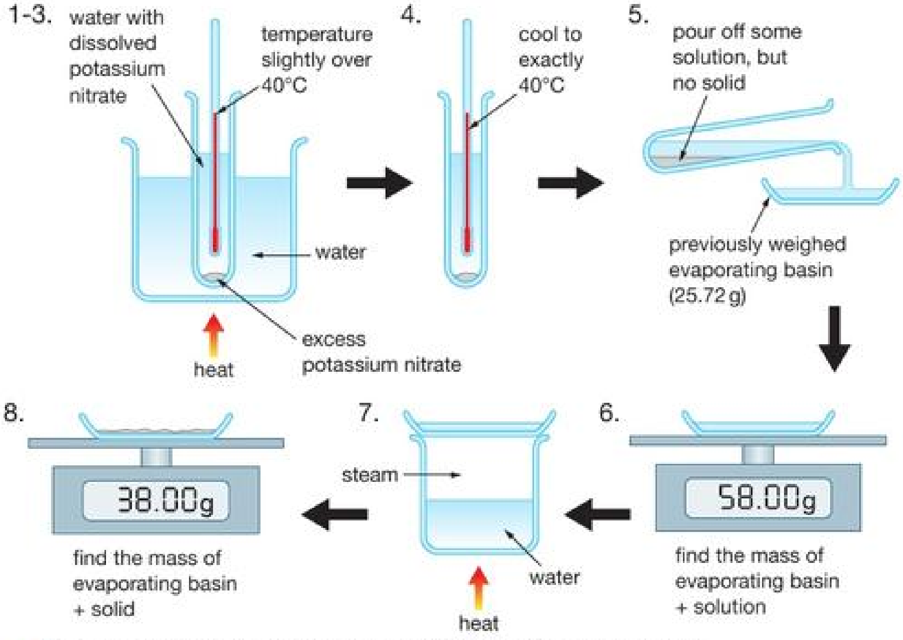
▼ PRACTICAL: INVESTIGATING THE SOLUBILITY OF A SOLID IN WATER

A procedure we can use to measure the solubility of potassium nitrate in water at 40 °C is as follows:

1. Weigh an evaporating basin.
2. Heat a boiling tube of water to just above 40 °C.
3. Add potassium nitrate to the water in the boiling tube and stir rapidly until no more of it will dissolve and there is undissolved solid left over.
4. Allow the solution to cool to exactly 40 °C.
5. Pour off some of the solution into the evaporating basin (it is important that you only pour off solution and no solid). You do not have to pour off all the solution.
6. Weigh the evaporating basin and contents.
7. Heat the evaporating basin and contents gently to evaporate off all the water.
8. When it looks as if all the water has evaporated weigh the evaporating basin and contents.
9. Heat the evaporating basin and contents again and then re-weigh. This is to make sure that all the water has, indeed, evaporated and is called *heating to constant mass*.

This procedure is summarised in Figure 1.17.

Safety Note: Wear eye protection and heat gently to avoid burns from hot solid 'spitting' out of the basin.


1-3.
water with dissolved potassium nitrate
temperature slightly over 40°C
water
excess potassium nitrate
heat
4.
cool to exactly 40°C
5.
pour off some solution, but no solid
previously weighed evaporating basin (25.72 g)
6.
58.00g
find the mass of evaporating basin + solution
7.
steam
water
heat
8.
38.00g
find the mass of evaporating basin + solid

▲ Figure 1.17 Finding the solubility of potassium nitrate in water at 40 °C.

We heat the solution gently to make sure that none spits out. If some did spit out we would record a lower mass of solid and the solubility would appear to be lower than the actual value.

The results for this experiment could be:

Mass of evaporating basin/g	25.72
Mass of evaporating basin + solution/g	58.00
Mass of evaporating basin + dry crystals/g	38.00

We need to calculate the mass of the solid and also the mass of water evaporated from the solution:

mass of crystals = 38.00 − 25.72 = 12.28 g

mass of water = 58.00 − 38.00 g = 20.00 g

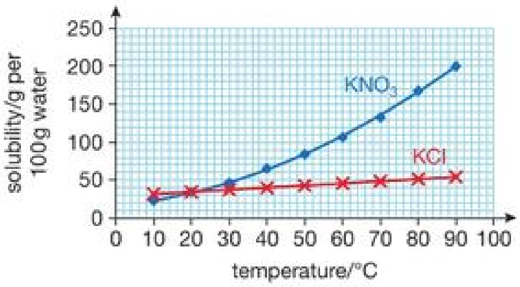
12.28 g of solid is the maximum mass that dissolves in 20.00 g of water, therefore 5 times as much would dissolve in 100 g of water. That works out at 61.4 g. The solubility of potassium nitrate at 40 °C is therefore 61.4 g per 100 g of water.

More generally, we can calculate the solubility of a substance in 100 g of solvent using the equation:

$$\text{solubility (g/100 g)} = \frac{\text{mass of solute}}{\text{mass of solvent}} \times 100$$

SOLUBILITY CURVES

The solubility of solids changes with temperature and you can plot this on a **solubility curve**. Most solids have solubility curves like those for the salts shown in Figure 1.18. Their solubility increases with temperature – either dramatically or just a little.



▲ Figure 1.18 Solubility curves for potassium nitrate and potassium chloride

You can use solubility curves to work out what mass of crystals you would get if you cooled a saturated solution.

Consider the solubility curve for potassium nitrate (KNO_3) in Figure 1.18. At 90 °C 200 g of potassium nitrate dissolves in 100 g water. At 30 °C only 50 g will dissolve. Therefore, if we have a solution containing 200 g of potassium nitrate dissolved in 100 g of water and let it cool down from 90 °C to 30 °C, 150 g of potassium nitrate must be released from the solution, which it does as crystals. We say that potassium nitrate *crystallises out of the solution* or *precipitates out of the solution*.

HINT

Because solubility varies with temperature, you must always quote a temperature with a solubility value, e.g. the solubility of sodium chloride at 30 °C is...

KEY POINT

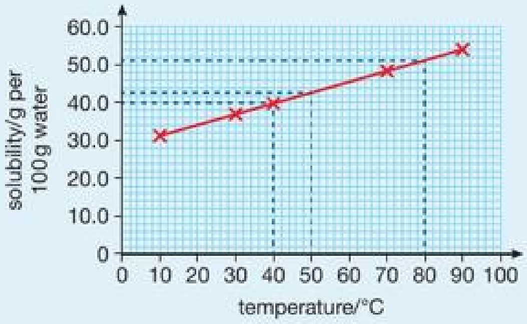
The dashed lines marked on the graph come from answers to the next part of the question. In this case the solubility curve is virtually a straight line – this will not always be the case. If you are asked to draw a line of best fit this can be either a straight line or a curve.

EXAMPLE

The table shows the solubility of potassium chloride at various temperatures.

Temperature/°C	10	30	40	70	90
Solubility/g per 100 g of water	31.2	37.2	40.0	48.5	53.9

a Plot a solubility curve for potassium chloride.



▲ Figure 1.19 Solubility curve for potassium chloride

b Use the solubility curve to find:

- i the solubility of potassium chloride at 50 °C
- ii the maximum mass of potassium chloride that would dissolve in 50 g of water at 40 °C.
- iii the temperature at which crystals will first appear if you cooled a hot solution containing 51.0 g of potassium chloride in 100 g of water.

Use the graph to find the information you want.

Part i: The graph shows that at 50 °C the solubility is 42.5 g per 100 g of water.

Part ii: From the graph we can see that the solubility at 40 °C is 40 g per 100 g of water. From this we can deduce that half as much, that is 20 g, will dissolve in 50 g (half the mass) of water.

The numbers we have used here are quite simple, but if you were, for instance, asked to work out the maximum mass that would dissolve in 34.6 g of water at 40 °C you could use the equation:

$$\frac{\text{mass of water (g)}}{100\text{ (g)}} \times \text{solubility (g per 100 g)} = \text{maximum mass that dissolves (g)}$$

So, with 34.6 g of water we would get:

$$\frac{34.6}{100} \times 40 = 13.84\text{ g of potassium chloride dissolves}$$

Part iii: Solubility measures the maximum mass of potassium chloride which will dissolve in 100 g of water at a particular temperature. Crystals will start to appear as soon as the solution becomes saturated. From the graph, it can be seen that more than 51.0 g of solid will be soluble at 90 °C, but as the solution is cooled the solubility decreases. Drawing a line across at 51.0 g shows that this is the maximum mass that will dissolve at 80 °C and therefore crystals will first appear at temperatures below this.

c What mass of potassium chloride would crystallise from the solution in biii if the temperature fell to 10 °C?

You can use the data in the table to find the solubility at 10 °C. This value is 31.2 g per 100 g of water. That means that 31.2 g of potassium chloride will stay in solution at 10 °C. Since you started with 51.0 g, the rest of it must have formed crystals:

mass of crystals = 51.0 – 31.2 g = 19.8 g

19.8 g of potassium chloride will crystallise out.

HINT

In different circumstances, you might have to find the 10 °C figure from the graph as well.

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

CHAPTER QUESTIONS

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 2

1 What name is given to each of the following changes of state?
- a Solid to liquid
- b Liquid to solid
- c Solid to gas
- d Gas to solid

SKILLS INTERPRETATION 5

2 a Draw diagrams to show the arrangement of the particles in a solid, a liquid and a gas.

b Describe the difference between the movement of particles in a solid and a liquid.

c The change of state from a liquid to a gas can be either evaporation or boiling. Explain the difference between evaporation and boiling.

SKILLS ANALYSIS

3 The questions refer to the substances in the table.

	Melting point/°C	Boiling point/°C
A	–259	–253
B	0	100
C	3700 (sublimes)	
D	–116	34.5
E	801	1413

a Write down the physical states of each compound at
- i 30 °C.
- ii –100 °C
- iii 80 °C

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 6

b Which substance has the greatest distance between its particles at 25 °C? Explain your answer.

SKILLS REASONING 5

c Why is no boiling point given for substance **C**?

6

d Which liquid substance would evaporate most quickly in the open air at 25 °C? Explain your answer.

SKILLS REASONING

4 Refer to Figure 1.14 on page 7 showing the diffusion experiment.

a Explain why the ring takes a few minutes to form.

b i If you heat a gas, what effect will this have on the movement of the particles?

ii In the light of your answer to i, what difference would you find if you did this experiment outside on a day when the temperature was 2 °C instead of in a warm lab at 25 °C? Explain your answer.

c Explain why the ring was formed nearer the hydrochloric acid end of the tube.

d Suppose you replaced the concentrated hydrochloric acid with concentrated hydrobromic acid. This releases the gas hydrogen bromide (HBr). Hydrogen bromide also reacts with ammonia to form a white ring.

i Suggest a name for the white ring in this case.

ii Hydrogen bromide particles are about twice as heavy as hydrogen chloride particles. What effects do you think this would have on the experiment?

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

5 Use the words given below to complete the following paragraph. Each word may be used once, more than once or not at all.

Sodium chloride dissolves in water to form a ______. The water is called the ______ and the sodium chloride is the ______. If the solution is heated to 50 °C some of the water ______ until the solution becomes ______ and sodium chloride crystals start to form.

boils solution solute saturated evaporates solvent condenses

CHEMISTRY ONLY

SKILLS INTERPRETATION

6 The solubility of sodium chlorate in water was measured at a number of different temperatures.

Temperature/°C	0	20	40	60	80	100
Solubility/g per 100 g of water	3	8	14	23	38	55

a Use these figures to plot a solubility curve, with the temperature on the horizontal axis and the solubility on the vertical one.

SKILLS ANALYSIS

b Use your graph to find the solubility of sodium chlorate at 50 °C.

c Determine the maximum mass of sodium chlorate that will dissolve in 40 g of water at 30 °C.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

d 20 g of sodium chlorate was added to 100 g of water and the mixture heated to about 70 °C. It was then left to cool with the thermometer in the solution. Use your graph to answer the following questions.

i At what temperature would crystals first appear in the solution?

ii If the solution was cooled to 17 °C, calculate the total mass of crystals formed.

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

2 ELEMENTS, COMPOUNDS AND MIXTURES

Most of the substances that we are familiar with from everyday life are mixtures. For example, the air that we breathe is a mixture containing elements such as nitrogen and oxygen, and compounds such as carbon dioxide and nitrogen oxides. The food that we eat and the drinks that we drink are mixtures. This chapter looks at the properties of elements, compounds and mixtures, and also how to separate the components of a mixture. Separation of mixtures is very important in the analysis of substances, such as in forensics.

▲ Figure 2.1 Gold is an element, but a gold ring made from 18-carat gold only contains 75% gold. The metal is a mixture of gold and, usually, copper.

▲ Figure 2.2 Pure water is a compound, but the water we drink is a mixture of water and other dissolved substances.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Understand how to classify a substance as an element, compound or mixture
- Understand that a pure substance has a fixed melting and boiling point, but that a mixture may melt or boil over a range of temperatures
- Describe these experimental techniques for the separation of mixtures:
  - simple distillation
  - filtration
  - paper chromatography
  - fractional distillation
  - crystallisation
- Understand how a chromatogram provides information about the composition of a mixture
- Understand how to use the calculation of R_f values to identify the components of a mixture
- Practical: Investigate paper chromatography using inks/food colourings

REMINDER

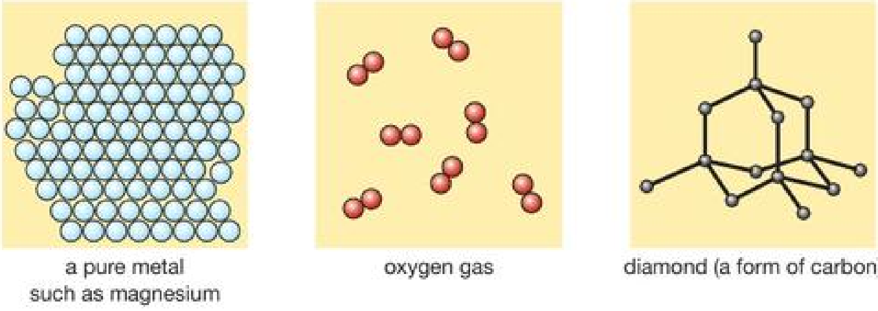
You might want to look at Chapter 3 if you do not already know the term 'atom'.

KEY POINT

It isn't completely true to say that elements consist of only one type of atom. A better way of saying it would be that *all the atoms in an element have the same atomic number*. Most elements consist of mixtures of isotopes, which have the same atomic number, but different mass numbers (due to different numbers of neutrons). When we draw diagrams or make models, we aren't usually interested in the differences between the isotopes. Isotopes will be discussed in Chapter 3.

ELEMENTS

Elements are *substances that can't be split into anything simpler by chemical means*. An element contains only one type of atom (but see the key point in the margin). In models or diagrams they are shown as atoms of a single colour or size.

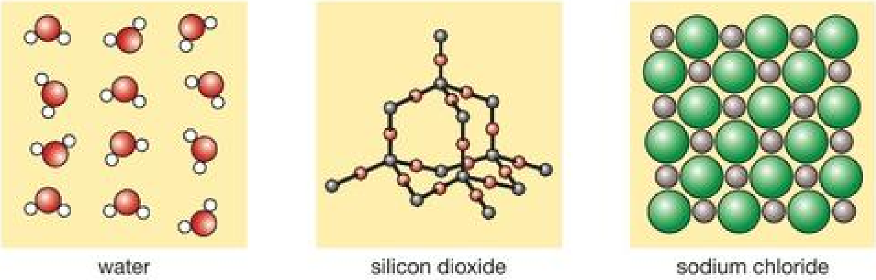


▲ Figure 2.3 Elements contain only one type of atom.

There are 118 elements and these are shown in the Periodic Table. Most of the elements occur naturally, such as hydrogen, helium and sulfur. Some others have to be made artificially, such as einsteinium.

COMPOUNDS

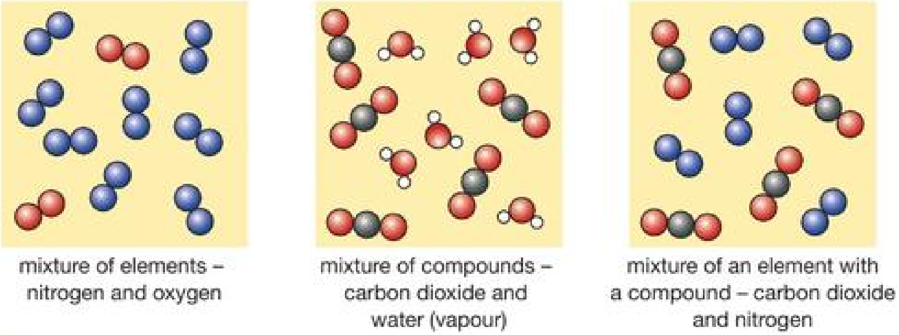
Compounds are formed when *two or more elements chemically combine*. The elements always combine in fixed proportions. For example, hydrogen and fluorine always combine to form hydrogen fluoride, with formula HF, whereas magnesium and fluorine always combine to form magnesium fluoride, with formula MgF_2 – the elements must combine in these ratios. Examples of other compounds are carbon dioxide (CO_2) and methane (CH_4). Diagrams of compounds show more than one type of atom bonded together.


water
silicon dioxide
sodium chloride

▲ Figure 2.4 Some compounds

MIXTURES

In a **mixture**, the various substances are mixed together and no chemical reaction occurs. Mixtures can be made from elements and/or compounds. The various components can be in any proportion, for example you can put any amount of sugar into your cup of tea or coffee (until it becomes saturated).


mixture of elements – nitrogen and oxygen
mixture of compounds – carbon dioxide and water (vapour)
mixture of an element with a compound – carbon dioxide and nitrogen

▲ Figure 2.5 Some mixtures

SIMPLE DIFFERENCES BETWEEN MIXTURES AND COMPOUNDS

PROPORTIONS

In water (a compound), every single water molecule has two hydrogen atoms combined with one oxygen atom. It never varies. In a mixture of hydrogen and oxygen gases, the two could be mixed together in any proportion.

If you had some iron metal and some sulfur, you could mix them in any proportion you wanted to. In iron sulfide (FeS), a compound, the proportion of iron to sulfur is always exactly the same.

PROPERTIES

In a mixture of elements, each element keeps its own properties, but the properties of the compound are quite different. For example, in a mixture of iron and sulfur, the iron is grey and the sulfur is yellow. The iron reacts with dilute acids such as hydrochloric acid to produce hydrogen; the sulfur doesn't react with the acid. However, the compound iron sulfide (FeS) reacts quite differently with acids to produce poisonous hydrogen sulfide gas, which smells of bad eggs.

A mixture of hydrogen and oxygen is a colourless gas which explodes when you put a flame to it. The compound, water, is a colourless liquid which just puts out a flame.

REMINDER

You can find out about the reactions of metals with dilute acids on pages 174–175. The reaction between iron sulfide and acids isn't needed for exam purposes at International GCSE.

EASE OF SEPARATION

Mixtures can be separated by **physical means**. Physical means are things like changing the temperature or dissolving part of the mixture in a solvent such as water; in other words, methods that don't involve any chemical reactions.

For example, a mixture of iron and sulfur is quite easy to separate into the two elements using a magnet. The iron sticks to the magnet and the sulfur doesn't. The elements in a compound cannot be separated by physical means. To convert iron sulfide into separate samples of iron and sulfur requires chemical reactions.

You can cool a mixture of hydrogen and oxygen gases to separate it by a physical process. Oxygen condenses into a liquid at a much higher temperature than hydrogen (–183 °C as opposed to –253 °C). This would leave you with liquid oxygen and hydrogen gas, which are easy to separate. But to separate water into hydrogen and oxygen, you have to change it chemically using electrolysis. Electrolysis is explained in Chapter 10.

MELTING POINT AND BOILING POINT

Pure substances, such as elements and pure compounds, melt and boil at fixed temperatures. For example, the melting point of water is 0 °C and the boiling point 100 °C. However, mixtures usually melt or boil over a *range of temperatures*.

The presence of impurities lowers the melting point of a substance and raises the boiling point. For instance, dissolving 10 g of common (table) salt (sodium chloride) in 1 litre of water lowers the melting point to about –0.6 °C and raises the boiling point to about 100.2 °C.

KEY POINT

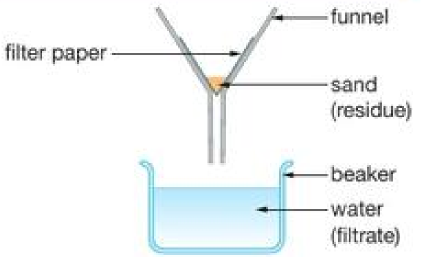
A mixture is not a pure substance. If a sample contains only a small amount of an unwanted substance, the unwanted substance might be called an *impurity*.

The melting point can be very useful in determining whether or not a substance is pure. If you continue to study chemistry you might carry out a practical experiment to make some aspirin. In order to determine whether your sample is pure or not you can measure the melting point. You would record the temperature at which your sample starts to melt, and then you would record the temperature at which it has fully melted to completely form a liquid. Aspirin is a white powder that melts at 138 °C. If the melting point of the sample you made is 128–134 °C you can see that it is quite impure because it melts over a wide range of temperature (below the melting point of pure aspirin).

SEPARATION OF MIXTURES

Separating mixtures is extremely important in chemistry. For example, we can see this in the processing of crude oil, in producing fresh water from salt water and in the enrichment of uranium. In forensic science, the components of a mixture usually have to be separated before they can be analysed.

FILTRATION



▲ Figure 2.6 Filtration can be used to separate a mixture of sand and water.

Filtration can be used to separate a solid from a liquid.

For example, sand can be separated from water by filtration. The apparatus for filtration is shown in Figure 2.6.

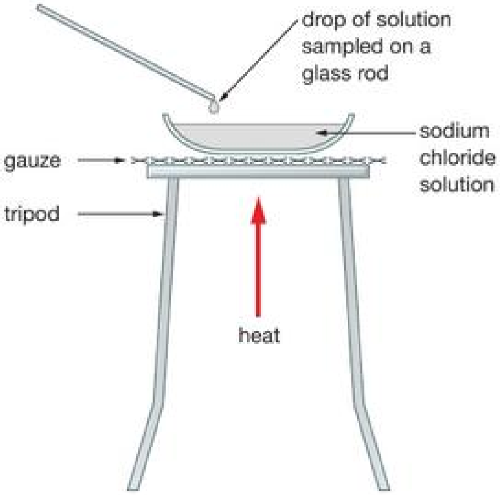
The substance left in the filter paper is called the **residue** and the liquid that comes through is called the **filtrate**.

Filtration can also be used to separate two solids from each other if only one of them is soluble in water (see below – rock salt).

CRYSTALLISATION

Crystallisation can be used to separate a solute from a solution. For example, it could be used to separate sodium chloride from a sodium chloride solution. The solution is heated in an evaporating basin to boil off some of the water until an almost saturated solution is formed. This can be tested by dipping a glass rod into the solution and seeing if crystals form quickly on its surface when it is removed. The Bunsen burner is then turned off and the crystals allowed to form as more water evaporates and the solution cools. The crystals can now be removed from the mixture by filtration.

The apparatus for crystallisation is shown in Figure 2.7.



▲ Figure 2.7 Crystallisation can be used to separate a solute from a solution.

MAKING PURE SALT FROM ROCK SALT

▲ Figure 2.8 Rock salt

We can use filtration and crystallisation to obtain pure salt from rock salt.

Rock salt consists of salt contaminated by various earthy or rocky impurities. These impurities aren't soluble in water.

If you crush the rock salt and mix it with hot water, the salt dissolves, but the impurities don't. The impurities can be filtered off, and remain on the filter paper. The filtrate is then a salt solution. The solid salt can be obtained from the solution by crystallisation.

This is typical of the way you can separate any mixture of two solids, one of which is soluble in water and one of which isn't.

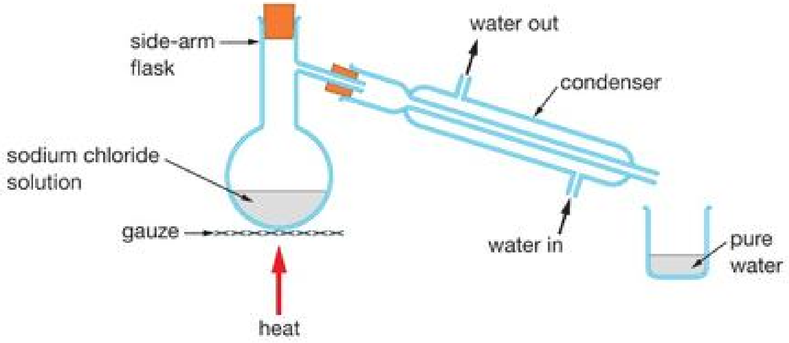
SIMPLE DISTILLATION

Simple distillation can be used to separate the components of a solution. Although we can use crystallisation to separate sodium chloride from a sodium chloride solution, we can also collect the water if we use simple distillation.

The water boils and is condensed back to a liquid by the condenser. The salt remains in the flask.

KEY POINT

Notice that water is always fed into the condenser at the lower end. That way it fills the condenser jacket better and if the flow of water stops for any reason the condenser jacket remains full of water.


side-arm flask
water out
condenser
sodium chloride solution
gauze
water in
pure water
heat

▲ Figure 2.9 Distilling pure water from sodium chloride solution.

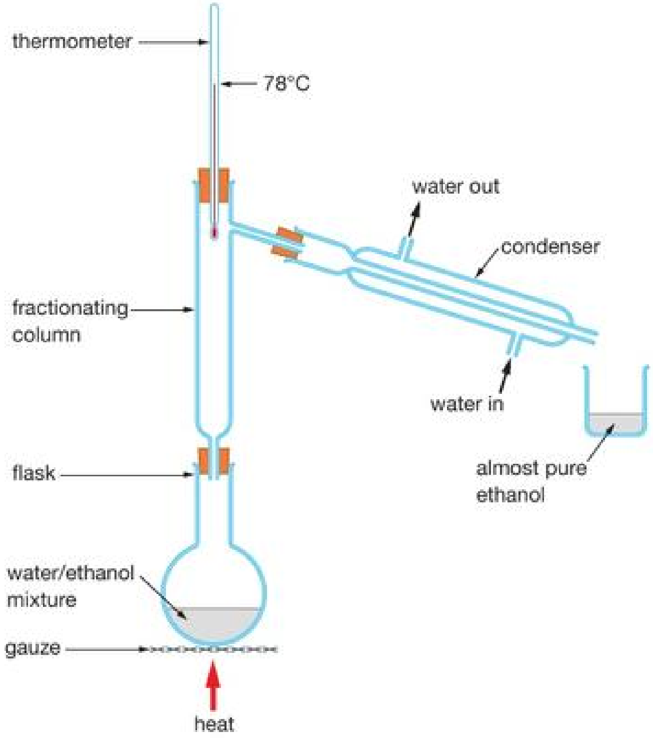
You could, of course, collect the salt from the solution as well as collecting pure water. The sodium chloride solution eventually becomes so concentrated that the salt will crystallise out.

FRACTIONAL DISTILLATION

Fractional distillation is used to separate a mixture of liquids such as ethanol (alcohol) and water. Ethanol and water are completely miscible with each other. That means you can mix them together in any proportion and they will form a single liquid layer. You can separate them by taking advantage of their different boiling points: water boils at 100 °C, ethanol at 78 °C.

EXTENSION WORK

The fractionating column is often packed with glass beads or something similar, although the separation of ethanol and water in the lab works perfectly well just with an empty column. For reasons that are beyond International GCSE, a high surface area in the column helps separation of the two vapours. The ethanol produced by this experiment is about 96% pure. For complicated reasons, again beyond International GCSE, it is impossible to remove the last 4% of water by distillation.


thermometer
78°C
water out
condenser
fractionating column
water in
flask
almost pure ethanol
water/ethanol mixture
gauze
heat

▲ Figure 2.10 Fractional distillation

Both liquids boil, but by careful heating you can control the temperature of the column so that all the water condenses in the column and trickles back into the flask. Only the ethanol remains as a vapour all the way to the top of the fractionating column and out into the condenser.

PAPER CHROMATOGRAPHY

Paper chromatography can be used to separate a variety of mixtures. However, at International GCSE level we will usually use it to separate mixtures of coloured inks or food colourings. Most inks and food colourings are not just made up of one colour but contain a mixture of dyes.

Paper chromatography can also be used to separate a mixture of colourless substances such as sugars, but then some method must be used to make the spots visible on the paper.

Safety Note: Avoid skin contact with the solvents and dyes, especially if you have sensitive skin.

ACTIVITY 2

▼ PRACTICAL: INVESTIGATING THE COMPOSITION OF DYE WITH PAPER CHROMATOGRAPHY

We can investigate the composition of a mixture of coloured dyes using paper chromatography. To do this we carry out the following steps.

1. Draw a line with a pencil across a piece of chromatography paper; this line should be about 1 cm from the bottom of the paper. Do not use a pen as the colours in the ink may move up the chromatography paper with the solvent.
2. Put a spot (use a teat pipette or a capillary tube) of the mixture of dyes on the pencil line and allow it to dry.
3. Suspend the chromatography paper in a beaker that contains a small amount of solvent so that the bottom of the paper goes into the solvent. It is important that the solvent is below the pencil line so that the inks/colourings don't just dissolve in the solvent.
4. Put a lid (such as a watch glass) on the beaker so that the atmosphere becomes saturated with the solvent. This is to stop evaporation of the solvent from the surface of the paper.
5. When the solvent has moved up the paper to about 1 cm from the top, remove the paper from the beaker and draw a pencil line to show where the solvent got to. The highest level of the solvent on the paper at any time is called the *solvent front*.
6. Leave the paper to dry so that all the solvent evaporates.

For the solvent you can use water or a non-aqueous solvent (a solvent other than water). Which solvent you use depends on what substances are present in the mixture. A suitable solvent is usually found by experimenting with different ones.

The dyes that make up the mixture will be different in two important ways:

- the affinity they have for the paper (how well they 'stick' to the paper)
- how soluble they are in the solvent which moves up the paper.

In Figure 2.11 spot C has hardly moved. Either it was not very soluble in the solvent or it has a very high affinity for the paper (or both). On the other hand, spot A has moved almost as far as the solvent. It must be very soluble in the solvent and not have much affinity for the paper. The pattern you get is called a **chromatogram**.

KEY POINT

If the dye does not move from the pencil line during an experiment, then the dye is not at all soluble in the solvent you are using. In this case, you need to find a different solvent. If the dye moves up the paper with the solvent front, the dye is too soluble in that solvent and, again, you have to try a different solvent.

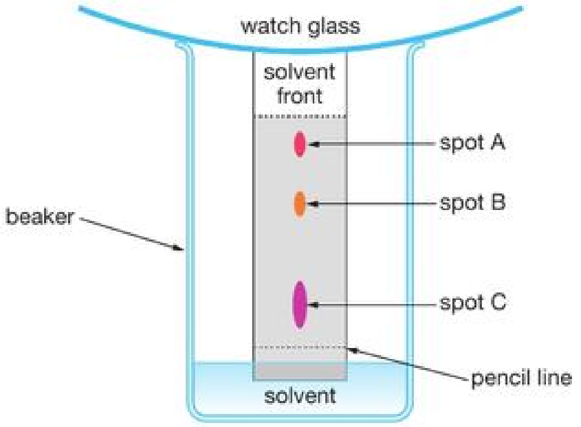


Figure 2.11 Paper chromatography

In this example, the mixture must have contained a minimum of three different dyes. We say a *minimum* of three dyes because there could be more – it is possible that one of the spots is made up of two coloured dyes that by concidence moved the same distance. You could only confirm this by doing the experiment again with a different solvent.

Figure 2.12 A paper chromatography experiment

USING PAPER CHROMATOGRAPHY IN ANALYSIS

You can use paper chromatography to identify the particular dyes in a mixture. If you think that your mixture (m) could contain dyes d1, d2, d3 and d4, you can carry out an experiment to determine this.

A pencil line is drawn on a larger sheet of paper and pencil marks are drawn along the line to show the original positions of the various dyes placed on the line (see Figure 2.13). One spot is your unknown mixture; the others are single, known dyes. The chromatogram is then allowed to develop as before.

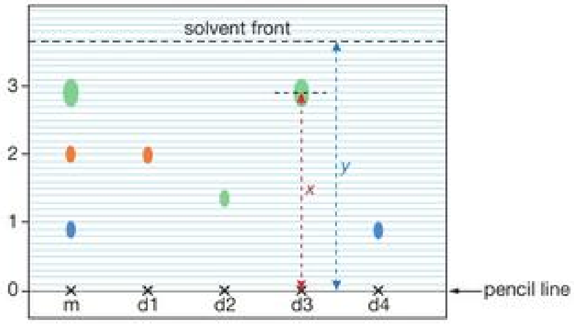


Figure 2.13 Paper chromatography can be used to analyse a mixture. Lines will not be present on your paper, but they have been added here to help you measure the distances.

The mixture (m) has spots corresponding to dyes d1, d3 and d4. They have the same colour as spots in the mixture, and have travelled the same distance on the paper. Although dye d2 is the same colour as one of the spots in the mixture, it has travelled a different distance and so must be a different compound.

Instead of just saying the spots move different distances we can use the R_f value to describe how far the spots move. R_f stands for **retardation factor**. Each time we do a chromatography experiment the solvent (and therefore the spots) will move different distances along the paper. This means we can't just report the distance moved by a particular spot so we have to work out a ratio instead.

$$R_f = \frac{\text{distance moved by a spot (from the pencil line)}}{\text{distance moved by the solvent front (from the pencil line)}}$$

In Figure 2.13 $R_f = \frac{x}{y}$.

So in Figure 2.13 the R_f value for dye d3 is:

$$R_f = \frac{2.9\,\text{cm}}{3.6\,\text{cm}} = 0.81$$

HINT

Measure to the centre of the spot.

The R_f values of the dyes in mixture m are:

blue spot: $R_f = \frac{0.9}{3.6} = 0.25$

orange spot: $R_f = \frac{2.0}{3.6} = 0.56$

green spot: $R_f = \frac{2.9}{3.6} = 0.81$

The R_f values of dyes d1 to d4 are:

d1: $R_f = 0.56$

d2: $R_f = 0.36$

d3: $R_f = 0.81$

d4: $R_f = 0.25$

Because the spots in mixture m have the same R_f values as d1, d3 and d4, we can conclude that the mixture contains these dyes.

An R_f value must be between 0 and 1. If you get a number bigger than 1 you have probably divided the numbers the wrong way round. An R_f value has no units.

You have to be careful when using R_f values as they depend on the solvent used and on the type of paper. There was no problem in the experiment described above because the mixture and the individual dyes were all put on the same piece of paper. However, if the mixture was put on one piece of chromatography paper and the individual dyes on a separate piece, you can still compare R_f values as long as you use the same type of paper and the same solvent.

CHAPTER QUESTIONS

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

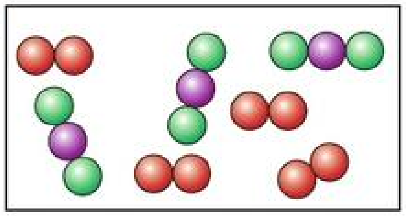
1 Classify each of the following substances as an element, compound or mixture:

- sea water
- magnesium oxide
- calcium
- hydrogen
- copper(II) sulfate
- mud
- honey
- blood
- potassium iodide solution

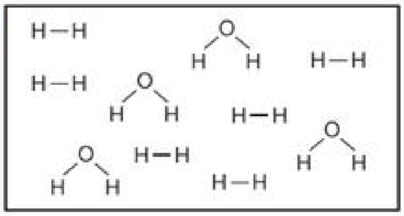
SKILLS ANALYSIS

2 Look at the diagrams below and classify each one as an element, compound or mixture.

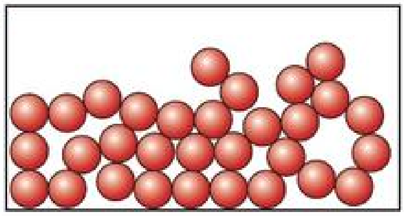
a



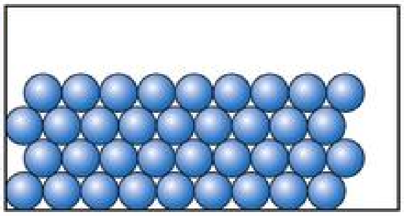
b



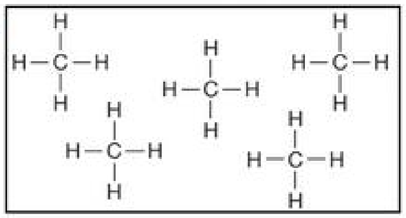
c



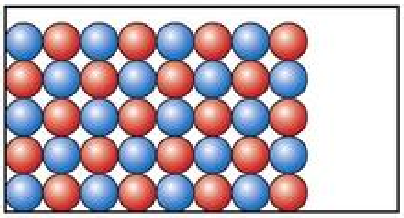
d



e



f



SKILLS REASONING, PROBLEM SOLVING

3 A teacher has found two white powders on a desk in the chemistry laboratory. She wants to test to see if they are pure substances, so she measures the melting points. Substance X melts at 122 °C and substance Y melts between 87 and 93 °C. Explain which one is the pure substance.

SKILLS DECISION MAKING

4 State which separation method you would use to carry out the following separations:

a Potassium iodide from a potassium iodide solution.

b Water from a potassium iodide solution.

c Ethanol from a mixture of ethanol and water.

d Red dye from a mixture of red and blue dyes.

e Calcium carbonate (insoluble in water) from a mixture of calcium carbonate and water.

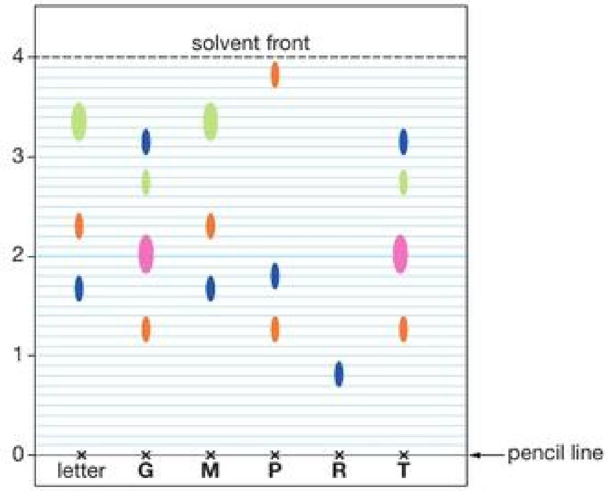
SKILLS CREATIVITY, DECISION MAKING

5 Suppose you had a valuable collection of small diamonds, which you kept safe from thieves by mixing them with white sugar crystals. You store the mixture in a jar labelled 'sugar'. Now you want to sell the diamonds. Describe how you would separate all the diamonds from the sugar.

SKILLS ANALYSIS

5

6 In order to identify the writer of an anonymous letter, a sample of ink from the letter was dissolved in a solvent and then placed on some chromatography paper. Spots of ink from the pens of five possible writers, **G**, **M**, **P**, **R** and **T**, were placed next to the sample on the chromatography paper. The final chromatogram looked like this:



a Which of the five writers is using ink that matches the sample from the letter?

b Which of the writers is using a pen that contains ink made from a single dye?

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

6

c What is the R_f value of the blue dye in suspect **P**'s pen?

SKILLS ANALYSIS

5

d Which two of the five writers are using pens containing the same ink?

6

e Whose pen contained the dye that was most soluble in the solvent?

3 ATOMIC STRUCTURE

This chapter explores the nature of atoms and how they differ from element to element. The 118 elements are the building blocks from which everything is made, from a simple substance, such as carbon, to a more complex one, such as DNA.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Know what is meant by the terms atom and molecule
- Know the structure of an atom in terms of the positions, relative masses and relative charges of sub-atomic particles
- Know what is meant by the terms atomic number, mass number, isotopes and relative atomic mass (A_r)
- Be able to calculate the relative atomic mass of an element (A_r) from isotopic abundances

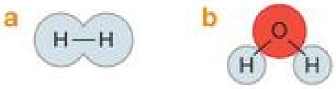
Copper is an element. If you tried to cut it up into smaller and smaller pieces, the final result would be the smallest possible piece of copper. At that stage, you would have an individual copper atom. You can, of course, split that atom into smaller pieces (protons, neutrons and electrons), but you would no longer have copper. Therefore, an **atom** is the smallest piece of an element that can still be recognised as that element.

▲ Figure 3.1 New atoms are produced in stars . . .

▲ Figure 3.2 . . . or in nuclear processes such as nuclear bombs, nuclear reactors or radioactive decay.

ATOMS AND MOLECULES

Atoms can be joined together to make molecules. A **molecule** consists of two or more atoms chemically bonded (by covalent bonds). The atoms that make up a molecule can be from the same elements or different elements. A hydrogen (H_2) molecule (Figure 3.3a) consists of 2 hydrogen atoms chemically bonded together. A water (H_2O) molecule (Figure 3.3b) consists of 2 hydrogen atoms and an oxygen atom chemically bonded.



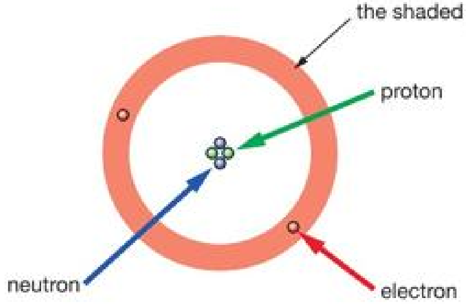
▲ Figure 3.3 (a) A H_2 molecule and (b) a H_2O molecule. The lines between the atoms represent chemical bonds.

KEY POINT

You may have come across diagrams of the atom in which the electrons are drawn orbiting the nucleus rather like planets around the sun. This can be misleading.
Electrons are constantly moving in the atom and it is impossible to know exactly where they are at any moment in time. You can only identify that they have a particular energy and that they are likely to be found in a certain region of space at some particular distance from the nucleus. Electrons with different energies are found at different distances from the nucleus.

THE STRUCTURE OF THE ATOM

Atoms are made of protons, neutrons and electrons. These particles are sometimes called *sub-atomic particles* because they are smaller than an atom.



The **electrons** are found at large distances (compared to the size of the nucleus) from the nucleus. In this case, they are found most of the time somewhere in the shaded pink area.

▲ Figure 3.4 The structure of a helium atom

The nucleus of the atom contains protons and neutrons, and is shown highly magnified in Figure 3.4. In reality, if you scale up a helium atom to the size of a sports hall the nucleus would be no more than the size of a grain of sand.

The relative masses and charges of protons, neutrons and electrons are shown in Table 3.1.

HINT

$\frac{1}{1836}$ is approximately 0.0005.

Table 3.1 The properties of protons, neutrons and electrons

Particle	Relative mass	Relative charge
proton	1	+1
neutron	1	0
electron	1/1836	–1

Virtually all the mass of the atom is concentrated in the nucleus because electrons have a much smaller mass than protons and neutrons.

The masses and charges are measured relative to each other because the actual values are incredibly small. For example, it would take about 600 000 000 000 000 000 000 000 (6×10^{23}) protons to weigh 1 g.

KEY POINT

The atomic number defines an element and is unique to that element. We can identify an element by its atomic number instead of its name. We could talk about a wristwatch made from the element with atomic number 79 instead of talking about 'a gold wristwatch', or say that the element with atomic number 17 is poisonous instead of saying 'chlorine is poisonous'. However, these are more complicated ways of describing things!

ATOMIC NUMBER AND MASS NUMBER

The number of protons in an atom's nucleus is called its **atomic number** or **proton number**. Each of the 118 different elements has a different number of protons. For example, if an atom has 8 protons it must be an oxygen atom:

atomic number = number of protons

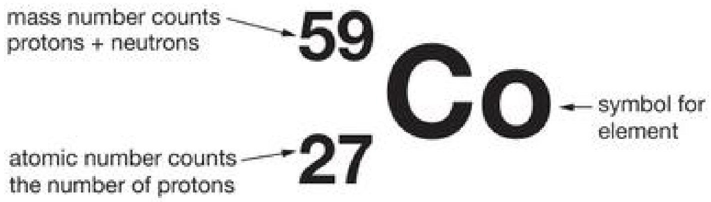
The **mass number** (sometimes known as the **nucleon number**) counts the total number of protons and neutrons in the nucleus of the atom:

mass number = number of protons + number of neutrons

HINT

Be careful! When you are writing symbols with two letters, the first is a capital letter and the second must be lower case. If you write CO you are talking about carbon monoxide, not cobalt.

For any particular atom, this information can be shown as, for example:


mass number counts protons + neutrons
59
Co
symbol for element
atomic number counts the number of protons
27

This particular atom of cobalt contains 27 protons. To make the total number of protons and neutrons up to 59, there must also be 32 neutrons.

You can see from this that:

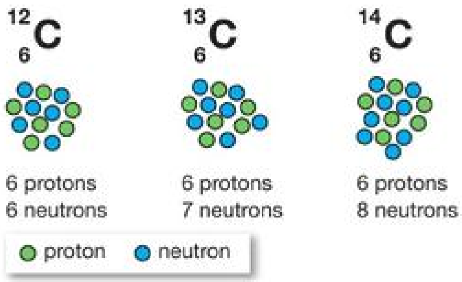
number of neutrons = mass number – atomic number

ISOTOPES

The number of neutrons in an atom can vary slightly. For example, there are three kinds of carbon atom called carbon-12, carbon-13 and carbon-14. They all have the same number of protons (because all carbon atoms have 6 protons, its atomic number), but the number of neutrons varies. These different atoms of carbon are called **isotopes**.

Isotopes are atoms (of the same element) which have the same atomic number but different mass numbers. They have the same number of protons but different numbers of neutrons.

The fact that they have varying numbers of neutrons makes no difference to their chemical reactions. The chemical properties (how something reacts) are controlled by the number and arrangement of the electrons, and that is identical for all three isotopes.



▲ Figure 3.5 The nuclei of the three isotopes of carbon

RELATIVE ATOMIC MASS

You might have seen the following in a Periodic Table:

35.5
Cl
chlorine
17

Chlorine appears to have a mass number of 35.5. If you calculate the number of neutrons for chlorine you obtain:

number of neutrons = 35.5 – 17 = 18.5

It is not possible to have half a neutron and so there must be something wrong with this. The number 35.5 is not actually the mass number for chlorine but rather the **relative atomic mass** (A_r). Chlorine consists of two isotopes, ^{35}Cl and ^{37}Cl, and a naturally occurring sample contains a mixture of these.

KEY POINT

The number above each symbol in the International GCSE Periodic Table papers is a relative atomic mass and not a mass number. However, in most cases the relative atomic mass stated is the same as the mass number of the most common isotope. The only exceptions to this are chlorine (35.5) and copper (63.5).

KEY POINT

This type of average is called a **weighted average** or weighted mean.

Relative atomic mass is the average mass of an atom, taking into account the amount of each isotope present in a naturally occurring sample of an element. It is explained in more detail in Chapter 5.

You can probably see that a naturally occurring sample of chlorine must contain more of the ^{35}Cl isotope than the ^{37}Cl isotope. This is because the relative atomic mass is closer to 35 than to 37.

We can calculate the relative atomic mass of an element by knowing how much of each isotope is present in a sample (the isotopic abundances) of that element, and then working out the average mass of an atom. This is done in exactly the same way as you would calculate a weighted average in maths. It can be understood more easily by looking at a worked example.

EXAMPLE 1

A naturally occurring sample of the element boron contains 20% ^{10}B and 80% ^{11}B. Calculate the relative atomic mass.

If we imagine there are 100 atoms we can work out that 20% of them, that is 20, will have mass 10 and 80 will have mass 11.

The total mass of the 20 atoms with mass 10 is 20×10.

The total mass of the 80 atoms with mass 11 is 80×11.

The total mass of all the atoms in the sample is $20 \times 10 + 80 \times 11$.

There are 100 atoms so we can work out the average by dividing the total mass by the total number of atoms (100):

$$\text{relative atomic mass} = \frac{20 \times 10 + 80 \times 11}{100} = 10.8$$

Therefore, the relative atomic mass of boron is 10.8.

Even if there are three or four different isotopes, you still do the calculation in the same way: calculate the total mass of 100 atoms, then divide the answer by 100.

THE ELECTRONS

COUNTING THE NUMBER OF ELECTRONS IN AN ATOM

Atoms are electrically neutral (they have no overall charge). The charge on a proton (+1) is equal but opposite to the charge on an electron (–1), and therefore in an atom:

number of electrons = number of protons

So, if an oxygen atom (atomic number = 8) has 8 protons, it must also have 8 electrons; if a chlorine atom (atomic number = 17) has 17 protons, it must also have 17 electrons.

HINT

Remember that the number of protons is the same as the atomic number of the element.

You will see that the key feature in this is knowing the atomic number. You can find the atomic number from the Periodic Table.

The number of protons in an atom is equal to the number of electrons. However, the atomic number is defined in terms of the number of protons because the number of electrons can change in chemical reactions, for example when atoms form ions (see Chapter 7).

THE PERIODIC TABLE

Chapter 4 deals in detail with what you need to know about the Periodic Table for International GCSE purposes.

Atoms are arranged in the Periodic Table in order of increasing atomic number. You will find a full version of the Periodic Table in Appendix A on page 320. Most Periodic Tables have two numbers against each symbol; be careful to choose the right one. The atomic number will always be the smaller number. The other number will either be the mass number of the most common isotope of the element or the relative atomic mass of the element. The Periodic Table will clarify this.

You can use a Periodic Table to find out the number of protons, neutrons and electrons in an atom. Remember:

- the number of protons in an atom is equal to the atomic number
- the number of electrons in an atom is equal to the number of protons
- the number of neutrons in an atom = mass number – atomic number.

EXAMPLE 2

The symbol for uranium is given in a Periodic Table as:

238
U
Uranium
92

Calculate the number of protons, neutrons and electrons in an atom of uranium.

The atomic number is the smaller number, so the atomic number of uranium is 92. The atomic number tells us the number of protons, therefore a uranium atom contains 92 protons.

The number of protons is equal to the number of electrons, therefore a uranium atom contains 92 electrons.

The number of neutrons = mass number – atomic number.

The number of neutrons = 238 – 92 = 146.

CHAPTER QUESTIONS

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

You will need to use the Periodic Table in Appendix A on page 320.

1 Atoms contain three types of particle: proton, neutron and electron.
  a State where the protons and neutrons are in an atom.
  b State which type of particle in the atom orbits the nucleus.
  c State which one of the particles has a positive charge.
  d State which two particles have approximately the same mass.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

2 Fluorine atoms have a mass number of 19.

a Use the Periodic Table to find the atomic number of fluorine.

b Explain what *mass number* means.

c State the number of protons, neutrons and electrons in a fluorine atom.

SKILLS REASONING

d Explain why the number of protons in an atom must always equal the number of electrons.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

3 Work out the numbers of protons, neutrons and electrons in each of the following atoms:

a ${}^{56}_{26}\mathrm{Fe}$ b ${}^{93}_{41}\mathrm{Nb}$ c ${}^{235}_{92}\mathrm{U}$

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

4 Chlorine has two isotopes, chlorine-35 and chlorine-37.

a Explain what *isotopes* are.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

b State the numbers of protons, neutrons and electrons in the two isotopes.

5 Lithium has two naturally occurring isotopes, ${}^{6}\mathrm{Li}$ (abundance 7%) and ${}^{7}\mathrm{Li}$ (abundance 93%). Calculate the relative atomic mass of lithium, giving your answer to 2 decimal places.

6 Magnesium has three naturally occurring stable isotopes, ${}^{24}\mathrm{Mg}$ (abundance 78.99%), ${}^{25}\mathrm{Mg}$ (abundance 10.00%) and ${}^{26}\mathrm{Mg}$ (abundance 11.01%). Calculate the relative atomic mass of magnesium, giving your answer to 2 decimal places.

7 Lead has four naturally occurring stable isotopes. Calculate the relative atomic mass of lead given the data in the table.

Mass number	Natural abundance/%
204	1.4
206	24.1
207	22.1
208	52.4

8 Iridium has two naturally occurring isotopes, ${}^{191}\mathrm{Ir}$ and ${}^{193}\mathrm{Ir}$.

a State the number of protons, neutrons and electrons in an ${}^{191}\mathrm{Ir}$ atom.

SKILLS REASONING

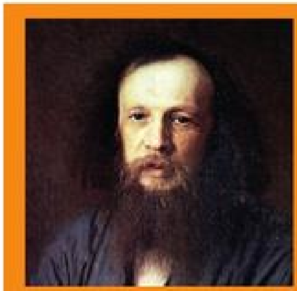
b Explain the difference between the two isotopes.

c The relative atomic mass of iridium is 192.22. Explain whether a naturally occurring sample of iridium contains more ${}^{191}\mathrm{Ir}$ or ${}^{193}\mathrm{Ir}$.

9 Use the Periodic Table to explain whether the following statement is true or false.

Considering only the most common isotope of each element, there is only one element that has more protons than neutrons.

4 THE PERIODIC TABLE



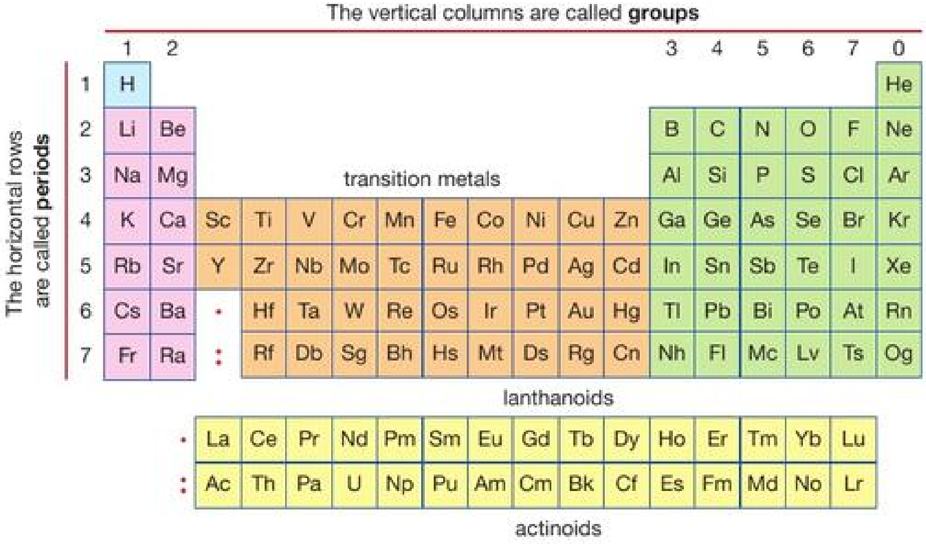
The Periodic Table shows all the elements in the universe and is one of the most important tools that a chemist has. The arrangement of the elements allows us to understand trends in properties and make predictions. The modern Periodic Table was first presented in 1869 by a famous Russian chemist, Dmitri Mendeleev (left). This chapter explores some of the features of the Periodic Table.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Understand how elements are arranged in the Periodic Table:
  - in order of atomic number
  - in groups and periods
- Understand how to deduce the electronic configurations of the first 20 elements from their positions in the Periodic Table
- Understand how to use electrical conductivity and the acid–base character of oxides to classify elements as metals or non-metals
- Identify an element as a metal or a non-metal according to its position in the Periodic Table
- Understand how the electronic configuration of a main group element is related to its position in the Periodic Table
- Understand why elements in the same group of the Periodic Table have similar chemical properties
- Understand why the noble gases (Group 0) do not readily react

THE PERIODIC TABLE

The search for patterns in chemistry during the 19th century resulted in the modern Periodic Table. *The elements are arranged in order of atomic number* – the number of protons in the nuclei of the atoms.


The vertical columns are called **groups**
The horizontal rows are called **periods**
transition metals
lanthanoids
actinoids

	1	2											3	4	5	6	7	0
1	H																	He
2	Li	Be											B	C	N	O	F	Ne
3	Na	Mg											Al	Si	P	S	Cl	Ar
4	K	Ca	Sc	Ti	V	Cr	Mn	Fe	Co	Ni	Cu	Zn	Ga	Ge	As	Se	Br	Kr
5	Rb	Sr	Y	Zr	Nb	Mo	Tc	Ru	Rh	Pd	Ag	Cd	In	Sn	Sb	Te	I	Xe
6	Cs	Ba	·	Hf	Ta	W	Re	Os	Ir	Pt	Au	Hg	Tl	Pb	Bi	Po	At	Rn
7	Fr	Ra	:	Rf	Db	Sg	Bh	Hs	Mt	Ds	Rg	Cn	Nh	Fl	Mc	Lv	Ts	Og

·	La	Ce	Pr	Nd	Pm	Sm	Eu	Gd	Tb	Dy	Ho	Er	Tm	Yb	Lu
:	Ac	Th	Pa	U	Np	Pu	Am	Cm	Bk	Cf	Es	Fm	Md	No	Lr

▲ Figure 4.1 The Periodic Table

DID YOU KNOW?

You will sometimes see Group 0 labelled as Group 8. In more advanced Periodic Tables the groups are numbered from 1 to 18, including the transition metals.

REMINDER

For a larger version of the Periodic Table, including atomic numbers and other information, see Appendix A.

DID YOU KNOW?

Most International GCSE Periodic Tables stop at the end of the actinoid series, even though more elements continue to be discovered. Some tables completely omit the lanthanoids and actinoids because the emphasis in International GCSE is placed on a general understanding, which can easily be achieved with the main group and transition elements. Although sometimes called the rare earth metals, the lanthanoids are actually not that rare and are quite important in modern technology. Most of the actinoids are unstable and undergo radioactive decay.

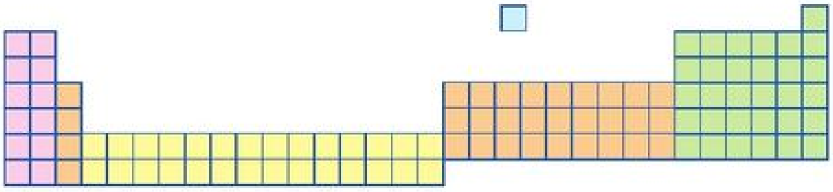
EXTENSION WORK

The third shell can actually hold up to 18 electrons. To explain why 2 electrons go into the fourth shell before the third shell is completely filled requires a more advanced understanding of electronic configurations. Each shell is actually made up of a series of subshells and some of these subshells overlap from one shell to another. The 4s subshell (which can hold 2 electrons) is lower in energy than the 3d subshell (which can hold 10 electrons) and so 2 electrons go into the fourth shell before the next 10 go into the third shell.

The vertical columns in the Periodic Table are called **groups**. The first seven groups are numbered from 1 to 7 and the final group is numbered 0. The elements in orange in Figure 4.1 are called the transition metals or transition elements. At this level, they are not usually included in the numbering of the groups. Some of the groups have names, e.g. Group 1 is the *alkali metals*, Group 7 is the *halogens* and Group 0 is the *noble gases*.

The horizontal rows in the Periodic Table are called **periods**. It is important to remember that hydrogen and helium make up Period 1.

The lanthanoids and actinoids are usually dropped out of their proper places and written separately at the bottom of the Periodic Table. There is a good reason for this. If you put them where they should be (as in Figure 4.2), everything has to be drawn slightly smaller to fit on the page. That makes it more difficult to read.



▲ Figure 4.2 The real shape of the Periodic Table

THE PERIODIC TABLE AND THE NUMBER OF PROTONS, NEUTRONS AND ELECTRONS

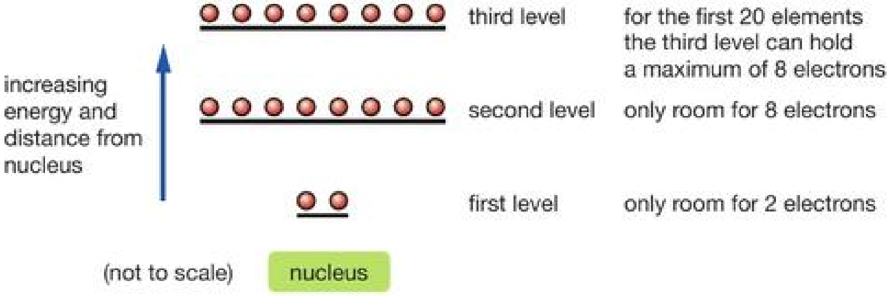
Most Periodic Tables have two numbers against each symbol. The atomic number will always be the smaller number. The other number will either be the mass number of the most common isotope of the element or the relative atomic mass of the element. The Periodic Table will tell you which.

You can use a Periodic Table to work out the number of protons, neutrons and electrons there are in atoms. Remember:

- the number of protons in an atom is equal to the atomic number
- the number of electrons in an atom is equal to the number of protons
- the number of neutrons in an atom = mass number – atomic number.

THE ARRANGEMENT OF THE ELECTRONS IN AN ATOM

The electrons move around the nucleus in a series of levels called **energy levels** or **shells**. Each energy level (shell) can only hold a certain number of electrons. Lower energy levels are always filled before higher ones. The lowest energy level is the closest one to the nucleus.


third level
for the first 20 elements the third level can hold a maximum of 8 electrons
increasing energy and distance from nucleus
second level
only room for 8 electrons
first level
only room for 2 electrons
(not to scale)
nucleus

▲ Figure 4.3 The different energy levels for electrons in an atom showing the maximum number of electrons that each energy level (shell) can hold.

HOW TO WORK OUT THE ARRANGEMENT OF ELECTRONS IN AN ATOM

The arrangement of electrons in an atom is called its **electronic configuration**.

We will use chlorine as an example.

Look up the atomic number in the Periodic Table. (Make sure that you don't use the wrong number if you have a choice. The atomic number will always be the smaller one.)

The Periodic Table tells you that chlorine's atomic number is 17.

This tells you the number of protons. The number of electrons is equal to the number of protons.

There are 17 protons and so 17 electrons in a neutral chlorine atom.

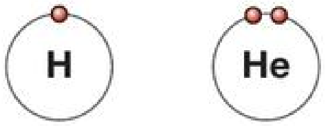
Arrange the electrons in shells (energy levels), always completing an inner shell (lower energy level) before you go to an outer one. Remember that the first shell (lowest energy level) can take up to 2 electrons, the second one can take up to 8, and the third one also takes up to 8.

For chlorine the electrons will be arranged as follows: 2 in the first shell, 8 in the second shell and 7 in the third shell. This is written as 2, 8, 7. When you have finished, always check to make sure that the electrons add up to the right number, in this case 17.

DRAWING DIAGRAMS OF ELECTRONIC CONFIGURATIONS

When we draw a diagram of an atom we usually draw circles to represent the shells (energy levels); dots or crosses are then drawn on the circles to represent the electrons. You can choose to draw dots or crosses.

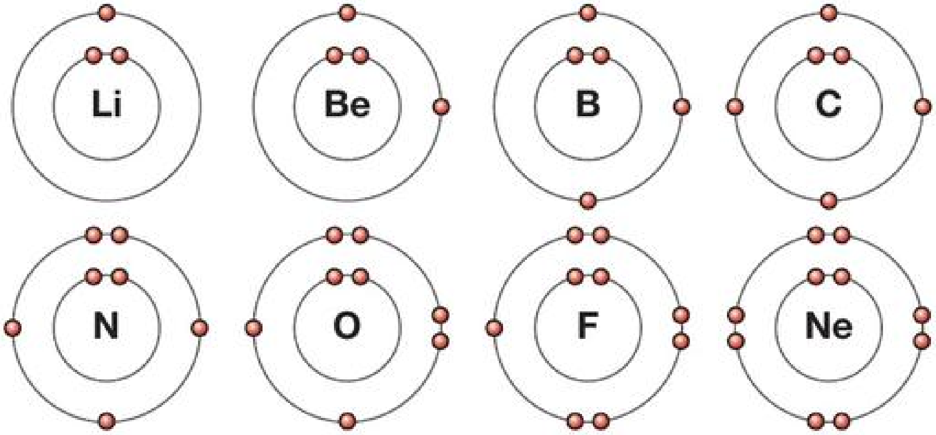
Hydrogen has 1 electron and helium has 2 in the first shell (lowest energy level).



▲ Figure 4.4 Electronic arrangements of hydrogen and helium

The helium electrons are sometimes shown as a pair (as here), and sometimes as two separate electrons on opposite sides of the circle. Either form is acceptable.

The next 8 atoms are drawn like this:



▲ Figure 4.5 The electronic arrangements of the elements in Period 2

It does not matter at this level whether you draw the electrons singly or in pairs.

KEY POINT

Drawing circles like this does not imply that the electrons are orbiting the nucleus along the circles.
The circles represent energy levels. The further away the level is from the nucleus, the higher its energy.
It is impossible to work out exactly how an electron is moving in that energy level.

HINT

The terms 'shell' and 'energy level' are used quite interchangeably by chemists. To make things easier, we will just use one term, shell, from now on. If, however, you prefer the term energy level, that is absolutely fine and both terms will be accepted in the examination.

The atoms in the Periodic Table from sodium to argon fill the third shell in exactly the same way, and potassium and calcium start to fill the fourth shell.

Potassium and calcium will look like this:

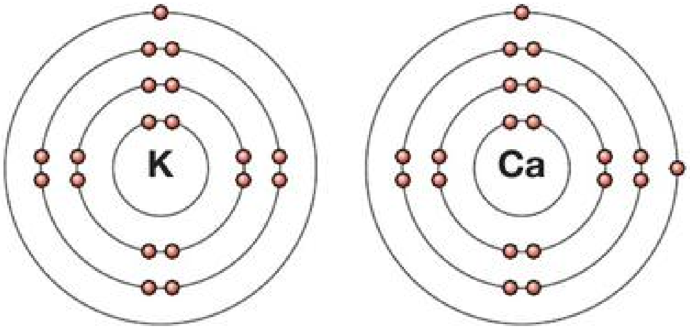
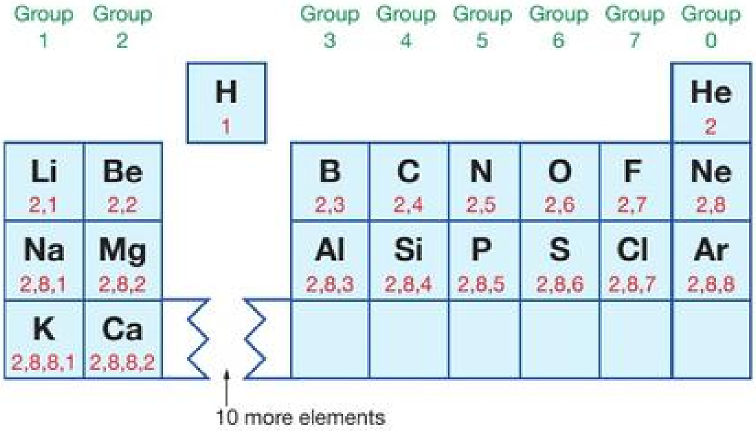


Figure 4.6 Electronic arrangements of potassium and calcium

ELECTRONIC CONFIGURATIONS AND THE PERIODIC TABLE

The electronic configurations of the first 20 elements in the Periodic Table are shown in Figure 4.7.



Group 1	Group 2		Group 3	Group 4	Group 5	Group 6	Group 7	Group 0
		H 1						**He** 2
Li 2,1	**Be** 2,2		**B** 2,3	**C** 2,4	**N** 2,5	**O** 2,6	**F** 2,7	**Ne** 2,8
Na 2,8,1	**Mg** 2,8,2		**Al** 2,8,3	**Si** 2,8,4	**P** 2,8,5	**S** 2,8,6	**Cl** 2,8,7	**Ar** 2,8,8
K 2,8,8,1	**Ca** 2,8,8,2	10 more elements						

Figure 4.7 The electronic configurations of the first 20 elements in the Periodic Table

Two important facts:

- ***Elements in the same group in the Periodic Table have the same number of electrons in their outer shell.***
- ***The number of electrons in the outer shell is the same as the group number for Groups 1 to 7.***

So if you know that barium is in Group 2, you know it has 2 electrons in its outer shell, the same as all the other elements in Group 2. Iodine (Group 7) has 7 electrons in its outer shell. Lead (Group 4) has 4 electrons in its outer shell. Working out what is in their inner shells is much more difficult – the simple patterns we have described don't work beyond calcium.

The period number gives the number of occupied shells or the highest occupied shell.

So, calcium (electronic configuration = 2, 8, 8, 2) is in Period 4 and has four shells occupied; the outermost electron is in the fourth shell. Iodine is in Period 5 and has five occupied shells, and because it is also in Group 7 we can deduce that it has 7 electrons in the fifth shell.

ELEMENTS IN THE SAME GROUP IN THE PERIODIC TABLE HAVE SIMILAR CHEMICAL PROPERTIES

Groups in the Periodic Table contain elements with similar chemical properties – they react in the same way.

For example:

- all the elements in Group 1 react vigorously with water to form hydrogen and hydroxides with similar formulae: LiOH (lithium hydroxide), NaOH (sodium hydroxide), KOH (potassium hydroxide)
- all the elements in Group 7 react with hydrogen to form compounds with similar formulae: HF (hydrogen fluoride), HCl (hydrogen chloride), HBr (hydrogen bromide)
- all the elements in Group 2 form chlorides with similar formulae: $MgCl_2$, $CaCl_2$.

The reactions of atoms depend on how many electrons there are in their outer shell. These are the electrons which normally get involved when elements bond to other elements. Elements in the same group (apart from helium in Group 0) have the same number of electrons in their outer shell, therefore they react in similar ways.

THE NOBLE GASES

The Group 0 elements are known as the **noble gases** because they are almost completely unreactive, in fact the two at the top of the group, helium and neon, don't react with anything. The elements in Group 0 have 8 electrons in their outer shell (apart from helium, which has 2).

The lack of reactivity of the elements in Group 0 is associated with their electronic configurations. The noble gases are unreactive because *the outer shell is full, and so there is no tendency to lose, gain or share electrons in a chemical reaction*. You will learn more about how elements form compounds in Chapters 7 and 8.

He
Ne
Ar
Kr
Xe
Rn

▲ Figure 4.8 The noble gases

KEY POINT

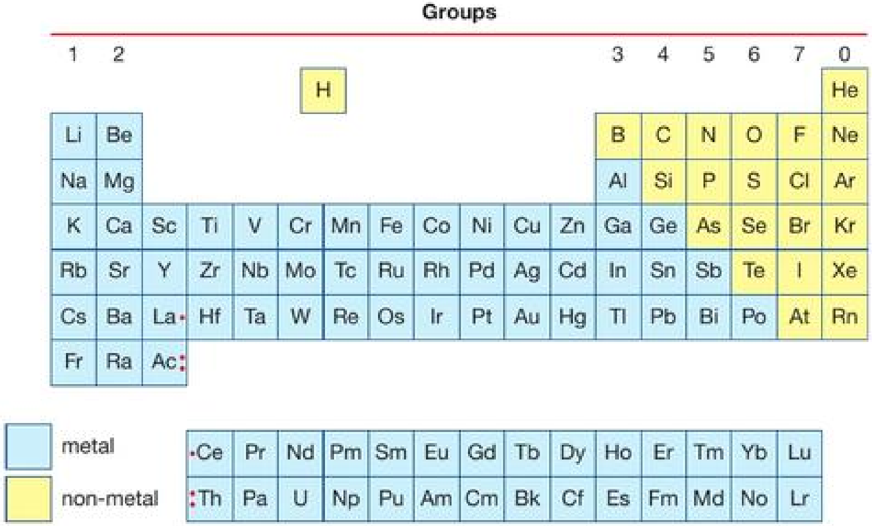
The reason the noble gas group is usually called Group 0 and not Group 8 (which would seem more sensible because most of the elements have 8 electrons in their outer shell) is because when they were first discovered it was believed that noble gases did not combine with anything, they had zero combining power (valency). This is the only group where the group number does not tell you the number of electrons in the outer shell! The key point is that the noble gases (except helium) have 8 electrons in their outer shell. You will see in Chapters 7 and 8 that atoms tend to form compounds by losing/gaining or sharing electrons so that they have 8 electrons in their outer shell. The noble gases already have 8 electrons in their outer shell so they do not do that.

EXTENSION WORK

In reality, the outer shells of argon, krypton, xenon and radon are not full; in fact only helium and neon have full outer shells. The third shell can actually hold up to 18 electrons and the fourth up to 32 electrons.

METALS AND NON-METALS IN THE PERIODIC TABLE

The metals are on the left-hand side of the Periodic Table and the non-metals are on the right-hand side. Although the division into metals and non-metals is shown clearly in Figure 4.9, in practice there is a lot of uncertainty on the dividing line. For example, arsenic (As) has properties of both metals and non-metals.


Groups
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 0
H He
Li Be B C N O F Ne
Na Mg Al Si P S Cl Ar
K Ca Sc Ti V Cr Mn Fe Co Ni Cu Zn Ga Ge As Se Br Kr
Rb Sr Y Zr Nb Mo Tc Ru Rh Pd Ag Cd In Sn Sb Te I Xe
Cs Ba La Hf Ta W Re Os Ir Pt Au Hg Tl Pb Bi Po At Rn
Fr Ra Ac
Ce Pr Nd Pm Sm Eu Gd Tb Dy Ho Er Tm Yb Lu
Th Pa U Np Pu Am Cm Bk Cf Es Fm Md No Lr
metal
non-metal

▲ Figure 4.9 Metals and non-metals

KEY POINT

You may have noticed by now that hydrogen does not really fit into the Periodic Table properly. Although it has 1 electron in its outer shell, it is not in Group 1 because it does not have similar properties to the other elements in Group 1: it is not a metal and does not have similar chemical properties to the alkali metals.

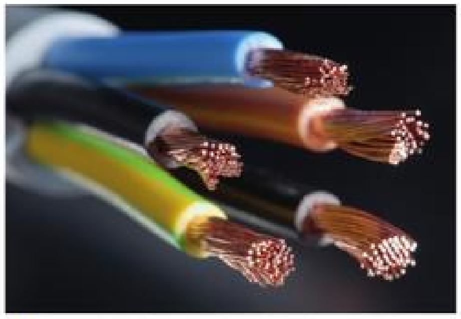
EXTENSION WORK

If you are interested you could try an internet search for 'metallic hydrogen'.

DIFFERENCES BETWEEN THE PROPERTIES OF METALS AND NON-METALS

There are many differences between the properties of metals and non-metals. Here, we will use two main ones to classify them: electrical conductivity and the acid–base character of their oxides.

Metals conduct electricity and non-metals do not generally conduct electricity. The reason that metals conduct electricity will be explained in Chapter 9 (it is due to the presence of delocalised electrons that are free to move). You may be familiar with the use of metals such as copper in electrical wires.



▲ Figure 4.10 Copper, like all other metals, conducts electricity.

Non-metals do not conduct electricity (because there are no electrons that are free to move or mobile ions) but there are a few exceptions, such as graphite (a form of carbon) and silicon.

Metals generally form basic oxides. A basic oxide is one which reacts with acids to form salts. For example, copper forms copper(II) oxide (CuO). This reacts, for example, with sulfuric acid to form the salt copper(II) sulfate:

$$\mathrm{CuO} + \mathrm{H_2SO_4} \rightarrow \mathrm{CuSO_4} + \mathrm{H_2O}$$
copper(II) oxide + sulfuric acid → copper(II) sulfate + water

KEY POINT

If a basic oxide is soluble in water it will dissolve to form an alkali. For example, sodium oxide reacts with water to form sodium hydroxide solution, an alkali. If an acidic oxide is soluble in water it will dissolve to form an acidic solution. For example, sulfur(IV) oxide reacts with water to form sulfurous acid.

The reactions between bases and acids will be discussed in more detail in Chapter 17.

Non-metals generally form acidic oxides. You may be familiar, for example, with sulfur(IV) oxide (SO_2) being one of the gases responsible for acid rain. Acidic oxides react with bases/alkalis to form salts. For example, carbon dioxide, an acidic oxide, reacts with sodium hydroxide, an alkali:

$$\mathrm{CO_2} + 2\mathrm{NaOH} \rightarrow \mathrm{Na_2CO_3} + \mathrm{H_2O}$$
carbon dioxide + sodium hydroxide → sodium carbonate + water

Some other properties you might also associate with metals and non-metals are included in the list on the next page.

KEY POINT

There are some exceptions to the rules. For example, some metals form amphoteric oxides (e.g. Al_2O_3), which react with acids and bases, and some non-metal oxides (e.g. CO) are neutral.

▲ Figure 4.11 Mercury has most of the properties of a metal (high density, shiny, conducts electricity, forms positive ions); the exception is that it is a liquid at room temperature.

▲ Figure 4.12 Sulfur crystals are shiny, but you wouldn't mistake them for a metal.

Metals:

- tend to be solids with high melting and boiling points, and with relatively high densities (but as with several of the properties in this list, there are exceptions, for example mercury is a liquid)
- are shiny (have a metallic lustre) when they are polished or freshly cut
- are **malleable** (can be hammered into shape)
- are **ductile** (can be drawn into wires)
- are good conductors of electricity and heat
- form ionic compounds (see Chapter 7)
- form positive ions in their compounds (see Chapter 7).

Non-metals:

- tend to have low melting and boiling points (there are some exceptions, e.g. carbon and silicon)
- tend to be brittle when they are solids
- don't have the same type of shine as metals
- don't usually conduct electricity; carbon (in the form of graphite) and silicon are again exceptions
- are poor conductors of heat (diamond is an exception; it is the best conductor of heat of all the elements)
- form both ionic and covalent compounds (see Chapters 7 and 8)
- tend to form negative ions in ionic compounds (see Chapter 7).

CHAPTER QUESTIONS

You will need to use the Periodic Table in Appendix A on page 320.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 6

1 Answer the questions that follow using only the elements in this list:

caesium, chlorine, molybdenum, neon, nickel, nitrogen, strontium, tin.

a State the name of an element which is:

i in Group 2

ii in the same period as silicon

iii in the same group as phosphorus

iv in Period 6

v a noble gas

b Divide the list of elements at the beginning of the question into two groups, metals and non-metals.

SKILLS INTERPRETATION 8

2 Draw diagrams to show the arrangement of the electrons in:

a sodium

b silicon

c sulfur

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

8

3 State the electronic configurations of the following atoms:

- a fluorine
- b aluminium
- c calcium

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

9

4 Find each of the following elements in the Periodic Table and state the number of electrons in its outer shell:

- a arsenic, As
- b bromine, Br
- c tin, Sn
- d xenon, Xe

SKILLS REASONING

8

5 The questions refer to the electronic configurations below. Don't worry if some of these are unfamiliar to you. All of these are the electronic configurations of neutral atoms.

A 2, 4
B 2, 8, 8
C 2, 8, 18, 18, 7
D 2, 8, 18, 18, 8
E 2, 8, 8, 2
F 2, 8, 18, 32, 18, 4

- a Explain which of these atoms are in Group 4 of the Periodic Table.
- b State which of these electronic configurations represents carbon.
- c Explain which atoms are in Period 5 of the Periodic Table.
- d Explain which of these electronic configurations represents an element in Group 7 of the Periodic Table.
- e State which of these electronic configurations represent noble gases.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

- f State the name of element **E** and explain how you arrived at your answer.
- g State how many protons are present in an atom of element **F**. State the name of the element.

SKILLS INTERPRETATION

- h Element **G** has one more electron than element **B**. Draw a diagram to show how the electrons are arranged in an atom of **G**.

SKILLS REASONING

6 Predict two properties of the element palladium, Pd (atomic number 46), or its compounds. The properties can be either physical or chemical.

7 Helium and neon do not form any compounds. Explain why the noble gases are unreactive.

9

8 The elements in the Periodic Table are arranged in order of atomic number. If they were arranged in order of mass number give the names of two elements that would be in different positions. Explain why this would cause a problem.

5 CHEMICAL FORMULAE, EQUATIONS AND CALCULATIONS: PART 1

It is often important in chemistry to know how much of one substance reacts with a certain amount of another. To do this, we will learn about moles in this chapter.

▲ Figure 5.1 Each gold bar contains almost 4 × 10^{25} gold atoms. That's 4 followed by 25 noughts! Learning about the mole allows us to work out how many atoms are in something.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Write word equations and balanced chemical equations (including state symbols):
  - for reactions studied in this course
  - for unfamiliar reactions where suitable information is provided
- Calculate relative formula masses (including relative molecular masses) (M_r) from relative atomic masses (A_r)
- Know that the mole (mol) is the unit for the amount of a substance
- Understand how to carry out calculations involving amount of substance, relative atomic mass (A_r) and relative formula mass (M_r)
- Calculate reacting masses using experimental data and chemical equations
- Calculate percentage yield
- Understand how the formulae of simple compounds can be obtained experimentally, including metal oxides, water and salts containing water of crystallisation
- Know what is meant by the terms empirical formula and molecular formula
- Calculate empirical and molecular formulae from experimental data
- Practical: Know how to determine the formula of a metal oxide by combustion (e.g. magnesium oxide) or by reduction (e.g. copper(II) oxide)

WRITING EQUATIONS

There are two types of chemical equation that you could be asked to write: word equations and symbol equations. Symbol equations are usually called *chemical equations* and you should only write a word equation if you are specifically asked to. All chemical equations must be balanced.

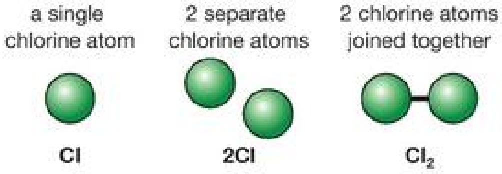
WHAT ALL THE NUMBERS MEAN

An example of a balanced chemical equation is:

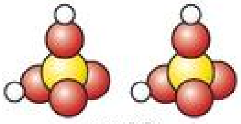
$$CaCO_3 + 2HCl \rightarrow CaCl_2 + CO_2 + H_2O$$

When you write equations, it is important to be able to count how many of each type of atom you have. In particular, you must understand the difference between big numbers written in front of formulae (sometimes called **coefficients**), such as the **2** in **2**HCl, and the smaller, subscript (slightly lower on the line) numbers, such as the **3** in $CaCO_3$.

Another chemical equation is $2Cl \rightarrow Cl_2$. Here, **2Cl** represents 2 separate Cl atoms and **Cl_2** means that the atoms are joined together in a molecule.



▲ Figure 5.2 The difference between 2Cl and Cl_2



▲ Figure 5.3 $2H_2SO_4$. The sulfur atoms are shown in yellow, the oxygens in red and the hydrogens in white.

Another balanced chemical equation is $H_2S_2O_7 + H_2O \rightarrow 2H_2SO_4$.

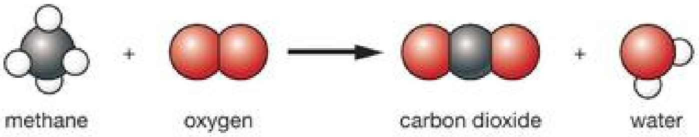
Look at the way the numbers work in $2H_2SO_4$. The big number in front tells you that you have 2 sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4) molecules. The subscript 4 tells you that you have 4 oxygen atoms in each molecule. A small, subscript number in a formula applies only to the atom immediately before it in the formula. If you count the atoms in $2H_2SO_4$ you will find 4 hydrogens, 2 sulfurs and 8 oxygens.

If you have brackets in a formula, the small number refers to everything inside the brackets. For example, in the formula $Ca(OH)_2$, the 2 applies to both the oxygen and the hydrogen. The formula shows 1 calcium, 2 oxygens and 2 hydrogens. You will learn more about how to work out the formulae of compounds in Chapter 7.

BALANCING EQUATIONS

Chemical reactions involve taking elements or compounds and moving their atoms around into new combinations. It follows that you must always end up with the same number of atoms that you started with.

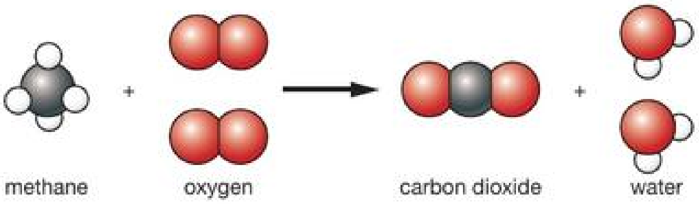
Imagine you had to write an equation for the reaction between methane, CH_4, and oxygen, O_2. Methane burns in oxygen to form carbon dioxide and water. Think of this in terms of rearranging the atoms in some models.



▲ Figure 5.4 Rearranging the atoms in methane and oxygen

If you count the atoms you had at the beginning (on the left-hand side of the arrow) and the atoms you have at the end (on the right-hand side of the arrow), you can see that this can't be right! During the rearrangement, we seem to have gained an oxygen atom and lost two hydrogens. The reaction must be more complicated than this. Since the substances are all correct, the proportions must be wrong.

Try again:



▲ Figure 5.5 A balanced equation for the reaction between methane and oxygen.

There are now the same number of each type of atom before and after. This is called **balancing the equation**.

In symbols, this equation would be:

$$CH_4 + 2O_2 \rightarrow CO_2 + 2H_2O$$

Think of each symbol (C or H or O) as representing one atom of that element. Count them up in the equation, and check that there is the same number of atoms on both sides.

HOW TO BALANCE EQUATIONS

In order to balance equations you should adopt a systematic approach.

- Work across the equation from left to right, checking one element after another, except if an element appears in several places in the equation. In that case, leave the element until the end and you will often find that it has sorted itself out.
- If you have a group of atoms (like a sulfate group (SO_4), for example), which is unchanged from one side of the equation to the other, there is no reason why you can't just count that up as a whole group, rather than counting individual sulfurs and oxygens. It saves time.
- Check everything at the end to make sure you haven't changed something that you have already counted.

HINT

This is really important! You must never, never change a formula when balancing an equation. All you are allowed to do is to write big numbers in front of the formula.

EXAMPLE 1

Balance the equation for the reaction between zinc and hydrochloric acid:

$$Zn + HCl \rightarrow ZnCl_2 + H_2$$

Work from left to right. Count the zinc atoms: 1 on each side; no problem!

Count the hydrogen atoms: 1 on the left, 2 on the right. If you have 2 at the end, you must have started with 2. The only way of achieving this is to have 2HCl. (You must not change the formula to H_2Cl because this substance does not exist.)

$$Zn + 2HCl \rightarrow ZnCl_2 + H_2$$

Now count the chlorines: there are 2 on each side. Good! Finally check everything again to make sure and you've finished.

	$Zn + 2HCl$		$\rightarrow$	$ZnCl_2 + H_2$	
numbers of atoms	Zn	1		Zn	1
	H	2		H	2
	Cl	2		Cl	2

EXAMPLE 2

Balance the equation for the combustion of ethane:

$$C_2H_6 + O_2 \rightarrow CO_2 + H_2O$$

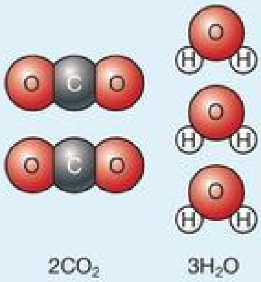
Starting from the left, balance the carbons:

$$C_2H_6 + O_2 \rightarrow 2CO_2 + H_2O$$

Now the hydrogens:

$$C_2H_6 + O_2 \rightarrow 2CO_2 + 3H_2O$$

Finally the oxygens: there are 7 oxygens ((2 × 2) + 3) on the right-hand side, but only 2 on the left. The problem is that the oxygens have to go around in pairs. So how can you obtain an odd number (7) of oxygens on the left-hand side?



▲ Figure 5.6 There are 7 O atoms in $2CO_2 + 3H_2O$

The trick with this is to allow yourself to have halves in your equation. 7 oxygen atoms, O, is the same as $3\frac{1}{2}$ oxygen molecules, O_2.

$$C_2H_6 + 3\tfrac{1}{2}O_2 \rightarrow 2CO_2 + 3H_2O$$

Now double everything to get rid of the half:

$$2C_2H_6 + 7O_2 \rightarrow 4CO_2 + 6H_2O$$

KEY POINT

In fact, it is acceptable to have halves in equations, but you don't usually come across them at Internaional GCSE.

You might reasonably argue that you can't have half an oxygen molecule, but to remove that problem all you have to do is double everything.

STATE SYMBOLS

State symbols are often, but not always, written after the formulae of the various substances in an equation to show what physical state everything is in. You need to know four different state symbols:

(s) solid (l) liquid (g) gas (aq) in **aqueous** solution (dissolved in water)

So an equation might look like this:

$$2K(s) + 2H_2O(l) \rightarrow 2KOH(aq) + H_2(g)$$

This shows that *solid* potassium reacts with *liquid* water to make a *solution* of potassium hydroxide in water and hydrogen *gas*.

HINT

Don't worry if this chemistry is new to you, or if at this stage you don't know what the state symbols should be. That is not important at the moment.

HINT

Remember that water is a liquid (l), not an aqueous solution (aq). An aqueous solution is formed when something is *dissolved in water*.

HOW MUCH OF EACH SUBSTANCE REACTS IN A CHEMICAL REACTION?

You can make iron(II) sulfide by heating a mixture of iron and sulfur:

$$Fe + S \rightarrow FeS$$

How do you know what proportions to mix them in? You can't just mix equal masses of them because iron and sulfur atoms don't weigh the same. Iron atoms contain more protons and neutrons than sulfur atoms, so an iron atom is one and three-quarter times heavier than a sulfur atom. In this or any other reaction, you can get the right proportions only if you know about the masses of the individual atoms that take part in the reaction.

RELATIVE ATOMIC MASS (A_r)

We have already looked at how to calculate relative atomic masses from the isotopic abundances in Chapter 3. Here we will look a little more closely at what exactly the relative atomic mass is.

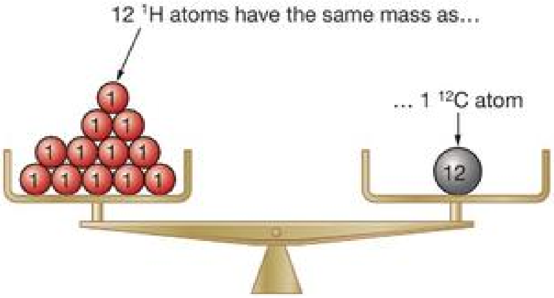
REMINDER

Remember that isotopes are atoms of the same element, but with different masses. Isotopes are explained in Chapter 3 (page 26).

EXTENSION WORK

This is a slight approximation. To be accurate, each of these hydrogen atoms has a mass of 1.008 on the carbon-12 scale. For International GCSE purposes, we take it as being exactly 1.

Atoms are amazingly small. The mass of a hydrogen atom is about 1.67×10^{-24} g (0.00000000000000000000000167 g). It is really difficult to use numbers such as this and so we use a scale of *relative* masses instead. The masses of atoms (and molecules) are compared with the mass of an atom of the carbon-12 isotope. We call this the carbon-12 scale. On this scale, one atom of the carbon-12 isotope weighs *exactly* 12 units and the mass of the most common hydrogen isotope is 1, which is a much simpler number to use!



▲ Figure 5.7 The most common hydrogen atom weighs one-twelfth as much as a ^{12}C atom.

The basic unit on the carbon-12 scale is $\frac{1}{12}$ of the mass of a ^{12}C atom, which is approximately the mass of the most common hydrogen atom. A fluorine-19 atom has a relative mass of 19 because its atoms have a mass 19 times that of $\frac{1}{12}$ of a ^{12}C atom. An atom of the most common isotope of magnesium weighs 24 times as much as $\frac{1}{12}$ of a ^{12}C atom, and is therefore said to have a relative mass of 24.

The masses we are talking about here are the masses of individual *isotopes*, but samples of an actual element contain different isotopes and so we need a measure of the average mass of an *atom* taking into account the different isotopes. This is the relative atomic mass.

The relative atomic mass of an element (as opposed to one of its isotopes) is given the symbol $\boldsymbol{A_r}$ and it is defined like this:

KEY POINT

Remember, to work out a weighted average we have to know how much of each isotope is present in a sample.

The relative atomic mass of an element is the weighted average mass of the isotopes of the element. It is measured on a scale on which a carbon-12 (^{12}C) atom has a mass of exactly 12.

Because we are talking here about *relative* masses they have no units.

On this scale, the relative atomic mass of chlorine is 35.45, that of lithium is 6.94 and that of sodium is 22.99 because we are taking into account the different isotopes, and are quoting an average mass for an atom. Although all elements consist of a mixture of isotopes, at International GCSE we only use relative atomic masses, including decimal places for Cl (35.5) and Cu (63.5), therefore we will take the relative atomic mass of lithium as 7 and that of sodium as 23.

HINT

Avoid the term 'relative molecular mass' because it can only properly be applied to substances which are actually molecules, that is, to covalent substances. You shouldn't use it for things like magnesium oxide or sodium chloride, which are ionic. Relative formula mass covers everything.

RELATIVE FORMULA MASS (M_r)

You can measure the masses of compounds on the same carbon-12 scale. For example, a water molecule, H_2O, has a mass of 18 on the carbon-12 scale. This means that a water molecule has 18 times the mass of $\frac{1}{12}$ of a ^{12}C atom.

If you are talking about compounds, you use the term *relative formula mass*. Relative formula mass is sometimes called relative molecular mass.

Relative formula mass is given the symbol $\boldsymbol{M_r}$.

CALCULATING SOME RELATIVE FORMULA MASSES

To find the relative formula mass (M_r) of magnesium carbonate, $MgCO_3$

Relative atomic masses: C = 12, O = 16, Mg = 24.

Add up the relative atomic masses to give the relative formula mass of the whole compound. In this case, you need to add up the masses of 1 × Mg, 1 × C and 3 × O.

$M_r = 24 + 12 + (3 \times 16)$
Mg C (3 × O)
$M_r = 84$

To find the relative formula mass of calcium hydroxide, $Ca(OH)_2$

Relative atomic masses: H = 1, O = 16, Ca = 40.

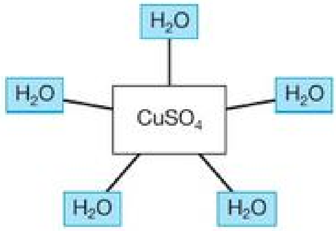
$M_r = 40 + (16 + 1) \times 2$
Ca O H
$M_r = 74$

HINT

Remember, you do not have to calculate the relative atomic masses, they will always be given to you in an exam, either in the question or on the Periodic Table. **If you use a Periodic Table, be sure to use the right number!** It will always be the larger of the two numbers given.

To find the M_r of copper(II) sulfate crystals, $CuSO_4{\cdot}5H_2O$

This formula looks very different and a lot more complicated than the ones we have looked at above. When some substances crystallise from solution, water becomes chemically bound up with the salt. This is called **water of crystallisation**. The $5H_2O$ is water of crystallisation. The water is necessary to form crystals of copper(II) sulfate (and some other substances). There are always 5 water molecules associated with 1 $CuSO_4$ unit and they are part of the formula. Salts containing water of crystallisation are said to be **hydrated**. Other examples include $Na_2CO_3{\cdot}10H_2O$ and $MgCl_2{\cdot}6H_2O$.



▲ Figure 5.8 A schematic diagram showing the formula of copper(II) sulfate crystals: there are five water molecules bonded to each copper(II) sulfate unit.

Relative atomic masses: H = 1, O = 16, S = 32, Cu = 63.5.

It is easiest to work out the relative formula mass of water first:

H_2O: $M_r = 2 \times 1 + 16 = 18$

Now add the correct number of waters on to the rest of the formula:

$CuSO_4{\cdot}5H_2O$: $M_r = 63.5 + 32 + (4 \times 16) + (5 \times 18) = 249.5$
Cu S (4 × O) (5 × H_2O)

HINT

It is dangerous to calculate the number of hydrogens and oxygens separately. The common mistake is to work out 10 hydrogens (quite correctly!), but then only count 1 oxygen rather than 5.

USING RELATIVE FORMULA MASS TO FIND PERCENTAGE COMPOSITION

Having found the relative formula mass of a compound, we can work out the percentage by mass of any part of it. Examples make this clear.

To find the percentage by mass of copper in copper(II) oxide, CuO

Relative atomic masses: O = 16, Cu = 63.5.

M_r of CuO = 63.5 + 16 = 79.5

Of this, 63.5 is copper.

$$\text{Percentage of copper} = \frac{63.5}{79.5} \times 100$$
$$= 79.9\%$$

To find the percentage by mass of oxygen in sodium carbonate, Na_2CO_3

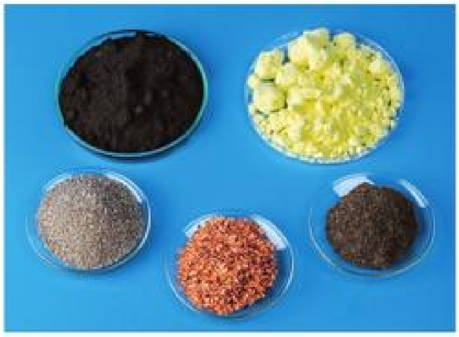
Relative atomic masses: Na = 23, C = 12, O = 16.

$M_r = (2 \times 23) + 12 + (3 \times 16)$
$= 106$

48 of this 106 is due to the oxygen (remember that there are 3 oxygens in the formula, so the total mass of oxygen is 3 × 16 = 48).

$$\text{Percentage of oxygen} = \frac{3 \times 16}{106} \times 100$$
$$= 45.3\%$$

THE MOLE



▲ Figure 5.9 1-mole quantities (clockwise from upper left) of carbon (12 g), sulfur (32 g), iron (56 g), copper (63.5 g) and magnesium (24 g).

In chemistry, the **mole** is a unit of the amount of substance. We can talk about an amount of substance in grams or an amount of substance in moles. The difference between expressing the amount of substance in moles or in grams is that 1 mole of any substance has its own particular mass. For example, 1 mole of water has a mass of 18 g, 1 mole of sulfur has a mass of 32 g and 1 mole of magnesium oxide has a mass of 40 g. The abbreviation for mole is **mol**.

We can therefore talk, for example, about an amount of water as 36 g or 2 mol, since 1 mol of water has a mass of 18 g. 36 g of sulfur, however, would only be 1.125 mol and 36 g of magnesium would be 1.5 mol because the mass of 1 mol of sulfur is 32 g and that of 1 mol of magnesium is 24 g.

Some people talk about the *amount in moles* and others talk about the *number of moles*. This is like talking about the *mass of a substance* or the *number of grams*. For example, we could say that the amount in grams of water is 36 g or the number of grams of water is 36 g. Similarly, we can say that the amount in moles of water is 2 mol or the number of moles of water is 2 mol.

CALCULATING THE MASSES OF A MOLE OF SUBSTANCE

You find the mass of 1 mole of a substance by calculating the relative formula mass (M_r) and attaching the units, grams.

1 mole of oxygen gas, O_2

Relative atomic mass: O = 16.

$$M_r \text{ of } O_2 = 2 \times 16$$
$$= 32$$

1 mole of oxygen, O_2, has a mass of 32 g.

1 mole of calcium chloride, $CaCl_2$

Relative atomic masses: Cl = 35.5, Ca = 40.

$$M_r \text{ of } CaCl_2 = 40 + (2 \times 35.5)$$
$$= 111$$

1 mole of calcium chloride has a mass of 111 g.

1 mole of iron(II) sulfate crystals, $FeSO_4{\cdot}7H_2O$

Relative atomic masses: H = 1, O = 16, S = 32, Fe = 56.

$$M_r \text{ of crystals} = 56 + 32 + (4 \times 16) + \{7 \times [(2 \times 1) + 16]\}$$

1 mole of iron(II) sulfate crystals has a mass of 278 g.

THE IMPORTANCE OF QUOTING THE FORMULA

Whenever you talk about a mole of something, you *must* quote its formula, otherwise there is a risk of confusion.

For example, if you talk about 1 mole of oxygen, this could mean:

1 mole of oxygen atoms, O, with a mass of 16 g

1 mole of oxygen molecules, O_2, with a mass of 32 g.

HINT

We often use the term 'molar mass' instead of 'mass of 1 mole'.

EXTENSION WORK

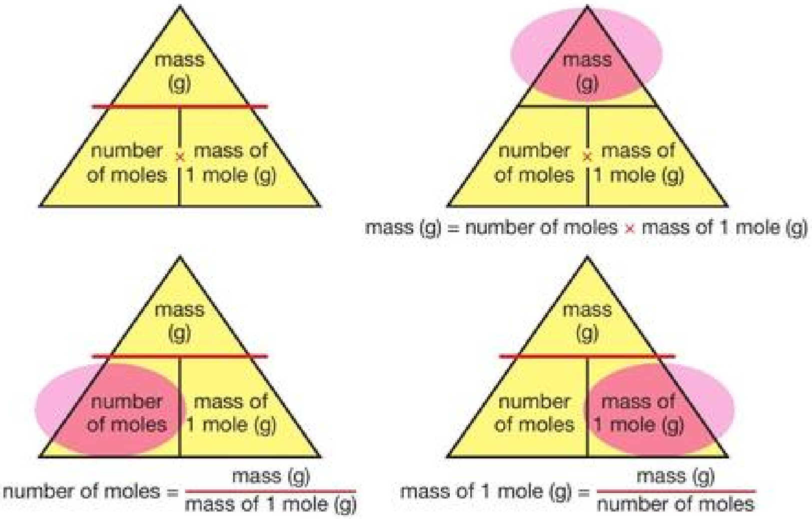
To be 100% correct 'molar mass' and 'mass of 1 mole' are not exactly the same thing and have different units: molar mass has units of g/mol and the mass of 1 mole has units of g. You are unlikely to come across the distinction between these at International GCSE.

SIMPLE CALCULATIONS WITH MOLES

You need to be able to interconvert between a mass in grams and an amount in moles for a given substance. There is a simple formula that you can learn:

$$\text{number of moles} = \frac{\text{mass (g)}}{\text{mass of 1 mole (g)}}$$

You can rearrange this formula to find whatever you want. If rearranging this expression causes you problems, you can learn a simple triangular arrangement to help you.


mass (g)
number of moles
×
mass of 1 mole (g)
mass (g) = number of moles × mass of 1 mole (g)
number of moles = mass (g) / mass of 1 mole (g)
mass of 1 mole (g) = mass (g) / number of moles

▲ Figure 5.10 Converting between mass in grams and number of moles.

Look at this carefully and make sure that you understand how you can use it to deduce the three equations that you might need.

Finding the mass of 0.2 mol of calcium carbonate, $CaCO_3$

Relative atomic masses: C = 12, O = 16, Ca = 40.

First find the relative formula mass of calcium carbonate.

$$\begin{aligned} M_r \text{ of } CaCO_3 &= 40 + 12 + (3 \times 16) \\ &= 100 \end{aligned}$$

1 mol of $CaCO_3$ has a mass of 100 g.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Mass (g)} &= \text{number of moles} \times \text{mass of 1 mole (g)} \\ &= 0.2 \times 100 \\ &= 20\,\text{g} \end{aligned}$$

0.2 mol of $CaCO_3$ has a mass of 20 g.

HINT

Don't get too reliant on learning formulae for doing simple calculations. If 1 mole weighs 100 g, it should be fairly obvious to you that 2 moles will weigh twice as much, 10 moles will weigh 10 times as much and 0.2 moles will weigh 0.2 times as much.

Finding the number of moles in 54 g of water, H_2O

Relative atomic masses: H = 1, O = 16.

1 mol of H_2O has a mass of 18 g.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Number of moles} &= \frac{\text{mass (g)}}{\text{mass of 1 mole (g)}} \\ &= \frac{54}{18} \\ &= 3\,\text{mol} \end{aligned}$$

54 g of water is 3 mol.

HINT

If 1 mol weighs 18 g, then you need to find out how many times 18 goes into 54 to find out how many moles you have. On the other hand, if you feel safer using a formula, use it.

EXTENSION WORK

Moles and the Avogadro constant

Imagine you had 1 mole of ^{12}C. It would have a mass of 12 g and contain a very large number of carbon atoms, in fact about 6×10^{23} carbon atoms, which is 6 followed by 23 noughts. This number of atoms in 12 g of ^{12}C is called the **Avogadro constant**.

1 mole of anything else contains this same number of particles. For example:

1 mole of magnesium contains 6×10^{23} magnesium atoms, Mg, and has a mass of 24 g.

1 mole of water contains 6×10^{23} water molecules, H_2O, and has a mass of 18 g.

This is the reason that we use moles: if we know the number of moles we also know how many particles are present. If we know how many particles are present, we can work out how much of one substance reacts with a certain amount of another.

▲ Figure 5.11 Approximately 1×10^{32} water molecules go over Niagara Falls every second during the summer. That's 100 million million million million million water molecules per second.

FORMULAE

The formula of sulfur dioxide is SO_2. We can see that there are 2 O atoms for each S atom. If we had 1 mol SO_2 we would still have twice as many O atoms as S atoms; there would be 1 mol S atoms and 2 mol O atoms. If we know that in a certain sample of sulfur dioxide we have 0.1 mol of S atoms we also know that we must have 0.2 mol O atoms. 0.2 mol contains twice as many atoms as 0.1 mol.

If we did an experiment and found that a compound contained 0.2 mol Ca and 0.2 mol O, then we could work out that the formula must be CaO because there are the same number of Ca atoms as O atoms.

If a compound contains 0.4 mol Mn and 0.8 mol O then the formula must be MnO_2 because there are twice as many O atoms as Mn atoms.

The formulae that we have found here are called *empirical formulae*.

The empirical formula shows the simplest whole number ratio of the atoms present in a compound.

There is another type of formula that we will come across, called the *molecular formula*.

The molecular formula shows the actual number of atoms of each element present in a molecule (covalent compound) or formula unit (ionic compound) of a compound.

The molecular formula can be the same as the empirical formula or a multiple of the empirical formula. The empirical formula of calcium oxide is CaO and the molecular formula is also CaO. The empirical formula of hydrogen peroxide is HO and the molecular formula is H_2O_2.

In order to work out the molecular formula from the empirical formula we need more information – the M_r of the compound. We will look at this again below.

WORKING OUT EMPIRICAL FORMULAE

In order to find out the empirical formula of a compound such as copper oxide, we need to know how many atoms of copper combine with how many atoms of oxygen. We can work out the number of atoms from the number of moles. If we know the ratio between the number of copper atoms and oxygen atoms in the compound we know the formula.

EXAMPLE 3

A sample of a compound contains 1.27 g of Cu and 0.16 g of O. Calculate the empirical formula. (A_r of Cu = 63.5, A_r of O = 16)

It is easiest to do this in columns using a table:

	Cu	O
masses/g	1.27	0.16
find the number of moles of atoms by dividing the mass by the mass of 1 mole of atoms	1.27/63.5	0.16/16
number of moles of atoms	0.02	0.01
divide by the smaller number to find the ratio	0.02/0.01	0.01/0.01
ratio of moles	2	1
empirical formula	Cu_2O	

From calculating the number of moles of Cu and O we can see that there are twice as many moles of Cu and therefore there must be twice as many Cu atoms as O atoms in the compound.

It is important to remember in this calculation that we are working out how many *atoms* of copper combine with how many *atoms* of oxygen so we divide the mass of oxygen by 16 (the mass of 1 mole of oxygen atoms) rather than by 32 (the mass of 1 mole of oxygen molecules).

KEY POINT

0.02 mol of atoms is twice as many atoms as 0.01 mol of atoms.

HINT

More significant figures should have been used for the number of moles in the examples on this page but these have been omitted for simplicity.

EXAMPLE 4

A sample of a compound contains 0.78 g of K, 1.10 g of Mn and 1.28 g of O. (A_r of K = 39, A_r of Mn = 55, A_r of O = 16)

Again, we use a table:

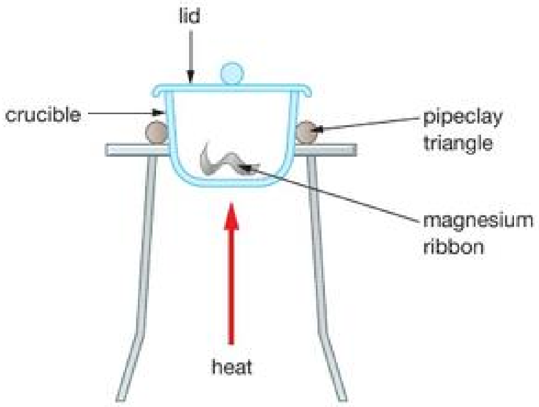
	K	Mn	O
masses/g	0.78	1.10	1.28
find the number of moles of atoms by dividing the mass by the mass of 1 mole of atoms	0.78/39	1.10/55	1.28/16
number of moles of atoms	0.02	0.02	0.08
divide by the smallest number to find the ratio	0.02/0.02	0.02/0.02	0.08/0.02
ratio of moles	1	1	4
empirical formula	$KMnO_4$		

The empirical formula of this compound is $KMnO_4$.

ACTIVITY 3

▼ PRACTICAL: INVESTIGATING THE FORMULA OF A METAL OXIDE BY COMBUSTION

Safety Note: Wear eye protection and take care not to get burned when raising the crucible lid with tongs. The crucible will stay very hot for some time.



▲ Figure 5.12 Apparatus for determining the formula of magnesium oxide

We can find the formula of magnesium oxide by burning magnesium in oxygen and looking at how the mass changes. The following procedure is usually used:

- Weigh a crucible with a lid.
- Place a piece of magnesium ribbon about 10 cm long in the crucible and weigh the crucible and contents.
- Set up the apparatus as shown in Figure 5.12.
- Heat the crucible strongly (a roaring flame).
- Lift the lid every few seconds.
- When the reaction is finished, allow the crucible and contents to cool.
- Weigh the crucible and contents.

When the magnesium burns it does so with a bright white flame. Magnesium oxide, a white powder, is produced in the reaction.

A lid is placed on the crucible to prevent the white powder (magnesium oxide) escaping but the lid must be lifted every few seconds to allow oxygen into the crucible to react with the magnesium.

A set of results for this practical could be:

mass of empty crucible/g	32.46
mass of crucible + magnesium/g	32.70
mass of crucible + contents at end of experiment/g	32.86

We can work out the mass of magnesium by subtracting the mass of the crucible from the mass of the crucible + magnesium:

$$\text{mass of magnesium} = 32.70 - 32.46 = 0.24\,\text{g}$$

The reason that the mass increases is because the magnesium combines with the oxygen in the air. The mass of magnesium oxide is greater than the mass of just magnesium due to the extra oxygen.

KEY POINT

How do we know when the reaction has finished? We can generally see when there is no more reaction because nothing is happening in the crucible. We can also check by weighing the crucible and contents, then heating it and weighing again. If the mass is higher when we weigh it again then this indicates that a reaction has occurred. We keep heating and weighing until the mass stays constant.

We can work out the mass of oxygen that combines with the magnesium:

mass of oxygen = 32.86 – 32.70 = 0.16 g

In order to find the formula of magnesium oxide we need to work out how many moles of magnesium atoms combine with how many moles of oxygen atoms.

	Mg	O
masses/g	0.24	0.16
find the number of moles of atoms by dividing the mass by the mass of 1 mole	0.24/24	0.16/16
number of moles of atoms	0.010	0.010
divide by the smaller number to find the ratio	0.010/0.010	0.010/0.010
ratio of moles	1	1
empirical formula	MgO	

The empirical formula of magnesium oxide is MgO.

THE FORMULA FOR COPPER OXIDE

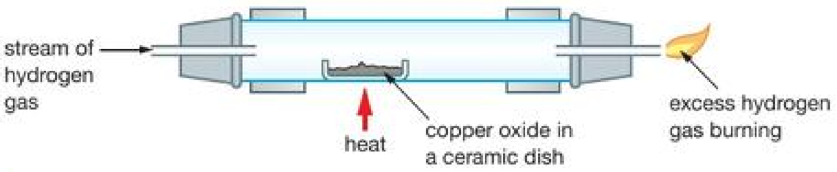
ACTIVITY 4

▼ PRACTICAL: INVESTIGATING THE FORMULA OF A METAL OXIDE BY REDUCTION

We can also find the formula of an oxide by removing the oxygen from it and looking at how the mass changes.

The following procedure can be used to find the formula of copper oxide:

- Weigh a ceramic dish.
- Put about 3 g of copper oxide in the ceramic dish and weigh the dish again.
- Place the ceramic dish in a tube as shown in Figure 5.13.
- Pass hydrogen gas over the copper oxide.
- Ignite the excess hydrogen, which comes out of the small hole in the boiling tube.
- Heat the copper oxide strongly until the reaction is finished (pink-brown copper metal will be seen).



▲ Figure 5.13 The experimental set-up for finding the formula of copper oxide.

KEY POINT

Remember: Number of moles is mass in grams divided by the mass of 1 mole in grams.

The overall reaction that occurred was:

$2Mg + O_2 \rightarrow 2MgO$

magnesium + oxygen → magnesium oxide

The type of reaction that occurred was combustion.

When we do this experiment in practice, it is not very often that the ratio comes out as 1:1. There are things that may go wrong with this experiment which could affect the results, such as:

- some of the magnesium oxide powder might escape when the lid is lifted
- not all the magnesium might have reacted
- the magnesium can also react with nitrogen in the air.

HINT

The original masses were measured to 2 significant figures so the number of moles should also be given to 2 significant figures (0.010). If you write 0.01 for the number of moles of atoms in the exam, this will be fine and still give you the correct answer.

Safety Note: The teacher demonstrating needs to wear a face shield and use safety screens. The pupils require eye protection and should be no closer than 2 metres. If a drying agent is needed anhydrous calcium chloride should be used NOT concentrated sulfuric acid.

KEY POINT

We must always make sure that the tube is filled with hydrogen before lighting the stream of hydrogen because a mixture of hydrogen and oxygen is explosive! It is therefore important to let the stream of hydrogen gas flow through the tube for a little while (to flush out all the oxygen) before lighting it or lighting the Bunsen burner.

A set of results for this practical could be:

mass of empty dish/g	23.78
mass of dish + copper oxide/g	26.96
mass of dish + contents at end of experiment/g	26.32

The reason that the mass decreases is because the hydrogen combines with the oxygen from the copper oxide to form water. The oxygen is removed from the copper oxide and we are left with only copper in the dish at the end of the experiment. Because oxygen is removed from the copper oxide we say that the copper oxide has been reduced. Reduction is explained in Chapter 14.

From this data we can calculate the mass of copper oxide at the beginning by subtracting the mass of the dish from the mass of the dish + copper oxide:

mass of copper oxide = 26.96 – 23.78 = 3.18 g

We can work out the mass of copper remaining at the end by subtracting the mass of the dish from the mass of the dish + copper at the end.

mass of copper = 26.32 – 23.78 = 2.54 g

The mass has decreased because the oxygen has been removed from the copper oxide and we can calculate the mass of oxygen by subtracting the mass of copper at the end from the mass of copper oxide:

mass of oxygen = 3.18 – 2.54 = 0.64 g

We now know that 2.54 g of copper combines with 0.64 g of oxygen in copper oxide and can deduce the empirical formula:

	Cu	O
masses/g	2.54	0.64
find the number of moles of atoms by dividing the mass by the mass of 1 mole	2.54/63.5	0.64/16
number of moles of atoms	0.0400	0.040
divide by the smaller number to find the ratio	0.0400/0.040	0.040/0.040
ratio of moles	1	1
empirical formula	CuO	

KEY POINT

This is a displacement (or competition) reaction. Hydrogen is more reactive than copper and displaces it from copper oxide. Displacement reactions are discussed in Chapter 14.

KEY POINT

The equation for the reaction that occurs in this experiment is:

$CuO + H_2 \rightarrow Cu + H_2O$

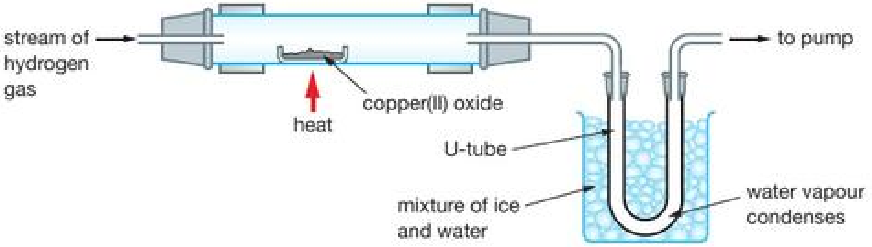
copper(II) oxide + hydrogen → copper + water

As well as a displacement reaction, this type of reaction can also be called a redox reaction. Redox reactions are discussed in Chapter 14.

Safety Note: The teacher demonstrating needs to wear a face shield and use safety screens. The pupils require eye protection and should be no closer than 2 metres. If a drying agent is needed anhydrous calcium chloride should be used NOT concentrated sulfuric acid.

DETERMINING THE FORMULA OF WATER

We can modify the apparatus in Figure 5.13 to allow us to determine the formula of water.



▲ Figure 5.14 Apparatus that can be used to determine the formula of water.

The experiment is conducted in the same way except that this time the water vapour that is produced from the reaction between copper(II) oxide and hydrogen is condensed. The contents of the dish at the beginning and the end of the experiment are again weighed but this time the mass of water that collects in the U-tube must also be measured.

mass of empty dish/g	23.78
mass of dish + copper oxide/g	26.96
mass of dish + contents at end of experiment/g	26.32
mass of water/g	0.72

Here we are using the same results as above. The mass of oxygen lost from the copper(II) oxide is 0.64g.

All the oxygen lost from the copper(II) oxide combines with hydrogen to form water. This means that the water contains 0.64g of oxygen. 0.72g of water was collected so the mass of hydrogen in the water must be 0.72 – 0.64 = 0.08g. We can now determine the empirical formula of water:

	H	O
masses/g	0.08	0.64
number of moles of atoms	0.08/1	0.64/16
number of moles of atoms	0.08	0.040
divide by the smaller number to find the ratio	0.08/0.040	0.040/0.040
ratio of moles	2	1
empirical formula	H_2O	

WORKING OUT FORMULAE USING PERCENTAGE COMPOSITION FIGURES

In the worked examples and practical examples above, we have determined the empirical formulae of compounds using masses. However, we are often given percentages by mass instead of just masses.

EXAMPLE 5

Find the empirical formula of a compound containing 82.7% C and 17.3% H by mass (A_r of H = 1, A_r of C = 12).

The percentage figures apply to any amount of substance you choose, so let's choose 100 g. In this case the percentages convert simply into masses: 82.7% of 100 g is 82.7 g (Table 5.1).

Table 5.1 Finding the ratio from percentage by mass

	C	H
percentages/%	82.7	17.3
masses in 100 g/g	82.7	17.3
number of moles of atoms	82.7/12	17.3/1
number of moles	6.89	17.3
divide by smallest to get ratio	6.89/6.89	17.3/6.89
ratio of moles	1	2.5

From this we can see that there are 2.5 mol of H atoms for every mole of C atoms. The empirical formula, however, is the *whole number ratio* of the elements present in a compound. To obtain a whole number here we multiply both numbers by 2 to get C_2H_5, which is the empirical formula.

HINT

When you calculate 17.3/6.89 you actually obtain 2.51. When doing these calculations it is fine to round 2.51 to 2.5 or 1.01 to 1 but what you must not do is round 2.51 to 3!

If you got a ratio of C:H of 1:1.33 you would not round this down to 1:1 but rather multiply by 3 to obtain C_3H_4.

CONVERTING EMPIRICAL FORMULAE INTO MOLECULAR FORMULAE

When you have learned a bit more organic chemistry in Unit 4 you will realise that, in the example we have just looked at, C_2H_5 can't possibly be the real formula of the compound. The molecular formula (the actual number of each atom present in a molecule) has to be a multiple of C_2H_5, like C_4H_{10}.

We can find the molecular formula if we know the relative formula mass of the compound (or the mass of 1 mole, which is just the M_r in grams).

In the previous example, suppose you were told that the relative formula mass of the compound was 58.

C_2H_5 has a relative formula mass of 29 (A_r of H = 1, A_r of C = 12).

All you need to find out is how many times 29 goes into 58.

$58/29 = 2$

So you need 2 lots of C_2H_5, in other words, C_4H_{10}.

The molecular formula is C_4H_{10}.

EXAMPLE 6

A compound has the empirical formula CH_2. If the relative formula mass is 56, work out the molecular formula.

The relative formula mass of CH_2 is $12 + (2 \times 1) = 14$.

$56/14 = 4$

Therefore there must be 4 lots of CH_2 in the actual molecule and the molecular formula is C_4H_8.

Remember, the ratio of elements in the molecular formula must be the same as in the empirical formula: C_4H_8 cancels down to CH_2.

EMPIRICAL FORMULA CALCULATIONS INVOLVING WATER OF CRYSTALLISATION

FINDING THE *n* IN $BaCl_2 \cdot nH_2O$

REMINDER

Remember that when some substances crystallise from solution, water becomes chemically bound up with the salt. This is called **water of crystallisation**. The salt is said to be **hydrated**.

REMINDER

Anhydrous means without water.

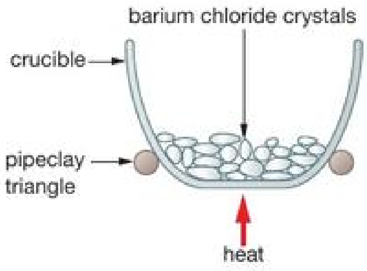


Figure 5.15 Heating barium chloride crystals in a crucible

Safety Note: Barium chloride is toxic but a Bunsen flame is not hot enough to release it into the atmosphere.

HINT

If you are doing this experiment, how can you be sure that all the water has been driven off? The best way to do this is to heat it to constant mass. You heat the crucible and weigh it. Keep doing this until the mass remains constant. If the mass has gone down after heating there may still be water present, but when the mass remains constant after heating you know that all the water has been driven off.

Usually, when you heat a salt that contains water of crystallisation, the water is driven off, leaving the **anhydrous** salt behind. Hydrated barium chloride is a commonly used example because the barium chloride itself doesn't decompose even on quite strong heating.

If you heated barium chloride crystals in a crucible you might obtain these results:

Mass of crucible	= 30.00 g
Mass of crucible + barium chloride crystals, $BaCl_2 \cdot nH_2O$	= 32.44 g
Mass of crucible + anhydrous barium chloride, $BaCl_2$	= 32.08 g

To find *n*, you need to find the ratio of the number of moles of $BaCl_2$ to the number of moles of water. It's just another empirical formula calculation (A_r of H = 1, A_r of O = 16, A_r of Cl = 35.5, A_r of Ba = 137).

Mass of $BaCl_2$ = 32.08 − 30.00 = 2.08 g
Mass of water = 32.44 − 32.08 = 0.36 g

Table 5.2 Finding the *n* in $BaCl_2 \cdot nH_2O$

	$BaCl_2$	H_2O
masses/g	2.08	0.36
divide by M_r to find the number of moles	2.08/208	0.36/18
number of moles	0.0100	0.020
ratio of moles	1	2
empirical formula	$BaCl_2 \cdot 2H_2O$	

CALCULATIONS USING MOLES, CHEMICAL EQUATIONS AND MASSES OF SUBSTANCES

INTERPRETING SYMBOLS IN EQUATIONS IN TERMS OF MOLES

KEY POINT

The big numbers in front of the formulae tell us the number of moles of each substance that react. Although there does not appear to be a big number in front of the CH_4 and CO_2, there should actually be a '1' in front of each but we just don't write it.

If we write a chemical equation:

$$CH_4 + 2O_2 \rightarrow CO_2 + 2H_2O$$

we can say that 1 molecule of CH_4 combines with 2 molecules of O_2 to form 1 molecule of CO_2 and 2 molecules of water. When doing calculations, however, it is often more useful to think about this in terms of moles and take symbols as meaning moles of each substance. So here we can say:

1 mol CH_4 reacts with 2 mol O_2 to form 1 mol CO_2 and 2 mol H_2O

We have not changed the meaning of the equation as the ratios are still the same.

We can therefore tell from this equation that 16 g of CH_4 (1 mol) reacts exactly with 64 g of O_2 (2 mol) to form 44 g of CO_2 (1 mol) and 36 g of H_2O (2 mol).

KEY POINT

Remember that 2 mol of O_2 contains twice as many molecules as 1 mol of CH_4.

CALCULATIONS INVOLVING ONLY MASSES

Typical calculations will give you a mass of starting material and ask you to calculate how much product you are likely to obtain. You will also find examples done in reverse, where you are told the mass of the product and are asked to find out how much of the starting material you would need. In almost all the cases you will see at International GCSE you will be given the equation for the reaction.

Figure 5.16 A glowing piece of limestone. Limestone is impure calcium carbonate – it decomposes when heated to form calcium oxide (quicklime) and carbon dioxide. This is a thermal decomposition reaction.

A PROBLEM INVOLVING HEATING CALCIUM CARBONATE

When calcium carbonate, $CaCO_3$, is heated, calcium oxide is formed. Imagine you wanted to calculate the mass of calcium oxide produced by heating 25 g of calcium carbonate (A_r: C = 12, O = 16, Ca = 40).

$$CaCO_3 \rightarrow CaO + CO_2$$

THE CALCULATION

The method we will use has three steps:

Step 1: Calculate the number of moles using the mass that you have been given.

Step 2: Use the chemical equation to work out the number of moles of the substance you are interested in.

Step 3: Convert the number of moles to a mass.

KEY POINT

The M_r of $CaCO_3$ is 100 and the M_r of CaO is 56.

In this reaction we have 25 g of $CaCO_3$ and the number of moles can be calculated as:

$$\text{number of moles} = \frac{\text{mass}}{\text{mass of 1 mole}} = \frac{25}{100} = 0.25\,\text{mol}$$

The chemical equation for this reaction is

$$CaCO_3 \rightarrow CaO + CO_2$$

We can see from the equation that 1 mole of $CaCO_3$ will decompose to produce 1 mole of CaO. In other words, the equation is telling us that if we start with a certain number of moles of $CaCO_3$ we will obtain the same number of moles of CaO at the end.

Therefore, we can deduce that 0.25 mol $CaCO_3$ will decompose to produce 0.25 mol CaO. Now that we know the number of moles of CaO (M_r = 56) we can convert this to a mass:

$$\text{mass} = \text{number of moles} \times \text{mass of 1 mole}$$

$$\text{mass} = 0.25 \times 56 = 14\,\text{g}$$

Therefore, the reaction will produce 14 g of calcium oxide.

ALTERNATIVE METHOD

HINT

You do not have to learn both methods, just learn whichever method you are happier with.
Your maths may be so good that you don't need to take all these steps to find the answer. If you can do it more quickly, that's fine. However, you must still show all your calculations.
When you have finished a chemistry calculation, the impression should nearly always be that there are a lot of words with a few numbers between them, not vice versa.

The calculation can also be done in a different way using ratios:

$$CaCO_3(s) \rightarrow CaO(s) + CO_2(g)$$

Interpret the equation in terms of moles:

1 mol $CaCO_3$ produces 1 mol CaO (and 1 mol CO_2)

Substitute masses where relevant:

100 g (1 mol) $CaCO_3$ produces 56 g (1 mol) CaO

Do a proportion calculation:

If 100 g of calcium carbonate gives 56 g of calcium oxide

1 g of calcium carbonate gives $\frac{56}{100}$ g of calcium oxide = 0.56 g

25 g of calcium carbonate gives 25 × 0.56 g of calcium oxide = 14 g of calcium oxide

A PROBLEM ABOUT EXTRACTING IRON

The equation below is for a reaction that occurs in the extraction of iron:

$$Fe_2O_3 + 3C \rightarrow 2Fe + 3CO$$

Calculate the mass of iron which can be formed from 1000 g of iron oxide.

KEY POINT

The A_r of Fe is 56.
The M_r of Fe_2O_3 = 2 × 56 + 3 × 18 = 160.

We are given the mass of Fe_2O_3 in the question and so we can calculate the number of moles of Fe_2O_3:

$$\text{number of moles} = \frac{\text{mass}}{\text{mass of 1 mole}}$$

$$\text{number of moles} = \frac{1000}{160} = 6.25\,\text{mol}$$

HINT

To find the mass of Fe we multiply the number of moles of Fe by the mass of 1 mole of Fe (56 g). A common mistake is to multiply the number of moles by the mass of 2Fe (112 g), but we have already used the '2' when we worked out the number of moles of Fe.

From the chemical equation we can see that 1 mol Fe_2O_3 produces 2 mol Fe. We know this because of the big numbers in front of the formulae.

So we know that, if we start with a certain number of moles of Fe_2O_3, we will obtain twice as many moles of Fe.

So 6.25 mol Fe_2O_3 produces 2 × 6.25 = 12.5 mol Fe:

mass = number of moles × mass of 1 mole

The mass of 12.5 mol Fe is 12.5 × 56 = 700 g.

ALTERNATIVE METHOD IN TERMS OF RATIOS

First interpret the equation in terms of moles:

1 mol Fe_2O_3 reacts with C to form 2 mol Fe (and CO_2).

We are only looking at how much iron is produced, so let's introduce just these masses.

160 g (1 mol) of Fe_2O_3 produces 2 × 56 g (2 mol) of Fe.

That is, 160 g of Fe_2O_3 produces 112 g of Fe.

From this we can calculate that 1 g of Fe_2O_3 will produce 112/160 g of Fe, and therefore 1000 g of Fe will produce 1000 × 112/160 = 700 g.

A PROBLEM INVOLVING THE EXTRACTION OF LEAD

Lead is extracted from galena, PbS. The ore is roasted in air to produce lead(II) oxide, PbO:

$$2PbS(s) + 3O_2(g) \rightarrow 2PbO(s) + 2SO_2(g)$$

The lead(II) oxide is then converted to lead by heating it with carbon in a blast furnace:

$$PbO(s) + C(s) \rightarrow Pb(l) + CO(g)$$

The molten lead is tapped from the bottom of the furnace.

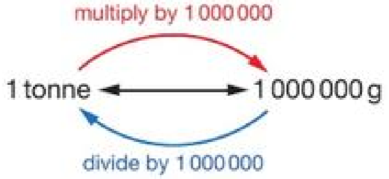
Calculate the mass of lead that would be produced from 1 tonne of galena.

(A_r: O = 16, S = 32, Pb = 207)

▲ Figure 5.17 Molten lead tapped from the bottom of a furnace.

HINT

You should be told how many grams there are in a tonne if you need this information in the exam.



▲ Figure 5.18 How to convert between grams and tonnes

HINT

1 000 000 might be given to you as 10^6 or 1×10^6. These are both the same.

We have been given the mass of PbS so we can calculate the number of moles. However, we have to be careful because the mass is in tonnes but to calculate a number of moles we need to know the mass in grams, so we must convert tonnes to grams. The conversion for this is shown in Figure 5.18. Just write down this relationship: *1* tonne is equivalent to *1 000 000* g so, to change from tonnes to grams, the number has to *increase* (from 1 to 1 000 000), so we *multiply* by 1 000 000.

Therefore we have 1 000 000 g PbS.

$$\text{Number of moles} = \frac{\text{mass}}{\text{mass of 1 mole}}$$

$$\text{The number of moles of PbS} = \frac{1\,000\,000}{239} = 4184\,\text{mol.}$$

From the first equation:

$$2PbS(s) + 3O_2(g) \rightarrow 2PbO(s) + 2SO_2(g)$$

we can see that 2 mol PbS produce 2 mol PbO, therefore we can work out that 4184 mol PbS will produce 4184 mol PbO.

From the second equation:

$$PbO(s) + C(s) \rightarrow Pb(l) + CO(g)$$

we can see that 1 mol PbO produces 1 mol Pb. But we are starting this reaction with 4184 mol PbO and so we can work out that we will produce 4184 mol Pb.

The mass of 4184 mol Pb is 4184 × 207 = 866 000 g.

We can convert this to tonnes by dividing by 1 000 000:

$$866\,000/1\,000\,000 = 0.866\ \text{tonne}$$

ALTERNATIVE METHOD

$$2PbS(s) + 3O_2(g) \rightarrow 2PbO(s) + 2SO_2(g)$$

$$PbO(s) + C(s) \rightarrow Pb(l) + CO(g)$$

Interpret the equation in terms of moles and trace the lead through the equations:

2 mol PbS produces 2 mol PbO

If we double the second equation:

$$2PbO(s) + 2C(s) \rightarrow 2Pb(l) + 2CO(g)$$

we can see that 2 mol PbO produces 2 mol Pb.

In other words, every 2 mol of PbS produces 2 mol of Pb.

Substitute masses where relevant. In this case, the relevant masses are only the PbS and the Pb:

2 × 239 g PbS produces 2 × 207 g Pb

478 g PbS produces 414 g Pb

Now there seems to be a problem. The question is asking about tonnes and not grams. You could calculate how many grams there are in a tonne. However, it's much easier to think a bit, and realise that the ratio is always going to be the same, whatever the units, which means that:

478 tonnes PbS produces 414 tonnes Pb

Do the proportion calculation:

If 478 tonnes PbS produces 414 tonnes Pb

then 1 tonne PbS gives $\frac{417}{478}$ tonne Pb = 0.866 tonne

0.866 tonne of lead is produced from 1 tonne of galena.

KEY POINT

We've doubled the second equation so that we can trace what happens to all the 2PbO from the first one.
This could also be simplified to 1 mol PbS produces 1 mol Pb. This would save you doing some arithmetic as you would not have to multiply everything by 2. However, in the end it does not make any difference to the answer, so you do not have to simplify it if you don't want to.

HINT

There are advantages and disadvantages of both methods. For the first method, we can use the same three steps in all the calculations we do below. However, a bit more maths will be involved: converting tonnes to grams and back again. The alternative method has fewer steps but we cannot use it in the same way when doing some of the calculations involving solutions in the next chapter.

CALCULATING PERCENTAGE YIELDS

WHAT IS A PERCENTAGE YIELD?

If you calculate how much product a reaction might produce, in real life you rarely obtain as much as you expected. If you expect to get 100 g, but only get 80 g, your percentage yield is 80%. The rest of it has been lost in some way. This could be due to spillages, or losses when you transfer a liquid from one container to another. Or it may be that there are all sorts of side reactions going on, so that some of your starting materials are changed into unwanted products. That happens a lot during reactions in organic chemistry.

▶ Figure 5.19 Experiments done by students to make and purify organic compounds rarely give a high percentage yield.

CALCULATING THE PERCENTAGE YIELD

Suppose you do a calculation and work out that you should get 12.5 g of copper sulfate crystals, but you only get 11.2 g when you actually do the experiment. 12.5 g is the *theoretical yield* and can be obtained by carrying out a moles calculation. 11.2 g is the *actual yield* – this is what is obtained in the actual experiment and will be given to you in the question.

$$\text{Percentage yield} = \frac{\text{actual yield}}{\text{theoretical yield}} \times 100$$

The percentage yield is $\frac{11.2}{12.5} \times 100 = 89.6\%$.

HINT

The percentage yield should always come out as less than 100%. If it comes out as more than 100% either you have made a mistake in the calculation or the question will continue by asking about what might have gone wrong in the experiment to give a value greater than 100%. If you are making a salt (see Chapter 17), for instance, a possible reason you could get a percentage yield greater than 100% is that it was not completely dry.

EXAMPLE 7

A student reacted 2.40 g of copper(II) oxide (CuO) with hot sulfuric acid. She made 5.21 g of copper(II) sulfate crystals ($CuSO_4{\cdot}5H_2O$).

The equations for the reactions are:

$$CuO(s) + H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow CuSO_4(aq) + H_2O(l)$$
$$CuSO_4(aq) + 5H_2O(l) \rightarrow CuSO_4{\cdot}5H_2O(l)$$

First we need to calculate the theoretical yield. This is done by carrying out a moles calculation. We have enough information to calculate the number of moles of copper(II) oxide:

$$\text{number of moles of CuO} = \frac{2.40}{79.5} = 0.0302\,\text{mol}$$

From the first equation we can deduce that 0.0302 mol CuO will produce 0.0302 mol $CuSO_4$.

From the second equation we can deduce that 0.0302 mol $CuSO_4$ will produce 0.0302 mol $CuSO_4{\cdot}5H_2O$.

Now we need to calculate the mass of $CuSO_4{\cdot}5H_2O$ by multiplying the number of moles by the mass of 1 mole:

$$\text{mass} = 0.0302 \times 249.5 = 7.53\,\text{g}$$

This is the theoretical yield of copper(II) sulfate crystals.

The actual yield is what was obtained in the experiment. This was 5.21 g.

The percentage yield = (actual yield/theoretical yield) × 100

The percentage yield is 5.21/7.53 × 100 = 69.2%.

CALCULATIONS IN WHICH YOU HAVE TO CALCULATE WHICH SUBSTANCE IS IN EXCESS

When you make something in the lab, you rarely mix things together in exactly the right proportions. Usually, something is in excess, and you remove the excess (by filtering, for example) when the reaction is complete. If something is in excess there is more than enough of it to react with the other substance and so we don't need to worry about it.

In all the examples we have done above, we have only ever been given enough information to calculate the number of moles of one thing at the beginning of the problem. We have used this number of moles throughout the calculations. But what would happen if we were given the following question?

Magnesium reacts with hydrochloric acid according to the following equation:

$$Mg(s) + 2HCl(aq) \rightarrow MgCl_2(aq) + H_2(g)$$

0.2 mol Mg is reacted with 0.2 mol HCl. Calculate the mass of hydrogen gas produced.

We might be tempted to say that 0.2 mol Mg produces 0.2 mol $H_2(g)$ and the mass of $H_2 = 0.2 \times 2 = 0.4$ g. Unfortunately this is not the correct answer!

We can understand why it is not correct by looking at the chemical equation. 1 mol Mg reacts with 2 mol HCl and therefore 0.2 mol Mg would react with $2 \times 0.2 = 0.4$ mol HCl.

But we only used 0.2 mol HCl and so we did not have enough to react with all the Mg. Because all the Mg did not react we cannot use the number of moles of Mg to work out how much hydrogen is produced.

If we try starting with the number of moles of HCl, we can deduce from the chemical equation that 2 mol HCl reacts with 1 mol Mg, therefore 0.2 mol HCl reacts with 0.1 mol Mg. We added 0.2 mol Mg and so there is more than enough to react with all the HCl – the Mg is in **excess**.

KEY POINT

You always have to use the chemical equation to determine which substance is in excess. If we had been given 0.2 mol Mg and 0.3 mol HCl in this reaction it would look like the HCl is in excess because there is more of it. But if you look at the chemical equation you can see that 0.3 mol HCl only reacts with 0.15 mol Mg so there is still not enough HCl to react with all the Mg, so the Mg is still in excess.

Because we know that all the HCl reacts we can use the number of moles of HCl to work out how much H_2 is produced.

2 mol HCl produce 1 mol H_2: the number of moles of H_2 is half the number of moles of HCl.

Therefore 0.2 mol HCl produce 0.1 mol H_2.

The mass of $H_2 = 0.1 \times 2 = 0.2$ g.

This is the correct answer!

To deduce which substance is in excess we try both numbers of moles in the chemical equation and compare the numbers.

KEY POINT

A reagent is just something that reacts.

EXAMPLE 8

Copper reacts with concentrated nitric acid according to the equation:

$$Cu(s) + 4HNO_3(aq) \rightarrow Cu(NO_3)_2(aq) + 2H_2O(l) + 2NO_2(g)$$

3.2 g of copper is reacted with 0.40 mol concentrated nitric acid. Work out which reagent is in excess.

We need to convert the mass of Cu to a number of moles:

$$\text{number of moles of Cu} = \frac{3.2}{63.5} = 0.050\,\text{mol}$$

Looking at the chemical equation we can see that 1 mol Cu reacts with 4 mol HNO_3, so we can calculate that:

0.050 mol Cu reacts with $4 \times 0.050 = 0.20$ mol HNO_3

We have more than 0.20 mol HNO_3 therefore HNO_3 is in excess.

If the question went further and asked us to calculate the amount in moles of NO_2 produced using these quantities we would have to use the number of moles of Cu because not all the HNO_3 is used up. We would obtain $2 \times 0.050 = 0.10$ mol NO_2.

CHAPTER QUESTIONS

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

1 Balance the following equations:

- a $Fe + HCl \rightarrow FeCl_2 + H_2$
- b $Zn + H_2SO_4 \rightarrow ZnSO_4 + H_2$
- c $Ca + H_2O \rightarrow Ca(OH)_2 + H_2$
- d $Al + Cr_2O_3 \rightarrow Al_2O_3 + Cr$
- e $Fe_2O_3 + CO \rightarrow Fe + CO_2$
- f $NaHCO_3 + H_2SO_4 \rightarrow Na_2SO_4 + CO_2 + H_2O$
- g $C_8H_{18} + O_2 \rightarrow CO_2 + H_2O$
- h $Fe_3O_4 + H_2 \rightarrow Fe + H_2O$
- i $Pb + AgNO_3 \rightarrow Pb(NO_3)_2 + Ag$
- j $AgNO_3 + MgCl_2 \rightarrow Mg(NO_3)_2 + AgCl$
- k $C_3H_8 + O_2 \rightarrow CO_2 + H_2O$

2 Calculate the relative formula masses of the following compounds:

- a CO_2
- b CH_3CO_2H
- c Na_2SO_4
- d $(NH_4)_2SO_4$
- e $Na_2CO_3 \cdot 10H_2O$
- f $Cr_2(SO_4)_3$

(A_r: H = 1, C = 12, N = 14, O = 16, Na = 23, S = 32, Ca = 40, Cr = 52, Fe = 56)

3 Calculate the percentage of nitrogen in each of the following substances (all used as nitrogen fertilisers):

- a potassium nitrate, KNO_3
- b ammonium nitrate, NH_4NO_3
- c ammonium sulfate, $(NH_4)_2SO_4$

(A_r: H = 1, N = 14, O = 16, S = 32, K = 39)

4 Calculate the mass of the following:

- a 1 mol of HCN
- b 1 mol of lead(II) nitrate, $Pb(NO_3)_2$
- c 4.30 mol of methane, CH_4
- d 0.70 mol of Na_2O
- e 0.015 mol of $NaNO_3$
- f 0.24 mol of sodium carbonate crystals, $Na_2CO_3 \cdot 10H_2O$

(A_r: H = 1, C = 12, N = 14, O = 16, Na = 23, Pb = 207)

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

5 Calculate the number of moles represented by each of the following:

- a 20 g of magnesium oxide, MgO
- b 3.20 g of iron(III) oxide, Fe_2O_3
- c 2 kg of copper(II) oxide, CuO
- d 50 g of copper(II) sulfate crystals, $CuSO_4{\cdot}5H_2O$
- e 1 tonne of iron, Fe (1 tonne is 1 000 000 g)
- f 0.032 g of sulfur dioxide, SO_2

(A_r: H = 1, O = 16, S = 32, Mg = 24, Fe = 56, Cu = 63.5)

6 The following calculations use A_r: H = 1, O = 16, Na = 23, Cl = 35.5, Ca = 40, Cu = 63.5.

- a Calculate the mass of 4 mol of sodium chloride, $NaCl$.
- b Calculate how many moles is 37 g of calcium hydroxide, $Ca(OH)_2$.
- c Calculate how many moles is 1 kg (1000 g) of calcium, Ca.
- d Calculate the mass of 0.125 mol of copper(II) oxide, CuO.
- e 0.1 mol of a substance has a mass of 4 g. Calculate the mass of 1 mole.
- f 0.004 mol of a substance has a mass of 1 g. Calculate the relative formula mass of the compound.

7 Determine the empirical formulae of the compounds which contain:

- a 9.39 g P, 0.61 g H
- b 5.85 g K, 2.10 g N, 4.80 g O
- c 3.22 g Na, 4.48 g S, 3.36 g O
- d 22.0% C, 4.6% H, 73.4% Br (by mass)

(A_r: H = 1, C = 12, N = 14, O = 16, Na = 23, S = 32, K = 39, Br = 80)

8 1.24 g of phosphorus was burned completely in oxygen to give 2.84 g of phosphorus oxide. Find:

- a the empirical formula of the oxide
- b the molecular formula of the oxide given that 1 mole of the oxide has a mass of 284 g.

(A_r: O = 16, P = 31)

9 An organic compound contained C 66.7%, H 11.1%, O 22.2% by mass. Its relative formula mass was 72. Find:

- a the empirical formula of the compound
- b the molecular formula of the compound.

(A_r: H = 1, C = 12, O = 16)

10 In an experiment to find the number of molecules of water of crystallisation in sodium sulfate crystals, $Na_2SO_4{\cdot}nH_2O$, 3.22 g of sodium sulfate crystals were heated gently. When all the water of crystallisation had been driven off, 1.42 g of anhydrous sodium sulfate was left. Find the value of n in the formula. (A_r: H = 1, O = 16, Na = 23, S = 32)

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

9

11 Gypsum is hydrated calcium sulfate, $CaSO_4{\cdot}nH_2O$. A sample of gypsum was heated in a crucible until all the water of crystallisation had been driven off. The following results were obtained:

Mass of crucible = 37.34 g

Mass of crucible + gypsum, $CaSO_4{\cdot}nH_2O$ = 45.94 g

Mass of crucible + anhydrous calcium sulfate, $CaSO_4$ = 44.14 g

Calculate the value of *n* in the formula $CaSO_4{\cdot}nH_2O$.

(A_r: H = 1, O = 16, S = 32, Ca = 40)

12 a Calculate the amount in moles of SO_3 formed when 0.36 mol SO_2 reacts with excess O_2.

$2SO_2 + O_2 \rightarrow 2SO_3$

b Calculate the amount in moles of HCl that reacts with 0.4 mol $CaCO_3$.

$CaCO_3(s) + 2HCl(aq) \rightarrow CaCl_2(aq) + H_2O(l) + CO_2(g)$

c Calculate the amount in moles of H_2S formed when 0.4 mol of HCl reacts with excess Sb_2S_3.

$Sb_2S_3 + 6HCl \rightarrow 2SbCl_3 + 3H_2S$

d Calculate the amount in moles of iron formed when 0.9 mol carbon monoxide reacts with excess iron(III) oxide.

$Fe_2O_3 + 3CO \rightarrow 2Fe + 3CO_2$

e Calculate the amount in moles of hydrogen that would be required to make 0.8 mol NH_3.

$N_2 + 3H_2 \rightarrow 2NH_3$

13 The reaction between iron and bromine is

$2Fe + 3Br_2 \rightarrow 2FeBr_3$

10 g of iron is reacted with bromine.

a Calculate the amount in moles of iron that reacted.

b Calculate the amount in moles of bromine that the iron reacted with.

c Calculate the amount in moles of $FeBr_3$ that will be formed.

d Calculate the mass of $FeBr_3$ formed.

(A_r: Fe = 56, Br = 80)

14 Titanium is manufactured by heating titanium(IV) chloride with sodium.

$TiCl_4(g) + 4Na(l) \rightarrow Ti(s) + 4NaCl(s)$

1.0 g of $TiCl_4$ is reacted with excess sodium

(A_r: Na = 23, Ti = 48, Cl = 35.5)

a Calculate the amount in moles of $TiCl_4$ reacted.

b Calculate the amount in moles of Ti formed.

c Calculate the mass of Ti formed.

d Calculate the mass of NaCl formed.

e Calculate the mass of Ti formed when 1 tonne of $TiCl_4$ reacts with excess sodium (1 tonne is 1 000 000 g).

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

15 2.67 g of aluminium chloride was dissolved in water and an excess of silver nitrate solution was added to give a precipitate of silver chloride (AgCl).

$$AlCl_3(aq) + 3AgNO_3(aq) \rightarrow Al(NO_3)_3(aq) + 3AgCl(s)$$

Calculate the mass of silver chloride that would be formed.

(A_r: Al = 27, Cl = 35.5, Ag = 108)

16 Chromium is manufactured by heating a mixture of chromium(III) oxide with aluminium powder.

$$Cr_2O_3(s) + 2Al(s) \rightarrow 2Cr(s) + Al_2O_3(s)$$

- **a** Calculate the mass of aluminium needed to react with 50 g of Cr_2O_3.
- **b** Calculate the mass of chromium produced from 50 g of Cr_2O_3.
- **c** Calculate the mass of chromium produced from 5 kg of Cr_2O_3.
- **d** Calculate the mass of chromium produced from 5 tonnes of Cr_2O_3.

(1 tonne is 1 000 000 g)

(A_r: Cr = 52, O = 16, Al = 27)

17 Copper(II) sulfate crystals, $CuSO_4{\cdot}5H_2O$, can be made by heating copper(II) oxide with dilute sulfuric acid and then crystallising the solution formed.

- **a** Calculate the maximum mass of crystals that could be made from 4.00 g of copper(II) oxide using an excess of sulfuric acid.

$$CuO(s) + H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow CuSO_4(aq) + H_2O(l)$$
$$CuSO_4(aq) + 5H_2O(l) \rightarrow CuSO_4{\cdot}5H_2O(s)$$

- **b** If the actual mass of copper(II) sulfate collected at the end of the experiment was 11.25 g, calculate the percentage yield.

(A_r: H = 1, O = 16, S = 32, Cu = 63.5)

18 Ethanol reacts with ethanoic acid to form ethyl ethanoate and water:

$$\underset{\text{ethanol}}{C_2H_5OH(l)} + \underset{\text{ethanoic acid}}{CH_3COOH(l)} \rightarrow \underset{\text{ethyl ethanoate}}{CH_3COOC_2H_5(l)} + \underset{\text{water}}{H_2O(l)}$$

- **a** Calculate the mass of ethyl ethanoate produced when 20.0 g of ethanol reacts with excess ethanoic acid.
- **b** The actual yield in this experiment is 30.0 g of ethyl ethanoate. Calculate the percentage yield.

(A_r: C = 12, H = 1, O = 16)

SKILLS REASONING

19 Determine which reactant is in excess in each case.

- **a** 0.5 mol of Na_2CO_3 is reacted with 0.5 mol hydrochloric acid:

$$Na_2CO_3(s) + 2HCl(aq) \rightarrow 2NaCl(aq) + H_2O(l) + CO_2(g)$$

- **b** 0.01 mol C_3H_8 is reacted with 0.02 mol O_2:

$$C_3H_8 + 5O_2 \rightarrow 3CO_2 + 4H_2O$$

- **c** 28 g CO is reacted with 0.6 mol Fe_2O_3:

$$Fe_2O_3 + 3CO \rightarrow 2Fe + 3CO_2$$

- **d** 16 g O_2 is reacted with 16 g SO_2:

$$2SO_2 + O_2 \rightarrow 2SO_3$$

(A_r : C = 12, O = 16, S = 32)

20 1.0 g of $CaCO_3$ is reacted with 0.015 mol of HCl:

$$CaCO_3(s) + 2HCl(aq) \rightarrow CaCl_2(aq) + H_2O(l) + CO_2(g)$$

- **a** Determine which reagent is present in excess.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

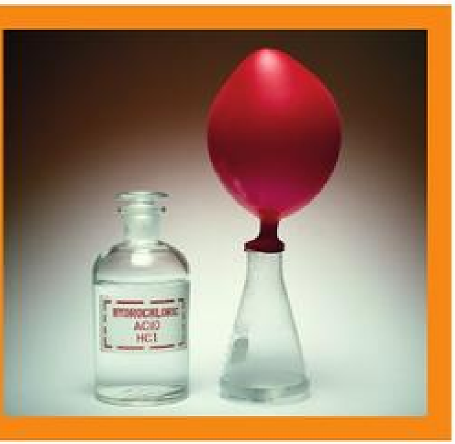
- **b** Calculate the mass of CO_2 produced.

(A_r: Ca = 40, C = 12, O = 16)

CHEMISTRY ONLY

6 CHEMICAL FORMULAE, EQUATIONS AND CALCULATIONS: PART 2

In this chapter we will look at how to extend our understanding of moles to carry out calculations involving gases and solutions. You need to have studied the material covered in Chapter 5 before starting on this chapter.

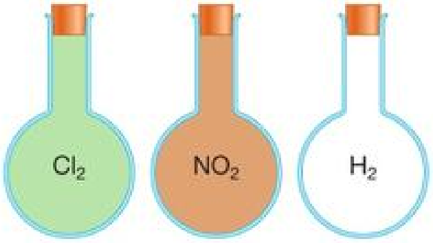


▶ Figure 6.1 When magnesium reacts with hydrochloric acid, hydrogen gas is formed. In this chapter you will learn to calculate what volume of gas is produced.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Understand how to carry out calculations involving amount of substance, volume and concentration (in mol/dm³) of solution
- Understand how to carry out calculations involving gas volumes and the molar volume of a gas (24 dm³ and 24 000 cm³ at room temperature and pressure (rtp))

CALCULATIONS INVOLVING GAS VOLUMES



▲ Figure 6.2 Three identical flasks containing different gases at the same temperature and pressure all contain equal numbers of molecules.

KEY POINT

For helium and the other noble gases we would use the word 'atoms' instead of 'molecules'.

Avogadro's law:
Equal volumes of gases at the same temperature and pressure contain equal numbers of molecules.

This means that if you have 100 cm³ of hydrogen at some temperature and pressure, it contains exactly the same number of molecules as there are in 100 cm³ of Cl_2, or any other gas under those conditions, irrespective of the size of the molecules.

You can see how this works in a chemical reaction. Methane (CH_4) reacts with oxygen to form carbon dioxide and water. The equation for the reaction is:

$$CH_4(g) + 2O_2(g) \rightarrow CO_2(g) + 2H_2O(l)$$

We need two O_2 molecules to react with each CH_4 molecule, so if we react 100 cm³ of CH_4 we will need twice the volume of O_2 to obtain the correct number of particles. In this equation, 100 cm³ of methane will react exactly with 200 cm³ of oxygen gas and 100 cm³ of carbon dioxide gas will be formed.

UNITS OF VOLUME

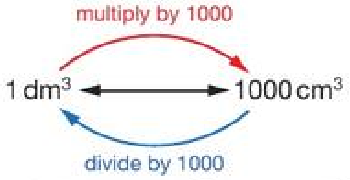
KEY POINT

If you want to talk about 1000 cm³, the cubic decimetre is the preferred unit rather than the litre.

Volumes (of gases or liquids) are measured in cubic centimetres (cm³)
or cubic decimetres (dm³)
or litres (l)

1 litre = 1 dm³ = 1000 cm³

The most important thing you need to be able to do is to convert between cm³ and dm³. Figure 6.3 shows how you can do this.



▲ Figure 6.3 Because 1 dm³ is equivalent to 1000 cm³, to convert dm³ to cm³ we have to go from 1 to 1000, therefore we need to multiply by 1000. To convert cm³ to dm³ we need to go from 1000 down to 1, therefore we divide by 1000.

THE VOLUME OCCUPIED BY 1 MOLE OF A GAS

KEY POINT

This is by far the most important consequence of Avogadro's law.

KEY POINT

1 mole of any gas occupies 24 dm³ (24 000 cm³) at rtp.
The abbreviation **rtp** is commonly used for 'room temperature and pressure'. rtp is usually taken as 20–25 °C and 1 atmosphere pressure.

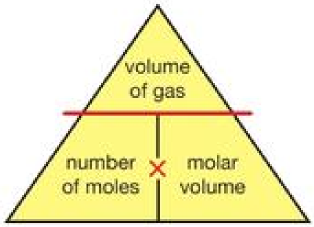
EXTENSION WORK

To be absolutely 100% correct, the molar volume has units of dm³/mol or cm³/mol. At International GCSE you are unlikely to encounter this unit.

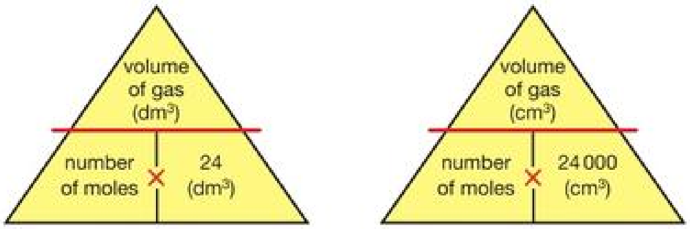
1 mole of any gas contains the same number of molecules and so occupies the same volume as 1 mole of any other gas at the same temperature and pressure.

At room temperature and pressure, the volume occupied by 1 mole of any gas is approximately 24 dm³ (24 000 cm³). The volume occupied by 1 mole of a gas is often called the **molar volume**.

You can use the triangles shown in Figures 6.4 and 6.5 to convert between volumes and numbers of moles.



▲ Figure 6.4 This triangle can be used to convert between volume of a gas and number of moles.



▲ Figure 6.5 These are basically the same as the triangle in Figure 6.4 except that the molar volume is shown as a number. Be careful with the units of volume.

CALCULATIONS WITH MOLAR VOLUME

CALCULATING THE VOLUME OF A CERTAIN NUMBER OF MOLES

Calculate the volume in dm³ of 0.20 mol CO_2 at rtp:

volume = number of moles × molar volume

Because we want the volume in dm³ we use 24 dm³ as the molar volume:

volume = 0.20 × 24 = 4.8 dm³

CALCULATING THE VOLUME OF A GIVEN MASS OF GAS

Calculate the volume (in cm^3) of 0.01 g of hydrogen at rtp (A_r: H = 1).

1 mol H_2 has a mass of 2 g:

$$\text{number of moles} = \frac{\text{mass}}{\text{mass of 1 mol}}$$

0.01 g of hydrogen is $\frac{0.01}{2}$ mol = 0.005 mol.

Because we want the volume in cm^3 we use the molar volume as 24 000 cm^3:

$$\text{volume} = \text{number of moles} \times \text{molar volume}$$

0.005 mol of hydrogen occupies 0.005 × 24 000 = 120 cm^3

CALCULATING THE NUMBER OF MOLES FROM A VOLUME

You have to be careful that the units are correct when you are calculating a number of moles from a volume. Look carefully, is the volume of gas given in cm^3 or dm^3? If the volume of the gas is given in cm^3 then use the molar volume of the gas as 24 000 cm^3, if it is given in dm^3 then use 24 dm^3.

Calculate the amount of moles in 120 cm^3 of carbon dioxide.

We can see that the volume is given in cm^3 therefore we use 24 000 cm^3 as the molar volume:

$$\text{number of moles} = \frac{\text{volume of gas}}{\text{molar volume}}$$

$$\text{number of moles} = \frac{120}{24\,000}$$

$$\text{number of moles} = 0.005\ \text{mol}$$

USING THE MOLAR VOLUME IN CALCULATIONS WITH CHEMICAL EQUATIONS

In order to do these calculations, we follow basically the same method as we used for masses in Chapter 5.

- Calculate the number of moles of anything you can.
- Use the chemical equation to deduce the number of moles of what you want.
- Convert the number of moles to the required quantity, e.g. a mass or a volume.

KEY POINT

Excess means that more than enough acid has been added to react with all the calcium carbonate.

Calculate the volume of carbon dioxide produced at room temperature and pressure when an excess of dilute hydrochloric acid is added to 1.00 g of calcium carbonate. (A_r: C = 12, O = 16, Ca = 40; molar volume = 24 dm^3 at rtp.)

The equation for the reaction is

$$CaCO_3(s) + 2HCl(aq) \rightarrow CaCl_2(aq) + CO_2(g) + H_2O(l)$$

We have been given the mass of calcium carbonate ($CaCO_3$) and so we can calculate the number of moles of calcium carbonate:

$$\text{number of moles} = \frac{\text{mass}}{\text{mass of 1 mole}}$$

The mass of 1 mole of $CaCO_3$ is the M_r in grams. The M_r is 40 + 12 + (3 × 16) = 100.

The mass of 1 mole of $CaCO_3$ is 100 g.

The number of moles in 1.00 g of $CaCO_3 = \frac{1.00}{100}$ = 0.0100 mol.

▲ Figure 6.6 Shells of sea creatures such as limpets are made of calcium carbonate, $CaCO_3$. If they were 100% pure, 1 g of shells would react with hydrochloric acid to give 0.24 dm^3 of carbon dioxide.

From the chemical equation we can see that 1 mol of $CaCO_3$ produces 1 mol of CO_2 so we know that 0.0100 mol of $CaCO_3$ will produce the same number of moles of CO_2, that is, 0.0100 mol.

We now need to work out the volume occupied by 0.0100 mol of CO_2:

$$\text{volume of gas} = \text{number of moles} \times \text{molar volume}$$
$$= 0.0100 \times 24 = 0.24\,\text{dm}^3$$

We have used the molar volume in dm^3 and so our answer will be in dm^3. It is really important to include the units here because the examiner will not know whether you mean cm^3 or dm^3 unless you write it down.

A PROBLEM INVOLVING MAKING HYDROGEN

Aluminium reacts with dilute hydrochloric acid according to the equation

$$2Al(s) + 6HCl(aq) \rightarrow 2AlCl_3(aq) + 3H_2(g)$$

What mass of aluminium would you need to add to an excess of dilute hydrochloric acid so that you produced 100 cm^3 of hydrogen at room temperature and pressure? (A_r of Al = 27; molar volume = 24 000 cm^3 at rtp.)

We can only calculate the number of moles of the hydrogen gas. We do not know the mass of aluminium, that is what we are trying to find.

The volume of hydrogen gas is given in cm^3 so we use the molar volume of a gas as 24 000 cm^3:

$$\text{number of moles of gas} = \frac{\text{volume of gas}}{\text{molar volume}} = \frac{100}{24\,000} = 0.00417\,\text{mol}$$

We could also write this number in standard form as 4.17×10^{-3} mol.

Looking at the chemical equation we can see that 3 mol of H_2 is produced from 2 mol of Al (we are only looking at the big numbers in front of the formulae). So we can see that the number of moles of Al will be $\frac{2}{3}$ times the number of moles of H_2.

The number of moles of aluminium required to produce 0.00417 mol of H_2 is $0.00417 \times \frac{2}{3} = 0.00278$ mol.

We can convert this to a mass by using the equation:

$$\text{mass} = \text{number of moles} \times \text{mass of 1 mol}$$
$$= 0.00278 \times 27 = 0.075\,\text{g Al}$$

HINT

Another way of thinking about this is that to go from 3 (H_2) to 2 (Al) we divide the 3 by 3 to get 1 and then multiply this by 2 to get 2. In other words, to go from the number of moles of H_2 to the number of moles of Al, we divide the number of moles of H_2 by 3 and then multiply by 2.

REMINDER

The equation to calculate the mass is the number of moles × mass of 1 mol. It is important to multiply by 27 here and not 54. Although it is 2Al in the equation, we have already used the 2 in calculating the number of moles of Al. Also, the mass of 0.00278 mol of Al must always be the same, it cannot depend on what it is reacting with. 0.00278 mol of Al always contains the same number of atoms.

CONCENTRATIONS OF SOLUTIONS

WORKING WITH SOLUTION CONCENTRATIONS

KEY POINT

You may also find the symbol M used. For example, dilute hydrochloric acid might have a concentration quoted as 2 M. M means 'mol/dm³' and is described as the **molarity** of the solution. You can also read 2 M as '2 molar'.

Concentrations can be measured in either

- g/dm^3

or

- mol/dm^3.

These can also be written as $g\,dm^{-3}$ and $mol\,dm^{-3}$. You read them as 'grams per cubic decimetre' and 'moles per cubic decimetre'. Remember: 1 cubic decimetre is the same as 1 litre.

You have to be able to convert between g/dm^3 and mol/dm^3. This is no different from converting moles into grams and *vice versa*. When you are doing this conversion in concentration calculations, it does not make any difference that the amount of substance you are talking about is dissolved in 1 dm^3 of solution.

▲ Figure 6.7 Sea water contains about 0.6 moles of NaCl per cubic decimetre.

A sample of sea water has a concentration of sodium chloride of 35.1 g/dm^3. Find its concentration in mol/dm^3. (A_r: Na = 23, Cl = 35.5)

1 mol NaCl has a mass of 58.5 g.

There are 35.1 g in every dm^3 of solution

$$\text{number of moles} = \frac{\text{mass(g)}}{\text{mass of 1 mole(g)}}$$

$$35.1\,\text{g is } \frac{35.1}{58.5}\,\text{mol} = 0.600\,\text{mol}$$

Therefore there are 0.600 mol in every dm^3 of solution and the concentration of the NaCl is 0.600 mol/dm^3.

EXAMPLE 1

What is the concentration of a 0.050 mol/dm^3 solution of sodium carbonate, Na_2CO_3, in g/dm^3? (A_r: C = 12, O = 16, Na = 23)

1 dm^3 of solution contains 0.050 mol Na_2CO_3.

1 mol Na_2CO_3 weighs 106 g.

0.050 mol weighs 0.050 × 106 = 5.3 g.

1 dm^3 of solution contains 5.3 g Na_2CO_3, therefore the concentration is 5.3 g/dm^3.

EXAMPLE 2

What is the concentration in mol/dm^3 of a solution containing 2.1 g of sodium hydrogencarbonate, $NaHCO_3$, in 250 cm^3 of solution? (A_r: H = 1, C = 12, O = 16, Na = 23)

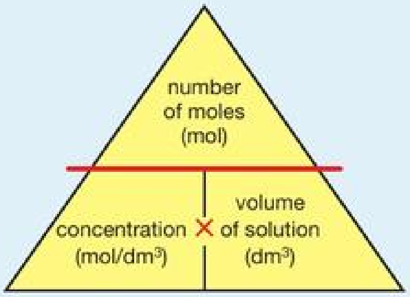
1 mol $NaHCO_3$ has a mass of 84 g.

$$2.1\,\text{g is } \frac{2.1}{84} = 0.025\,\text{mol}$$

This is in a volume of 250 cm^3 but we need to find out how much there is in 1 dm^3 (1000 cm^3). There are four lots of 250 cm^3 in 1000 cm^3. Each portion of 250 cm^3 contains 0.025 mol, therefore there must be 4 × 0.025 = 0.10 mol in 1000 cm^3.

The concentration is 0.10 mol/dm^3.

Another way of doing this is to use the triangle shown in Figure 6.8.



▲ Figure 6.8 We can use the triangle for calculations involving solutions.

WORKING OUT A NUMBER OF MOLES FROM A VOLUME AND A CONCENTRATION

When doing calculations involving solutions you will most often be asked to calculate a number of moles given the volume of the solution and its concentration. The equation for doing this is:

number of moles = volume of solution (dm^3) × concentration (mol/dm^3)

Because concentration is usually given in units of mol/dm^3 but volumes of solutions are often given in cm^3, we usually have to convert the volume in cm^3 to dm^3 by dividing by 1000.

EXAMPLE 3

Calculate the number of moles of NaOH in 50 cm^3 of 0.10 mol/dm^3 solution.

Converting the volume to dm^3 we get 50/1000 = 0.050 dm^3.

Number of moles = volume of solution (dm^3) × concentration (mol/dm^3).

Number of moles = 0.050 × 0.10 = 0.0050 mol.

CALCULATIONS WITH EQUATIONS INVOLVING SOLUTIONS

A CALCULATION INVOLVING HARD WATER

Limescale can be removed from, for example, electric kettles by reacting it with a dilute acid such as ethanoic acid, which is present in vinegar:

$$CaCO_3(s) + 2CH_3COOH(aq) \rightarrow (CH_3COO)_2Ca(aq) + CO_2(g) + H_2O(l)$$

What mass of calcium carbonate can be removed by 50 cm^3 of a solution of ethanoic acid that has a concentration of 2 mol/dm^3?
(A_r: C = 12, O = 16, Ca = 40)

HINT

Don't be scared that some of this is new to you! As long as you realise that CH_3COOH is ethanoic acid, that's all you need to worry about for this calculation.

Again, we will use our three stages:

- calculate the number of moles of what we can
- use the chemical equation to work out the number of moles of what we want
- convert the number of moles to what is required in the question.

We know the volume and concentration of ethanoic acid and so we can calculate the number of moles of ethanoic acid:

number of moles = volume of solution (dm^3) × concentration (mol/dm^3)

We need to be careful to convert the volume of ethanoic acid to dm^3 by dividing by 1000:

$$\text{number of moles of ethanoic acid} = \frac{50}{1000} \times 2 = 0.1\ \text{mol}$$

From the chemical equation we can see that there is a 2 in front of the CH_3COOH (ethanoic acid) but no number (which means a 1) in front of the $CaCO_3$, so we can deduce that 2 mol of CH_3COOH react with 1 mol of $CaCO_3$, in other words the number of moles of $CaCO_3$ is half the number of moles of CH_3COOH. Therefore, we can deduce that 0.1 mol of ethanoic acid will react with 0.1/2 = 0.05 mol of $CaCO_3$.

We can now calculate the mass of $CaCO_3$ (M_r = 100):

mass = number of moles × mass of 1 mol = 0.05 × 100 = 5 g

Therefore the ethanoic acid reacts with 5 g of calcium carbonate.

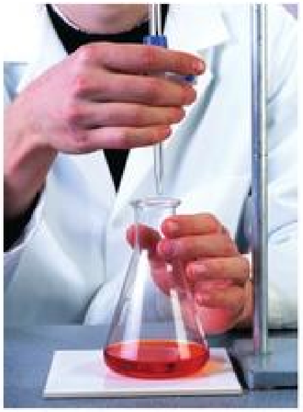
CALCULATIONS FROM TITRATIONS

ACID–ALKALI TITRATIONS

HINT

The acid and alkali can also be added the other way round, with the alkali in the burette.

Titration is a technique that is used to find out how much of one solution reacts with a certain volume of another solution of known concentration. A solution of an **alkali** is measured into a conical flask using a pipette. An **acid** is run in from a burette, swirling the flask constantly. Towards the end, the acid is run in a drop at a time until the **indicator** just changes colour. If you know the concentration of either the acid or the alkali you can use the results of the titration to find the concentration of the solution you reacted it with.



▲ Figure 6.9 The endpoint of a titration using methyl orange as indicator.

Acid–alkali titrations are discussed in Chapters 16 and 17.

THE STANDARD CALCULATION

A standard titration problem will look like this:

25.00 cm^3 of 0.100 mol/dm^3 sodium hydroxide solution required 23.50 cm^3 of dilute hydrochloric acid for **neutralisation**. Calculate the concentration of the hydrochloric acid.

$$NaOH(aq) + HCl(aq) \rightarrow NaCl(aq) + H_2O(l)$$

We will use the same three-step method as we used above to calculate the concentration of the hydrochloric acid.

HINT

Remember to divide the volume by 1000 to convert to dm^3.

We know the volume (25.00 cm^3) and concentration (0.100 mol/dm^3) of the sodium hydroxide solution and so we can calculate the number of moles:

$$\text{number of moles of NaOH} = \frac{25.00}{1000} \times 0.100 = 0.00250\,\text{mol}$$

From the chemical equation we know that 1 mol of NaOH reacts with 1 mol of HCl.

Therefore 0.00250 mol NaOH reacts with 0.00250 mol HCl.

Now that we have the number of moles of HCl we need to convert it to a concentration.

We know that we need 0.00250 mol of HCl to neutralise the NaOH. The volume of HCl we added was 23.50 cm^3. So we know that this volume must contain 0.00250 mol of HCl.

We have the volume and number of moles of HCl and can work out the concentration:

$$\text{concentration (mol/dm}^3\text{)} = \frac{\text{number of moles (mol)}}{\text{volume (dm}^3\text{)}}$$

Because we want to calculate concentration in mol/dm³ we have to convert the volume of HCl to dm³ by dividing by 1000:

$$\text{volume of HCl} = \frac{23.50}{1000} = 0.02350\,\text{dm}^3$$

$$\text{concentration} = \frac{0.00250}{0.02350} = 0.106\,\text{mol/dm}^3$$

The concentration of the hydrochloric acid is 0.106 mol/dm³.

A VERY SLIGHTLY HARDER CALCULATION

25.0 cm³ of sodium hydroxide solution of unknown concentration was titrated with dilute sulfuric acid of concentration 0.050 mol/dm³. 20.0 cm³ of the acid was required to neutralise the alkali. Find the concentration of the sodium hydroxide solution in mol/dm³.

$$2NaOH(aq) + H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow Na_2SO_4(aq) + 2H_2O(l)$$

This time, we know everything we need about the sulfuric acid and can calculate the number of moles.

The experiment used 20.0 cm³ of 0.050 mol/dm³ H_2SO_4:

$$\text{number of moles of sulfuric acid used} = \frac{20.0}{1000} \times 0.050$$
$$= 0.0010\,\text{mol}$$

The equation proportions aren't 1:1 this time. That's what makes the calculation slightly different from the last one. The equation shows that 1 mol of sulfuric acid reacts with 2 mol of sodium hydroxide. So the number of moles of sodium hydroxide is twice the number of moles of sulfuric acid:

$$\text{number of moles of sodium hydroxide} = 2 \times 0.0010 = 0.0020\,\text{mol}$$

That 0.0020 mol must have been in the 25.0 cm³ (25/1000 = 0.025 dm³) of sodium hydroxide solution:

$$\text{concentration (mol/dm}^3) = \frac{\text{number of moles (mol)}}{\text{volume (dm}^3)}$$

$$\text{concentration} = 0.0020/0.025 = 0.080\,\text{mol/dm}^3$$

Therefore the concentration of the sodium hydroxide is 0.080 mol/dm³.

REVERSING THE CALCULATIONS

Instead of calculating the concentration of a solution using titration results, you may be asked to calculate what volume of a solution is needed to neutralise something else. Here is an example.

EXAMPLE 4

Calculate the volume of 0.100 mol/dm³ sodium hydrogencarbonate ($NaHCO_3$) solution needed to neutralise 20.0 cm³ of 0.125 mol/dm³ hydrochloric acid (HCl).

$$NaHCO_3(aq) + HCl(aq) \rightarrow NaCl(aq) + CO_2(g) + H_2O(l)$$

We have been given the volume and concentration of the hydrochloric acid and so we can calculate the number of moles of this. We do not have enough information to calcuate the number of moles of anything else, so must start here:

$$\text{number of moles of HCl} = \frac{20.0}{1000} \times 0.125 = 0.00250\,\text{mol}$$

The equation shows that you will need the same number of moles of sodium hydrogencarbonate. Therefore we know that we need 0.00250 mol of $NaHCO_3$.

To calculate the volume this is in, we just need to rearrange our concentration equation to obtain:

$$\text{volume (dm}^3) = \frac{\text{number of moles (mol)}}{\text{concentration (mol/dm}^3)}$$

$$\text{volume} = \frac{0.00250}{0.100} = 0.0250\ \text{dm}^3$$

The volume comes out in dm^3 because the concentration is in mol/dm^3. We can convert to cm^3 by multiplying by 1000:

volume of $NaHCO_3$ solution = 25.0 cm^3

You will need 25.0 cm^3 of the sodium hydrogencarbonate solution to neutralise the hydrochloric acid.

CHAPTER QUESTIONS

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

In questions 1 to 4, take the molar volume to be 24 dm^3 (24 000 cm^3) at rtp.

1 Calculate the amount in moles of each of the following:

a 2.4 dm^3 of O_2 at rtp
b 480 dm^3 of He at rtp
c 100 cm^3 of CO_2 at rtp
d 1500 cm^3 of N_2 at rtp

2 Calculate the volume of each of the following gases at rtp:

a 2.0 mol H_2
b 0.10 mol SO_2
c 1.0×10^{-3} mol CO

3 a Calculate the mass of 200 cm^3 of chlorine gas (Cl_2) at rtp. (A_r: Cl = 35.5)

b Calculate the volume occupied by 0.16 g of oxygen (O_2) at rtp. (A_r: O = 16)

c If 1 dm^3 of a gas at rtp has a mass of 1.42 g, calculate the mass of 1 mole of the gas.

4 0.240 g of magnesium is reacted with an excess of dilute sulfuric acid. (A_r: Mg = 24)

$$Mg(s) + H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow MgSO_4(aq) + H_2(g)$$

Calculate the amount in moles of Mg which reacted.

Calculate the number of moles of hydrogen produced in the reaction.

Calculate the volume of hydrogen (measured at rtp) produced in the reaction.

5 Potassium nitrate decomposes when heated to produce oxygen gas:

$$2KNO_3(s) \rightarrow 2KNO_2(s) + O_2(g)$$

In an experiment 1.00 dm^3 (measured at rtp) of oxygen gas was collected.

(A_r: N = 14, O = 16, K = 39; molar volume = 24 dm^3 at rtp)

Calculate the amount in moles of oxygen gas collected.

Calculate the amount in moles of KNO_3 that reacted.

Calculate the mass of KNO_3 that reacted.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

6 Chlorine can be prepared by heating manganese(IV) oxide with an excess of concentrated hydrochloric acid. What is the maximum volume of chlorine (measured at room temperature and pressure) that could be obtained from 2.00 g of manganese(IV) oxide? (A_r: O = 16, Mn = 55; molar volume = 24 000 cm³ at rtp)

$$MnO_2(s) + 4HCl(aq) \rightarrow MnCl_2(aq) + Cl_2(g) + H_2O(l)$$

7 Some dilute sulfuric acid, H_2SO_4, had a concentration of 4.90 g/dm³. What is its concentration in mol/dm³? (A_r: H = 1, O = 16, S = 32)

8 What is the concentration in g/dm³ of potassium hydroxide, KOH, solution with a concentration of 0.200 mol/dm³? (A_r: H = 1, O = 16, K = 39)

9 Calculate the amount in moles in each of the following:

a 25.0 cm³ of 0.100 mol/dm³ NaCl(aq)

b 200 cm³ of 0.200 mol/dm³ H_2SO_4(aq)

c 75.0 cm³ of 0.150 mol/dm³ HCl(aq)

d 22.4 cm³ of 0.280 mol/dm³ HNO_3(aq)

10 Calculate the concentration in mol/dm³ of each of the following solutions:

a 2.00 dm³ of sodium hydroxide solution containing 0.100 mol sodium hydroxide

b 25.0 cm³ of sulfuric acid containing 0.0200 mol sulfuric acid

c 27.8 cm³ of hydrochloric acid containing 0.00150 mol hydrochloric acid

11 Calculate the volume in cm³ of each of the following solutions:

a the volume of 0.100 mol/dm³ H_2SO_4(aq) that contains 0.500 mol

b the volume of 0.0200 mol/dm³ NaOH(aq) that contains 0.00500 mol

c the volume of 0.500 mol/dm³ $MgCl_2$(aq) that contains 0.0200 mol

12 When barium chloride solution is added to copper(II) sulfate solution a precipitate of barium sulfate ($BaSO_4$) is formed.

$$BaCl_2(aq) + CuSO_4(aq) \rightarrow BaSO_4(s) + CuCl_2(aq)$$

Excess barium chloride solution is added to 20.0 cm³ of copper(II) sulfate solution of concentration 0.100 mol/dm³. (A_r: O = 16, S = 32, Ba = 137)

Calculate the number of moles of copper(II) sulfate.

Calculate the number of moles of barium sulfate formed.

Calculate the mass of barium sulfate formed.

13 Calcium carbonate reacts with hydrochloric acid:

$$CaCO_3(s) + 2HCl(aq) \rightarrow CaCl_2(aq) + H_2O(l) + CO_2(g)$$

Calcium carbonate is added to 25.0 cm³ of 2.00 mol/dm³ hydrochloric acid. (A_r: C = 12, O = 16, Ca = 40)

Calculate the amount in moles of hydrochloric acid.

Calculate the amount in moles of $CaCO_3$ that reacts with the acid.

Calculate the mass of $CaCO_3$ that reacts with the acid.

Calculate the volume of CO_2 (measured at rtp) produced.

(Molar volume at rtp is 24 000 cm³.)

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

14 Hydrogen peroxide solution decomposes to form oxygen gas:

$2H_2O_2(aq) \rightarrow 2H_2O(l) + O_2(g)$

Calculate the volume of oxygen gas (measured at rtp) produced when 30.0 cm^3 of 0.0200 mol/dm^3 hydrogen peroxide decomposes to form oxygen gas. (Molar volume at rtp is 24 000 cm^3.)

15 **a** Calculate the volume of 0.200 mol/dm^3 sulfuric acid needed to neutralise 25.0 cm^3 of 0.400 mol/dm^3 sodium hydroxide solution.

$2NaOH(aq) + H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow Na_2SO_4(aq) + 2H_2O(l)$

b Calculate the minimum volume of 2.00 mol/dm^3 hydrochloric acid needed to react with 10.0 g of calcium carbonate. (A_r: C = 12, O = 16, Ca = 40)

$CaCO_3(s) + 2HCl(aq) \rightarrow CaCl_2(aq) + H_2O(l) + CO_2(g)$

16 In each of these questions concerning titrations, calculate the unknown concentration in mol/dm^3.

a 25.0 cm^3 of 0.100 mol/dm^3 sodium hydroxide was neutralised by 20.0 cm^3 of dilute nitric acid of unknown concentration.

$NaOH(aq) + HNO_3(aq) \rightarrow NaNO_3(aq) + H_2O(l)$

b 25.0 cm^3 of sodium carbonate solution of unknown concentration was neutralised by 30.0 cm^3 of 0.100 mol/dm^3 nitric acid.

$Na_2CO_3(aq) + 2HNO_3(aq) \rightarrow 2NaNO_3(aq) + CO_2(g) + H_2O(l)$

c 25.0 cm^3 of 0.250 mol/dm^3 potassium carbonate solution was neutralised by 12.5 cm^3 of ethanoic acid of unknown concentration.

$2CH_3COOH(aq) + K_2CO_3(aq) \rightarrow 2CH_3COOK(aq) + CO_2(g) + H_2O(l)$

17 Limewater is calcium hydroxide solution. In an experiment to find the concentration of calcium hydroxide in limewater, 25.0 cm^3 of limewater needed 18.8 cm^3 of 0.0400 mol/dm^3 hydrochloric acid to neutralise it.

$Ca(OH)_2(aq) + 2HCl(aq) \rightarrow CaCl_2(aq) + 2H_2O(l)$

Calculate the concentration of the calcium hydroxide in:

a mol/dm^3 **b** g/dm^3

(A_r: H = 1, O = 16, Ca = 40)

18 Sodium carbonate solution reacts with nitric acid according to the following equation:

$Na_2CO_3(aq) + 2HNO_3(aq) \rightarrow 2NaNO_3(aq) + CO_2(g) + H_2O(l)$

In each of the following questions work out which reagent is in excess and calculate the volume of CO_2 produced at rtp. (Molar volume at rtp is 24000 cm^3)

a 0.1 mol Na_2CO_3 is reacted with 0.1 mol HNO_3.

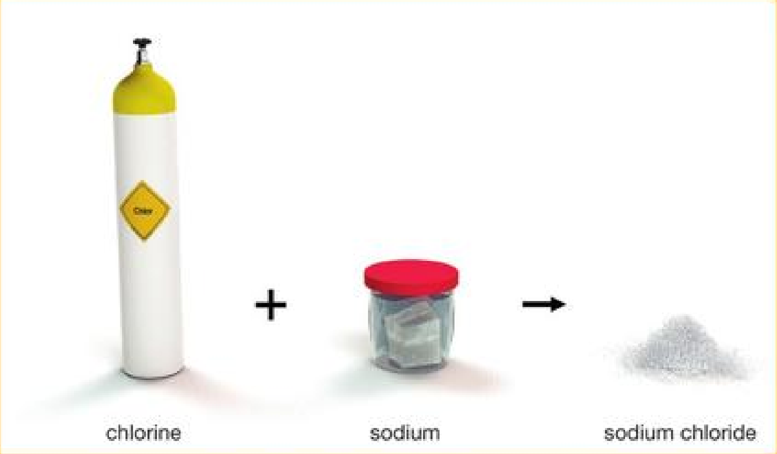
b 20.0 cm^3 of 0.100 mol/dm^3 Na_2CO_3 is reacted with 0.0200 mol HNO_3.

c 25.0 cm^3 of 0.300 mol/dm^3 Na_2CO_3 is reacted with 20.0 cm^3 of 0.400 mol/dm^3 HNO_3.

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

7 IONIC BONDING

We have already looked at the definition of a compound. A compound is formed when two or more elements chemically combine. In this chapter we are going to look at one way in which elements can chemically combine: by the transfer of electrons to form ionic compounds.



▲ Figure 7.1 The properties of a compound are very different from those of the elements. Sodium (an element) is a dangerously reactive metal. It is stored under oil to prevent it reacting with air or water. Chlorine (an element) is a very poisonous, reactive gas. But salt, sodium chloride (an ionic compound), is safe to eat in small quantities.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Understand how ions are formed by electron loss or gain
- Know the charges of these ions:
  - metals in Groups 1, 2 and 3
  - non-metals in Groups 5, 6 and 7
  - Ag^+, Cu^{2+}, Fe^{2+}, Fe^{3+}, Pb^{2+}, Zn^{2+}
  - hydrogen (H^+), hydroxide (OH^-), ammonium (NH_4^+), carbonate (CO_3^{2-}), nitrate (NO_3^-), sulfate (SO_4^{2-})
- Write formulae for compounds formed between the ions listed above
- Draw dot-and-cross diagrams to show the formation of ionic compounds by electron transfer, limited to combinations of elements from Groups 1, 2, 3, 5, 6 and 7 *(only outer electrons need be shown)*
- Understand ionic bonding in terms of electrostatic attractions
- Understand why compounds with giant ionic lattices have high melting and boiling points
- Know that ionic compounds do not conduct electricity when solid, but do conduct electricity when molten and in aqueous solution

IONIC BONDING

Sodium chloride is probably the best-known example of an ionic compound – one that is held together by **ionic bonding**. There are lots of other ionic compounds, such as magnesium oxide, calcium fluoride and zinc bromide. What you will realise about all these compounds is that they all contain a metal combined with a non-metal.

You can recognise ionic compounds because they (usually) contain a metal.

HINT

There are one or two exceptions to this: there are ionic compounds that do not contain a metal, for example those containing the ammonium ion (such as NH_4Cl, $(NH_4)_2SO_4$. We will look at these later.

KEY POINT

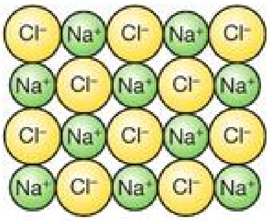
This is a simplification! In reality, you don't react sodium with chlorine atoms, but with chlorine molecules, Cl_2.

KEY POINT

You can check that sodium does have a positive charge. If you look at the Periodic Table you will see that sodium has an atomic number of 11, so it has 11 protons in its nucleus. Protons have a positive charge so the charge on the nucleus is 11+. In the sodium **atom** there are 11 electrons, each with a negative charge. These cancel out the 11+ on the nucleus and there is no overall charge. However, in the sodium ion there are only 10 electrons, so with 11+ and 10– there is an overall charge of 1+.

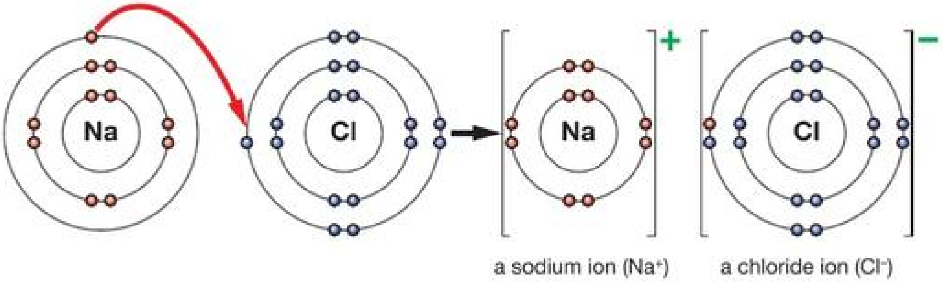
KEY POINT

Electrostatic attraction simply means that positively charged particles attract negatively charged particles.



▲ Figure 7.3 Part of the structure of a sodium chloride crystal. The structure is held together by the attraction between positive and negative ions.

When a non-metal such as chlorine combines with a metal such as sodium, the chlorine atom has a stronger attraction for electrons than the sodium atom and *an electron is transferred from the outer shell of the sodium atom to the outer shell of the chlorine atom*. Because an electron has a negative charge, when something gains an electron it becomes negatively charged, and when something loses an electron it becomes positively charged.



▲ Figure 7.2 Ionic bonding in sodium chloride. Ionic bonding involves the transfer of electron(s).

The charged particles that are formed are called **ions**.

Ions are charged particles formed when atoms (or groups of atoms) lose or gain electrons. Ions can have either a positive or a negative charge.

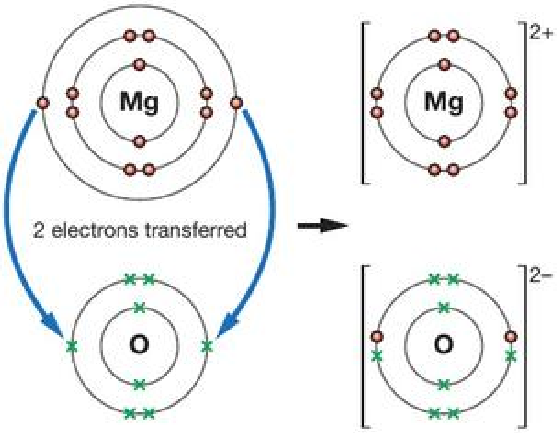
- A positive ion is called a **cation**, for example Na^+.
- A negative ion is called an **anion**, for example Cl^-.

When an ionic compound is formed, electron(s) are transferred from a metal atom to a non-metal atom to form positive and negative ions. Ionic compounds have ionic bonding. *Ionic bonding is the strong electrostatic attraction between positive and negative ions.*

Ionic bonding is often shown using **dot-and-cross diagrams**. Figure 7.4 is an example of a dot-and-cross diagram. Although the electrons are drawn as dots or as crosses, there is absolutely no difference between them in reality. The dots and the crosses simply show that the electrons have come from two different atoms. You could equally well use two different coloured dots (as in Figure 7.2), or two different coloured crosses.

IONIC BONDING IN MAGNESIUM OXIDE

A dot-and-cross diagram for MgO is shown in Figure 7.4.

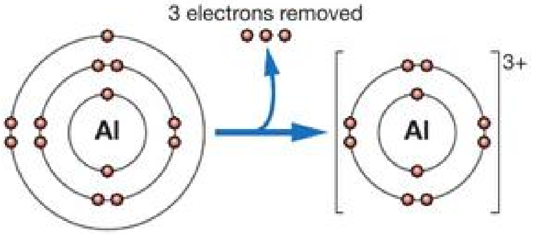


▲ Figure 7.4 A dot-and-cross diagram for magnesium oxide. When drawing these diagrams, don't forget the charges on the ions.

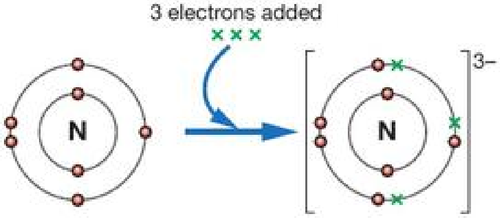
Two electrons are transferred from a magnesium atom to an oxygen atom to form Mg^{2+} and O^{2-} ions.

THE SIGNIFICANCE OF NOBLE GAS ELECTRONIC CONFIGURATIONS IN IONIC BONDING

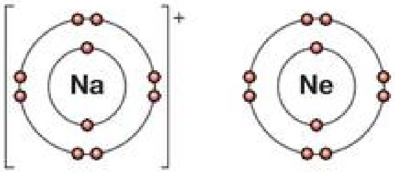
If you look at the electronic arrangements of the ions formed in Figures 7.2, 7.4, 7.5 and 7.6, each of them has a noble gas electronic configuration: [2, 8] (the same as neon) or [2, 8, 8] (the same as argon). For the first 20 elements, atoms lose or gain electrons so that they achieve a noble gas electronic configuration. The elements in Groups 1, 2 and 3 of the Periodic Table will lose their outer shell electrons to form 1+, 2+ and 3+ ions, and the elements in Groups 5, 6 and 7 will gain electrons to form 3–, 2– and 1– ions.



▲ Figure 7.5 An aluminium atom loses its 3 outer shell electrons to form an Al^{3+} ion.



▲ Figure 7.6 A nitrogen atom gains 3 electrons to form the nitride ion (N^{3-}).



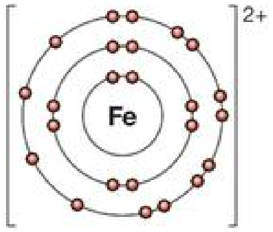
▲ Figure 7.7 Na^+ and Ne are isoelectronic – they have the same number of electrons.

KEY POINT

We sometimes use the word **isoelectronic**, which means 'have the same number of electrons'. So, when sodium forms an ion (electronic configuration [2, 8]) it becomes isoelectronic with neon [2, 8].

Elements in Groups 1, 2, 6 and 7 always form ions that are isoelectronic with the nearest noble gas atom. For example, rubidium (Rb), which is in Group 1, has 1 electron in its outer shell and will lose this outer shell electron to form a 1+ ion, which has the same number of electrons as a krypton (Kr) atom. Iodine is in Group 7, so it has 7 electrons in its outer shell; it will gain 1 electron when it forms an ion to form a 1– ion. This 1– ion has the same number of electrons as a xenon (Xe) atom.

However, there are a lot of common ions that don't have noble gas structures. Fe^{2+}, Fe^{3+}, Cu^{2+}, Zn^{2+}, Ag^+ and Pb^{2+} are all ions that you will come across during the International GSCE course, although you won't have to write their electronic structures. Not one of them has a noble gas structure.

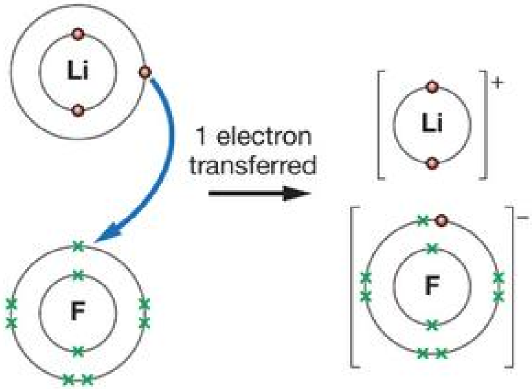


▲ Figure 7.8 An Fe^{2+} ion – definitely not a noble gas structure!

OTHER EXAMPLES OF IONIC BONDING

Ionic bonds are usually formed only if small numbers of electrons need to be transferred, typically 1 or 2, but occasionally 3.

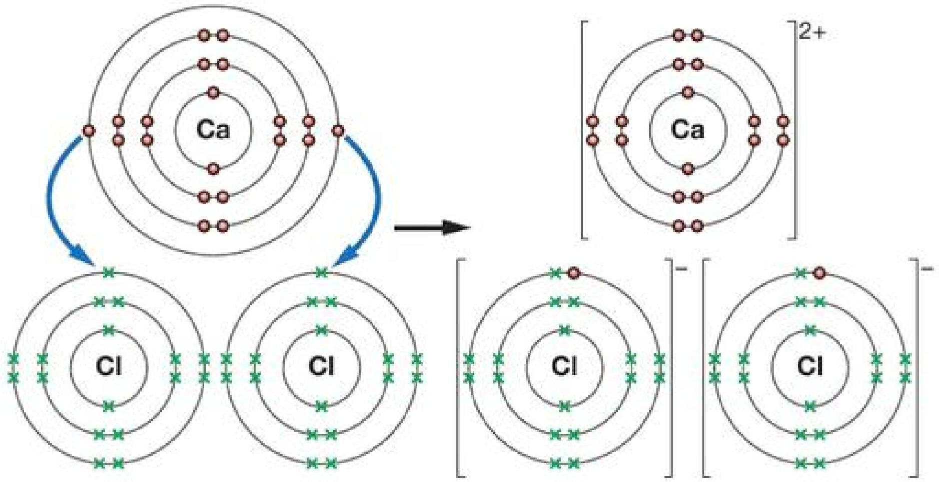
LITHIUM FLUORIDE



▲ Figure 7.9 A dot-and-cross diagram for lithium fluoride

The lithium atom has 1 electron in its outer shell that is easily lost, and the fluorine has space to receive one. One electron is transferred from the lithium atom to the fluorine atom. Lithium fluoride is held together by the strong electrostatic attractions between positive lithium (Li^+) ions and the negative fluoride (F^-) ions.

CALCIUM CHLORIDE



▲ Figure 7.10 A dot-and-cross diagram to show the formation of calcium chloride.

The calcium atom [2, 8, 8, 2] has 2 electrons in its outer shell but each chlorine atom [2, 8, 7] only has room in its outer shell to take one of them. You need two chlorines for every calcium. The 2 electrons are transferred from the outer shell of a calcium atom to two chlorine atoms, one to each. The formula for calcium chloride is therefore $CaCl_2$. There will be very strong electrostatic attractions holding the ions together because of the 2+ charge on the calcium ions.

FORMULAE FOR IONIC COMPOUNDS

There are so many different ionic compounds that you might encounter at International GSCE that it would be impossible to learn all their formulae. You need a simple way to work them out. You could work out a few from first principles, using their electronic structures, but that would take ages. Others would be too difficult. You need a simple, shortcut method.

THE NEED FOR EQUAL NUMBERS OF PLUSES AND MINUSES

Ions are formed when atoms, or groups of atoms, lose or gain electrons. They carry an electrical charge, either positive or negative. Compounds are electrically neutral. Therefore in an ionic compound there must be the right number of each sort of ion, so that the total positive charge exactly cancels out the total negative charge. Obviously, then, if you are going to work out a formula, you need to know the charges on the ions.

CASES WHERE YOU CAN WORK OUT THE CHARGE ON AN ION

Any element in Group 2 has 2 outer electrons, which it will lose to form a 2+ ion. Any element in Group 6 has 6 outer electrons, and it has room to gain 2 more; this leads to a 2– ion. Similar arguments apply in the other groups shown in Table 7.1.

Table 7.1 The charges on an ion in Groups 1–7

Group in Periodic Table	Charge on ion	Example
1	1+	Na^+
2	2+	Mg^{2+}
3	3+	Al^{3+}
5	3–	N^{3-}
6	2–	O^{2-}
7	1–	Br^-

HINT

You will always have a copy of the Periodic Table, even in an exam. That means that you can always find out which group an element is in. Elements in Group 4 only form a few ionic compounds and the situation is a bit more complicated. You will need to learn that lead forms a 2+ ion (Pb^{2+}).

REMINDER

Remember that all metals form positive ions.

CASES WHERE THE NAME TELLS YOU THE CHARGE

All metals form positive ions. Names such as lead(II) oxide, iron(III) chloride or copper(II) sulfate tell you directly about the charge on the metal ion. The number after the metal tells you the number of charges, so:

- lead(II) oxide contains a Pb^{2+} ion
- iron(III) chloride contains an Fe^{3+} ion
- copper(II) sulfate contains a Cu^{2+} ion.

You cannot work out the charges for some ions, you have to learn them. Ions that need to be learned are shown in Table 7.2.

Table 7.2 Ions that you should learn.

Charge	Substance	Ion	Charge	Substance	Ion
positive	zinc	Zn^{2+}	negative	nitrate	NO_3^-
	silver	Ag^+		hydroxide	OH^-
	hydrogen	H^+		carbonate	CO_3^{2-}
	ammonium	NH_4^+		sulfate	SO_4^{2-}

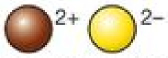
You will encounter other ions during the course, but these are the important ones for now. The ions in this list are the difficult ones – be sure to learn both the formula and the charge for each ion.

KEY POINT

Ammonium chloride (NH_4Cl) is an example of an ionic compound that does not contain a metal. There is ionic bonding between the NH_4^+ and Cl^- ions. There is, however, also covalent bonding (see Chapter 8) in this compound: the NH_4^+ ion is held together by covalent bonding.

CONFUSING ENDINGS!

Don't confuse ions such as sulf**ate** and sulf**ide**. A name like copper(II) sulf**ide** means that it contains copper and sulfur **only**. Any '**ide**' ending means that there isn't anything complicated there. Sodium chloride, for example, is just sodium and chlorine combined together. So copper(II) sulfide contains Cu^{2+} and S^{2-} ions.



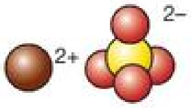
copper(II) sulfide

▲ Figure 7.11 Copper(II) sulfide is CuS.

HINT

Not looking carefully at word endings is one of the most common mistakes students make when they start to write formulae. Be careful!

Once you have an '**ate**' ending, it means that there is oxygen (and possibly other things) there as well. So, for example, copper(II) sulfate contains copper, sulfur and oxygen.



copper(II) sulfate

▲ Figure 7.12 Copper(II) sulfate is $CuSO_4$.

DEDUCING THE FORMULA FOR AN IONIC COMPOUND

EXAMPLE 1

To find the formula for sodium oxide

Sodium is in Group 1, so the ion is Na^+.

Oxygen is in Group 6, so the ion is O^{2-}.

To have equal numbers of positive and negative charges, you would need two sodium ions to provide the two positive charges to cancel the two negative charges on one oxide ion. In other words, you need:

Na^+ Na^+ O^{2-}

The formula is therefore $\mathbf{Na_2O}$.

EXAMPLE 2

To find the formula for barium nitrate

Barium is in Group 2, so the ion is Ba^{2+}.

Nitrate ions are NO_3^-. You will have to remember this.

To have equal numbers of positive and negative charges, you would need two nitrate ions for each barium ion.

The formula is $\mathbf{Ba(NO_3)_2}$.

Notice the brackets around the nitrate group. *Brackets must be written if you have more than one of these complex ions* (ions containing more than one atom). In any other situation, they are completely unnecessary.

KEY POINT

If you didn't write the brackets, the formula would look like this: $BaNO_{32}$. That would read as 1 barium, 1 nitrogen and 32 oxygens!

EXAMPLE 3

To find the formula for iron(III) sulfate

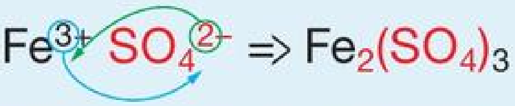
Iron(III) tells you that the metal ion is Fe^{3+}.

Sulfate ions are SO_4^{2-}.

To have equal numbers of positive and negative charges, you would need two iron(III) ions for every three sulfate ions, giving 6+ and 6– in total.

The formula is $\mathbf{Fe_2(SO_4)_3}$.

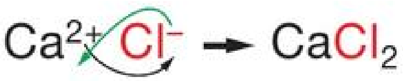
A shortcut to working out complicated formulae such as these is to just swap over the numbers in the charges. This is shown in Figure 7.13.



$$Fe^{3+} \; SO_4^{2-} \Rightarrow Fe_2(SO_4)_3$$

▲ Figure 7.13 If you cross over the numbers in the charges you will get the formula.

CALCIUM CHLORIDE PROVIDES ANOTHER EXAMPLE



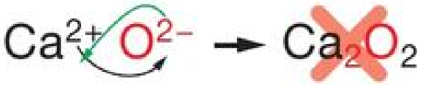
$$Ca^{2+} \; Cl^- \rightarrow CaCl_2$$

▲ Figure 7.14 To work out the formula of calcium chloride we cross over the numbers in the charges. There is no extra number in front of the charge in Cl^- because we do not tend to write in a 1.

KEY POINT

Why aren't ion charges shown in formulae? Actually, they can be shown. For example, the formula for sodium chloride is NaCl. It is sometimes written Na^+Cl^- if you are trying to make a particular point, but for most purposes the charges are left out. In an ionic compound, the charges are there, whether you write them or not.

You have to be careful using this method because you can get the wrong answer when the charges on the ions are the same. For example, the formula of calcium oxide is CaO and not Ca_2O_2. When the charges on the positive and negative ions are the same you can deduce that there will be 1 of each ion in the formula, so there is no need to swap anything over.



$$Ca^{2+} \; O^{2-} \rightarrow \cancel{Ca_2O_2}$$

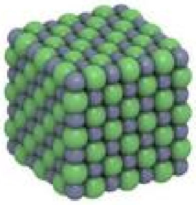
▲ Figure 7.15 The formula of calcium oxide is CaO and not Ca_2O_2.

GIANT IONIC STRUCTURES

All ionic compounds form crystals that consist of lattices of positive and negative ions packed together in a regular way. A **lattice** is a regular array of particles. The lattice is held together by the strong electrostatic attractions between the positively and negatively charged ions.

▲ Figure 7.16 A lattice fence. A lattice is a regular, repeating structure.

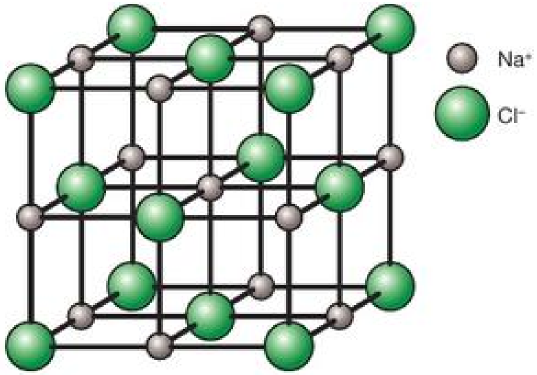
THE STRUCTURE OF SODIUM CHLORIDE



▲ Figure 7.17 A model of a small part of a sodium chloride crystal

Figure 7.17 shows how the ions in a crystal of sodium chloride are arranged.

In diagrams, the ions are usually drawn in an 'exploded' view (Figure 7.18). Each sodium ion is surrounded by 6 chloride ions. In turn, each chloride ion is surrounded by 6 sodium ions. You have to remember that this pattern repeats itself throughout the structure over vast numbers of ions.



▲ Figure 7.18 An 'exploded' view of sodium chloride. The lines in this diagram are not bonds, they are just there to help show the arrangement of the ions. Those ions joined by lines are touching each other.

The structure of sodium chloride is described as a **giant ionic lattice**. We are using the word '**giant**' here not in the sense of big but rather to describe a structure where there are no individual molecules. All the sodium ions in the structure attract all the chloride ions, we cannot pick out sodium chloride molecules; there are no individual molecules. The bonding in a giant ionic lattice extends throughout the structure in all directions. There is no limit to the number of particles present, all we know is that there must be the same number of sodium and chloride ions.

HINT

This is really important: you must not talk about *molecules* of an ionic compound. This will be marked wrong in the exam and you could lose all the marks for a question!

THE STRUCTURE OF MAGNESIUM OXIDE

Magnesium oxide, MgO, contains magnesium ions, Mg^{2+}, and oxide ions, O^{2-}. It has exactly the same structure as sodium chloride. The only difference is that the magnesium oxide lattice is held together by stronger forces of attraction. This is because in magnesium oxide, 2+ ions are attracting 2− ions. In sodium chloride, the electrostatic attractions are weaker because they are only between 1+ and 1− ions.

EXTENSION WORK

The Mg^{2+} ion is also smaller than the Na^+ ion, and the O^{2-} ion is smaller than the Cl^- ion. This causes stronger attractions but the effect of the charge on the ions is more important.

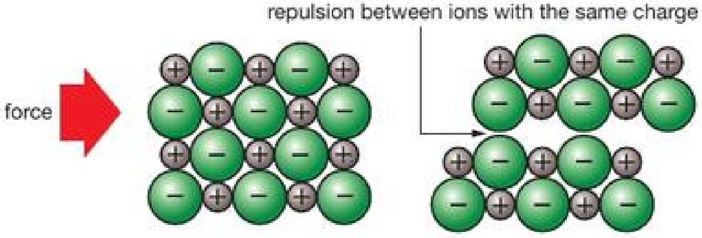
THE PHYSICAL PROPERTIES OF IONIC SUBSTANCES

Ionic compounds have high melting points and boiling points because of the strong electrostatic forces of attraction holding the lattice together. A lot of energy has to be supplied to break the strong electrostatic forces of attraction between oppositely charged ions in the giant lattice structure.

Ionic compounds tend to be crystalline. This reflects the regular arrangement of ions in the lattice. Sometimes the crystals are too small to be seen except under powerful microscopes. Magnesium oxide, for example, is always seen as a white powder because the individual crystals are too small to be seen with the naked eye.

▲ Figure 7.19 Sodium chloride is crystalline

Ionic crystals tend to be brittle. This is because any small distortion of a crystal will bring ions with the same charge alongside each other. Like charges repel and so the crystal splits itself apart.



▲ Figure 7.20 Ionic crystals tend to be brittle

KEY POINT

Organic solvents include ethanol (alcohol) and hydrocarbons, such as hexane and those found in petrol. If you are interested in these, you could explore the organic chemistry section of this book (Unit 4).

Ionic substances tend to be soluble in water.

Ionic compounds tend to be insoluble in organic solvents.

EXTENSION WORK

The reasons that ionic compounds tend to be soluble in water are quite complicated. Water is a covalent molecule (Chapter 8) but the electrons in the bonds are more attracted towards the oxygen end of the bond. This makes the oxygen slightly negative and the hydrogen slightly positive – the molecule is called **polar**. This means that reasonably strong forces can be formed between water molecules and ions, which provide the energy to break the lattice apart.

Not all ionic substances are soluble in water: magnesium oxide isn't soluble in water because the attractions between the water molecules and the ions aren't strong enough to overcome the very strong electrostatic forces of attraction between magnesium and oxide ions.

Hexane is non-polar and does not form strong enough attractions to the ions to break apart the ionic lattice.

THE ELECTRICAL CONDUCTIVITY OF IONIC SUBSTANCES

HINT

Molten just means that the salt has been melted – it is a liquid.

Ionic compounds don't conduct electricity when they are solid because the *ions* are fixed in position and are not free to move around. They do, however, conduct electricity when they are **molten** (have melted) or if they are dissolved in water (in aqueous solution). This happens because the *ions* then become free to move around. It is really important that you use the correct words when explaining this. Do not use the word 'electrons'. You must talk about the **ions** being free to move.

CHAPTER QUESTIONS

SKILLS INTERPRETATION 7

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 8

1 a Explain what is meant by i an ion and ii ionic bonding.

b In each of the following cases, write down the electronic configurations of the original atoms and then explain (in words or diagrams) what happens when:

  i sodium bonds with chlorine to make sodium chloride
  ii lithium bonds with oxygen to make lithium oxide
  iii magnesium bonds with fluorine to make magnesium fluoride.

SKILLS INTERPRETATION

2 Draw dot-and-cross diagrams to show the ions formed (outer electrons only) when:

  a potassium combines with fluorine
  b calcium combines with bromine
  c magnesium combines with iodine.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

3 a State the formula of the ion formed by:
   - i magnesium
   - ii strontium
   - iii potassium
   - iv oxygen
   - v sulfur
   - vi caesium
   - vii chlorine
   - viii iodine
   - ix aluminium
   - x calcium
   - xi nitrogen

  b State the name of each negative ion in a.

4 Work out the formulae of the following compounds:

lead(II) oxide
magnesium sulfate
potassium carbonate
calcium nitrate
iron(II) sulfate
aluminium sulfate
cobalt(II) chloride
silver nitrate
ammonium nitrate
sodium sulfate
sodium bromide
zinc chloride
ammonium sulfide
iron(III) hydroxide
copper(II) carbonate
calcium hydroxide
calcium oxide
iron(III) fluoride
rubidium iodide
chromium(III) oxide

SKILLS REASONING

5 Explain why sodium chloride:
  a has a high melting point
  b does not conduct electricity when solid
  c conducts electricity when molten.

6 Predict, giving reasons, whether you would expect potassium chloride to have a higher or lower melting point than calcium oxide.

8 COVALENT BONDING

We met ionic compounds in Chapter 7 and in this chapter we will understand what covalent bonding is. There are a lot more covalent compounds than ionic compounds so it is important that you understand how the bonding works.

▲ Figure 8.1 Water is a covalent compound but the salt dissolved in sea water is an ionic compound.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Know that a covalent bond is formed between atoms by the sharing of a pair of electrons
- Understand covalent bonds in terms of electrostatic attractions
- Understand how to use dot-and-cross diagrams to represent covalent bonds in:
  - diatomic molecules, including hydrogen, oxygen, nitrogen, halogens and hydrogen halides
  - inorganic molecules, including water, ammonia and carbon dioxide
  - organic molecules containing up to two carbon atoms, including methane, ethane, ethene and those containing halogen atoms
- Explain why substances with a simple molecular structure are gases or liquids, or solids with low melting and boiling points
- Understand that the term intermolecular forces of attraction can be used to represent all forces between molecules
- Explain why the melting and boiling points of substances with simple molecular structures increase, in general, with increasing relative molecular mass
- Explain why substances with giant covalent structures are solids with high melting and boiling points
- Explain how the structures of diamond, graphite and C_{60} fullerene influence their physical properties, including electrical conductivity and hardness
- Know that covalent compounds do not usually conduct electricity

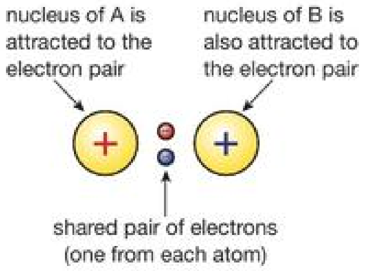
COVALENT BONDING

WHAT IS A COVALENT BOND?

In any bond, particles are held together by electrostatic attractions between something positively charged and something negatively charged. In a **covalent bond**, *a pair of electrons is shared between two atoms*. What holds the atoms together is *the strong electrostatic attraction between the nuclei (positively charged) of the atoms that make up the bond, and the shared pair of electrons (negatively charged)*.

EXTENSION WORK

In most of the simple examples you will meet at International GCSE, each atom in a covalent bond supplies one electron to the shared pair of electrons. That doesn't have to be the case. Both electrons may come from the same atom.


nucleus of A is attracted to the electron pair
nucleus of B is also attracted to the electron pair
+
+
shared pair of electrons (one from each atom)

▲ Figure 8.2 The shared pair of electrons is attracted to the nuclei of both atoms.

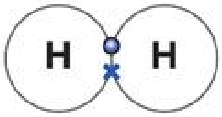
COVALENT BONDING IN A HYDROGEN MOLECULE

HINT

Remember that, although the electrons are drawn as dots or as crosses, there is absolutely no difference between them in reality; the dots and the crosses simply show that the electrons have come from two different atoms.

Covalent bonds are often shown using dot-and-cross diagrams.

Both hydrogen nuclei in Figure 8.3 are strongly attracted to the shared pair of electrons.



▲ Figure 8.3 A dot-and-cross diagram for H_2

Hydrogen atoms form diatomic molecules with the formula H_2. The atoms in an H_2 molecule are joined together by a covalent bond. The covalent bond between two hydrogen atoms is very strong.

Molecules contain a certain fixed number of atoms, which are joined together by covalent bonds. Hydrogen molecules are said to be **diatomic** because they contain two atoms. Other sorts of molecule may have as many as thousands of atoms joined together, for example proteins and DNA.

THE SIGNIFICANCE OF NOBLE GAS STRUCTURES IN COVALENT BONDING

In H_2, each hydrogen atom has only one electron to share, so it can only form one covalent bond. The shared pair of electrons is in the outer shell of both, therefore each atom has the same number of electrons as a noble gas atom (helium in this case).

Does that mean that the hydrogen has turned into helium? No. The number of protons in the nucleus hasn't changed, it is the number of protons that defines what an atom is.

REMINDER

If atoms have 8 electrons in their outer shell they have the same number of electrons as a noble gas atom – they are isoelectronic with a noble gas atom.

In virtually all of the molecules you will meet at this level, electrons will be shared so that H atoms have a total of 2 electrons in their outer shell and all other atoms will have 8 electrons in their outer shell. Some people talk about the '**octet** rule', referring to this 8. Remember, we are counting shared electrons as belonging to the outer shells of both atoms.

When there is one atom in the middle and other atoms are joined to it (as in CH_4 or PCl_3) the *outer* atoms will virtually always have 8 electrons in their outer shell (or 2 if they are H). In fact, it is very difficult to think of an example where the outer atoms do not have 8 electrons. There are some molecules where the *central* atom does not have 8 electrons in the outer shell, and we will look at a couple of examples of those later on.

WHY DOES HYDROGEN FORM MOLECULES?

Whenever a bond is formed (of whatever kind), energy is released, and that makes the things involved more stable than they were before. The more bonds an atom can form, the more energy is released and the more stable the system becomes. The H_2 molecule is much more stable than two separate hydrogen atoms.

KEY POINT

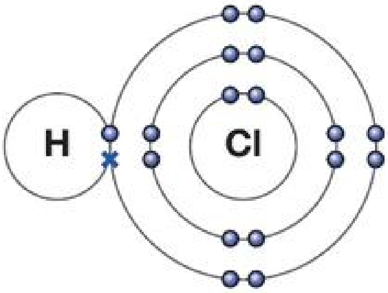
In chemistry, we talk about things being more stable or less stable. When we do this we are usually talking about how much energy something has. Generally, the lower the energy something has, the more stable it is. Chemical reactions usually occur so that something becomes more stable. Think about holding a book: if you let go of the book, it will fall to the floor, where it has less (potential) energy, therefore it becomes more stable. When bonds form energy is given out and so the substance formed has less energy, therefore it is more stable.

COVALENT BONDING IN A HYDROGEN CHLORIDE MOLECULE

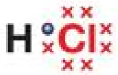
A chlorine atom has 7 electrons in its outer shell. By sharing 1 electron with a hydrogen atom, both atoms will have the same number of electrons as the nearest noble gas atom. If you look at the arrangement of electrons around the chlorine atom in the covalently bonded molecule of HCl (Figure 8.4), you will see that its electronic configuration is now [2, 8, 8]. That is the same as an argon atom. Similarly, the hydrogen now has 2 electrons in its outer shell – the same as helium.

Notice in Figure 8.4 that only the electrons in the outer shell of the chlorine are used in bonding. In the examples you will meet at International GCSE, the inner electrons never get used. In fact, the inner electrons are often left out of bonding diagrams. But be careful! In an exam, only leave out the inner electrons if the question tells you to. Another way of representing the covalent bonding in HCl is shown in Figure 8.5.

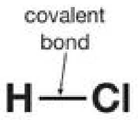
We also use lines to represent the covalent bonds between atoms, but be careful, the diagram shown in Figure 8.6 is not a dot-and-cross diagram.



▲ Figure 8.4 A dot-and-cross diagram for HCl.



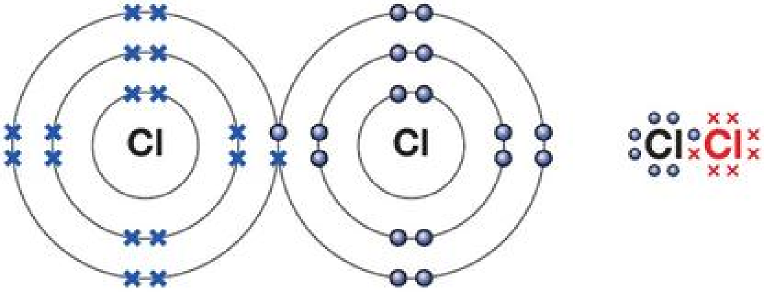
▲ Figure 8.5 The covalent bonding in HCl showing outer shell electrons only.



▲ Figure 8.6 The line between the atoms represents a covalent bond.

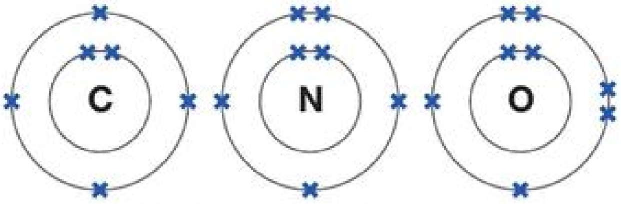
COVALENT BONDING IN A CHLORINE MOLECULE (Cl_2)

A chlorine atom has 7 electrons in its outer shell. Each Cl shares 1 electron so that both Cl atoms will have 8 electrons in their outer shell.



▲ Figure 8.7 Two ways of showing the covalent bonding in Cl_2

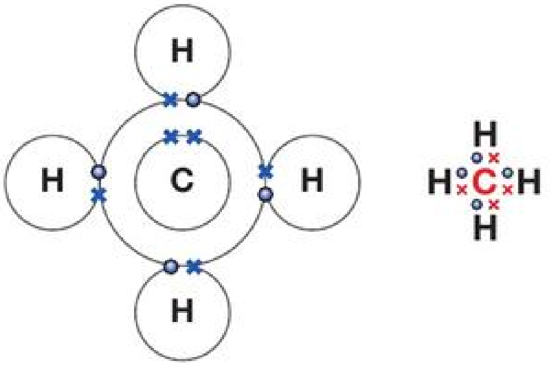
COVALENT BONDING IN METHANE, AMMONIA AND WATER



▲ Figure 8.8 The electronic configurations of C, N and O atoms

COVALENT BONDING IN METHANE

A carbon atom has 4 electrons in its outer shell. By sharing 1 electron with each of 4 hydrogen atoms the C will have 8 electrons in its outer shell and each H will have 2 electrons in its outer shell. Therefore C forms 4 covalent bonds, 1 with each H atom. Methane has the formula CH_4.

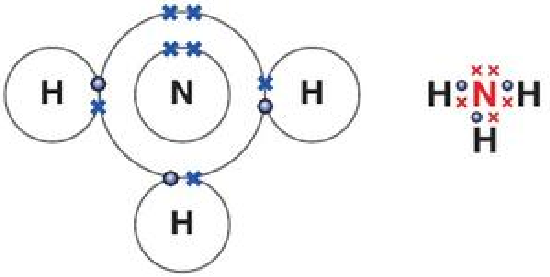


▲ Figure 8.9 Dot-and-cross diagrams for methane

COVALENT BONDING IN AMMONIA

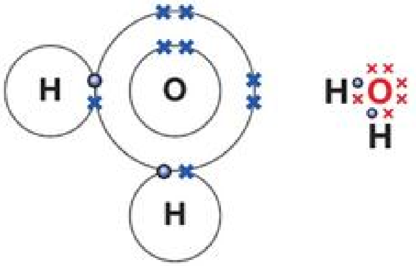
A nitrogen atom has 5 electrons in its outer shell. It will therefore share 3 other electrons to have 8 electrons in its outer shell. In ammonia, a nitrogen atom forms 3 covalent bonds, 1 with each H atom.

The formula of ammonia is NH_3.



▲ Figure 8.10 Dot-and-cross diagrams for ammonia

COVALENT BONDING IN WATER

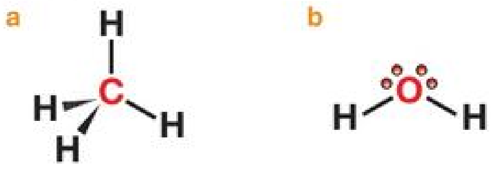


▲ Figure 8.11 Dot-and-cross diagrams for water

An oxygen atom has 6 electrons in its outer shell. It will therefore share 2 other electrons to have 8 electrons in its outer shell. In water, an oxygen atom forms 2 covalent bonds – 1 with each H atom. The formula of water is H_2O.

LOOKING AHEAD

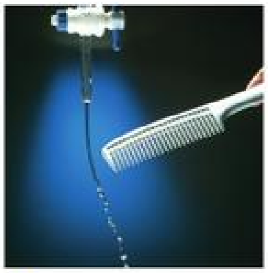
Shapes of molecules



▲ Figure 8.12 (a) A methane molecule is tetrahedral and (b) a water molecule is bent.

By understanding the bonding in a covalent molecule it is possible to work out the shape of the molecule. Pairs of electrons in the outer shell of the central atom repel each other and will therefore tend to get as far apart as possible. For example, in a methane molecule there are four pairs of electrons around the central C atom and for these to be as far away from each other as possible, they must be arranged in a tetrahedral shape. A tetrahedron (adjective: tetrahedral) is a triangular pyramid.

There are also four pairs of electrons around the central atom in water: two of these are pairs of electrons involved in covalent bonds and two are pairs of electrons in the outer shell of the oxygen which are not involved in bonding (these are often called *lone pairs of electrons* or just *lone pairs*). These four pairs of electrons are also arranged in a tetrahedral arrangement so the actual shape of a water molecule (how the atoms are arranged) is described as 'bent' or 'V-shaped'. The fact that a water molecule is bent and the electrons are attracted to a different extent by the oxygen and hydrogen atoms means that a water molecule is polar (has a slightly negative and a slightly positive end) and that a stream of water can be bent by an electrically charged object.



▲ Figure 8.13 Water being bent by an electrically charged comb.

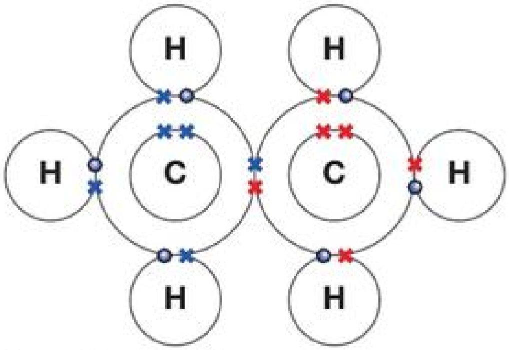
COVALENT BONDING IN A SLIGHTLY MORE COMPLICATED MOLECULE: ETHANE

Ethane has the formula C_2H_6. The bonding is similar to methane (Figure 8.9), except that there is a carbon–carbon covalent bond as well as the carbon–hydrogen bonds.

This is called an organic compound. You will learn more about molecules such as this in Unit 4.

HINT

When drawing molecules containing carbon and hydrogen it is useful to remember that carbon always forms 4 bonds by sharing 4 electrons, and hydrogen always forms 1 bond by sharing 1 electron. The hydrogen atoms always go on the outside, never in the middle.

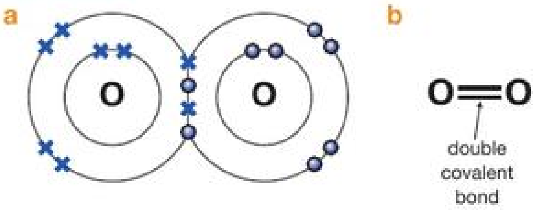


▲ Figure 8.14 A dot-and-cross diagram for ethane

MULTIPLE COVALENT BONDING

COVALENT BONDING IN AN OXYGEN MOLECULE: DOUBLE BONDING

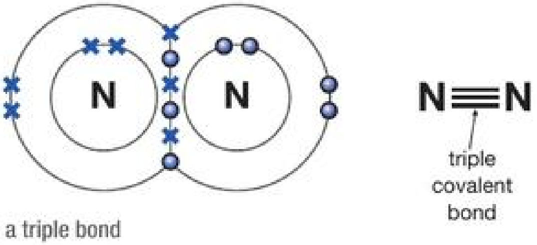
An oxygen atom has 6 electrons in its outer shell and so if two oxygen atoms combine, they will both share 2 electrons each; this means that each atom will have 8 electrons in its outer shell. There are therefore two shared pairs of electrons between the oxygen atoms; this is called a double covalent bond or, usually, just a **double bond**.



▲ Figure 8.15 (a) A dot-and-cross diagram for O_2 and (b) the double covalent bond.

THE TRIPLE BOND IN A NITROGEN MOLECULE

A nitrogen atom has 5 electrons in its outer shell and so if two nitrogen atoms combine they will both share 3 electrons each; this means that each atom will have 8 electrons in its outer shell. There are, therefore, three shared pairs of electrons between the nitrogen atoms; this is called a triple covalent bond or, usually, just a **triple bond**.

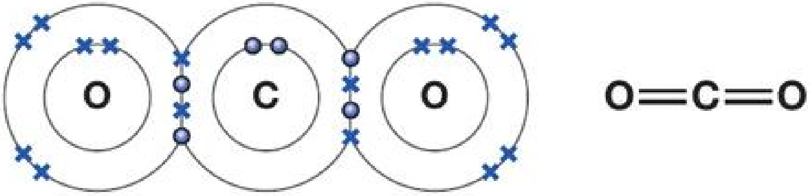


▲ Figure 8.16 N_2 has a triple bond

Nitrogen gas consists of nitrogen molecules bonded like this. The triple bond from the sharing of three pairs of electrons between the two nitrogen atoms is very strong and needs a lot of energy to break. That is why nitrogen is relatively unreactive.

COVALENT DOUBLE BONDING IN CARBON DIOXIDE, CO_2

An oxygen atom has 6 electrons in its outer shell and a carbon atom has 4. Each oxygen atom will share 2 electrons with the carbon atom. Two double bonds are formed between the carbon and the two oxygens (Figure 8.17). All atoms have 8 electrons in their outer shells.



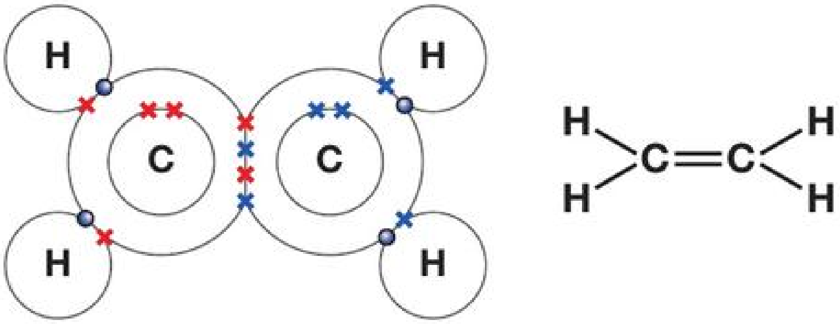
▲ Figure 8.17 CO_2 has two double bonds between atoms.

THE DOUBLE BOND IN ETHENE, C_2H_4

HINT

With organic compounds such as ethane and ethene you have to look at their names very carefully, even one different letter in the name can matter. Here, for example, ethane and ethene are completely different compounds. You will find out more about this in Unit 4.

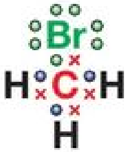
Ethene is rather like ethane in Figure 8.14, except that it only has two hydrogen atoms attached to each carbon atom and a double bond between the carbon atoms.



▲ Figure 8.18 Ethene has a double bond between the C atoms.

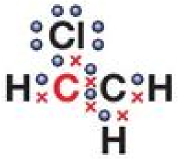
ORGANIC MOLECULES CONTAINING HALOGEN ATOMS

Bromomethane has the formula CH_3Br: the 3 H atoms and the Br atom are joined to the central C atom. Br has 35 electrons and we have not learned how to work out the electronic configuration of an atom with 35 electrons, but if you look at the Periodic Table you will see that Br is in Group 7. Because it is in Group 7 we know that it has 7 electrons in its outer shell, and will share 1 electron so that it has 8 in its outer shell. Therefore, we know that Br will form just 1 covalent bond. When you draw a dot-and-cross diagram for CH_3Br you will only be asked to show the outer electrons (Figure 8.19).



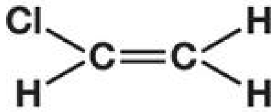
▲ Figure 8.19 A dot-and-cross diagram for CH_3Br showing outer shells only. Although we have used different colours here for clarity, you do not need to use different colours in the exam.

Probably the most complicated molecule for which you could be asked to draw a dot-and-cross diagram would be something like chloroethene (CH_2CHCl). When drawing chloroethene, remember that C will form 4 covalent bonds, H will form 1 and Cl will form 1. The dot-and-cross diagram (outer shells only) is shown in Figure 8.20.



▲ Figure 8.20 There is a double bond between the 2 C atoms. It does not matter where you put the H and Cl atoms relative to the C, and you do not have to use different colours.

The structure of chloroethene can also be shown as illustrated in Figure 8.21.



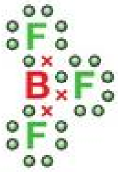
▲ Figure 8.21 The structure of chloroethene showing the covalent bonds. This is not, however, a dot-and-cross diagram and you must not draw this if you are asked to draw a dot-and-cross diagram.

SOME MORE DIFFICULT MOLECULES WHERE THE CENTRAL ATOM DOES NOT HAVE 8 ELECTRONS IN ITS OUTER SHELL

Although the *outer* atoms in a molecule will always have 8 (or 2 in the case of hydrogen) electrons in their outer shell, there are a few examples you may encounter where the *central* atom has more or fewer than 8 electrons in the outer shell.

BF_3

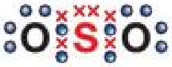
Boron is the central atom and the Fs are the outer atoms. Each F will share 1 other electron to have 8 electrons in its outer shell. This means that B only has a total of 6 electrons in its outer shell. Another way of thinking about this is that a B atom only has 3 electrons in its outer shell, and so this is the maximum number that it can share.



▲ Figure 8.22 A dot-and-cross diagram for BF_3

SO_2

This is called sulfur dioxide or sulfur(IV) oxide. The central atom is S and the outer atoms are O. Each O atom has 6 electrons in its outer shell and so will need to share 2 other electrons to have 8 electrons in the outer shell. So the S atom shares 2 electrons with each of the O atoms to form two double bonds. A sulfur atom originally had 6 electrons in its outer shell and so now, if it shares 4 electrons, it has 10 electrons in its outer shell.



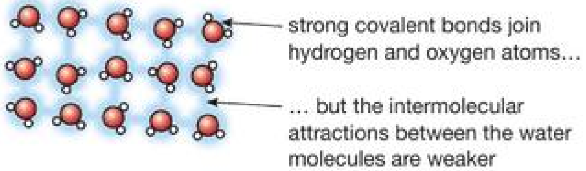
▲ Figure 8.23 There are two double bonds in SO_2.

EXTENSION WORK

Atoms in Periods 3 and below (4, 5, 6, 7) can have more than 8 electrons in their outer shells. The maximum number of electrons that the central atom in a molecule can share is equal to the number of electrons in its outer shell. So, sulfur can form up to 6 bonds (in SF_6) and chlorine 7 (in $HClO_4$).

SIMPLE MOLECULAR STRUCTURES

Molecules contain fixed numbers of atoms joined by strong covalent bonds. If we look closely at liquid water, there are individual water molecules, where the H and O atoms are joined together with strong covalent bonds. But there must also be some forces between water molecules which keep them in the liquid state. These forces are **intermolecular forces**.

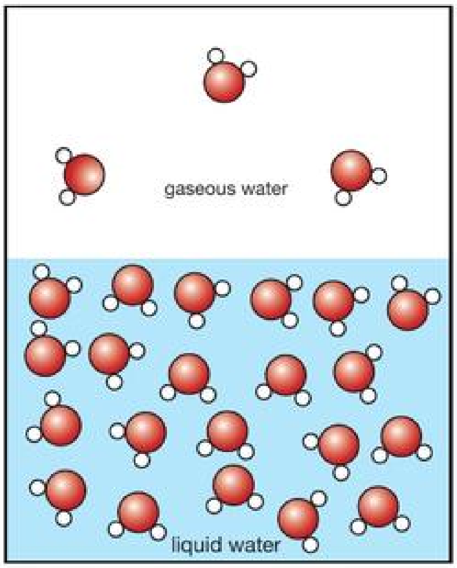

strong covalent bonds join hydrogen and oxygen atoms…
… but the intermolecular attractions between the water molecules are weaker

▲ Figure 8.24 Water is a simple molecular compound.

DID YOU KNOW?

Intermolecular literally means between molecules.

These intermolecular forces between molecules are much weaker than covalent bonds. When we boil water it is only these weak intermolecular forces of attraction that are broken; covalent bonds are not broken. Looking at Figure 8.25 you can see that there are H_2O molecules in liquid water and in gaseous water. The covalent bonds between the H and O atoms in the molecules have not changed in any way. All that has changed in gaseous water is that there are no intermolecular forces, they have been broken.



▲ Figure 8.25 Only intermolecular forces are broken when water evaporates/boils.

When a substance consists of molecules with intermolecular forces of attraction between them, we say that it has a *simple molecular structure*. Examples of things that have simple molecular structures are H_2O, CO_2, CH_4, NH_3 and C_2H_4. These are all the things that we have drawn dot-and-cross diagrams for above. Virtually all the compounds you will encounter that have covalent bonding will have simple molecular structures.

Substances with simple molecular structures tend to be gases or liquids or solids with low melting points and boiling points. The reason for this is that not much energy is required to break the weak intermolecular forces of attractions between molecules. Remember, no covalent bonds are broken, covalent bonds are strong.

EXTENSION WORK

If you continue with chemistry you will learn that there are different types of intermolecular forces. You will come across terms like van der Waals' forces, London dispersion forces and hydrogen bonds. There is a special type of intermolecular force between water molecules called **hydrogen bonds**. Hydrogen bonding gives water some of its very special properties, for example the solid form (ice) is less dense than the liquid form.

MELTING AND BOILING POINTS INCREASE AS RELATIVE MOLECULAR MASS INCREASES

The halogens (Group 7 in the Periodic Table) all have a simple molecular structure consisting of diatomic molecules with intermolecular forces between them.

You can see from Table 8.1 that the melting points and boiling points increase as the relative molecular mass increases.

Table 8.1 The melting points and boiling points of the halogens.

Halogen	Formula	Relative molecular mass/M_r	Melting point/°C	Boiling point/°C
fluorine	F_2	38	−220	−188
chlorine	Cl_2	71	−101	−34
bromine	Br_2	160	−7	59
iodine	I_2	254	114	184

Remember, as we melt or boil these substances we are only breaking the intermolecular forces of attraction between molecules. The boiling points increase down this group, which means we have to put in more energy to break the intermolecular forces as the relative molecular mass increases. This means that the *intermolecular forces of attraction must become stronger as relative molecular mass increases*.

This is something that we see quite often in chemistry, for example boiling points increase along the series CH_4, C_2H_6, C_3H_8 as relative molecular mass increases. This is discussed further in Chapter 23.

EXTENSION WORK

It is not always the case that melting and boiling points increase as the M_r increases and really the rule only applies to sets of very similar substances, such as the halogens or the alkanes (see Chapter 23). Some examples where the rule does not work are water (M_r = 18, boiling point = 100 °C), ethane (M_r = 30, boiling point = −89 °C), NH_3 (M_r = 17, boiling point = −33 °C) and PH_3 (M_r = 34, boiling point = −88 °C).

SOME OTHER PHYSICAL PROPERTIES OF COVALENT COMPOUNDS

KEY POINT

We are using the term covalent molecular compounds to mean covalent compounds with a simple molecular structure.

Covalent molecular compounds do not conduct electricity. This is because the molecules don't have any overall electrical charge (there are no ions) and all the electrons are held tightly in the atoms or in covalent bonds and so are not able to move from molecule to molecule.

Covalent molecular substances tend to be insoluble in water. There are some exceptions to this, for example ethanol (C_2H_5OH) and substances such as NH_3 and HCl that react with water as they dissolve.

Covalent molecular substances are often soluble in organic solvents.

GIANT COVALENT STRUCTURES

DIAMOND

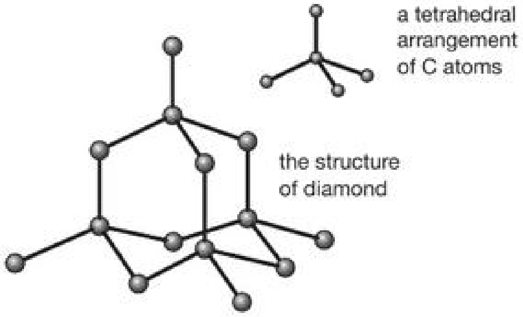
KEY POINT

A tetrahedron is a triangular-based pyramid. In a tetrahedral arrangement, one atom is at the centre of the tetrahedron, and the atoms it is attached to are at the four corners. Look carefully at the top five atoms in Figure 8.26 to see what this looks like. You will find other similar arrangements in this diagram.

In Figure 8.26 some carbon atoms seem to be forming only two bonds (or even one bond), but that's not really the case. We are only showing a small part of the whole structure. The structure continues in three dimensions, and each of the atoms drawn here is attached to four others. Each of the lines in this diagram represents a covalent bond.

Diamond is a form of pure carbon.

Each carbon atom has four electrons in its outer shell and it therefore forms four covalent bonds. In diamond, each carbon bonds strongly to four other carbon atoms in a *tetrahedral* arrangement. Figure 8.26 shows enough of the structure to see what is happening.



▲ Figure 8.26 Part of the structure of diamond

This is a giant covalent structure; it continues on and on in three dimensions. It is *not* a molecule because the number of atoms joined up in a real diamond is completely variable and depends on the size of the crystal. Molecules always contain *fixed numbers* of atoms joined by covalent bonds.

Diamond has a very high melting and boiling point. This is because of the very strong carbon–carbon covalent bonds, which extend throughout the whole crystal in three dimensions. A lot of energy has to be supplied to break these strong covalent bonds, therefore diamond has very high melting and boiling points. It is important to realise how this is different from the simple molecular structures that we saw above. In order to melt or boil a substance with a simple molecular structure, such as CH_4, we only had to supply enough

▲ Figure 8.27 Diamond (a form of carbon) is crystalline, and is the hardest naturally occurring substance.

energy to break the relatively weak intermolecular forces of attraction. In diamond there are no intermolecular forces (it has a giant structure, there are no molecules). Covalent bonds, which are very strong, must be broken in order to melt or boil it.

In general, *all substances with giant covalent structures are solids with high melting and boiling points* because a lot of energy has to be supplied to break all the strong covalent bonds throughout the giant structure. Other substances with giant covalent structures include graphite (discussed below) and silicon dioxide (SiO_2).

Diamond is very hard. Again, a lot of energy has to be supplied to break the strong covalent bonds in the giant structure. Drill bits can be tipped with diamonds for drills used on stone and rock.

Diamond doesn't conduct electricity. All the electrons in the outer shells of the carbon atoms are tightly held in covalent bonds between the atoms. None are free to move around.

EXTENSION WORK

Diamond doesn't dissolve in water or in any other solvent. This is again because of the strong covalent bonds between the carbon atoms. If the diamond dissolved, these bonds would have to be broken.

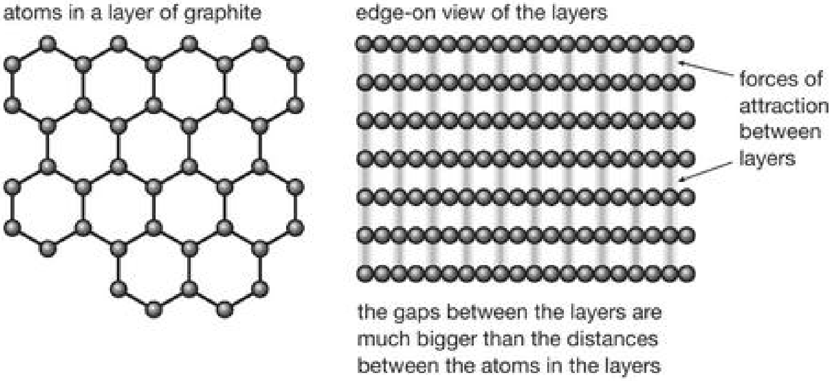
Diamond conducts heat very well (better than any other element). As one end of the crystal is heated the atoms vibrate more. The strong bonds throughout the giant structure mean that these vibrations are quickly transmitted from one end of the crystal to the other.

GRAPHITE

Graphite is also a form of carbon, but the atoms are arranged differently, although it still has a giant structure. Graphite has a *layer structure*, rather like a pack of playing cards. In a pack of cards, each card is strong but the individual cards are easily separated. The same is true in graphite.

▲ Figure 8.28 Graphite has a structure rather like a pack of playing cards.

▲ Figure 8.29 Graphite is soft with a layer structure.



atoms in a layer of graphite
edge-on view of the layers
forces of attraction between layers
the gaps between the layers are much bigger than the distances between the atoms in the layers

▲ Figure 8.30 The structure of graphite. Some forces of attraction between layers have been shown. These are not bonds and could have been drawn anywhere between the layers.

Graphite is a soft material. Although the forces holding the atoms together in each layer are very strong, the attractions between the layers are much weaker and not much energy is needed to overcome them. Layers slide over each other and can easily be flaked off.

Graphite (mixed with clay to make it harder) is used in pencils. When you write with a pencil, you are leaving a trail of graphite layers behind on the paper. Pure graphite is so slippery that it is used as a dry lubricant, for example powdered graphite is used to lubricate locks.

EXTENSION WORK

Actually, the reason that the layers slide over each other fairly easily is more complicated than this and graphite is not a lubricant in a vacuum. Graphite being a lubricant relies on water molecules sticking to the surface; this does not happen in a vacuum.

Graphite has high melting and boiling points. To melt/boil graphite, you don't just have to separate the layers, you have to break up the whole structure, including the covalent bonds. That needs very large amounts of energy because the covalent bonds are so strong.

Graphite conducts electricity. If you look back at Figure 8.30, you will see that each carbon atom is joined to only three others. Each carbon atom uses three of its outer shell electrons to form three single covalent bonds. The fourth electron in the outer shell of each atom is free to move around throughout the whole of the layer. The electrons that are free to move throughout the layers are called **delocalised electrons**. The movement of these delocalised electrons allows graphite to conduct electricity.

▲ Figure 8.31 Three graphite electrodes glow red hot after their removal from an electric arc furnace used to produce steel.

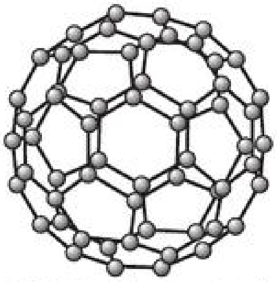
EXTENSION WORK

Some other properties of graphite are:

- *Graphite is insoluble in all solvents* because it would take too much energy to break all the strong covalent bonds.
- *Graphite is less dense than diamond* because the layers in graphite are relatively far apart. The distance between the graphite layers is more than twice the distance between atoms in each layer. In a sense, a graphite crystal contains a lot of wasted space, which isn't there in a diamond crystal.

C_{60} FULLERENE

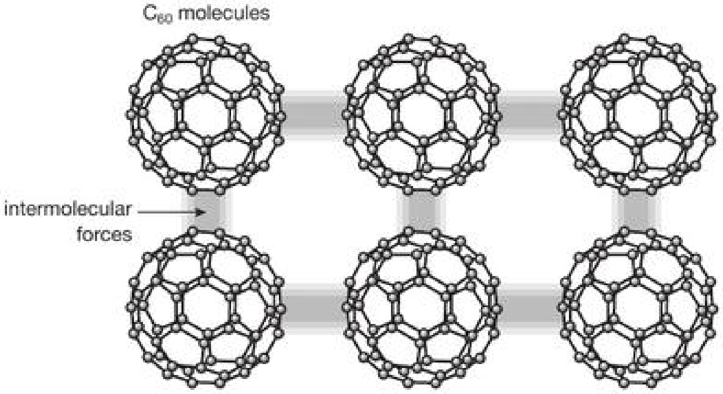
Diamond and graphite are two **allotropes** of carbon. Allotropes are different forms of the same element. Another allotrope of carbon is C_{60} fullerene. Diamond and graphite both have giant structures but C_{60} fullerene has a simple molecular structure.



▲ Figure 8.32 A C_{60} fullerene molecule. Remember that molecules consist of fixed number of atoms; each C_{60} fullerene molecule contains 60 carbon atoms joined by covalent bonds.

In solid or liquid C_{60} fullerene there are C_{60} molecules with weak intermolecular forces between them. The fact that C_{60} has a simple molecular structure has a big influence on its physical properties.

C_{60} fullerene has lower melting and boiling points than diamond and graphite. When fullerene is melted, only the relatively weak intermolecular forces of attraction must be broken. This does not require as much energy as breaking all the strong covalent bonds when diamond and graphite are melted.



▲ Figure 8.33 C_{60} fullerene has a simple molecular structure.

KEY POINT

There are different fullerenes, where the molecules contain different numbers of carbon atoms. This is why we include the C_{60} in the name.

EXTENSION WORK

Unlike diamond and graphite C_{60} fullerene does dissolve in some solvents; only relatively weak intermolecular forces of attraction have to be broken for it to dissolve.

C_{60} fullerene is not as hard as diamond. It does not take as much energy to break the intermolecular forces of attraction in C_{60} fullerene compared to breaking the strong covalent bonds in diamond.

C_{60} fullerene does not conduct electricity. Although all the carbon atoms in C_{60} only form three bonds, the fourth electron on each atom can only move around *within* each C_{60} molecule; the electrons cannot jump from molecule to molecule.

CHAPTER QUESTIONS

You will need to use the Periodic Table in Appendix A on page 320.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

1 State whether each of the following compounds is ionic or covalent:

a MgO b CH_3Br c H_2O_2

d $FeCl_2$ e NaF f HCN

SKILLS INTERPRETATION

2 a What is meant by a covalent bond? How does this bond hold two atoms together?

b Draw dot-and-cross diagrams (showing outer shell electrons only) to show the covalent bonding in

i methane (CH_4)

ii hydrogen sulfide (H_2S)

iii phosphine (PH_3)

iv silicon tetrachloride ($SiCl_4$)

c Draw dot-and-cross diagrams (showing outer shell electrons only) to show the covalent bonding in

i O_2

ii N_2

3 Draw dot-and-cross diagrams (showing outer shell electrons only) to show the covalent bonding in

a ethane (C_2H_6) b ethene (C_2H_4) c chloroethane (CH_3CH_2Cl)

SKILLS REASONING

4 Explain why carbon dioxide sublimes at −78.5 °C but diamond sublimes at around 4000 °C.

5 Hexane has the formula C_6H_{14}. It is a liquid at room temperature.

a Explain whether hexane has a simple molecular or giant structure.

b Explain whether you would expect pentane (C_5H_{12}) to have a higher or lower boiling point than hexane.

c Explain whether or not you would expect hexane to conduct electricity.

6 Explain the following in terms of structure and bonding:

a diamond is harder than graphite

b C_{60} fullerene has a lower melting point than graphite

c graphite conducts electricity

d diamond does not conduct electricity.

SKILLS ANALYSIS

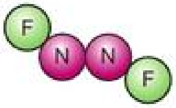
7 The table below gives details of the boiling temperatures of some substances made of covalent molecules. Arrange these substances in increasing order of the strength of their intermolecular forces and explain your order.

Substance	Boiling point/°C
ammonia	–33
ethanamide	221
ethanol	78.5
hydrogen	–253
phosphorus trifluoride	–101
water	100

(Don't panic if you don't recognise some of the names. The substances could also have been labelled A, B, C, D, E and F.)

SKILLS REASONING

8 The compound N_2F_2 has the structure:



a Explain whether you would expect the bond between the nitrogen atoms to be a single, double or triple bond.

SKILLS INTERPRETATION

b Draw a dot-and-cross diagram for N_2F_2 showing outer electrons only.

SKILLS REASONING

9 a Draw a dot-and-cross diagram (showing outer electrons only) to show the covalent bonding in BCl_3.

b BCl_3 is sometimes described as an *electron-deficient* compound. Explain what you think that means.

CHEMISTRY ONLY

9 METALLIC BONDING

In this chapter we will discuss the bonding in metals and explain some of the physical properties of metals in terms of structure and bonding.

▲ Figure 9.1 Metals have properties that make them useful as construction materials.

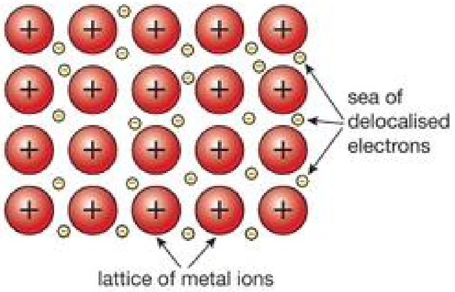
▲ Figure 9.2 Most metals are strong and all metals conduct electricity.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Know how to represent a metallic lattice by a 2D diagram
- Understand metallic bonding in terms of electrostatic attractions
- Explain typical physical properties of metals, including electrical conductivity and malleability

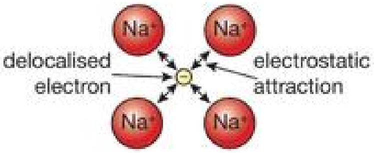
METALLIC BONDING

Sodium is a metal. When sodium atoms bond together to form the solid metal, the outer electron on each sodium atom becomes free to move throughout the whole structure. The electrons are said to be *delocalised*. These electrons are no longer attached to particular atoms or pairs of atoms, instead you can think of them as flowing around through the whole metal. When a sodium atom loses its outer electron a sodium ion (Na^+) is left behind. A metallic structure consists of *a lattice (regular arrangement) of positive ions in a sea of delocalised electrons* (Figure 9.3).



▲ Figure 9.3 The metallic structure of a metal such as sodium

Metallic bonding is the electrostatic forces of attraction between each positive ion and the delocalised electrons. This holds the structure together.



▲ Figure 9.4 The electrostatic attraction between positively charged ions and negatively charged electrons holds the metallic structure together.

Metals have giant structures. There are no individual molecules and all the positive ions in the lattice attract all the delocalised electrons.

The ion formed by the metal depends on the number of electrons the original atom has in its outer shell. Thus all the elements in Group 1 form 1+ ions and all the elements in Group 2 form 2+ ions.

HINT

Different metals have different arrangements of ions in the lattice. Do not worry too much about this when drawing a diagram of a metal. As long as you draw the ions in a regular arrangement that will be fine.

HINT

When they come to write the symbol for a metal such as sodium in equations, students who know about metallic bonding sometimes worry whether they should write it as Na or Na^+. You write it as atoms, as Na. Thinking about the structure as a whole, the number of electrons exactly balances the number of positive charges. The metal as a whole carries no charge.

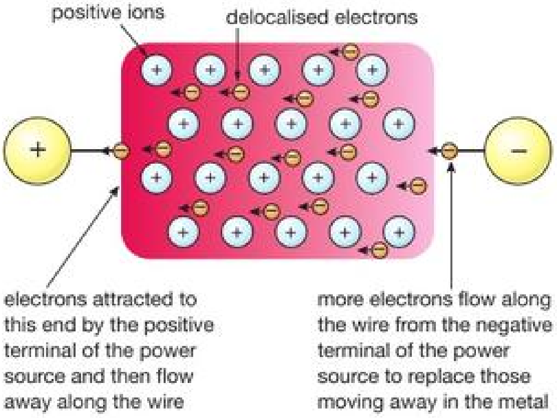
PHYSICAL PROPERTIES OF METALS

Most metals are hard and have high melting points. This suggests that the electrostatic forces of attraction between the positive ions and the delocalised electrons are strong.

In the case of sodium, only one electron per atom is delocalised, leaving ions with only one positive charge on them. The bonding in sodium is quite weak, as metals go, which is why sodium is fairly soft, with a low melting point for a metal. Magnesium has two outer electrons, both of which are delocalised into the 'sea', leaving behind ions that carry a charge of 2+. There is a much stronger electrostatic attraction between the 2+ ions and the delocalised electrons. This means that the bonding is stronger in magnesium and the melting point is higher.

METALS CONDUCT ELECTRICITY

Metals conduct electricity because the *delocalised electrons are free to move throughout the structure*. Imagine what happens if a piece of metal is attached to an electrical power source.


positive ions
delocalised electrons
+
−
electrons attracted to this end by the positive terminal of the power source and then flow away along the wire
more electrons flow along the wire from the negative terminal of the power source to replace those moving away in the metal

▲ Figure 9.5 How metals conduct electricity.

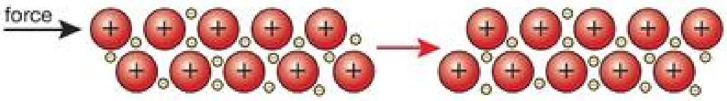
KEY POINT

In Chapter 7 we discussed ionic compounds and how they conduct electricity when molten or in aqueous solution because the **ions** are free to move. Ionic substances do not conduct electricity when solid because the ions are not free to move. Metals conduct electricity when solid or molten because the delocalised **electrons** are free to move. It is important not to confuse this:

- ionic substances: ions move
- metals: electrons move

METALS ARE MALLEABLE

Metals can be hammered into different shapes; this is what the word **malleable** means. When we apply a force to a piece of metal *the layers of positive ions slide over each other*. This does not affect the bonding in the structure; the positive ions are still attracted to the delocalised electrons.



▲ Figure 9.6 Metals are malleable because the layers of positive ions can slide over each other without changing the bonding.

Metals can also be described as **ductile**. This means that they can be drawn out into wires. The explanation is the same as why they are malleable.

CHAPTER QUESTIONS

SKILLS INTERPRETATION

1 Draw simple 2D diagrams to show the structure of:
   - a potassium metal
   - b calcium metal

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

SKILLS REASONING

2 a A solid metal is often described as having 'a lattice of positive ions in a sea of delocalised electrons'. State the electronic configuration of a magnesium atom and use it to explain what this phrase means.
   - b Metallic bonds are not fully broken until the metal has first melted and then boiled. Sodium, magnesium and aluminium are three consecutive elements in the Periodic Table. The boiling points of sodium, magnesium and aluminium are 890 °C, 1110 °C and 2470 °C, respectively. Explain these values in terms of the electronic configurations of the elements and metallic bonding.
   - c Explain why all these elements are good conductors of electricity.
   - d Explain why all these metals are malleable.

3 This question uses ideas from Chapters 7, 8 and 9. In these chapters you have met the following types of structure and bonding:

giant metallic structure
giant covalent structure
giant ionic structure
covalent molecular structure

Some information about some substances is given below. In each case state what type of structure and bonding it has.

- a Substance A melts at 2300 °C. It doesn't conduct electricity even when it is molten. It is insoluble in water.
- b Substance B is a colourless gas.
- c Substance C is a yellow solid with a low melting point of 113 °C. It doesn't conduct electricity and it is insoluble in water.
- d Substance D forms brittle orange crystals which melt at 398 °C. It dissolves freely in water to give an orange solution.
- e Substance E is a pink-brown flexible solid. It conducts electricity.
- f Substance F is a liquid with a boiling point of 80 °C. It is insoluble in water.
- g Substance G is a silvery solid which melts at 660 °C. It is used in overhead power cables.

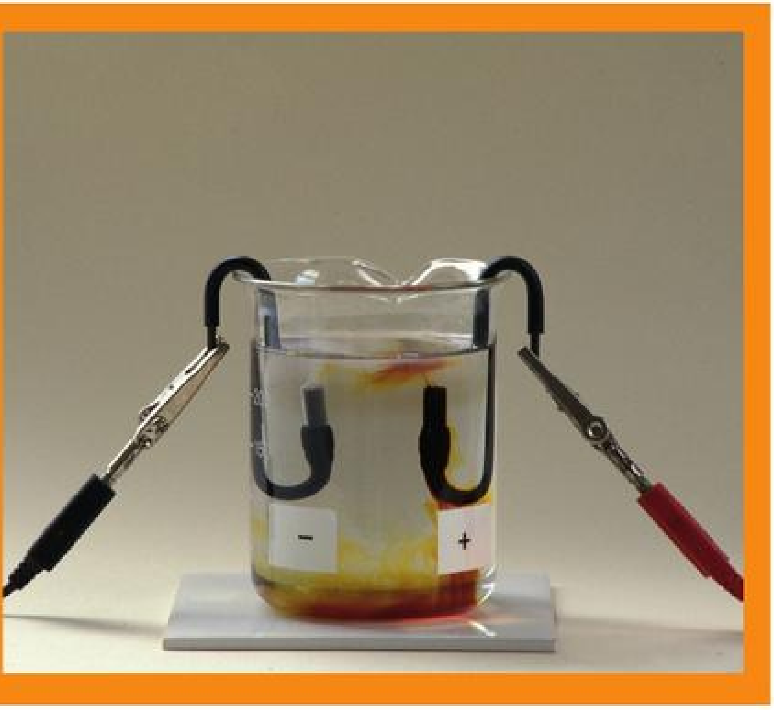
END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

CHEMISTRY ONLY

10 ELECTROLYSIS

In this chapter we will look at what happens when we pass electricity through various substances.

Some things don't change when we pass electricity through them. For example, if you attach a piece of copper to a battery and make a complete circuit you may notice that the copper gets hot, but apart from that there is no other change. However, when you pass electricity through a solution of potassium iodide, a chemical change occurs, and hydrogen gas and iodine are formed. We will learn about why this happens in this chapter.



▶ Figure 10.1 This photograph shows what happens if you connect a solution of potassium iodide into a simple electrical circuit. If you look at what is happening in the solution, you can see obvious signs of chemical change. Some coloured substance is being produced at the positive electrode and a gas is being given off at the negative electrode.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Understand why covalent compounds do not conduct electricity
- Understand why ionic compounds conduct electricity only when molten or in aqueous solution
- Know that anion and cation are terms used to refer to negative and positive ions, respectively
- Describe experiments to investigate electrolysis, using inert electrodes, of molten compounds (including lead(II) bromide) and aqueous solutions (including sodium chloride, dilute sulfuric acid and copper(II) sulfate) and to predict the products
- Write ionic half-equations representing the reactions at the electrodes during electrolysis and understand why these reactions are classified as oxidation or reduction
- Practical: Investigate the electrolysis of aqueous solutions

WHY THINGS CONDUCT ELECTRICITY

Before we continue, we need to remind ourselves about why things do or don't conduct electricity. In order for things to conduct electricity, there must be charged particles present and these charged particles must be free to move. The charged particles will be either electrons or ions; it is important that you are clear which one you are talking about.

METALS

If you remember, the structure of a metal is made up of a lattice of positive ions surrounded by a sea of delocalised electrons. Metals conduct electricity because the delocalised electrons are free to move.

IONIC COMPOUNDS

These are compounds such as sodium chloride and potassium iodide. Ionic compounds don't conduct electricity when they are solid because the ions are held tightly in position in the lattice – they are not free to move around (they can only vibrate). They do, however, conduct electricity when they are molten (have melted) or if they are dissolved in water (in aqueous solution). This happens because the ions then become free to move around.

Remember that ionic compounds are made up of positive ions and negative ions:

- anions are negative ions
- cations are positive ions.

We will look at where these names come from later in the chapter.

COVALENT COMPOUNDS

Covalent molecular compounds are substances such as hexane (C_6H_{14}), methane (CH_4) and carbon dioxide (CO_2). These do not conduct electricity in any state or in solution. Covalent molecular compounds consist of individual molecules. These molecules don't have any overall electrical charge, so there are no charged particles to move around. Also, all the electrons are held tightly in the atoms or in covalent bonds and so they are not able to move from molecule to molecule.

REMINDER

The arrow here shows that this is a reversible reaction. Reversible reactions are discussed in Chapter 21.

There are some exceptions to this, such as covalent compounds that form ions as they react with water, for example ammonia:

$$NH_3(g) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons NH_4^+(aq) + OH^-(aq)$$

Ammonia solution conducts electricity because there are ions which are free to move.

Hydrogen chloride gas dissolves in water to form hydrochloric acid (HCl(aq)). Hydrogen chloride ionises in water:

$$HCl(aq) \rightarrow H^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq)$$

PASSING ELECTRICITY THROUGH COMPOUNDS: ELECTROLYSIS

When metals conduct electricity you will not notice anything happening, except perhaps that the metal gets hotter. When you pass electricity through an ionic compound, either molten or in solution, a chemical reaction occurs.

Electrolysis is a chemical change caused by passing an electric current through a compound which is either molten or in solution.

SOME OTHER IMPORTANT WORDS

An **electrolyte** is a liquid or solution that undergoes electrolysis. Electrolytes all contain ions. The movement of the ions is responsible for both the conduction of electricity and the chemical changes that take place.

The electricity is passed into and out of the electrolyte through two **electrodes**. Carbon is frequently used for electrodes because it conducts electricity and is chemically fairly **inert** (this means that it does not react with things). Platinum is also fairly inert and can be used instead of carbon. Various other metals are sometimes used as well.

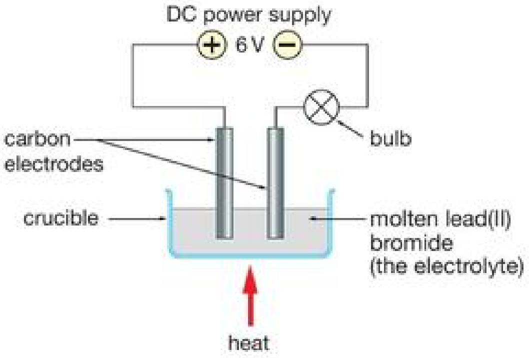
HINT

Remember **PANiC**: positive anode, negative (is) cathode.

The positive electrode is called the **anode**. The negative electrode is called the **cathode**.

THE ELECTROLYSIS OF MOLTEN COMPOUNDS

ELECTROLYSING MOLTEN LEAD(II) BROMIDE, $PbBr_2$


DC power supply
+ 6 V −
carbon electrodes
bulb
crucible
molten lead(II) bromide (the electrolyte)
heat

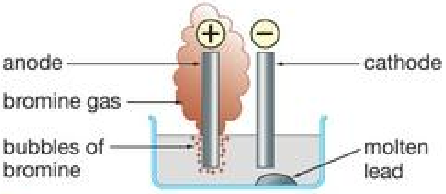
▲ Figure 10.2 Electrolysing molten lead(II) bromide

Nothing at all happens until the lead(II) bromide melts. Then:

- the bulb lights up, showing that electrons are flowing through it
- there is bubbling around the electrode (the anode) connected to the positive terminal of the power source as brown bromine gas is given off
- nothing seems to be happening at the electrode (the cathode) connected to the negative terminal of the power source, but afterwards metallic lead is found underneath it
- when you stop heating and the lead(II) bromide solidifies again, everything stops, there is no more bubbling and the bulb goes out.

KEY POINT

The power supply can be a 6 volt battery or a power pack. It doesn't matter which. The voltage isn't critical either.


+
−
anode
cathode
bromine gas
bubbles of bromine
molten lead

▲ Figure 10.3 What happens when the lead(II) bromide melts and electricity passes through it (the bulb also lights up).

EXPLAINING WHAT IS HAPPENING

Lead(II) bromide is an ionic compound. The solid consists of a giant structure of lead(II) ions (Pb^{2+}) and bromide ions (Br^-) packed regularly in a crystal lattice. The ions are locked tightly in the lattice and aren't free to move. The solid lead(II) bromide doesn't conduct electricity. As soon as the solid melts, the ions become free to move around.

As soon as you connect the power source in Figure 10.2, it pumps any mobile electrons away from the left-hand electrode towards the right-hand one. This means that there are extra electrons at the right-hand electrode, so it is negative. The left-hand electrode is positive because some of the electrons have been removed from it. The positive lead(II) ions in the molten lead(II) bromide are attracted to the negative electrode, the cathode. When they get there, each lead(II) ion picks up two electrons from the electrode and forms neutral lead atoms (Figure 10.4). These fall to the bottom of the container as molten lead. This can be represented by a **half-equation**.

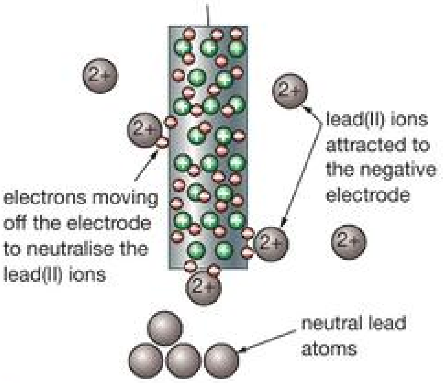
$$Pb^{2+} + 2e^- \rightarrow Pb$$

The power source pumps new electrons along the wire to replace the electrons that have been removed from the cathode.

Bromide ions are attracted to the positive electrode, the anode (Figure 10.5). When they get to the positive electrode, the extra electron which makes the bromide ion negatively charged moves onto the electrode. This is because this electrode is short of electrons.

The loss of the extra electron converts each bromide ion into a bromine atom:

$$Br^- \rightarrow Br + e^-$$


2+
2+
2+
2+
2+
2+
lead(II) ions attracted to the negative electrode
electrons moving off the electrode to neutralise the lead(II) ions
neutral lead atoms

▲ Figure 10.4 The reaction at the cathode

KEY POINT

Half-equations show either oxidation or reduction reactions (see below). Electrons are shown as e^- in half-equations.

KEY POINT

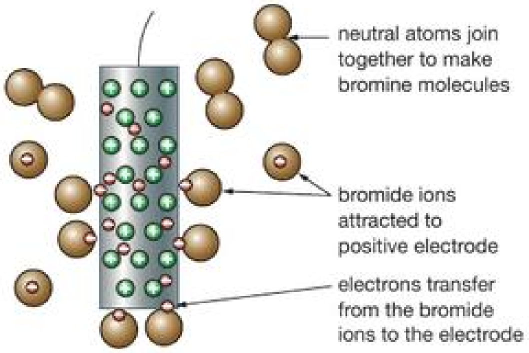
A bromine atom has only 7 electrons in its outer shell so it joins to another Br atom to form a covalent bond. Both atoms then have 8 electrons in their outer shell.

These join in pairs to make bromine molecules:

$$2Br \rightarrow Br_2$$

Overall:

$$2Br^- \rightarrow Br_2 + 2e^-$$


neutral atoms join together to make bromine molecules
bromide ions attracted to positive electrode
electrons transfer from the bromide ions to the electrode

▲ Figure 10.5 The reaction at the anode

KEY POINT

It is really important to use the correct terms when talking about the reactions at the electrodes. Bromide ions are attracted to the anode, where they lose electrons to form bromine molecules. Do not confuse bromide and bromine.

The new electrons on the electrode flow back into the power source. Because electrons are flowing in the external circuit, the bulb lights up.

KEY POINT

The external circuit is the wire, power pack, the bulb and the electrodes. **Electrons** flow in the external circuit but **ions** flow in the electrolyte.

We sometimes talk about ions being **discharged** at the electrodes. Discharging an ion means that it loses its charge. This happens either by giving up electron(s) to the electrode or receiving electron(s) from it. We can therefore say that bromide ions and lead(II) ions were discharged at the electrodes.

ELECTROLYSIS AND REDOX

You will learn more about **oxidation** and **reduction** reactions in Chapter 14. Oxidation and reduction are words used to describe what is happening to things in certain chemical reactions. We can define oxidation and reduction as follows:

- *Oxidation occurs when something loses electrons.*
- *Reduction occurs when something gains electrons.*

We usually simply shorten this to oxidation is loss of electrons and reduction is gain of electrons. A way of remembering this is the mnemonic OILRIG.

HINT

OILRIG:
Oxidation
Is
Loss of electrons
Reduction
Is
Gain of electrons

If we look again at the electrode equations in the electrolysis of lead(II) bromide, we see that the lead(II) ions gain electrons at the cathode:

$$Pb^{2+} + 2e^- \rightarrow Pb$$

Gain of electrons is reduction. The lead(II) ions are reduced to lead atoms.

The bromide ions lose electrons at the anode:

$$2Br^- \rightarrow Br_2 + 2e^-$$

Loss of electrons is oxidation. Bromide ions are oxidised to bromine molecules.

If something loses electrons something else must gain electrons and so oxidation and reduction always occur at the same time: we talk about **redox** reactions, **red**(uction)**ox**(idation). In the reactions going on at the electrodes each equation only shows one of the processes occurring, either oxidation or reduction, and so we call these *half-equations*. Both these reactions involve ions and so, in the exam, you may be asked to write *ionic half-equations* representing the reactions at the electrodes.

THE ELECTROLYSIS OF OTHER MOLTEN SUBSTANCES

If we carry out electrolysis of molten sodium chloride, we get sodium at the cathode (negative electrode) and chlorine at the anode (positive electrode). The ionic half-equations are:

cathode: $Na^+ + e^- \rightarrow Na$ reduction

Sodium ions are reduced to sodium atoms.

anode: $2Cl^- \rightarrow Cl_2 + 2e^-$ oxidation

Chloride ions are oxidised to chlorine molecules.

These half-equations must always balance in terms of the number of atoms on each side, but also in terms of the charges; the total charge must be the same on both sides. This is why we need 2 electrons in the second half-equation but only 1 in the first.

Let us look at another example, the electrolysis of molten aluminium oxide (Al_2O_3). We get aluminium at the cathode and oxygen at the anode. Aluminium is in Group 3 in the Periodic Table and so an aluminium atom has 3 electrons in its outer shell. You may remember from Chapter 7 that this means that Al forms a 3+ ion. This 3+ ion will be attracted to the negative electrode in electrolysis and we will get the reaction:

$$Al^{3+} + 3e^- \rightarrow Al$$

In order to cancel out the 3+ charge on the Al^{3+} ion we need to add 3 electrons. The total charge on the left-hand side is zero (**3+** + **3–**), which is the same as on the right-hand side. Another way to think about this is that if an aluminium atom loses 3 electrons to form an Al^{3+} ion, we must put those electrons back in order to form the atom again. This is a reduction reaction because the Al^{3+} ion gains electrons.

When we electrolyse molten aluminium oxide, the half-equation for the reaction at the anode is:

$$2O^{2-} \rightarrow O_2 + 4e^-$$

Each O^{2-} ion has 2 'extra' electrons and oxygen atoms go around in pairs, so we must remove 4 electrons to form O_2. These are shown on the right-hand side of the half-equation. There are two Os on each side and the total charge on each side is 4–. This is an oxidation reaction.

HINT

A common mistake is to put the electrons on the wrong side of the half-equation. Check the charges to make sure you have the same total charge on both sides.

When molten zinc(II) chloride is electrolysed, zinc is obtained at the cathode and chlorine at the anode:

cathode: $Zn^{2+} + 2e^- \rightarrow Zn$ reduction

anode: $2Cl^- \rightarrow Cl_2 + 2e^-$ oxidation

We can make the following generalisations from the reactions above:

- If you electrolyse a molten ionic compound only containing two elements, you will get the metal at the cathode (because metals form positive ions) and the non-metal at the anode (because non-metals form negative ions).
- Reduction always occurs at the cathode and oxidation always occurs at the anode.

HINT

A way of remembering this is AN OX RED CAT or AN OILRIG CAT.

You can probably see now that positive ions are known as cations because they are attracted to the cathode (negative electrode). Negative ions are known as anions because they are attracted to the anode (positive electrode).

Not all ionic compounds can be electrolysed when they are molten. Some break up into simpler substances before their melting point. For example, copper(II) carbonate breaks into copper(II) oxide and carbon dioxide, even on gentle heating. It is impossible to melt it.

THE ELECTROLYSIS OF AQUEOUS SOLUTIONS

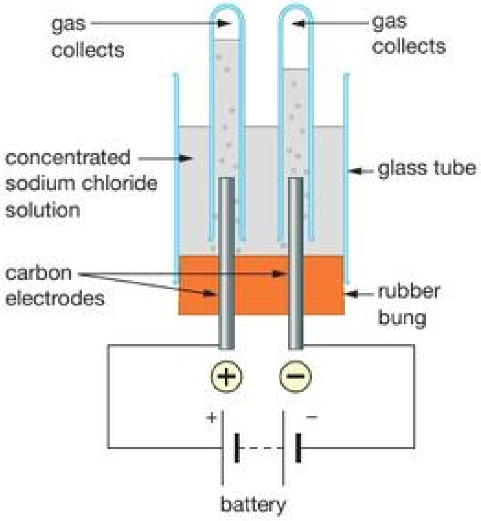
When aqueous solutions are electrolysed the products are not always the same as when molten salts are electrolysed.

Safety Note: Wear eye protection. Do not smell the chlorine, especially if you have asthma. Once chlorine is detected the current must be switched off.

ACTIVITY 5

▼ PRACTICAL: INVESTIGATING THE ELECTROLYSIS OF AQUEOUS SOLUTIONS

We can investigate the electrolysis of an aqueous solution such as sodium chloride solution using the apparatus shown in Figure 10.6.



▲ Figure 10.6 Electrolysis of sodium chloride solution

The following procedure is used:

- Set up the apparatus as shown in Figure 10.6. The glass tube, rubber bung and electrodes together are sometimes called an **electrolytic cell**.
- Pour concentrated sodium chloride solution into the glass tube.
- Place a test-tube containing sodium chloride solution over each electrode. The test-tubes must not completely cover the electrodes or ions will be unable to flow and there will be no current.
- Connect the battery/powerpack to the electrodes.
- The experiment should be done in a fume cupboard (fume hood) or well-ventilated room because chlorine gas is poisonous.

We can see if something is happening by looking for bubbles of gas or a metal forming at the electrodes. Any gases can be tested.

The tests for gases are covered in Chapter 18.

In this experiment we see bubbles of gas at both electrodes. When the gases are tested we find that hydrogen forms at the negative electrode (cathode) and chlorine forms at the positive electrode (anode).

KEY POINT

We would expect to get the same volume of hydrogen as chlorine. However, in reality we appear to obtain less chlorine than expected because it is more soluble in water.

THE ELECTROLYSIS OF SODIUM CHLORIDE SOLUTION

When molten sodium chloride is electrolysed, the products at the electrodes are:

anode: chlorine
cathode: sodium

When you electrolyse sodium chloride solution you do not get the same products as when you electrolyse molten sodium chloride. Although chlorine is still formed at the anode, hydrogen is produced at the cathode rather than sodium. The hydrogen at the cathode comes from the water.

KEY POINT

The reversible sign shows that as water molecules break up to form hydrogen ions and hydroxide ions, these ions are recombining to make water again.

Water is called a *weak electrolyte*. It ionises very slightly to give hydrogen ions and hydroxide ions:

$$H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H^+(aq) + OH^-(aq)$$

Whenever you have water present, you have to consider these ions *as well as* the ions in the compound you are electrolysing.

AT THE CATHODE

KEY POINT

The more reactive something is, the greater tendency it has to form an ion. This means that the more reactive something is, the more difficult it is to turn it back into an atom. For positive ions, the lower the position of an element in the reactivity series, the more easily it will accept an electron. The reactivity series is discussed in Chapter 14.

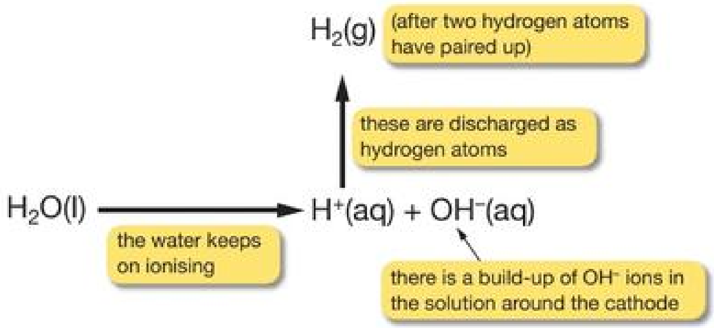
The solution contains $Na^+(aq)$ and $H^+(aq)$, and these are both attracted to the negative electrode (cathode). However, sodium is a very reactive metal. This means that it is very difficult to add an electron to a sodium ion to convert it back to a sodium atom. Hydrogen is less reactive than sodium so it is easier to add an electron to a hydrogen ion to form a hydrogen atom. Each hydrogen atom formed combines with another one to make a hydrogen molecule:

$$2H^+(aq) + 2e^- \rightarrow H_2(g)$$

Remember that the hydrogen ions come from water molecules splitting up. Each time a water molecule ionises, it also produces a hydroxide ion. There is a build-up of these in the solution around the cathode. These hydroxide ions make the solution alkaline in the region around the cathode.

KEY POINT

Because the hydrogen ions are discharged (removed from the solution as hydrogen gas), they can no longer react with the hydroxide ions and reform water. The ionisation of the water becomes a one-way process.


$H_2(g)$
(after two hydrogen atoms have paired up)
these are discharged as hydrogen atoms
$H_2O(l)$
$H^+(aq) + OH^-(aq)$
the water keeps on ionising
there is a build-up of OH^- ions in the solution around the cathode

▲ Figure 10.7 The process of electrolysing solutions

There is an alternative way of looking at this cathode reaction, starting from neutral water molecules, which can be thought of as taking electrons directly from the cathode:

$$2H_2O(l) + 2e^- \rightarrow H_2(g) + 2OH^-(aq)$$

You can see more easily why the solution becomes alkaline using this half-equation as $OH^-(aq)$ ions are produced.

HINT

You might come across either half-equation in the exam. Either should be accepted in answers.

AT THE ANODE

$Cl^-(aq)$ and $OH^-(aq)$ are both attracted by the positive anode. It is slightly easier to remove electrons from (oxidise) the hydroxide ion than from the chloride ion, but there isn't much difference. There are, however, many, many more chloride ions present in the solution, and so it is mainly these that are oxidised at the anode:

$$2Cl^-(aq) \rightarrow Cl_2(g) + 2e^-$$

EXTENSION WORK

If the sodium chloride solution is dilute, you get noticeable amounts of oxygen produced as well as chlorine. This comes from the hydroxide ions:

$$4OH^-(aq) \rightarrow 2H_2O(l) + O_2(g) + 4e^-$$

It is unlikely that you will be asked about this at International GCSE.

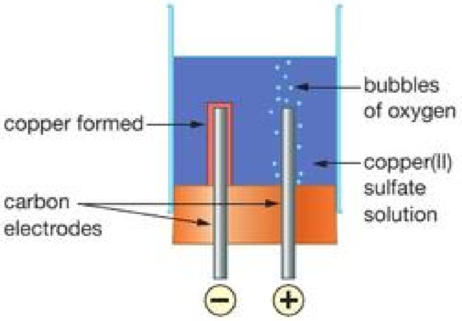
THE REMAINING SOLUTION

If the electrolysis is carried on for a long time, we can work out what the final solution remaining at the end will be. The ions in the solution were:

from NaCl: Na^+ $\cancel{Cl^-}$
from H_2O: $\cancel{H^+}$ OH^-

Cl^- and H^+ ions were removed from the solution by being discharged at the electrodes, so we are left with Na^+ and OH^-, sodium hydroxide solution.

THE ELECTROLYSIS OF COPPER(II) SULFATE SOLUTION USING INERT ELECTRODES



▲ Figure 10.8 Electrolysis of copper(II) sulfate solution using inert electrodes produces copper at the cathode and oxygen gas at the anode.

The copper(II) ions and hydrogen ions (from the water) will be attracted to the cathode. Copper is below hydrogen in the reactivity series, which means that it is easier to add electrons to copper ions to form an atom. The cathode will get coated with pink-brown copper:

$$Cu^{2+}(aq) + 2e^- \rightarrow Cu(s) \qquad \text{reduction}$$

Sulfate ions and hydroxide ions (from the water) will be attracted to the anode. Sulfate ions aren't easy to oxidise. Instead, you get oxygen from the oxidation of hydroxide ions from the water:

$$4OH^-(aq) \rightarrow 2H_2O(l) + O_2(g) + 4e^- \qquad \text{oxidation}$$

There is an alternative way of looking at this anode reaction. The equation this time is:

$$2H_2O(l) \rightarrow O_2(g) + 4H^+(aq) + 4e^-$$

You can see more easily why the solution becomes acidic using this half-equation: $H^+(aq)$ ions are produced. You may come across either half-equation in the exam.

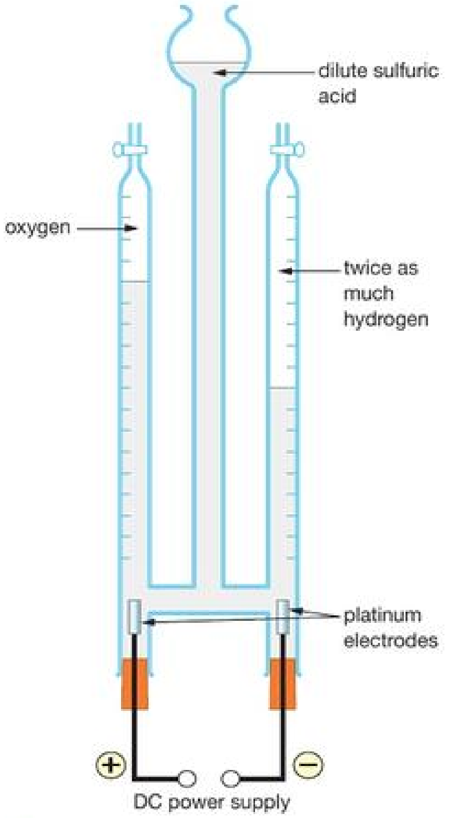
If the electrolysis is continued for a long time the copper(II) ions will eventually all be used up, and so the colour of the solution will fade from blue to colourless. What is left in the solution? The ions originally present were:

from $CuSO_4$: $\cancel{Cu^{2+}}$ SO_4^{2-}
from water: H^+ $\cancel{OH^-}$

Copper ions and hydroxide ions are discharged at the electrodes. Hydrogen ions from the water aren't being discharged and neither are the sulfate ions. The solution turns into dilute sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4). The electrolysis will then continue as for dilute sulfuric acid (see below).

EXTENSION WORK

The reason that we keep stressing the use of inert electrodes is that what the electrode is made of can sometimes affect the products you get. If you use copper electrodes oxygen gas is not produced at the anode but rather the anode gets smaller.



▲ Figure 10.9 Apparatus for electrolysing dilute sulfuric acid and measuring the volume of gases produced.

THE ELECTROLYSIS OF DILUTE SULFURIC ACID USING INERT ELECTRODES

In this case, the only positive ions arriving at the cathode are hydrogen ions (from the acid and the water). These are discharged to give hydrogen gas:

$$2H^+(aq) + 2e^- \rightarrow H_2(g)$$

At the anode – as with copper(II) sulfate solution – sulfate ions and hydroxide ions (from the water) arrive. The sulfate ions are too difficult to oxidise, and so you obtain oxygen from the oxidation of hydroxide ions from the water:

$$4OH^-(aq) \rightarrow 2H_2O(l) + O_2(g) + 4e^-$$

Twice as much hydrogen is produced as oxygen. Look at the half-equations above. For every 4 electrons that flow around the circuit, you would get 1 molecule of oxygen. But 4 electrons would produce 2 molecules of hydrogen. You get twice the number of molecules of hydrogen as of oxygen. Twice the number of molecules occupy twice the volume.

Actually, when we do this experiment the amount of hydrogen we obtain is more than twice as much as the oxygen. This is because oxygen is more soluble in water than hydrogen. What we sometimes do to stop this happening is to carry out the electrolysis experiment for a few minutes first in order to saturate the water with oxygen and then start to collect the gases; this gives much better results.

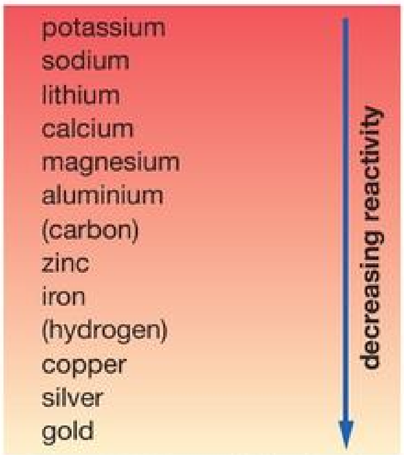
DID YOU KNOW?

This experiment could be used to show that the formula of water is H_2O.

THE ELECTROLYSIS OF SOME OTHER SOLUTIONS USING INERT ELECTRODES

HOW TO WORK OUT WHAT WILL HAPPEN

- If the metal is high in the reactivity series, you get hydrogen produced at the cathode instead of the metal.
- If the metal is below hydrogen in the reactivity series, you obtain the metal at the cathode.
- If you have solutions of halides (chlorides, bromides or iodides), you obtain the halogen (chlorine, bromine or iodine) at the anode. With other common negative ions (sulfate, nitrate, hydroxide), you obtain oxygen at the anode.



▲ Figure 10.10 The reactivity series shows metals in order of how reactive they are from most reactive to least reactive. This is discussed more in Chapter 14.

EXTENSION WORK

This leaves the problem of what you obtain if you have a moderately reactive metal such as zinc, for example. Reasonably concentrated solutions will give you the metal. Very dilute solutions will give you mainly hydrogen. In between, you will get both. At International GCSE you probably won't have to worry about this. The examples you will see in exams are always clear.

The table shows some simple examples of these rules.

Table 10.1 The electrolysis of solutions using inert (carbon or platinum) electrodes

Cathode (−)			Anode (+)	
Solution	**Product**	**Half-equation**	**Product**	**Half-equation**
$KI(aq)$	hydrogen	$2H^+(aq) + 2e^- \rightarrow H_2(g)$	iodine	$2I^-(aq) \rightarrow I_2(aq) + 2e^-$
$MgBr_2(aq)$	hydrogen	$2H^+(aq) + 2e^- \rightarrow H_2(g)$	bromine	$2Br^-(aq) \rightarrow Br_2(aq) + 2e^-$
$H_2SO_4(aq)$	hydrogen	$2H^+(aq) + 2e^- \rightarrow H_2(g)$	oxygen	$4OH^-(aq) \rightarrow 2H_2O(l) + O_2(g) + 4e^-$
$CuSO_4(aq)$	copper	$Cu^{2+}(aq) + 2e^- \rightarrow Cu(s)$	oxygen	$4OH^-(aq) \rightarrow 2H_2O(l) + O_2(g) + 4e^-$

WHAT WOULD HAPPEN WITH NON-ELECTROLYTES?

For electrolysis to work, there have to be ions present. The current in the external circuit (with the bulb and power source) can flow only if there are ions which can move and be discharged.

If you tried to electrolyse a covalent compound (either molten or in solution), there wouldn't be a current flow because there aren't any ions. Nothing else would happen either. Sugar, for example, is a non-electrolyte; it doesn't undergo electrolysis. It won't conduct electricity, and won't be decomposed by it, either in solution or when molten.

Simple experiments like those described in this chapter give you an easy way of finding out whether a substance is ionic or not. If it undergoes electrolysis, either molten or in solution, it must contain ions. If it doesn't undergo electrolysis, it doesn't contain ions.

KEY POINT

There are exceptions to this: covalent compounds that are electrolytes in solution. These include acids and ammonia solution.

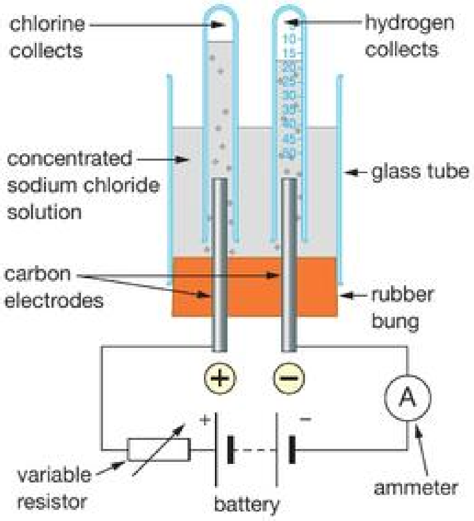
ACTIVITY 6

▼ PRACTICAL: QUANTITATIVE ELECTROLYSIS

Quantitative means related to numbers. We can investigate how *much* product we get in an electrolysis experiment. We could, for example, investigate the effect of changing the current on the amount of hydrogen produced at the cathode in the electrolysis of sodium chloride solution. To do this we would use similar apparatus to that in Figure 10.6, but we would also have to put a variable resistor and an ammeter into the circuit to allow us to vary and measure the current. We would also have to use a gas burette or measuring cylinder to measure the volume of gas produced. We would use the following procedure:

- Set up the apparatus as shown in Figure 10.11.
- Pour 50 cm³ of concentrated sodium chloride solution into the glass tube.
- Place a gas burette (or measuring cylinder) filled with sodium chloride solution over the cathode.
- Turn on the powerpack/connect the battery and set the current to 0.2 A using the variable resistor.

Safety Note: Wear eye protection. Do not smell the chlorine, especially if you have asthma. Once chlorine is detected the current must be switched off.



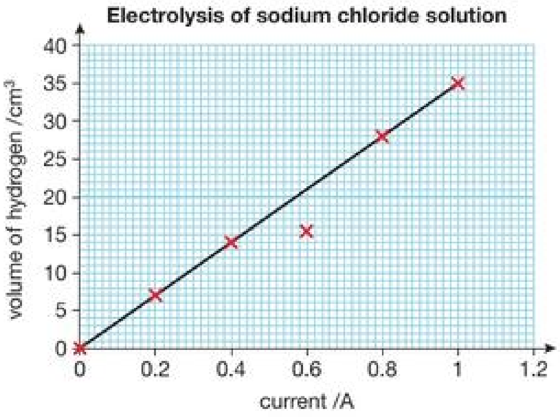
▲ Figure 10.11 We can use this apparatus for a quantitative electrolysis experiment.

- Take an initial reading on the gas burette. (We have to start the current flowing so that we can see what the current is, therefore we only take a reading on the gas burette after we have turned on the power.)
- Start the timer.
- Stop the timer after 5 minutes and note the final reading on the gas burette.
- Repeat for currents of 0.4 A, 0.6 A, 0.8 A and 1.0 A.
- Repeat each experiment to get more reliable results.

A set of results for this experiment could be:

Current/A	Volume of hydrogen gas produced/cm^3
0.20	7.0
0.40	13.9
0.60	15.1
0.80	28.0
1.0	34.9

We can plot this data on a graph (Figure 10.12).



▲ Figure 10.12 How changing the current affects the volume of hydrogen produced at the cathode.

Because the current is continuous data, we draw a line of best fit through the points. The reading at 0.6 A is an anomalous point and we do not include this when drawing our line of best fit. The reading at 0.6 A is too low and could have occurred because the current that we used was too low or some gas escaped.

The line of best fit is a straight line that goes through the origin and so we can say that we have a proportional relationship: the volume of gas produced is directly proportional to the current passed through the solution.

CHAPTER QUESTIONS

SKILLS REASONING

1 State what is formed at the cathode and at the anode during the electrolysis of the following substances. Assume that carbon electrodes were used each time.

- a Molten lead(II) bromide
- b Molten zinc chloride
- c Sodium iodide solution
- d Molten sodium iodide
- e Copper(II) chloride solution
- f Dilute hydrochloric acid
- g Magnesium sulfate solution
- h Sodium hydroxide solution

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

2 Copy and complete the following half-equations for reaction at the anode or cathode, and state whether each involves oxidation or reduction. Electrons have been put in for the first four but not for the ones after that.

- a $Mg^{2+} + e^- \rightarrow Mg$
- b $Al^{3+} + e^- \rightarrow Al$
- c $2Br^- \rightarrow Br_2 + e^-$
- d $O^{2-} \rightarrow O_2 + e^-$
- e $Cl^- \rightarrow Cl_2$
- f $Ni^{2+} \rightarrow Ni$
- g $OH^- \rightarrow O_2 + H_2O$
- h $H_2O \rightarrow O_2 + H^+$
- i $H_2O \rightarrow H_2 + OH^-$

SKILLS REASONING

3 Some solid potassium iodide was placed in an evaporating basin. Two carbon electrodes were inserted and connected to a 12 volt DC power source and a light bulb. The potassium iodide was heated. As soon as the potassium iodide was molten, the bulb came on. Purple fumes were seen coming from the positive electrode, and lilac flashes were seen around the negative one.

- a Explain why the bulb didn't come on until the potassium iodide melted.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

- b State the name of the positive electrode.
- c Name the purple fumes seen at the positive electrode, and write the ionic half-equation for their formation.
- d The lilac flashes seen around the negative electrode are caused by the potassium which is formed. The potassium burns with a lilac flame. Write the ionic half-equation for the formation of the potassium.
- e State the products formed at the electrodes if molten sodium bromide is electrolysed instead of molten potassium iodide.
- f Write the ionic half-equations for the reactions occurring during the electrolysis of molten sodium bromide.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

4 For electrolysis of each of the following
   - i write the ionic half-equation for the reaction occurring at the cathode
   - ii write the ionic half-equation for the reaction occurring at the anode
   - iii state what has been oxidised and what has been reduced.

a Molten lead(II) bromide using carbon electrodes

b Sodium chloride solution using carbon electrodes

c Calcium bromide solution using carbon electrodes

d Copper(II) sulfate solution using platinum electrodes

e Aluminium nitrate solution using carbon electrodes

f Molten magnesium iodide using carbon electrodes

g Dilute hydrochloric acid using platinum electrodes

SKILLS INTERPRETATION, REASONING

5 You are asked to find out whether two compounds, S and T, are electrolytes or non-electrolytes. S melts at 1261 °C and is soluble in water. T melts at 265 °C and is insoluble in water. Describe, with the aid of diagrams, how you would find out if each of these substances was an electrolyte or a non-electrolyte. In each case say what you would look for to help you to decide.

6 When copper(II) sulfate solution is electrolysed using copper electrodes the reaction at the cathode is the same as with inert electrodes but no oxygen is given off at the cathode. Instead the anode gets smaller as copper ions go into solution. The half-equation for the reaction at the anode is:

$$Cu(s) \rightarrow Cu^{2+}(aq) + 2e^-$$

a Write the half-equation for the reaction at the cathode.

SKILLS REASONING

b When copper(II) sulfate solution is electrolysed using inert electrodes the blue colour of the solution fades and the solution becomes more acidic.
   - i Explain these observations.
   - ii Predict and explain what happens to the colour and acidity of the solution when copper(II) sulfate solution is electrolysed with copper electrodes.

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

UNIT QUESTIONS

You may need to refer to the Periodic Table on page 320.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 4

1 Hydrogen is the most common element in the universe.
The melting point and boiling point of hydrogen are shown in the table:

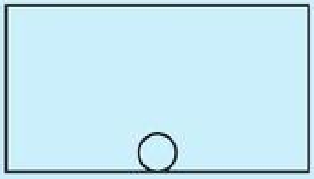
Melting point/°C	−259
Boiling point/°C	−253

a Put a cross in the box to show a temperature at which hydrogen is a liquid. **(1)**

−265 °C ☐ −260 °C ☐ −255 °C ☐ −250 °C ☐

SKILLS INTERPRETATION 6

b The circle in the diagram represents 1 molecule of hydrogen. Complete the diagram to show the arrangement of particles in liquid hydrogen. You should add at least 10 more circles to the diagram. **(2)**



SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 8

c Hydrogen has three isotopes, the least common of which is tritium, ^3H. Use the Periodic Table to work out the number of protons, neutrons and electrons in an atom of tritium. **(3)**

Number of protons:

Number of neutrons:

Number of electrons:

d Hydrogen reacts with nitrogen to form ammonia (NH_3).

7

i The electronic configuration of a nitrogen atom is (put a cross in one box): **(1)**

2, 2, 3 ☐ 2, 5 ☐ 2, 8, 4 ☐ 2, 2, 8, 2 ☐

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 8

ii Draw a dot-and-cross diagram, showing outer electrons only, to show the bonding in an ammonia molecule. **(2)**

6

e Ammonia forms salts that contain the ammonium ion. Put a cross in the box to show which of the following formulae for ammonium compounds is incorrect.

NH_4SO_4 ☐ NH_4NO_3 ☐ NH_4Cl ☐ $(NH_4)_2CO_3$ ☐

f Two more compounds that contain hydrogen are water and ethanol. Put a cross in the box to show a method that can be used to separate a mixture of ethanol and water. **(1)**

crystallisation	☐	simple distillation	☐
filtration	☐	fractional distillation	☐

(Total 10 marks)

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

2 **a** Complete the following passage by using the words below. You may use the words once, more than once, or not at all. **(4)**

mass number	atomic number	groups	periods
protons	electrons	outer shell	nucleus

The elements in the Periodic Table are arranged in order of ______________.

The vertical columns are called ______________ and contain elements

which have the same number of ______________ in their ______________.

b Put a cross next to the symbol(s) of elements that are non-metals. **(2)**

H ☐ V ☐ Pb ☐ Ar ☐ W ☐

SKILLS REASONING

c Silicon is an element that shows some of the properties of metals and non-metals. It is sometimes called a *metalloid*.

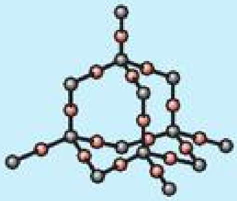
i Two properties of silicon are:

- silicon conducts electricity
- silicon forms an oxide (SiO_2) that reacts with hot concentrated sodium hydroxide.

Explain which of these is not a property of metals. **(2)**

SKILLS ANALYSIS, REASONING

ii The structure of silicon dioxide (SiO_2) is shown in the diagram. This structure continues in all directions.



Explain in terms of electronic configurations and bonding whether the grey or red circles in this diagram represent silicon atoms. **(3)**

iii By referring to the diagram in part **ii** explain whether you would expect SiO_2 to be a solid, liquid or gas at room temperature. **(2)**

(Total 13 marks)

SKILLS INTERPRETATION, REASONING

3 Strontium is an element in Group 2 of the Periodic Table and bromine is an element in Group 7.

a Explain what happens in terms of electrons when an atom of strontium combines with an atom of bromine to form strontium bromide. You may draw a diagram to illustrate your answer. **(3)**

b Explain in terms of structure and bonding whether you would expect strontium bromide to have a high or a low melting point. **(3)**

c Explain what you understand by the term 'relative atomic mass' of an element. **(2)**

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

d The natural abundances of the two isotopes of bromine are:

^{79}Br 50.69%

^{81}Br 49.31%

Calculate the relative atomic mass of bromine. Give your answer to 2 decimal places. **(2)**

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

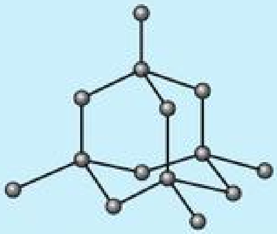
e The formula of strontium nitrate is (put a cross in one box): **(1)**

$SrNO_3$ ☐ $Sr(NO_3)_2$ ☐ $SrNO_{32}$ ☐ Sr_3N_2 ☐

(Total 11 marks)

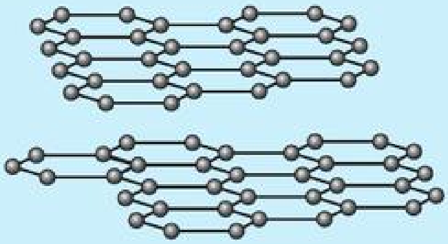
SKILLS REASONING

4 The diagram represents the structure of diamond, a form of carbon.

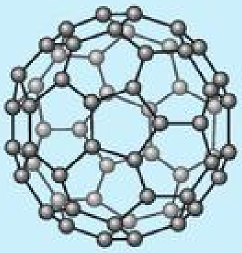


a Explain in terms of structure and bonding why diamond is very hard. **(2)**

b Two more forms of carbon are graphite and C_{60} fullerene. Part of the structure of graphite and a molecule of C_{60} fullerene are shown in the diagram.



graphite



C_{60} fullerene

i Explain whether graphite or C_{60} fullerene has the higher boiling point. **(4)**

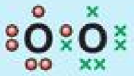
ii Explain why graphite conducts electricity. **(2)**

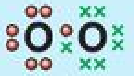
iii Explain why C_{60} fullerene does not conduct electricity. **(2)**

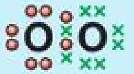
(Total 10 marks)

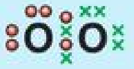
SKILLS ANALYSIS 7 **5**

a Oxygen gas has the formula O_2. Which of the following is a correct dot-and-cross diagram showing the bonding in O_2 (outer shells of electrons only are shown). Circle one of the diagrams. **(1)**









SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 6

b Oxygen reacts with potassium to form potassium oxide. Put a cross in one box to indicate what the formula of potassium oxide is. **(1)**

PO ☐ KO ☐ K_2O ☐ KO_2 ☐

SKILLS ANALYSIS

c Oxygen reacts with carbon to form carbon dioxide. Which diagram shows the covalent bonds in carbon dioxide? Circle one diagram. **(1)**

$O{=}C{-}O$

$O{=}C{=}O$

$O{=}C{\equiv}O$

$O{-}C{-}O$

(Total 3 marks)

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 7 **6**

In an experiment to find the empirical formula of lead oxide, a small porcelain dish was weighed, filled with lead oxide and weighed again. The dish was placed in a tube and heated in a stream of hydrogen. The hydrogen reduced the lead oxide to a bead of metallic lead. When the apparatus was cool, the dish and its bead of lead were weighed together.

Mass of porcelain dish = 17.95 g

Mass of porcelain dish + lead oxide = 24.80 g

Mass of porcelain dish + lead = 24.16 g

(A_r: O = 16, Pb = 207)

a Calculate the mass of lead in the lead oxide. **(1)**

b Calculate the mass of oxygen in the lead oxide. **(1)**

9

c There are three different oxides of lead: PbO, PbO_2 and Pb_3O_4. Use your results from a and b to find the empirical formula of the oxide used in the experiment. **(3)**

(Total 5 marks)

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 7

7 Copper reacts with concentrated nitric acid to produce copper(II) nitrate solution and nitrogen dioxide gas.

$$Cu(s) + 4HNO_3(aq) \rightarrow Cu(NO_3)_2(aq) + 2NO_2(g) + 2H_2O(l)$$

A student carried out an experiment to make some copper(II) nitrate crystals.

a The student started with 2.00 g of copper and added excess nitric acid. Calculate the maximum mass of copper(II) nitrate, $Cu(NO_3)_2$, which could be obtained. (A_r: N = 14, O = 16, Cu = 63.5) **(3)**

SKILLS EXECUTIVE FUNCTION 5

b Explain the method the student could use to obtain crystals of copper(II) nitrate from the copper nitrate solution. **(3)**

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 7

c The copper nitrate crystallises out of the solution as $Cu(NO_3)_2{\cdot}3H_2O$. The student did some calculations and worked out that he should make 7.61 g of crystals. He actually only made 5.23 g. Calculate the percentage yield of the student's experiment. **(2)**

(Total 8 marks)

CHEMISTRY ONLY

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 9

8 If pyrite (FeS_2) is heated strongly in air it reacts according to the equation:

$$4FeS_2(s) + 11O_2(g) \rightarrow 2Fe_2O_3(s) + 8SO_2(g)$$

Iron can be extracted from the iron(III) oxide produced, and the sulfur dioxide can be converted into sulfuric acid. In this question you can assume that the molar volume of any gas at rtp is 24 dm^3.

a Calculate the mass of iron(III) oxide that can be obtained from 480 kg of pure pyrite. (A_r: O = 16, S = 32, Fe = 56) **(3)**

b Calculate the volume of sulfur dioxide (measured at rtp) produced from 480 kg of pyrite. **(2)**

c The next stage of the manufacture of sulfuric acid is to convert the sulfur dioxide into sulfur trioxide (SO_3) by reacting it with oxygen.

  i Write a balanced equation for this reaction. **(2)**

  ii Calculate the volume of oxygen (measured at rtp) needed for the complete conversion of the sulfur dioxide produced in **b** into sulfur trioxide. **(2)**

(Total 9 marks)

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 7

9 Strontium hydroxide, $Sr(OH)_2$, is only sparingly soluble in water at room temperature. In an experiment to measure its solubility, a student made a saturated solution of strontium hydroxide. She pipetted 25.0 cm^3 of this solution into a conical flask, added a few drops of methyl orange indicator and then titrated it with 0.100 mol/dm^3 hydrochloric acid from a burette. She needed to add 32.8 cm^3 of the acid to neutralise the strontium hydroxide.

$$Sr(OH)_2(aq) + 2HCl(aq) \rightarrow SrCl_2(aq) + 2H_2O(l)$$

5

a Explain what is meant by a *saturated solution*. **(1)**

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 8

b Calculate the number of moles of HCl in 32.8 cm^3 of 0.100 mol/dm^3 hydrochloric acid. **(1)**

c Calculate the concentration of the strontium hydroxide in mol/dm^3. **(3)**

d The solubility of a substance is usually measured in units of g per 100 g of water. The mass of 1 dm^3 of water is 1000 g. Use the value that you obtained in **c** to calculate the solubility of strontium hydroxide as g of strontium hydroxide per 100 g of water. (A_r: H = 1, O = 16, Sr = 88) **(2)**

SKILLS EXECUTIVE FUNCTION 7

e The calculation used in **d** gives only an approximate value for the solubility because the volume changes when a substance is dissolved in water. Describe an experiment that the student could carry out to determine a more accurate value for how much strontium hydroxide dissolves in 100 g of water at this temperature. You can assume that you are given 50 cm^3 of saturated strontium hydroxide solution. You should include a description of the apparatus you would use and the measurements you would make. **(5)**

(Total 12 marks)

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 8

10 A student carried out some experiments using dilute sulfuric acid.

a He found that 25.0 cm^3 of 0.100 mol/dm^3 sodium hydroxide solution was neutralised by 20.0 cm^3 of the dilute sulfuric acid.

The equation for the reaction is

$$2NaOH(aq) + H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow Na_2SO_4(aq) + 2H_2O(l)$$

Calculate the concentration of the sulfuric acid in mol/dm^3. **(4)**

9

b 100 cm^3 of this same sulfuric acid was reacted with magnesium.

$$Mg(s) + H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow MgSO_4(aq) + H_2(g)$$

- **i** Magnesium is a metal. Describe the structure and bonding in a piece of magnesium. **(3)**
- **ii** Magnesium is malleable. Explain in terms of structure and bonding why magnesium is malleable. **(2)**
- **iii** Calculate the amount in moles of sulfuric acid that was used. **(1)**
- **iv** The student used 0.100 g of magnesium in the experiment. Work out whether the sulfuric acid or the magnesium was in excess. **(2)**
- **v** Calculate the volume of hydrogen gas that would be produced at rtp in this experiment. (Assume that the molar volume at rtp of hydrogen is 24 000 cm^3.) **(2)**
- **vi** When the student did the experiment they collected 94 cm^3 of gas. Calculate the percentage yield of the experiment. **(1)**

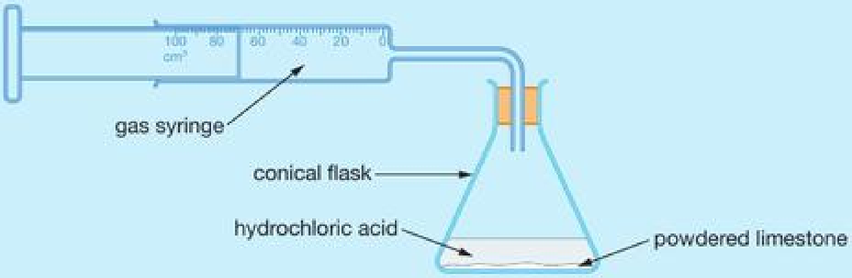
c The student electrolysed the solution of magnesium sulfate.

- **i** State the name of the product formed at the cathode. **(1)**
- **ii** Oxygen gas is formed at the anode. Write an ionic half-equation for the formation of oxygen at the anode. **(2)**

(Total 18 marks)

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 3

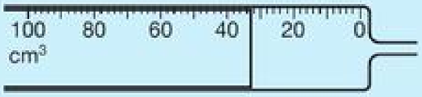
11 A class of 11 students carried out an experiment to determine how much calcium carbonate ($CaCO_3$) was in a sample of limestone. Each student was given a different mass of limestone, which they added to 50 cm³ of dilute hydrochloric acid and then measured the volume of carbon dioxide produced using the apparatus shown below.


100 cm³
80
60
40
20
0
gas syringe
conical flask
hydrochloric acid
powdered limestone

a Name a piece of apparatus that could be used to measure out 50 cm³ of dilute hydrochloric acid. **(1)**

4

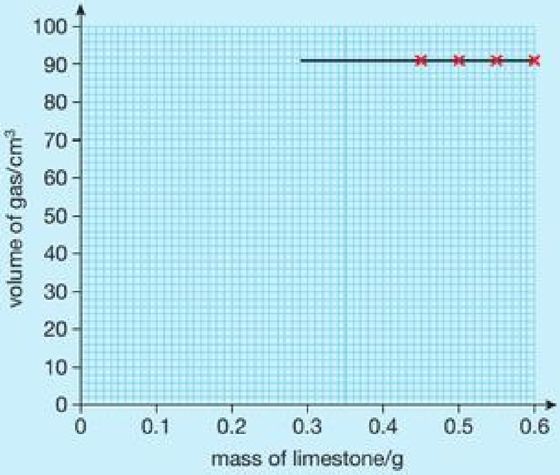
b The diagram shows the reading from the experiment carried out by Student 2.


100 cm³
80
60
40
20
0

Complete the table with the volume of gas collected by Student 2. **(1)**

Student	Mass of limestone/g	Volume of gas produced/cm³
1	0.10	22
2	0.15	
3	0.20	37
4	0.25	56
5	0.30	66
6	0.35	78
7	0.40	88
8	0.45	91
9	0.50	91
10	0.55	91
11	0.60	91

c Some of the data have been plotted on the graph below. Plot the rest of the data on the graph and draw another straight line of best fit. **(3)**



d The teacher realised that one of the student's results was incorrect.

SKILLS ANALYSIS

i Explain which student's result is incorrect. **(2)**

SKILLS DECISION MAKING

ii Suggest one thing that could have gone wrong with the student's experiment to produce this result. **(1)**

SKILLS REASONING

e Explain why the volume of gas produced in the experiments carried out by Students 8–11 is the same. **(2)**

SKILLS ANALYSIS

f Use the graph to determine the mass of limestone that reacts exactly with the hydrochloric acid. **(1)**

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

g The equation for the reaction between calcium carbonate and hydrochloric acid is

$$CaCO_3(s) + 2HCl(...) \rightarrow CaCl_2(aq) + H_2O(...) + CO_2(g)$$

i Complete the equation by adding the missing state symbols. **(2)**

ii Calculate the mass of calcium carbonate that would produce 91 cm^3 of carbon dioxide at rtp. **(3)**

(Assume that the molar volume of a gas at rtp is 24 000 cm^3.)

iii Calculate the percentage of calcium carbonate in the sample of limestone. **(2)**

(Total 18 marks)

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

THE ALKALI METALS 123
THE HALOGENS 130
GASES IN THE ATMOSPHERE 137
REACTIVITY SERIES 145
EXTRACTION AND USES OF METALS 160
ACIDS, ALKALIS AND TITRATIONS 167
ACIDS, BASES AND SALT PREPARATIONS 173
CHEMICAL TESTS 190

UNIT 2

INORGANIC CHEMISTRY

Inorganic chemistry is the study of all the elements in the Periodic Table and the compounds they form, except organic compounds formed by carbon. The properties of these elements are very different and they form a huge variety of compounds. The Periodic Table is the great unifying principle used by inorganic chemists as a guide to understanding the behaviour of the elements and their compounds. Most of the elements in the Periodic Table are metals and these are some of the most important materials that we use in everyday life. However, scientists are always searching for new materials with exciting properties. Inorganic chemists are involved in the development of these new materials, for instance high-temperature superconductors that are used in trains that levitate above the tracks.

▲ Figure 11.1 The maglev train levitates above the track due to superconducting materials.

11 THE ALKALI METALS

We have already looked at the Periodic Table in Chapter 4. Here we will look at the properties of the elements in Group 1 of the Periodic Table: the alkali metals.

▶ Figure 11.2 Potassium reacting with water. The alkali metals are all reactive metals that react vigorously with water.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Understand how the similarities in the reactions of these elements with water provide evidence for their recognition as a family of elements
- Understand how the differences between the reactions of these elements with air and water provide evidence for the trend in reactivity in Group 1
- Use knowledge of trends in Group 1 to predict the properties of other alkali metals

CHEMISTRY ONLY

- Explain the trend in reactivity in Group 1 in terms of electronic configurations.

Li	lithium
Na	sodium
K	potassium
Rb	rubidium
Cs	caesium
Fr	francium

▲ Figure 11.3 The alkali metals

The elements in Group 1 of the Periodic Table are called the **alkali metals**. The group contains the elements shown in Figure 11.3.

Francium (pronounced france-ee-um), at the bottom of the group, is **radioactive**. One of its isotopes is produced during the radioactive decay of uranium-235, but is extremely short-lived. At any one time scientists estimate that there is only about 20–30 g of francium present in the whole of the Earth's crust and no one has ever seen a piece of francium. When you know about the rest of Group 1 you can predict what francium would be like. We will make those predictions later.

PHYSICAL PROPERTIES

	Melting point/°C	Boiling point/°C	Density/g/cm^3
Li	181	1342	0.53
Na	98	883	0.97
K	63	760	0.86
Rb	39	686	1.53
Cs	29	669	1.88

The melting and boiling points of the elements are very low for metals, and get lower as you move down the group.

Their densities tend to increase down the group, although not regularly. Lithium, sodium and potassium are all less dense than water, and so will float on it.

The metals are also very soft and are easily cut with a knife, becoming softer as you move down the group. They are shiny and silver when freshly cut, but tarnish very quickly on exposure to air.

EXTENSION WORK

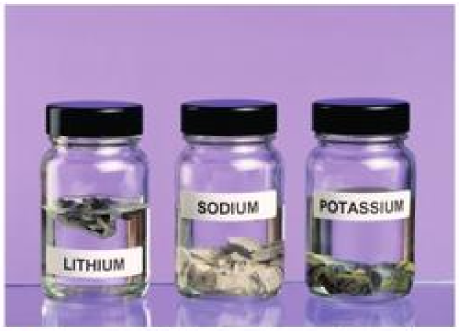
The reason that the melting points decrease is that the atoms get bigger as we go down the group. In the metallic lattice, the nuclei of the positive ions are further from the delocalised electrons in caesium than in sodium and therefore there is weaker electrostatic attraction.

STORAGE AND HANDLING

All these metals are extremely reactive and get more reactive as you go down the group. They all react quickly with oxygen in the air to form oxides, and react rapidly with water to form strongly alkaline solutions of the metal hydroxides. This is why the Group 1 metals are commonly known as the alkali metals.

To stop them reacting with oxygen or water vapour in the air, lithium, sodium and potassium are stored under oil. Rubidium and caesium are so reactive that they have to be stored in sealed glass tubes to stop any possibility of oxygen getting at them.

Great care must be taken not to touch any of these metals with bare fingers. There could be enough sweat on your skin to give a reaction, producing lots of heat and a very **corrosive** metal hydroxide.



▲ Figure 11.4 Lithium, sodium and potassium have to be kept in oil to stop them reacting with oxygen in the air.

A FAMILY OF ELEMENTS

There are two reasons that we put these elements in Group 1:

1 They all have *one* electron in their outer shell. The electronic configurations are:

lithium	2, 1
sodium	2, 8, 1
potassium	2, 8, 8, 1

2 They have similar chemical properties, for example:

- they all react with water (this will be discussed below) in the same way to form a hydroxide with the formula MOH (e.g. LiOH, NaOH) and hydrogen
- they react with oxygen to form an oxide with the formula M_2O (Na_2O, K_2O)
- they react with halogens to form compounds with the formula MX (e.g. LiCl, KBr)
- they form ionic compounds which contain an M^+ ion (e.g. Na^+, K^+).

The chemical properties depend on the number of electrons in the outer shell. The Group 1 elements react in very similar ways because they all have the same number of electrons in the outer shell (one), so reason 2 is really just a consequence of reason 1.

We will discuss the chemical properties in more detail below.

DID YOU KNOW?

Historically alkali metals were put in the same group because of similarities in properties, before anyone knew anything about electrons!

KEY POINT

'M' simply represents any one of the alkali metals. 'X' represents any one of the halogens.

REACTIONS WITH WATER

All these metals react in the same way with water to produce a metal hydroxide and hydrogen:

$$\text{alkali metal} + \text{water} \rightarrow \text{alkali metal hydroxide} + \text{hydrogen}$$

$$2M + 2H_2O \rightarrow 2MOH + H_2$$

REMINDER

You might need to remind yourself why the formula is MOH by looking at Chapter 7. The charge on the hydroxide ion is 1–.

The main difference between the reactions is how quickly they happen.

As you go down the group, the metals become more reactive and the reactions occur more rapidly.

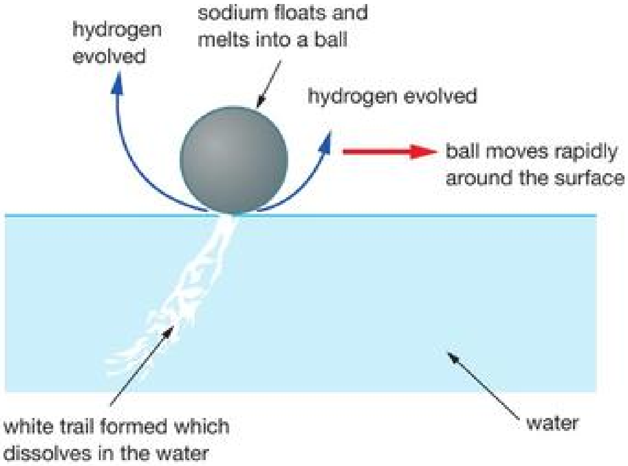
The reaction between sodium and water is typical.

WITH SODIUM

$$2Na(s) + 2H_2O(l) \rightarrow 2NaOH(aq) + H_2(g)$$

HINT

Strictly speaking, most of the time the sodium is reacting it is present as molten sodium, not solid sodium. Writing (l) for the state symbol has the potential to confuse an examiner and is probably best avoided!


hydrogen evolved
sodium floats and melts into a ball
hydrogen evolved
ball moves rapidly around the surface
white trail formed which dissolves in the water
water

▲ Figure 11.5 Sodium reacting with water. The white trail is the sodium hydroxide, which dissolves in water to form a strongly alkaline solution.

The main observations you can make when this reaction occurs are:

- The sodium floats because it is less dense than water.
- The sodium melts into a ball because its melting point is low and a lot of heat is produced by the reaction.
- There is fizzing because hydrogen gas is produced.
- The sodium moves around on the surface of the water. Because the hydrogen isn't given off symmetrically around the ball, the sodium is pushed around the surface of the water, like a hovercraft.
- The piece of sodium gets smaller and eventually disappears. The sodium is used up in the reaction.
- If you test the solution that is formed with universal indicator solution, you will see that the universal indicator goes blue, indicating an alkaline solution has been formed. The metal hydroxide is alkaline (the solution contains the OH^- ion).

HINT

When asked to write *observations* in the exam it is better to write 'fizzing/bubbling/effervescing' rather than 'a gas is given off' because the fizzing/bubbling/effervescing is what you actually see.

▲ Figure 11.6 A hovercraft

LITHIUM

$$2Li(s) + 2H_2O(l) \rightarrow 2LiOH(aq) + H_2(g)$$

The reaction is very similar to sodium's reaction, except that it is slower. Lithium's melting point is higher and the heat isn't produced so quickly, so the lithium doesn't melt.

HINT

When you are asked about this in the exam, you are often asked to compare the reactions of sodium and lithium so you should explain how you can see that the reaction of lithium is slower. So, for example, you can say that it fizzes more slowly, or the lithium moves around more slowly, or takes longer to disappear.

POTASSIUM

$$2K(s) + 2H_2O(l) \rightarrow 2KOH(aq) + H_2(g)$$

Potassium's reaction is faster than sodium's. Enough heat is produced to ignite the hydrogen, which burns with a lilac flame. The reaction often ends with the potassium spitting around and exploding.

HINT

Again, if you are asked to compare potassium with sodium use phrases such as:
'fizzes *more* vigorously'
'moves around *more* quickly'
'disappears *more* quickly'
The key difference though is that with potassium the hydrogen bursts into flames but with sodium it usually does not.

RUBIDIUM AND CAESIUM

These react even more violently than potassium, and the reaction can be explosive. Rubidium hydroxide and caesium hydroxide are formed.

Safety Note: The reactions of rubidium and caesium would be too hazardous to attempt in school as they would explode.

CHEMISTRY ONLY

EXPLAINING THE INCREASE IN REACTIVITY

As you go down the group, the metals become more reactive.

In all these reactions, the metal atoms are losing electrons and forming metal ions in solution. For example:

$$Na(s) \rightarrow Na^+(aq) + e^-$$

The differences between the reactions depend on how easily the *outer electron* of the metal is lost in each case. That depends on how strongly it is attracted to the nucleus in the original atom. Remember that the nucleus of an atom is positive because it contains protons, and so attracts the negative electrons.

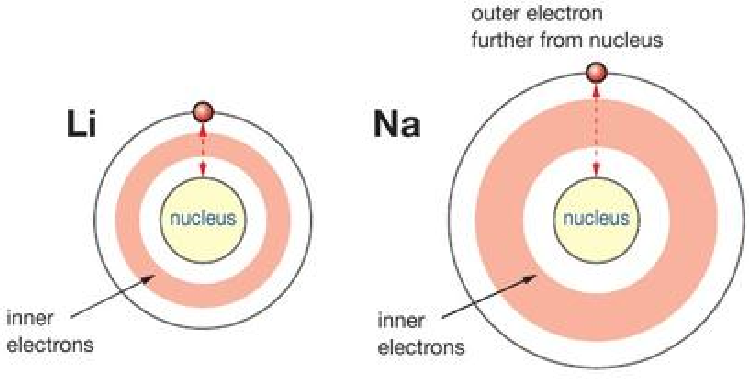


Figure 11.7 Electrons of lithium and sodium

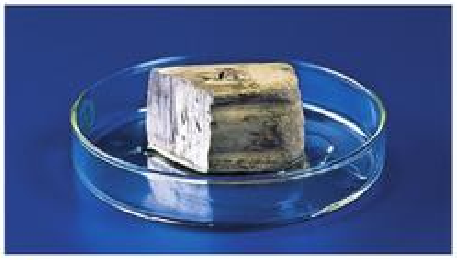
As we move down the group, the atoms have more shells of electrons and get bigger: a sodium atom is bigger than a lithium atom and a potassium atom is bigger than a sodium atom. As the atoms get bigger, the *outer electron*, which is the one lost in the reaction, is further from the nucleus. Because it is further from the nucleus it is less strongly attracted by the nucleus and therefore more easily lost.

EXTENSION WORK

The electrons released by the metal are gained by the water molecules, producing hydroxide ions and hydrogen gas.

$$2H_2O(l) + 2e^- \rightarrow 2OH^-(aq) + H_2(g)$$

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY



▲ Figure 11.8 A piece of sodium. The left-hand edge has been freshly cut, so it is shiny.

REACTIONS OF THE ALKALI METALS WITH THE AIR

Lithium, sodium and potassium are all stored in oil because they react with the air. If we look at a piece of sodium which has been taken out of the oil, it usually has a crust on the outside. It is not shiny unless it has been freshly cut.

When the piece of sodium is cut, the fresh surface is shiny but it tarnishes rapidly as the freshly exposed sodium reacts with oxygen in the air. If we do the same with a piece of lithium it tarnishes more slowly because lithium reacts more slowly than sodium. A freshly cut piece of potassium tarnishes extremely rapidly, more quickly than sodium. In this way we can see again that potassium is more reactive than sodium, which is more reactive than lithium. In each case the metal reacts with oxygen in the air to form an oxide with the formula M_2O.

If we heat each of the metals in the air using a Bunsen burner, we get a much more vigorous reaction and it is more difficult to see which metal is most reactive because all the reactions are so rapid.

Lithium burns with a red flame to form lithium oxide.

Sodium burns with a yellow flame to form sodium oxide.

Potassium burns with a lilac flame to form potassium oxide.

The equation for all these reactions is:

$$4M(s) + O_2(g) \rightarrow 2M_2O(s)$$

In each case the product formed is a white powder – the alkali metal oxide.

REMINDER

Remember the charge on the oxide ion is O^{2-} and the charge on an alkali metal ion is M^+.

EXTENSION WORK

When the alkali metals react with air, other types of oxide can also be formed, called peroxides (M_2O_2) and superoxides (MO_2). These all still contain the M^+ ion, it is the oxygen bit which is different. Lithium can also form a nitride (Li_3N).

COMPOUNDS OF THE ALKALI METALS

All Group 1 metal ions are colourless. That means that their compounds will be colourless or white unless they are combined with a coloured negative ion. Potassium dichromate(VI) is orange, for example, because the dichromate(VI) ion is orange, and potassium manganate(VII) is purple because the manganate(VII) ion is purple. Group 1 compounds are typical ionic solids and are mostly soluble in water.

SUMMARISING THE MAIN FEATURES OF THE GROUP 1 ELEMENTS

Group 1 elements:

- are metals
- are soft with melting points and densities which are very low for metals
- have to be stored out of contact with air or water
- react rapidly with air to form coatings of the metal oxide
- react with water to produce an alkaline solution of the metal hydroxide and hydrogen gas
- increase in reactivity as you go down the group
- form compounds in which the metal has a 1+ ion
- have mainly white/colourless compounds which dissolve to produce colourless solutions.

PREDICTING THE PROPERTIES OF FRANCIUM

As we move down a group in the Periodic Table the properties of the elements change gradually. So, if we know the properties of most of the elements in a group, we should be able to predict the properties of elements we don't know. Francium is extremely radioactive and at any time, anywhere in the world, there is only a tiny amount present; nobody has actually seen a piece of francium. We can, however, predict the properties of francium using the properties of the other alkali metals.

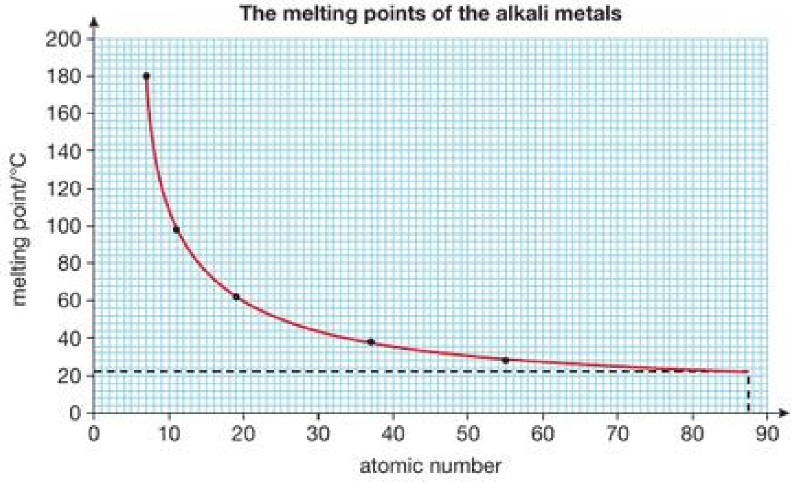
We can predict that francium:

- is very soft
- will have a melting point around room temperature
- has density which is probably just over 2 g/cm^3
- will be a silvery metal, but will tarnish almost instantly in air
- will react violently with water to give francium hydroxide and hydrogen
- will be more reactive than caesium
- will have a hydroxide, francium hydroxide, with the formula FrOH, which will be soluble in water and form a strongly alkaline solution
- will form compounds that are white/colourless and dissolve in water to give colourless solutions.

REMINDER

Remember, you can't actually observe any of these things.

We could use a graphical method to predict the melting point of francium. If we plot the melting point of the alkali metals against atomic number then draw a line of best fit we get:



▲ Figure 11.9 This graph allows us to predict the melting point of francium.

If we carry on the line to atomic number 87 we can predict a melting point of about 22 °C.

KEY POINT

Various other predictions give a melting point for francium between 21 °C and 27 °C.

CHAPTER QUESTIONS

SKILLS REASONING 7

1 Explain why lithium, sodium and potassium are put in the same group in the Periodic Table.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

2 This question concerns the chemistry of the elements Li, Na, K, Rb and Cs. In a and b, you should name the substances represented by letters.

a **A** is the least dense of all the metals.

b When metal **B** is dropped onto water it melts into a small ball and moves rapidly around the surface. A gas, **C**, is given off and this burns with a lilac flame. A solution of **D** is formed.

9 c Write an equation for the reaction of **B** with water.

SKILLS REASONING 6 d What would you expect to see if solution **D** was tested with universal indicator paper?

7 e Explain why **B** melts into a small ball when it is dropped onto water.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 9 f **E** burns in air with a yellow flame to form compound **F**. Write a word equation and balanced symbol equation for the reaction that occurs.

7 3 Explain whether each of the following statements is true or false.

a Sodium forms mostly covalent compounds.

8 b A rubidium atom is larger than a potassium atom.

6 c All the alkali metals react with air to form oxides.

7 d Lithium reacts with chlorine to form lithium chloride, which has the formula Li_2Cl.

SKILLS REASONING 8

4 Imagine that a new alkali metal has recently been discovered and that it fits into the Periodic Table below francium. We will call this new element edexcelium.

a Explain whether you would expect edexcelium to be more or less dense than francium.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 9 b State how many electrons edexcelium will have in its outer shell.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 8 c State the names of the products that will be formed when edexcelium reacts with water.

d Explain whether edexcelium will be more or less reactive than francium.

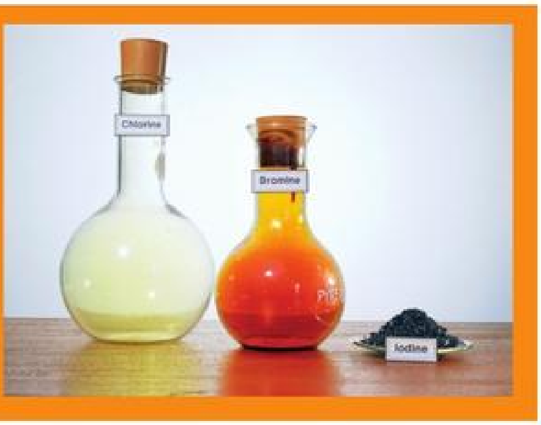
SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 9 e If the symbol for edexcelium is Ed, write a balanced chemical equation for the reaction of edexcelium with water.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 6 f When edexcelium reacts with water, will the solution formed be acidic, alkaline or neutral?

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 7 g Write the formula for the compound formed when edexcelium reacts with air.

12 THE HALOGENS

The elements in Group 7 of the Periodic Table are called the halogens. In this chapter we will look at some of the properties of these elements. When we first look at them, it is hard to see that they form a family of elements because they look so different, but they react in very similar ways.



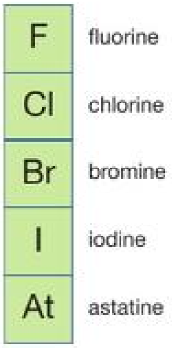
▶ Figure 12.1 Chlorine, bromine and iodine are three of the halogens.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Know the colours, physical states (at room temperature) and trends in physical properties of the halogens
- Use knowledge of trends in Group 7 to predict the properties of other halogens
- Understand how displacement reactions involving halogens and halides provide evidence for the trend in reactivity in Group 7

CHEMISTRY ONLY

- Explain the trend in reactivity in Group 7 in terms of electronic configurations.



F	fluorine
Cl	chlorine
Br	bromine
I	iodine
At	astatine

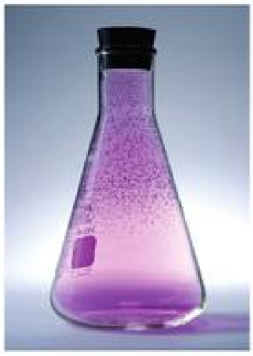
▲ Figure 12.2 The halogens

THE HALOGENS

The atoms of fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine and astatine all have 7 electrons in their outer shell, therefore these elements are put in Group 7 in the Periodic Table. The number of electrons in the outer shell of an atom determines how something reacts, so all the elements in Group 7 react in a similar way.

The name '**halogen**' means 'salt-producing'. When they react with metals, these elements produce a wide range of salts, including calcium fluoride, sodium chloride, silver bromide and potassium iodide. All the salts contain the X^- ion (where X stands for any halogen atom).

The halogens are non-metallic elements with diatomic molecules: F_2, Cl_2, etc.



▲ Figure 12.3 Iodine is a grey solid but has a purple vapour.

Table 12.1 The melting and boiling points of the halogens increase and the colour becomes darker down the group

	Physical state at room temperature	Colour
F_2	gas	yellow
Cl_2	gas	green
Br_2	liquid	red-brown liquid, orange/brown vapour
I_2	solid	grey solid, purple vapour

REMINDER

Remember that intermolecular forces are the forces of attraction between molecules.

The melting and boiling points increase down the group. The halogens are all covalent molecular substances and the melting and boiling points increase as the relative molecular mass increases. As the relative molecular mass increases, the intermolecular forces of attraction become stronger and therefore more energy must be put in to overcome these stronger forces of attraction. Remember, no covalent bonds are broken when these melt/boil.

Because the halogens are non-metals, they are poor conductors of heat and electricity.

Astatine is radioactive and is formed during the radioactive decay of other elements, such as uranium and thorium. Most of its isotopes are so unstable that their lives can be measured in seconds or fractions of a second.

SAFETY

Fluorine is so dangerously reactive that you would never expect to find it in a school lab. Apart from any safety problems, due to the reactivity of the elements (especially fluorine and chlorine), all the halogens have extremely poisonous **vapours** and have to be handled in a fume cupboard. Liquid bromine is also very corrosive, and great care has to be taken to keep it off the skin.

REACTIONS OF THE HALOGENS

The halogens react with hydrogen to form **hydrogen halides**: hydrogen fluoride, hydrogen chloride, hydrogen bromide and hydrogen iodide. For example:

$$H_2(g) + Br_2(g) \rightarrow 2HBr(g)$$

KEY POINT

This is something that can be confusing. Hydrogen chloride is a gas and when it dissolves in water it becomes hydrochloric acid. Hydrogen chloride is a gas consisting of HCl molecules and hydrochloric acid is a solution containing H^+ and Cl^- ions. The acids formed by other hydrogen halides are:

HF(aq)	hydrofluoric acid
HBr(aq)	hydrobromic acid
HI(aq)	hydroiodic acid

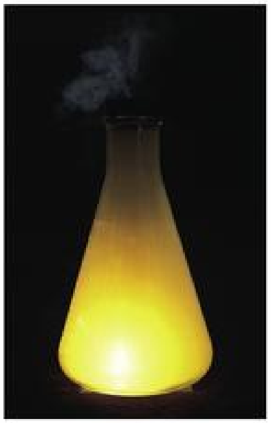
The hydrogen halides are all acidic, poisonous gases. In common with all the compounds formed between the halogens and non-metals, the gases are covalently bonded. They are very soluble in water, reacting with it to produce solutions of acids. For example, hydrochloric acid is a solution of hydrogen chloride in water:

$$\underset{\text{hydrogen chloride}}{HCl(g)} \xrightarrow{\text{dissolve in water}} \underset{\text{hydrochloric acid}}{HCl(aq)}$$

The halogens react with alkali metals to form salts. For instance, sodium burns in chlorine with its typical yellow flame to produce white, solid sodium chloride:

$$2Na(s) + Cl_2(g) \rightarrow 2NaCl(s)$$

Sodium chloride is an ionic solid. Typically, when the halogens react with metals from Groups 1 and 2, they form ions.



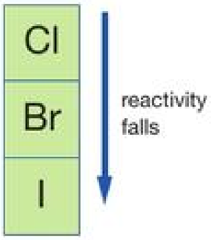
▲ Figure 12.4 Sodium burning in chlorine to produce sodium chloride.

DISPLACEMENT REACTIONS INVOLVING THE HALOGENS

In this section we will look at what happens when we react a solution of a halogen with a solution containing halide ions. These are called **displacement reactions** – you will see why below. We can use these displacement reactions to show that chlorine is more reactive than bromine, which is more reactive than iodine.

KEY POINT

We will concentrate on the three commonly used halogens, but the trend continues for the rest of the group.



▲ Figure 12.5 Reactivity decreases down the group.

REACTING CHLORINE WITH POTASSIUM BROMIDE OR POTASSIUM IODIDE SOLUTIONS

KEY POINT

Although pure liquid bromine is red-brown, in solution it is orange. If the solution is very dilute it may even look yellow.

HINT

You have to be careful with the words you use here. In the exam you must write 'chlorine displaces bromine' not 'chlorine displaces bromide'.

▲ Figure 12.6 Bromine and iodine displaced from potassium bromide and potassium iodide solutions.

If you add chlorine solution ('chlorine water') to colourless potassium bromide solution, the solution becomes orange as bromine is formed:

$$2KBr(aq) + Cl_2(aq) \rightarrow 2KCl(aq) + Br_2(aq)$$

potassium bromide + chlorine → potassium chloride + bromine

Chlorine is more reactive than bromine and has displaced the bromine from solution. You can think about this in the following way: if something is more reactive, it has a greater tendency to *react* to form a compound. Something that is less reactive is more likely to go back to being the element (the unreacted form).

Similarly, adding chlorine solution to potassium iodide solution gives a brown (orange if it is very dilute) solution of iodine.

$$2KI(aq) + Cl_2(aq) \rightarrow 2KCl(aq) + I_2(aq)$$

In exactly the same way, the more reactive bromine displaces the less reactive iodine from potassium iodide solution. Adding bromine solution ('bromine water') to colourless potassium iodide solution gives a brown solution of iodine:

$$2KI(aq) + Br_2(aq) \rightarrow 2KBr(aq) + I_2(aq)$$

POTASSIUM IODIDE

▲ Figure 12.7 Bromine displaces iodine from potassium iodide solution.

All of the following experiments show no reaction:

- bromine + potassium chloride solution: the less reactive bromine cannot displace the more reactive chlorine
- iodine + potassium chloride solution: the less reactive iodine cannot displace the more reactive chlorine
- iodine + potassium bromide solution: the less reactive iodine cannot displace the more reactive bromine.

IONIC EQUATIONS FOR DISPLACEMENT REACTIONS

REMINDER

Remember when an ionic compound dissolves in water, it splits into its ions.

In all of the above reactions it would not have mattered if we had reacted chlorine with *sodium* bromide or *magnesium* bromide, for example. The reaction occurs between the chlorine molecule and the bromide ion; the metal ion does not do anything, we call it a **spectator ion**. If we write the reaction between chlorine and potassium iodide showing all the charges, we can see this more clearly:

$$\boxed{2K^+(aq)} + 2Br^-(aq) + Cl_2(aq) \rightarrow \boxed{2K^+(aq)} + 2Cl^-(aq) + Br_2(aq)$$

You can see that the potassium ions are the same on each side. They have not changed and so we can write a new equation simply concentrating on the things that have changed:

$$2Br^-(aq) + Cl_2(aq) \rightarrow 2Cl^-(aq) + Br_2(aq)$$

This is called an *ionic equation* and does not include the spectator ions.

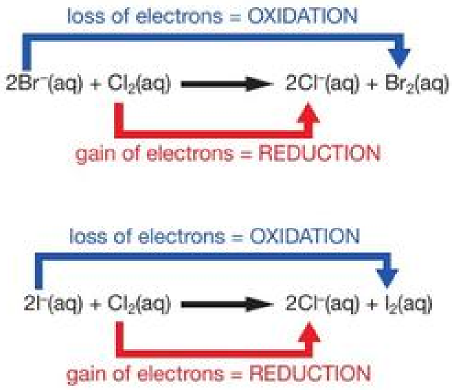
DISPLACEMENT REACTIONS AS REDOX REACTIONS

REMINDER

Some reminders about oxidation and reduction:
oxidation is loss of electrons
reduction is gain of electrons
An oxidising agent is something that oxidises something else by taking electrons away from it. Oxidising agents accept electrons and therefore are the things that are reduced in a reaction.
A reducing agent is something that reduces something else by giving electrons to it. Reducing agents give away electrons and therefore are the things that are oxidised in a reaction.

The reactions above that do show a colour change are often discussed in terms of oxidation and reduction, they are *redox reactions*. If you have not already covered redox reactions, you should look at Chapter 14 before reading the next section.

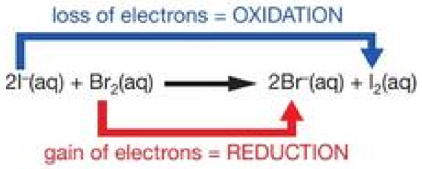
If we look at the reaction between chlorine and either bromide ions or iodide ions, we can see why they are described as redox reactions.


loss of electrons = OXIDATION
$2Br^-(aq) + Cl_2(aq) \longrightarrow 2Cl^-(aq) + Br_2(aq)$
gain of electrons = REDUCTION
loss of electrons = OXIDATION
$2I^-(aq) + Cl_2(aq) \longrightarrow 2Cl^-(aq) + I_2(aq)$
gain of electrons = REDUCTION

▲ Figure 12.8 The reaction of chlorine with potassium bromide (top) or potassium iodide (below).

In each case, the chlorine is acting as an oxidising agent. In the first equation it oxidises the Br^- ions by taking electrons away from them. Because the oxidising agent takes electrons away from something else, it is reduced itself: the Cl_2 is reduced to $2Cl^-$ ions.

In the reaction between bromine and iodide ions, the bromine is the oxidising agent:


loss of electrons = OXIDATION
$2I^-(aq) + Br_2(aq) \longrightarrow 2Br^-(aq) + I_2(aq)$
gain of electrons = REDUCTION

▲ Figure 12.9 The reaction between bromine solution and potassium iodide solution.

EXTENSION WORK

This only works for non-metals. For metals, the most reactive one is the best reducing agent. The difference comes because non-metals react to form negative ions but metals react to form positive ions.

EXTENSION WORK

We can now say a bit more than just 'chlorine is more reactive than bromine, which is more reactive than iodine'. We can describe the reactivity in terms of how good an oxidising agent something is: chlorine is a stronger oxidising agent than bromine, which is a stronger oxidising agent than iodine. Chlorine can oxidise (take electrons away from) bromide ions and iodide ions; bromine can oxidise (take electrons away from) iodide ions, but not chloride ions; iodine cannot oxidise bromide ions or chloride ions.

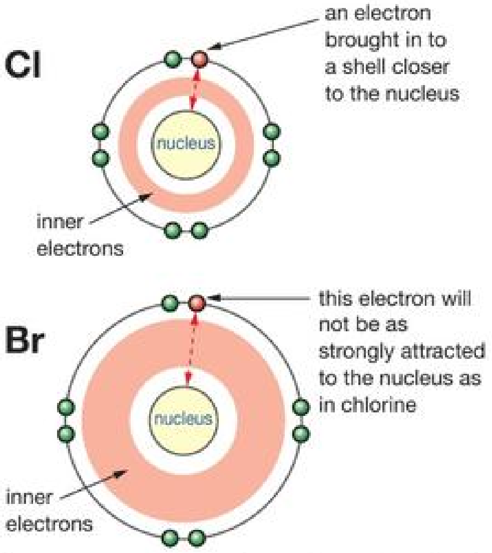
CHEMISTRY ONLY

EXPLAINING THE TREND IN THE REACTIVITY OF THE HALOGENS

We can explain the reactivity of the halogens in terms of how readily they form negative ions. When the halogens react (in these reactions) they form 1– ions by taking electrons away from something else. A chlorine atom is smaller than a bromine atom, so when we add an electron to the outer shell of a chlorine atom, we are adding it to a shell closer to the nucleus. If it is in a shell closer to the nucleus it is more strongly attracted to the nucleus. The bromine atom is bigger and so the outer electron is added to a shell further away from the nucleus, where it is not as strongly attracted. Chlorine therefore has a stronger tendency to form a 1– ion than bromine, and a chlorine atom will take an electron away from a bromide ion.

EXTENSION WORK

This argument does not apply to fluorine. Fluorine atoms don't, in fact, accept electrons more easily than chlorine atoms do. This is for reasons which we don't study at International GCSE. The greater reactivity of fluorine is because of a particularly weak covalent bond between the fluorine atoms. In the exam, you should not be asked to explain why fluorine is more reactive than chlorine, but, if you are, you will have to use the explanation described here, even though it is wrong!


Cl
an electron brought in to a shell closer to the nucleus
nucleus
inner electrons
Br
this electron will not be as strongly attracted to the nucleus as in chlorine
nucleus
inner electrons

▲ Figure 12.10 Chlorine has a stronger attraction for an electron than bromine.

EXTENSION WORK

You may be thinking why doesn't the higher nuclear charge on a bromine atom mean that it attracts electrons more strongly? You have to consider the amount of attraction the incoming electron actually feels from the nucleus. In chlorine, there are 17 positively charged protons balanced by the 10 negatively charged electrons in the inner shells. That means the new electron feels an overall pull of 7+ from the centre of the atom. A similar argument with bromine shows that the new electron also feels an overall pull from the nucleus of 7+, but in the bromine case, it is further away.

This explanation will not be required at International GCSE.

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

SUMMARISING THE MAIN FEATURES OF THE GROUP 7 ELEMENTS

Group 7 elements:

- have diatomic molecules, X_2 (e.g. F_2, Cl_2, Br_2)
- go from gases to liquid to solid as you move down the group: the melting points and boiling points increase down the group
- have coloured poisonous vapours: the colours of the elements get darker down the group
- form compounds with the formula HX (e.g. HF, HCl, HBr) when reacted with hydrogen and these dissolve in water to form acids
- form ionic salts with metals and covalent compounds with non-metals
- form X^- (e.g. F^-, Cl^-, Br^-) ions in ionic compounds
- become less reactive towards the bottom of the group
- will displace elements lower down the group from their salts.

We can use these properties and trends to predict the properties of astatine, the element below iodine in Group 7. Astatine is an extremely rare radioactive element and no one has ever seen a sample of it, but we can predict that it:

- will be a darker colour than iodine, very dark grey or black
- will be a solid at room temperature and have a higher melting point than iodine
- will be diatomic and contain At_2 molecules
- will react with hydrogen to form HAt, which will dissolve in water to form an acid
- will form the salt NaAt with sodium or KAt with potassium
- will contain the astatide ion (At^-) in its ionic salts
- will be less reactive than iodine
- will be displaced from solution by iodine

CHAPTER QUESTIONS

SKILLS INTERPRETATION 8

1 a Draw a diagram to show the arrangement of electrons in a fluorine atom.

SKILLS REASONING 7

b Explain why fluorine is placed in Group 7 in the Periodic Table.

SKILLS INTERPRETATION 8

c Draw a dot-and-cross diagram (showing outer electrons only) of the molecule formed when fluorine reacts with hydrogen.

SKILLS REASONING 7

d Explain why fluorine has a lower melting point than chlorine.

e Explain what you would observe when a chlorine solution is added to a solution of potassium fluoride.

SKILLS INTERPRETATION 8

2 This question is about astatine, At, at the bottom of Group 7 of the Periodic Table. You are asked to make some predictions about astatine and its chemistry.

a Showing only the outer electrons, draw diagrams to show the arrangement of electrons in an astatine *atom*, an astatide *ion* and an astatine *molecule*.

SKILLS REASONING 7

b Explain what physical state you would expect astatine to be in at room temperature.

c Explain whether you would expect astatine to be more or less reactive than iodine.

6

d Suggest a likely pH for a reasonably concentrated solution of hydrogen astatide in water.

8

e Explain what you would expect caesium astatide to look like. Will it be soluble in water? Explain your reasoning.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING, REASONING 10

f Write an ionic equation for the reaction that will occur if you add chlorine water to a solution of sodium astatide. Assume that astatine is insoluble in water. Explain clearly why this reaction would be counted as a redox reaction.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 9

3 Chlorine reacts with fluorine to form chlorine monofluoride (ClF).

a Write an equation for this reaction, including state symbols. All the substances are gases at room temperature.

SKILLS INTERPRETATION 8

b Draw a dot-and-cross diagram for ClF.

SKILLS REASONING

c Arrange the substances Cl_2, F_2 and ClF in order of increasing boiling point and explain your order.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

d Chlorine and fluorine can also react together to form chlorine trifluoride, which is a gas at room temperature and pressure.

i State the formula of chlorine trifluoride.

9

ii Chlorine trifluoride is an extremely reactive substance and, for instance, reacts explosively with water. The products of the reaction are hydrofluoric acid, hydrochloric acid and oxygen gas. Write an equation, including state symbols, for the reaction of chlorine trifluoride with water.

13 GASES IN THE ATMOSPHERE

This chapter looks at the most common gases in the atmosphere, concentrating on oxygen. We will also look at carbon dioxide, which is a greenhouse gas and may contribute to climate change.

▶ Figure 13.1 Despite the gases added by industry, the air around us is mostly nitrogen and oxygen.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Know the approximate percentages by volume of the four most abundant gases in dry air
- Understand how to determine the percentage by volume of oxygen in air using experiments involving the reactions of metals (e.g. iron) and non-metals (e.g. phosphorus) with air
- Describe the combustion of elements in oxygen, including magnesium, hydrogen and sulfur
- Describe the formation of carbon dioxide from the thermal decomposition of metal carbonates, including copper(II) carbonate
- Know that carbon dioxide is a greenhouse gas and that increasing amounts in the atmosphere may contribute to climate change
- Practical: Determine the approximate percentage by volume of oxygen in air using a metal or a non-metal

THE COMPOSITION OF THE AIR

The approximate percentages (by volume) of the four most abundant gases present in *unpolluted, dry* air are shown in Table 13.1.

Table 13.1 Approximate percentages (by volume) of the main gases in unpolluted, dry air

Gas	Amount in air (%)	Amount in air (fraction)
nitrogen	78.1	about 4/5
oxygen	21.0	about 1/5
argon	0.9	
carbon dioxide	0.04	

There are also very small amounts of the other noble gases in the air.

KEY POINT

It is important to realise that these figures apply only to dry, unpolluted air. Air can have anywhere between 0 and 4% water vapour. The percentage of carbon dioxide in the air, although very small, is rising steadily because of human activity.

SHOWING THAT AIR CONTAINS ABOUT ONE-FIFTH OXYGEN

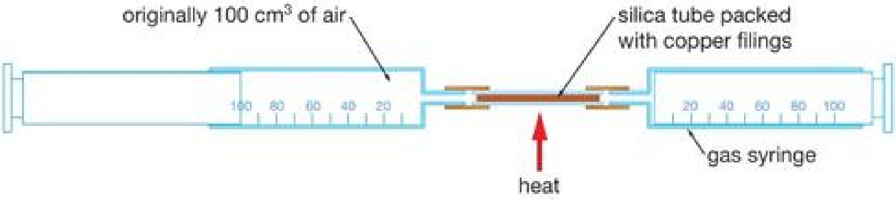
We will look at a few different methods for measuring the percentage of oxygen in the air. All the methods rely on the same basic principle: we react something with the oxygen in the air and look at how much the volume decreases as the oxygen is removed.

ACTIVITY 1

▼ PRACTICAL: USING COPPER

Safety Note: Wear eye protection and heat carefully to avoid cracking the glass syringe with the flame. Take care not to push the opposite plunger completely out!.

The apparatus shown in Figure 13.2 can be used to find the percentage of oxygen in the air.


originally 100 cm³ of air
silica tube packed with copper filings
100 80 60 40 20
20 40 60 80 100
gas syringe
heat

▲ Figure 13.2 Using copper to measure the percentage of oxygen in air.

- The plunger on one of the gas syringes is pushed all the way in and the other moved out to 100 cm³. We now know that the apparatus contains 100 cm³ air.
- The silica tube is heated strongly (roaring Bunsen flame).
- The plunger in the left-hand gas syringe is pushed in. This causes the air to pass over the heated copper. This pushes out the plunger on the right-hand gas syringe.
- The plungers are pushed in sequence so that the air in the system keeps passing over the heated copper. The pink-brown copper turns black as copper(II) oxide is formed.
- As the copper reacts, the Bunsen burner is moved along the tube so that it is always heating fresh copper.
- The volume of gas in the syringes falls as the oxygen is consumed.
- We keep pushing the plungers in and out until there is no change in volume.
- The apparatus is then allowed to cool to room temperature again before taking the final volume of gas (because gases expand as they are heated).

KEY POINT

When doing this experiment we need to make sure that we use enough copper to react with *all* the oxygen in the air - the copper must be in excess. There will be some unreacted copper metal at the end. If we do not use enough copper then the value we will get for the percentage of oxygen will be too low because not all of the oxygen will have been removed.

RESULTS

initial volume of air In the system/cm³	100
final volume of 'air' in the system/cm³	79

KEY POINT

We have put inverted commas around 'air' because we are now talking about air from which the oxygen has been removed, so it is mostly nitrogen. Nitrogen is very unreactive and so if you put a lighted splint into this 'air' it would be extinguished. Oxygen is needed for things to burn.

The volume of the air has decreased because the oxygen has been removed as it reacts with the copper. The reaction that occurs is

$$2Cu(s) + O_2(g) \rightarrow 2CuO(s)$$

copper + oxygen → copper(II) oxide

We can work out from these data that the volume of oxygen that reacted was 100 − 79 = 21 cm³.

The original volume of air was 100 cm³ so we can work out the percentage of oxygen in the air:

percentage oxygen = 21/100 × 100 = 21%

KEY POINT

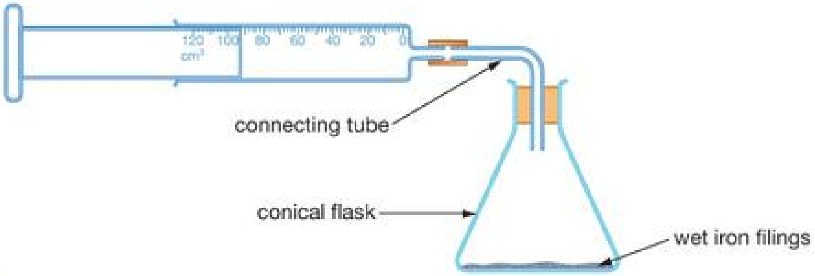
Iron needs oxygen and water to rust. The rusting of iron is discussed in Chapter 14.

Safety Note: Iron filings can irritate the skin and are a particular hazard if they get in the eyes.

ACTIVITY 2

▼ PRACTICAL: USING THE RUSTING OF IRON

Iron rusts in damp air, using up oxygen as it does so. We can use this reaction to determine how much oxygen there is in the air.



▲ Figure 13.3 This apparatus can be used to find the percentage of oxygen in the air.

We will use the apparatus from Figure 13.3, but before we start we need to know the volume of air present in the apparatus. We can find this by filling up the conical flask and connecting tube with water and then transferring the water to a measuring cylinder. On the conical flask we mark the position of the bung and only fill with water to that point. We will assume that the small volume occupied by the iron filings is negligible (very small compared to the overall volume).

The procedure for the experiment is as follows:

- Set up the apparatus as shown in Figure 13.3.
- Put wet iron filings into the conical flask.
- Record the initial reading on the gas syringe.
- Leave the apparatus in place for about a week, until the reading on the gas syringe stops changing.
- Record the final reading on the gas syringe.

volume of air in conical flask/cm^3	130
volume of air in connecting tube/cm^3	12
initial reading on gas syringe/cm^3	92
final reading on gas syringe/cm^3	43

So, the total volume of air inside the apparatus at the beginning of the experiment is $130 + 12 + 92 = 234\,\text{cm}^3$.

The total volume of 'air' in the apparatus at the end $= 130 + 12 + 43$
$= 185\,\text{cm}^3$

Volume of oxygen used up $= 234 - 185 = 49\,\text{cm}^3$

The percentage of oxygen in the air is $49/234 \times 100 = 21\%$.

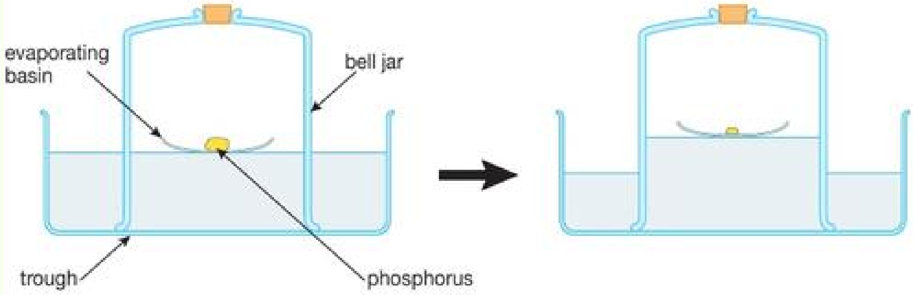
Sometimes when you do this experiment, the answer comes out as less than 21%. Possible reasons for this could be:

- The experiment was not left set up for long enough. The iron has not had enough chance to react with all the oxygen in the apparatus.
- Not enough iron was added at the beginning. The iron must be in excess, that is, there must be enough iron to react with all the oxygen present.

ACTIVITY 3

▼ PRACTICAL: USING PHOSPHORUS

Phosphorus is a very reactive element that reacts with the oxygen in the air to form a phosphorus oxide. This oxide is very soluble in water.



▲ Figure 13.4 Finding the percentage of oxygen in air using phosphorus.

- The apparatus shown in Figure 13.4 is set up with the piece of phosphorus on an evaporating basin, which is floating in the water.
- The initial level of water is marked on the side of the bell jar with a waterproof pen or a sticker.
- The bung is removed from the bell jar and the phosphorus is touched with a hot metal wire in order to ignite it.
- The bung is quickly put back into the bell jar.
- The phosphorus burns, the bell jar becomes filled with a white smoke (phosphorus oxide) and the level of water rises inside the bell jar. The smoke eventually clears as the phosphorus oxide dissolves in the water.
- When the level of water inside the bell jar stops rising, the final level is marked.
- To find how much the water level has changed, the bell jar is turned upside down, filled with water to each mark in turn and the water is poured into a large measuring cylinder.

It is important that there is still some phosphorus left on the evaporating basin at the end of the experiment. We have used an excess of phosphorus so that there is more than enough to react with all the oxygen. If there was no phosphorus left, then we would probably get a lower value for the percentage of oxygen in the air because not all the oxygen might have been used up.

KEY POINT

Phosphorus does not react with water.

Safety Note: The teacher demonstrating needs to wear goggles or a face shield, and have the room well ventilated. After igniting the phosphorous the bell-jar needs to be held down as pressure rises initially. After all the fumes have gone the evaporating basin needs to be sunk using the glass rod to prevent any unreacted phosphorous re-igniting.

THE COMBUSTION OF ELEMENTS IN OXYGEN

Some elements burn in oxygen, these reactions are called *combustion reactions*. Elements burn more brightly and rapidly in pure oxygen than in air because air only contains 21% oxygen.

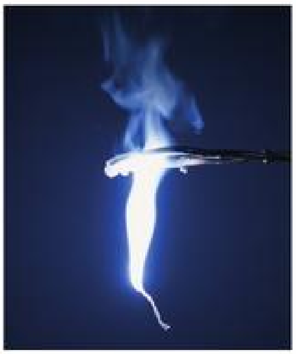
BURNING MAGNESIUM

Magnesium burns in oxygen with an extremely bright white flame to give a white, powdery ash of magnesium oxide:

$$2Mg(s) + O_2(g) \rightarrow 2MgO(s)$$

The white powder formed is not very soluble in water but a very small amount does dissolve to form an alkaline solution:

$$MgO(s) + H_2O(l) \rightarrow Mg(OH)_2(aq)$$



▲ Figure 13.5 Magnesium ribbon burning in air

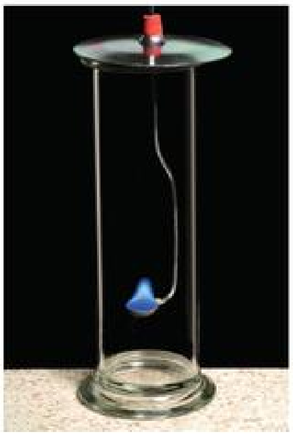
BURNING SULFUR

KEY POINT

Sulfur dioxide is also called sulfur(IV) oxide.

Sulfur burns in oxygen with a blue flame. Poisonous, colourless sulfur dioxide gas is produced.

$$S(s) + O_2(g) \rightarrow SO_2(g)$$



▲ Figure 13.6 Sulfur burning in oxygen

The sulfur dioxide dissolves in water to form an acidic solution of *sulfurous acid*:

$$SO_2(g) + H_2O(l) \rightarrow H_2SO_3(aq)$$

KEY POINT

Sulfurous acid (H_2SO_3), not sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4), is formed.

BURNING HYDROGEN

Hydrogen burns in oxygen with a pale blue flame. The product is water:

$$2H_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightarrow 2H_2O(l)$$

If you ignite a mixture of hydrogen and oxygen it will explode. This is the basis of the 'squeaky pop' test for hydrogen (see Chapter 18).

THE PROPERTIES OF OXIDES

We can make some generalisations about the properties of oxides formed when elements burn in oxygen.

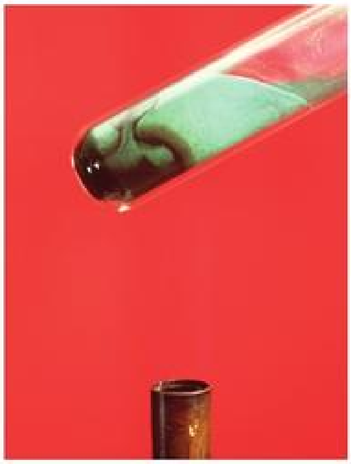
METAL OXIDES

- Metal oxides are ionic compounds containing O^{2-} ions.
- Metal oxides are usually basic oxides, which means that they react with acids to form salts.
- Metal oxides are usually insoluble in water. Those metal oxides that are soluble in water react with it to form alkaline solutions containing hydroxide (OH^-) ions.

NON-METAL OXIDES

- Non-metal oxides are covalent compounds.
- Non-metal oxides are usually acidic oxides, which react with alkalis /bases to form salts.
- Non-metal oxides are often soluble in water and react with it to form acidic solutions containing hydrogen (H^+) ions.

CARBON DIOXIDE



▲ Figure 13.7 Copper(II) carbonate decomposes to form carbon dioxide when heated.

HINT

You should remember the colours of copper(II) carbonate and copper(II) oxide.

Carbon dioxide is a colourless gas that is most easily made in the laboratory by the reaction between dilute hydrochloric acid and calcium carbonate in the form of marble chips:

$$CaCO_3(s) + 2HCl(aq) \rightarrow CaCl_2(aq) + CO_2(g) + H_2O(l)$$

Carbon dioxide can also be obtained when metal carbonates are heated strongly.

Most carbonates split to give the metal oxide and carbon dioxide when you heat them. This is an example of **thermal decomposition**, breaking up something by heating it.

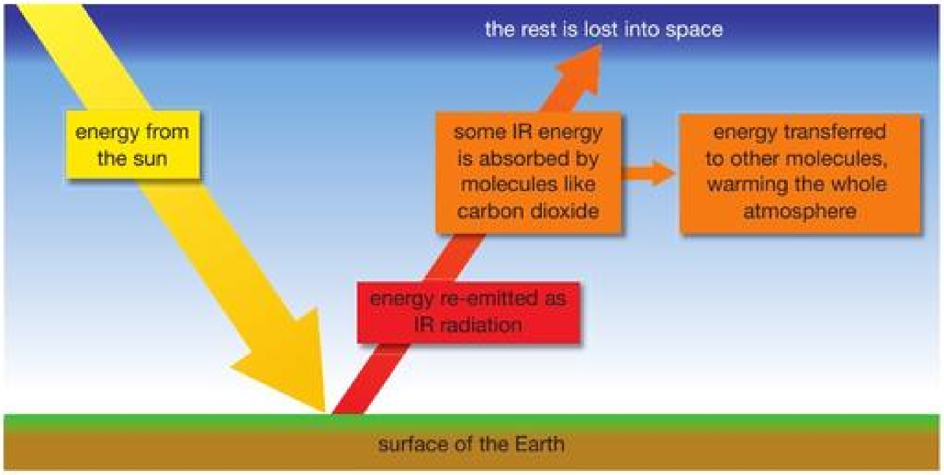
For example, copper(II) carbonate is a *green* powder which decomposes on heating to produce *black* copper(II) oxide:

$$CuCO_3(s) \rightarrow CuO(s) + CO_2(g)$$

Calcium carbonate doesn't decompose unless it is heated at quite high temperatures. This is a commercially important reaction because it is used to convert limestone (calcium carbonate) into quicklime (calcium oxide):

$$CaCO_3(s) \rightarrow CaO(s) + CO_2(g)$$

CARBON DIOXIDE AND GLOBAL WARMING: THE GREENHOUSE EFFECT


the rest is lost into space
energy from the sun
some IR energy is absorbed by molecules like carbon dioxide
energy transferred to other molecules, warming the whole atmosphere
energy re-emitted as IR radiation
surface of the Earth

▲ Figure 13.8 The greenhouse effect

Carbon dioxide is produced when fossil fuels (coal, oil and gas) burn. For instance, when coal, which is mostly carbon, burns in excess oxygen:

$$C(s) + O_2(g) \rightarrow CO_2(g)$$

Petrol is a mixture containing many different hydrocarbons. An example of a reaction that occurs when petrol burns is:

$$2C_8H_{18}(l) + 25O_2(g) \rightarrow 16CO_2(g) + 18H_2O(l)$$

REMINDER

A hydrocarbon is a molecule containing carbon and hydrogen only. These are discussed more fully in Unit 4.

Carbon dioxide is a **greenhouse gas**. The greenhouse effect occurs when high-energy **UV** and visible light from the sun pass through the atmosphere and warm up the surface of the Earth. The surface of the Earth (like any other warm surface) radiates infrared (IR) radiation. This IR radiation is absorbed by molecules such as CO_2 in the atmosphere. These then give out this energy again in all directions, heating the atmosphere.

For approximately the last 200 years the level of CO_2 in the atmosphere has been increasing. This has occurred since the industrial revolution and is due to the burning of fossil fuels and deforestation (cutting down trees to create more land for agriculture). Many people believe that the increase in the level of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere may contribute to climate change. The exact nature of this climate change is difficult to know, but some of the things that scientists believe could happen are:

- polar ice caps could melt
- sea levels could rise
- there could be more extreme weather (such as floods, droughts and heat waves).

DID YOU KNOW?

Although most scientists believe that increases in carbon dioxide will cause devastating climate change, there are others who reject this. They claim that the increases in average world temperatures during the 20th century were part of natural heating and cooling cycles caused by the sun and changes to ocean currents. They believe the effect of carbon dioxide is small compared with these.

LOOKING AHEAD

Why is CO_2 a greenhouse gas and oxygen and nitrogen are not?

The presence of greenhouse gases in the atmosphere is essential to the maintenance of life on Earth as they keep the planet at a temperature at which water is mostly a liquid. However, it is very important that we do not have too much of these greenhouse gases. If nitrogen and oxygen, the main constituents of the atmosphere, were greenhouse gases the temperature of the Earth would be too high to support life as we know it. So, what makes something a greenhouse gas? A greenhouse gas must be able to absorb IR radiation emitted by the surface of the Earth and then emit it again in all directions, warming the atmosphere. All molecules vibrate and if these vibrations involve a change in the polarity of the molecule then the molecule will be able to absorb IR radiation and be a greenhouse gas.

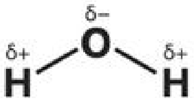
What is polarity? A molecule is polar if one end of the molecule is slightly negative and the other end is slightly positive. Polarity arises because different atoms attract the electrons in a covalent bond to different extents (this is a property called *electronegativity*). The polarity also depends on the shape of the molecule. Water is a good example of a polar molecule.

The polarity of a water molecule changes as it vibrates and water vapour is an important greenhouse gas.

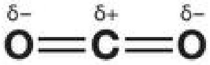
Carbon dioxide is a non-polar molecule because it is linear (the atoms are in a straight line) and symmetrical, and therefore there is no positive end and no negative end of the molecule.

However, as a CO_2 molecule vibrates it becomes non-symmetrical and polar. Because the polarity changes as a CO_2 molecule vibrates it can absorb IR radiation and is a greenhouse gas.

O_2 and N_2 are non-polar because both the atoms are the same and therefore attract the electrons in the covalent bonds equally, so there are no small charges. The molecules can only vibrate in one way and the molecules remain non-polar as they vibrate. This means that there is no change in polarity as they vibrate, therefore N_2 and O_2 cannot absorb IR radiation and are not greenhouse gases.



▲ Figure 13.9 Water is a polar molecule. The oxygen atoms attract the electrons in the covalent bonds more than the hydrogen atoms. The δ+ (delta positive) and δ− (delta negative) represent small charges on the atoms.



▲ Figure 13.10 The oxygen atoms attract the electrons in the covalent bonds more than the carbon atoms do (oxygen is more electronegative than carbon) but the charges cancel due to the shape (a better way of saying this is that the dipoles cancel).

CHAPTER QUESTIONS

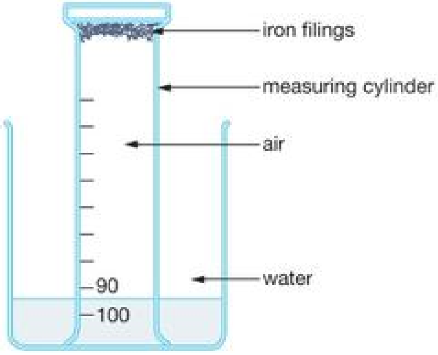
SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 5

1 State the approximate percentage of each of the following gases in dry air:

a nitrogen b oxygen c carbon dioxide d argon

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 7

2 A student carried out an experiment to measure the percentage oxygen in the air by using the rusting of iron. The experimental set-up is shown below. The initial reading on the measuring cylinder was 95 cm³. They left the apparatus for 2 days and the new reading on the measuring cylinder was 80 cm³.



SKILLS REASONING, DECISION MAKING

a Calculate the percentage oxygen in the air using this data.

b Explain why the answer is not the same as you had expected and how the experiment could be improved.

SKILLS DECISION MAKING 6

3 A student carries out an experiment to investigate how much gas is produced when various metal carbonates are heated. Their data are shown in the table.

Metal carbonate	Mass of carbonate used/g	Volume of gas collected at rtp/cm³	Mass of solid left at the end/g
lead(II) carbonate	1.00	89	0.84
copper(II) carbonate	1.00	194	0.64
sodium carbonate	1.00	0	1.00

a Describe an experiment that would allow the student to collect these data.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 5

b Name the gas collected.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 9

c Write an equation for the reaction occurring with lead(II) carbonate.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 5

d Name the type of reaction occurring with lead(II) carbonate and copper(II) carbonate.

SKILLS REASONING 6

e Explain what these results indicate about the thermal stability of sodium carbonate compared to the other two substances.

7

f Explain why much more gas is given off in the copper(II) carbonate experiment than in the lead(II) carbonate experiment.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

g Use the data from the lead(II) carbonate experiment to calculate the mass of 100 cm³ of the gas.

SKILLS EXECUTIVE FUNCTION

h The student repeated the experiment for copper(II) carbonate and only obtained 152 cm³ of gas this time. Explain two things that could have gone wrong with the second experiment to give this result.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 6

4 Carbon dioxide is described as a *greenhouse gas*. Explain what this means.

14 REACTIVITY SERIES

The reactivity series lists elements (mainly metals) in order of decreasing reactivity. It is likely that you will have come across some of this chemistry already in earlier years. This chapter looks at some of the reactions of metals and introduces the idea of redox reactions.

▲ Figure 14.1 Rails are welded together using molten iron, produced by a reaction between aluminium and iron(III) oxide.

▲ Figure 14.2 Gold is so unreactive that it will remain chemically unchanged in contact with air or water basically forever.

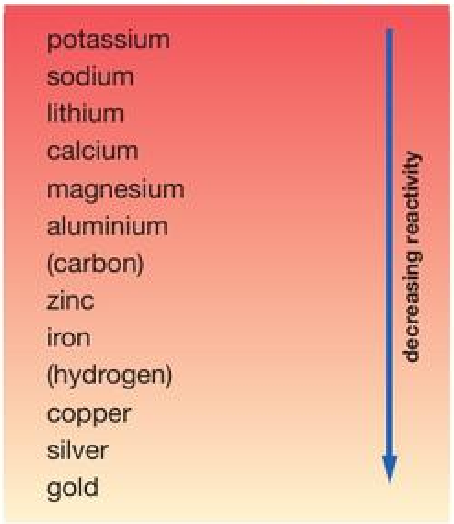
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Understand how metals can be arranged in a reactivity series based on their reactions with:
  - water
  - dilute hydrochloric or sulfuric acid
- Understand how metals can be arranged in a reactivity series based on their displacement reactions between:
  - metals and metal oxides
  - metals and aqueous solutions of metal salts
- Know the order of reactivity of these metals: potassium, sodium, lithium, calcium, magnesium, aluminium, zinc, iron, copper, silver, gold
- Know the conditions under which iron rusts
- Understand how the rusting of iron may be prevented by
  - barrier methods
  - galvanising
  - sacrificial protection
- Understand the terms:
  - oxidation
  - reduction
  - redox
  - oxidising agent
  - reducing agent

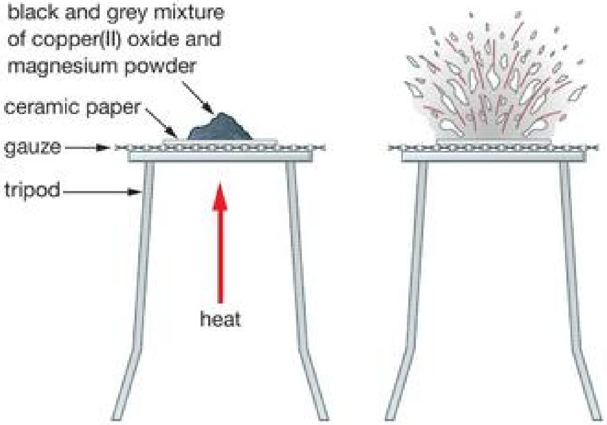
  in terms of gain or loss of oxygen and loss or gain of electrons
- Practical: Investigate reactions between dilute hydrochloric and sulfuric acids and metals (e.g. magnesium, zinc and iron)

DISPLACEMENT REACTIONS INVOLVING METAL OXIDES

THE REACTION BETWEEN MAGNESIUM AND COPPER(II) OXIDE



▲ Figure 14.4 The reactivity series. Although carbon and hydrogen are not metals they are usually included in the series. You will learn why in this chapter.


black and grey mixture of copper(II) oxide and magnesium powder
ceramic paper
gauze
tripod
heat

▲ Figure 14.3 Magnesium reacts with copper(II) oxide.

!

Safety Note: For this demonstration goggles or a face shield are needed, together with safety screens in a well-ventilated room. The bench should be protected by a large sheet of hardboard. The pupils should be at the back of the room. One gram of the mixture is strongly heated in a metal crown bottle cap before retiring to the back of the room to await a violent reaction. If nothing happens after a minute or so turn off the gas and do not touch the mixture but leave it to cool and dispose of it in water.

Magnesium powder and copper(II) oxide are mixed together and heated very strongly. At the end, traces of white magnesium oxide are left on the ceramic paper.

magnesium + copper(II) oxide → magnesium oxide + copper

$$Mg(s) + CuO(s) \rightarrow MgO(s) + Cu(s)$$

This is an example of a displacement reaction. The less reactive metal, copper, has been displaced from its compound by the more reactive magnesium. Any metal higher in the reactivity series will displace one lower down from a compound.

If you heated copper with magnesium oxide, nothing would happen because copper is less reactive than magnesium. Copper isn't capable of displacing magnesium from magnesium oxide.

KEY POINT

These reactions involving metals and metal oxides are often called *competition reactions*.

THE REACTION BETWEEN MAGNESIUM AND ZINC OXIDE

Heating magnesium with zinc oxide produces zinc metal:

magnesium + zinc oxide → magnesium oxide + zinc

$$Mg(s) + ZnO(s) \rightarrow MgO(s) + Zn(s)$$

THE REACTION BETWEEN CARBON AND COPPER(II) OXIDE

!

Safety Note: Wear eye protection. The tube will get very hot and remain so for some time.

A black mixture of carbon and copper(II) oxide is heated in a test-tube. The mixture glows red hot because of the heat given out during the reaction, and you are left with pink-brown copper in the tube.

$$C(s) + 2CuO(s) \rightarrow CO_2(g) + 2Cu(s)$$

Carbon is above copper in the reactivity series and displaces the copper from copper(II) oxide.

DID YOU KNOW?

Many metals are found as metal oxides in nature. If they are found as other compounds these are often converted to metal oxides before the metal is extracted.

CHEMISTRY ONLY

Carbon is included in the reactivity series because it is important in extracting several metals (including iron) from metal oxides. If the metal is less reactive than carbon (below carbon in the reactivity series), then heating with carbon can be a cheap way of removing oxygen from the oxide to leave the metal. Copper isn't, in fact, extracted like this. This reaction is simply a lab illustration that carbon is above copper in the reactivity series.

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

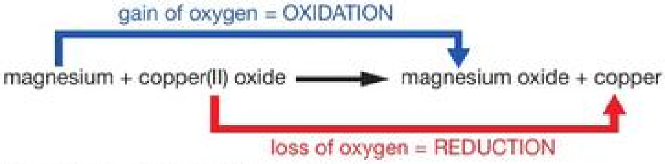
OXIDATION AND REDUCTION

OXYGEN TRANSFER

A substance has been oxidised if it gains oxygen. **Oxidation** is gain of oxygen.

A substance has been reduced if it loses oxygen. **Reduction** is loss of oxygen.

Consider the reaction between magnesium and copper(II) oxide again. Figure 14.5 shows what happens in terms of oxidation and reduction.


gain of oxygen = OXIDATION
magnesium + copper(II) oxide → magnesium oxide + copper
loss of oxygen = REDUCTION

▲ Figure 14.5 Magnesium reacting with copper(II) oxide

A **redox** reaction is one in which both **red**uction and **ox**idation are occurring. Oxidation and reduction always occur together because if something loses oxygen, something else must gain it.

- A **reducing agent** is a substance that reduces something else. In this case, the magnesium is the reducing agent because it takes the oxygen away from the copper oxide, reducing it.
- An **oxidising agent** is a substance that oxidises something else. The copper(II) oxide is the oxidising agent in this reaction because it gives oxygen to the magnesium, oxidising it.

An oxidising agent always gets reduced in a chemical reaction because it oxidises something else by giving away its oxygen.

A reducing agent always gets oxidised in a chemical reaction because it takes the oxygen away from something else and therefore gains oxygen itself.

In the reaction between magnesium and zinc oxide on page 146, the magnesium is the reducing agent and the zinc oxide is the oxidising agent. In the reaction between copper(II) oxide and carbon, the carbon is the reducing agent and the copper(II) oxide is the oxidising agent.

ELECTRON TRANSFER

We are now going to look very closely at what happens in the reaction between magnesium and copper(II) oxide in terms of the various particles involved. Here is the equation again:

$$Mg(s) + CuO(s) \rightarrow MgO(s) + Cu(s)$$

The magnesium and the copper are metals, and are made of metal atoms, but the copper(II) oxide and the magnesium oxide are both ionic compounds.

The copper(II) oxide contains Cu^{2+} and O^{2-} ions, and the magnesium oxide contains Mg^{2+} and O^{2-} ions. Writing these into the equation gives:

$$Mg(s) + Cu^{2+}O^{2-}(s) \rightarrow Mg^{2+}O^{2-}(s) + Cu(s)$$

The oxide ion (O^{2-}) does not change in this reaction. It ends up with a different partner, but is totally unchanged itself.

What is happening in this reaction is that magnesium *atoms* are turning into magnesium *ions*. The magnesium atoms lose electrons to form magnesium ions. These electrons are gained by the copper ions to form copper atoms. We have described this as a redox reaction above in terms of loss/gain of oxygen, but now we can see that it was not the oxygen that was actually the important part, it has not changed! To understand what is happening better, we need a more fundamental definition of oxidation and reduction:

- *oxidation is loss of electrons*
- *reduction is gain of electrons.*

The mnemonic OILRIG can be helpful in remembering this:

Oxidation
Is
Loss of electrons
Reduction
Is
Gain of electrons

DISPLACEMENT REACTIONS INVOLVING SOLUTIONS OF SALTS

Salts are compounds such as copper(II) sulfate, silver nitrate or sodium chloride. You will find a definition of what a salt is on page 173. This section explores some reactions between metals and solutions of salts in water.

THE REACTION BETWEEN ZINC AND COPPER(II) SULFATE SOLUTION

The copper is displaced by the more reactive zinc. The blue colour of the copper(II) sulfate solution fades as colourless zinc sulfate solution is formed:

$$Zn(s) + CuSO_4(aq) \rightarrow ZnSO_4(aq) + Cu(s)$$

The zinc and the copper are metals consisting simply of atoms, but the copper(II) sulfate and the zinc sulfate are metal compounds and so are ionic.

The equation can be rewritten showing the ions:

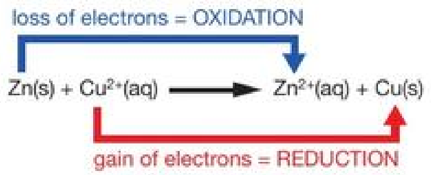
$$Zn(s) + Cu^{2+}(aq) + \boxed{SO_4^{2-}(aq)} \rightarrow Zn^{2+}(aq) + \boxed{SO_4^{2-}(aq)} + Cu(s)$$

We can see that the sulfate ions are exactly the same on both sides of the equation – they have not changed at all in the reaction. We call the sulfate ions here *spectator ions*. Removing the spectator ions (because they aren't changed during the reaction) leaves:

$$Zn(s) + Cu^{2+}(aq) \rightarrow Zn^{2+}(aq) + Cu(s)$$

This is called an ionic equation and just shows the things that change in the reaction.

This is another redox reaction.



▲ Figure 14.6 The reaction between zinc and copper(II) sulfate solution

KEY POINT

When we looked at the reaction between Mg and CuO above, we also wrote ions in the equation but we did not separate them completely because the ions are in a solid. We only separate everything like this when things are in solution. In a solution the ions are free to move around separately, in a solid they are not.

KEY POINT

Which copper(II) salt you started with would not matter, as long as it was soluble in water. Copper(II) chloride or copper(II) nitrate would react in exactly the same way with zinc because the chloride ions or the nitrate ions would again be spectator ions, not participating in the reaction.

The Zn atoms are oxidised to Zn^{2+} ions because they lose electrons. The Cu^{2+} ions gain electrons and are reduced to Cu atoms. We can split up the ionic equation to show the individual oxidation and reduction processes:

$$Zn(s) \rightarrow Zn^{2+}(aq) + 2e^- \quad \text{oxidation}$$

$$Cu^{2+}(aq) + 2e^- \rightarrow Cu(s) \quad \text{reduction}$$

These are called *ionic half-equations* as they each only show one of the processes (either oxidation or reduction) occurring in the reaction. In reality, these processes cannot occur one without the other: if something gains electrons, it has to get them from somewhere, so something else must lose electrons.

OXIDISING AND REDUCING AGENTS IN TERMS OF ELECTRONS

A couple more definitions (this time in terms of electrons):

- *An oxidising agent is something that oxidises something else by taking electrons away from it. Oxidising agents accept electrons and therefore are reduced in a reaction.*
- *A reducing agent is something that reduces something else by giving electrons to it. Reducing agents give away electrons and therefore are oxidised in a reaction.*

HINT

You now have two definitions of oxidation (and its reverse, reduction). Which one should you use? Use whichever is simpler in the case you are asked about! Both definitions are true. Don't worry too much about this at the moment. With a little experience, you will find it is obvious which one you need to use in various cases.

Let us look again at the overall ionic equation for the displacement reaction between zinc and copper ions:

$$Zn(s) + Cu^{2+}(aq) \rightarrow Zn^{2+}(aq) + Cu(s)$$

The Zn reduces the Cu^{2+} by giving electrons to it and therefore the Zn is the reducing agent. In the process of the reaction the Zn is oxidised because it has given electrons away (lost them).

The Cu^{2+} oxidises the Zn by taking electrons away from it, therefore the Cu^{2+} is the oxidising agent. In the process the Cu^{2+} is reduced because it has taken electrons (gained them).

THE REACTION BETWEEN COPPER AND SILVER NITRATE SOLUTION

Silver is below copper in the reactivity series, so a coil of copper wire in silver nitrate solution will produce metallic silver. Figure 14.7 shows the silver being produced as a mixture of grey 'fur' and delicate crystals. Notice the solution becoming blue, as copper(II) nitrate is produced:

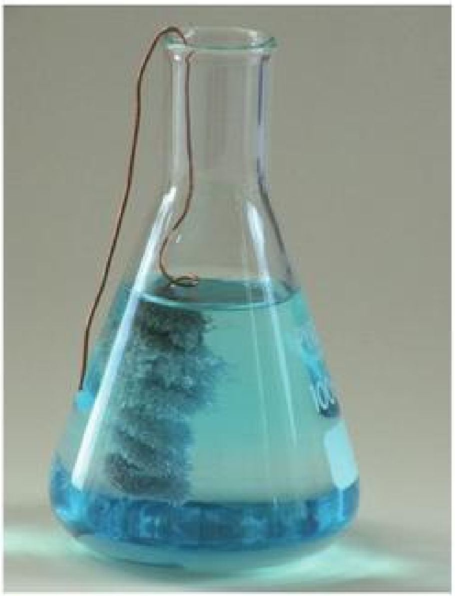
$$Cu(s) + 2AgNO_3(aq) \rightarrow Cu(NO_3)_2(aq) + 2Ag(s)$$

This time the nitrate ions are spectator ions, and the final version of the ionic equation looks like this:

$$Cu(s) + 2Ag^+(aq) \rightarrow Cu^{2+}(aq) + 2Ag(s)$$

This is another redox reaction.

The Cu is the reducing agent (it is oxidised) because it gives electrons to the Ag^+ ions to reduce them to Ag. The Ag^+ ion is the oxidising agent (it is reduced) because it takes electrons away from the Cu atoms.

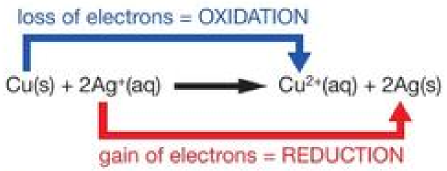


▲ Figure 14.7 Displacing silver from silver nitrate solution

The ionic half-equations are:

$Cu(s) \rightarrow Cu^{2+}(aq) + 2e^-$ oxidation

$Ag^+(aq) + e^- \rightarrow Ag(s)$ reduction


loss of electrons = OXIDATION
$Cu(s) + 2Ag^+(aq) \longrightarrow Cu^{2+}(aq) + 2Ag(s)$
gain of electrons = REDUCTION

▲ Figure 14.8 Copper reacting with silver nitrate solution

REACTIONS OF METALS WITH WATER

A GENERAL SUMMARY

METALS ABOVE HYDROGEN IN THE REACTIVITY SERIES

Metals above hydrogen in the reactivity series react with water (or steam) to produce hydrogen.

If the metal reacts with *cold water*, the metal *hydroxide* and hydrogen are formed.

metal + cold water → metal hydroxide + hydrogen

If the metal reacts with *steam*, the metal *oxide* and hydrogen are formed.

metal + steam → metal oxide + hydrogen

As you move down the reactivity series, the reactions become less and less vigorous.

METALS BELOW HYDROGEN IN THE REACTIVITY SERIES

Metals below hydrogen in the reactivity series (such as copper) don't react with water or steam. This is why copper can be used for both hot and cold water pipes.

REACTIONS OF POTASSIUM, SODIUM OR LITHIUM WITH COLD WATER

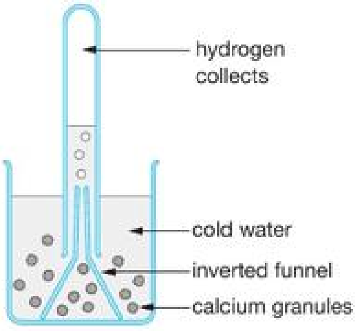
These reactions are described in detail on pages 125–126. They are very vigorous reactions, but become less violent in the following order: potassium > sodium > lithium. The equations all look like this:

$$2M(s) + 2H_2O(l) \rightarrow 2MOH(aq) + H_2(g)$$

Replace M by K, Na or Li, depending on which metal you want.

REACTION OF CALCIUM WITH COLD WATER

Calcium reacts gently with cold water. The grey granules sink, but are carried back to the surface again as bubbles of hydrogen are formed around them. The mixture becomes warm as heat is produced.



▲ Figure 14.9 Calcium reacting with cold water

Calcium hydroxide is formed. This isn't very soluble in water. Some of it dissolves to give a colourless solution, but most of it is left as a white, insoluble solid.

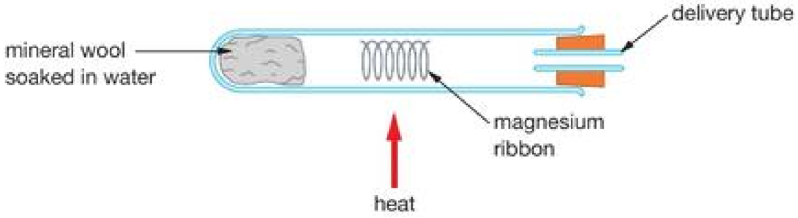
$$Ca(s) + 2H_2O(l) \rightarrow Ca(OH)_2(aq\ or\ s) + H_2(g)$$

REACTION OF MAGNESIUM WITH COLD WATER

There is almost no reaction. If the magnesium is very clean, a few bubbles of hydrogen form on it, but the reaction soon stops again. This is because the magnesium becomes coated with insoluble magnesium hydroxide, which prevents any more water coming into contact with the magnesium.

REACTION OF MAGNESIUM WITH STEAM

Magnesium ribbon can be heated in steam using the apparatus shown in Figure 14.10.



▲ Figure 14.10 Magnesium reacting with steam

The mineral wool isn't heated directly. Enough heat moves back along the test-tube to turn the water to steam.

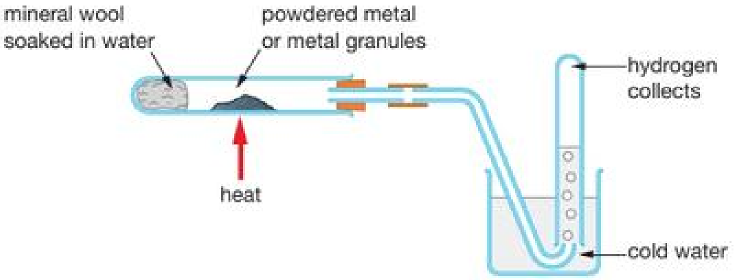
The magnesium burns with a bright white flame in the steam, producing hydrogen, which can be ignited at the end of the delivery tube. White magnesium oxide is formed:

$$Mg(s) + H_2O(g) \rightarrow MgO(s) + H_2(g)$$

KEY POINT

You might wonder why there is no description for aluminium and steam. The reactivity of aluminium is supposed to be between that of magnesium and that of zinc. However, aluminium has only a very slow reaction with steam because it is covered in a very thin, but very strong, layer of aluminium oxide. It only really shows its true reactivity if that layer can be penetrated in some way. Water or steam don't do that very well. We will talk about this again when we look at reactions between metals and acids.

REACTIONS OF ZINC OR IRON WITH STEAM


mineral wool soaked in water
powdered metal or metal granules
hydrogen collects
heat
cold water

▲ Figure 14.11 Zinc or iron reacting with steam

With both zinc and iron, the hydrogen comes off slowly enough to be collected. Neither metal burns.

WITH ZINC

Zinc oxide is formed. This is yellow when it is hot, but white on cooling.

$$Zn(s) + H_2O(g) \rightarrow ZnO(s) + H_2(g)$$

WITH IRON

The iron becomes slightly darker grey. A complicated oxide is formed, called tri-iron tetroxide, Fe_3O_4:

$$3Fe(s) + 4H_2O(g) \rightarrow Fe_3O_4(s) + 4H_2(g)$$

KEY POINT

Care has to be taken during this experiment to avoid 'suck-back'. If you stop heating while the delivery tube is still under the surface of the water, water is sucked back into the hot tube, which often results in it cracking.

KEY POINT

Notice that in these equations, water now has a state symbol (g) because we are talking about it as steam.

REMINDER

Remember that *metals below hydrogen* in the reactivity series, such as copper, *don't react* with water or steam.

REACTIONS OF METALS WITH DILUTE ACIDS

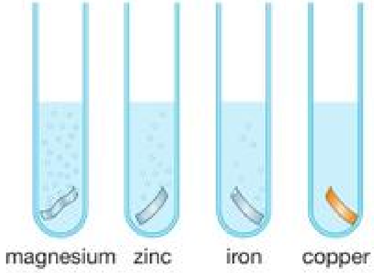
ACTIVITY 4

▼ PRACTICAL: INVESTIGATION INTO THE REACTIONS BETWEEN METALS AND DILUTE ACIDS

Safety Note: Wear eye protection. Keep hands and face away from the mouths of the tubes as some acid aerosol (tiny droplets) may be carried out by the gas.

- Set up four test-tubes and put about 2 cm^3 of dilute hydrochloric acid into each one.
- Put a small piece of magnesium, zinc, iron or copper into each test-tube and observe any reaction that occurs.
- If there is fizzing, collect or trap the gas and test with a lighted splint – a squeaky pop indicates the presence of hydrogen gas.
- Repeat the experiments with dilute sulfuric acid.

The results that we could obtain from the experiments with dilute hydrochloric acid are shown in Figure 14.12 and Table 14.1.



▲ Figure 14.12 The reactions between metals and hydrochloric acid

Table 14.1 The results of experiments on the reaction between hydrochloric acid and some metals

Metal	Reaction with dilute hydrochloric acid
Magnesium	Reacts vigorously with lots of fizzing. The gas produced gave a squeaky pop with a lighted splint. A colourless solution is formed. The test-tube gets hot.
Zinc	Steady reaction. Fizzing. Enough gas eventually collected to produce a squeaky pop with a lighted splint. A colourless solution formed. The test-tube gets warmer.
Iron	Slow fizzing. Very little gas was collected in the time available. A very pale green solution formed. The test-tube got slightly warmer.
Copper	No change.

These reactions are all **exothermic** (they give out heat). See Chapter 19 for more about exothermic reactions.

Now that we have noticed that there is a temperature change in the reaction we could measure this temperature change to compare the reactivity of the metals. However, in order to do this we will have to think more carefully about the things that we have to keep the same in order to make this a valid (fair) test.

The volume and concentration of the hydrochloric acid are perhaps the most obvious things that we have to keep the same, but what about the mass of the metal? This is a more difficult question. If we use 0.24 g of metal in each experiment, we can work out that this is 0.24/24 = 0.010 mol magnesium but 0.24/56 = 0.0040 mol iron.

Now, chemical reactions depend on how many particles are present: more moles and therefore more particles are present in the Mg experiment and more heat would be given out because of this. It is therefore important that we use the same number of moles in each experiment rather than the same number of grams.

The other variable that we should control is the surface area of the metal. Although this does not affect the overall amount of heat given out in the reaction, it will affect the speed at which the heat is given out, which can affect the temperature change.

We will use the following procedure to investigate this reaction quantitatively (involving numbers):

- Measure out 50 cm^3 of 1 mol/dm^3 hydrochloric acid using a 50 cm^3 measuring cylinder (this amount was chosen so that the hydrochloric acid is in excess – there is more than enough to react with all the metal in each case).
- Pour the hydrochloric acid into a polystyrene cup (this is an insulator).
- Measure the initial temperature of the hydrochloric acid.
- Weigh out 0.010 mol of magnesium (0.010 × 24 = 0.24 g) powder.
- Add the magnesium powder to the polystyrene cup, stirring rapidly, and measure the maximum temperature reached.
- Repeat with the other metals using 0.010 mol in each case.

KEY POINT

If the reaction occurs very slowly, the heat will be given out over a long period of time. As the heat is being given out it will also be lost to the surroundings and the temperature change will be quite low. If the reaction occurs more quickly, the heat is given out more quickly to the solution, and there is less time for heat to be lost to the surroundings – we obtain a larger temperature change. A large surface area causes a faster rate of reaction, so we should use metal powders in these reactions. These things are discussed more in Chapters 19 and 20.

Safety Note: Wear eye protection and avoid splashing the acid when stirring.

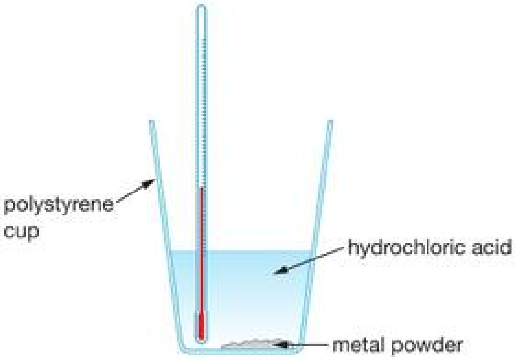


Figure 14.13 Measuring the temperature change when a metal reacts with dilute hydrochloric acid.

The data for this experiment could be:

Metal	Mass/g	Initial temperature/°C	Maximum temperature/°C
magnesium	0.24	18	40
zinc	0.65	19	26
iron	0.56	18	22
copper	0.64	18	18

We can work out the temperature change for each experiment and plot this as a bar chart. We use a bar chart because the type of metal is not continuous data: the metal can be either magnesium or zinc, it cannot be anything in between.

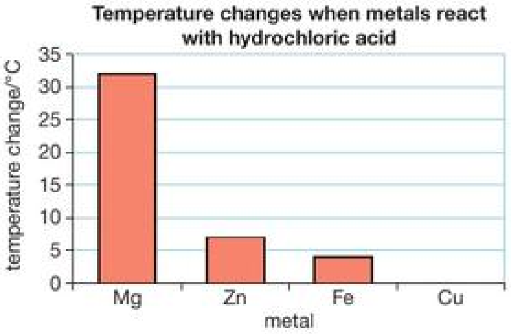


Figure 14.14 Magnesium gives out the most heat when reacted with hydrochloric acid.

We can see from this data that magnesium caused the greatest temperature change and so is the most reactive metal of the four; copper caused no change and is the least reactive.

KEY POINT

We could also calculate the molar enthalpy change for each reaction – see Chapter 19 to learn how to do this.

A GENERAL SUMMARY

The pattern for the reaction of metals with acids is the same as for the reaction between the metals and water, but in each case the reaction is much more vigorous.

KEY POINT

The general trends on this page apply to simple acids such as dilute sulfuric acid or dilute hydrochloric acid. Nitric acid and concentrated sulfuric acid behave completely differently with most metals. These are problems beyond International GCSE.

METALS ABOVE HYDROGEN IN THE REACTIVITY SERIES

Metals above hydrogen react with acids to form a salt (e.g. magnesium sulfate or zinc chloride) and hydrogen. The higher the metal in the series, the more violent the reaction.

metal + acid → salt + hydrogen

metal + dilute sulfuric acid → metal sulfate + hydrogen

metal + dilute hydrochloric acid → metal chloride + hydrogen

HINT

You can remember this using the mnemonic MASH.

METALS BELOW HYDROGEN IN THE REACTIVITY SERIES

Metals such as copper, silver and gold do not react with simple dilute acids such as sulfuric or hydrochloric acid.

POTASSIUM, SODIUM, LITHIUM AND CALCIUM WITH DILUTE ACIDS

These are too reactive to add safely to acids, the reaction is too violent. Calcium can be used if the acid is very dilute.

METALS FROM MAGNESIUM TO IRON IN THE REACTIVITY SERIES

Magnesium reacts vigorously with cold dilute acids, and the mixture becomes hot. A colourless solution of magnesium sulfate or chloride is formed. With dilute sulfuric acid:

$$Mg(s) + H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow MgSO_4(aq) + H_2(g)$$

Aluminium is slow to start reacting, but after warming it reacts very vigorously. There is a very thin, but very strong, layer of aluminium oxide on the surface of the aluminium, which stops the acid from getting to it. On heating, the acid removes this layer, and the aluminium can show its true reactivity. With dilute hydrochloric acid:

$$2Al(s) + 6HCl(aq) \rightarrow 2AlCl_3(aq) + 3H_2(g)$$

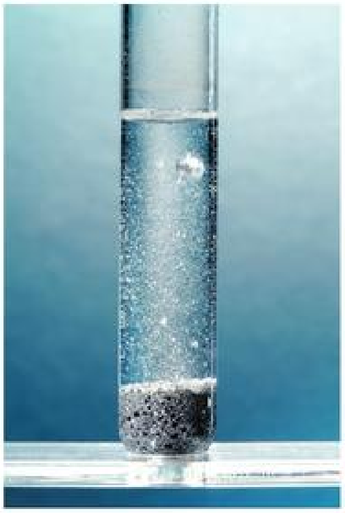
Safety Note: Wear eye protection and avoid splashing the acid when stirring.

Zinc and ***iron*** react slowly in the cold, but more rapidly on heating. The vigour of the reactions is less than that of aluminium. The zinc forms zinc sulfate or zinc chloride and hydrogen. The iron forms iron(II) sulfate or iron(II) chloride and hydrogen. For example:

$$Zn(s) + H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow ZnSO_4(aq) + H_2(g)$$
$$Fe(s) + 2HCl(aq) \rightarrow FeCl_2(aq) + H_2(g)$$

KEY POINT

There are two ranges of iron salts containing either Fe^{2+} or Fe^{3+} ions. These reactions produce iron(II) salts, containing Fe^{2+} ions.



▲ Figure 14.15 Iron reacting with dilute hydrochloric acid

FINDING THE APPROXIMATE POSITION OF A METAL IN THE REACTIVITY SERIES USING WATER AND DILUTE ACIDS

KEY POINT

It would be impossible to place a metal exactly in the reactivity series using this sequence. How vigorously a metal reacts with a dilute acid depends on its position in the series, but it also depends on its surface area, and whether the surface is free from dirt or an oxide coating.

Add a very small piece of metal to some cold water. If there is any rapid reaction, then the metal must be above magnesium in the reactivity series.

If there isn't any reaction, add a small amount of metal to some dilute hydrochloric acid (or dilute sulfuric acid). If there isn't any reaction in the cold acid, warm it carefully.

If there is still no reaction, the metal is probably below hydrogen in the reactivity series. If there is a reaction, then it is somewhere between magnesium and hydrogen.

MAKING PREDICTIONS USING THE REACTIVITY SERIES

You can make predictions about the reactions of unfamiliar metals if you know their position in the reactivity series.

A PROBLEM INVOLVING MANGANESE

KEY POINT

You need to know the charge on the ion so that you can deduce the formulae of the manganese compounds. If you aren't sure about working out the formula of an ionic compound, look again at Chapter 7.

Suppose you have a question as follows.

Manganese (Mn) lies between aluminium and zinc in the reactivity series, and forms a 2+ ion. Solutions of manganese(II) salts are very pale pink (almost colourless).

a Use the reactivity series to predict whether manganese will react with copper(II) sulfate solution. If it will react, describe what you would see, name the products and write an equation for the reaction.

b Explain why you would expect manganese to react with steam. Name the products of the reaction and write the equation.

potassium
sodium
lithium
calcium
magnesium
aluminium
manganese
zinc
iron
(hydrogen)
copper

▲ Figure 14.16 Where is manganese in the reactivity series?

a The reaction between manganese and copper(II) sulfate solution

Manganese is above copper in the reactivity series and so will displace it from the copper(II) sulfate:

A pink-brown deposit of copper will be formed. The colour of the solution will fade from blue and leave a very pale pink (virtually colourless) solution of manganese(II) sulfate.

$$Mn(s) + CuSO_4(aq) \rightarrow MnSO_4(aq) + Cu(s)$$

b The reaction between manganese and steam

Manganese is above hydrogen in the reactivity series and so reacts with steam to give hydrogen and the metal oxide, in this case manganese(II) oxide.

You couldn't predict the colour of the manganese(II) oxide, and the question doesn't ask you to do this.

$$Mn(s) + H_2O(g) \rightarrow MnO(s) + H_2(g)$$

RUSTING OF IRON

Iron **rusts** in the presence of *oxygen* and *water*. Rusting occurs with iron and the most common alloy of iron, mild steel (see below).

The formula of rust is $Fe_2O_3 \cdot xH_2O$, where x is a variable number. It can be called 'hydrated iron(III) oxide'. Rusting can be described as a redox reaction – the iron is oxidised.

HINT

Warning! Many metals corrode, but it is only the corrosion of iron that is referred to as *rusting*.

KEY POINT

Forming rust from iron is a surprisingly complicated process. The iron loses electrons to form iron(II) ions, Fe^{2+}, which are then oxidised by the air to iron(III) ions, Fe^{3+}. Reactions involving the water produce the actual rust.

▲ Figure 14.17 Rusting is accelerated by salty water.

PREVENTING RUSTING BY USING BARRIERS

The most obvious way of preventing rusting is to keep water and oxygen away from the iron. You can do this by painting it, coating it in oil or grease, or covering it in plastic. Coating the iron with a metal *below* it in the reactivity series (e.g. coating steel with tin for tin cans) is also a **barrier method**.

Barrier methods are usually quite cheap ways of preventing rusting. A problem with barrier methods is that once the coating is broken, the iron underneath is exposed to oxygen and water and the iron will rust (even the bits that are not directly exposed to the air/water).

PREVENTING RUSTING BY GALVANISING

Galvanised iron is iron that is coated with a layer of zinc. As long as the zinc layer is unscratched, it serves as a barrier to air and water. However, the iron still doesn't rust, even when some of the zinc on the surface is scratched away

EXTENSION WORK

During the process, the zinc loses electrons (is oxidised) to form zinc ions.

$$Zn(s) \rightarrow Zn^{2+}(aq) + 2e^-$$

These electrons flow into the iron. Any iron atom which has lost electrons to form an ion immediately regains them. If the iron can't form ions, it can't rust.

to expose the iron. This is because the zinc is more reactive than iron, and so reacts with oxygen/water more readily than the iron does. The zinc corrodes instead of the iron.

Figure 14.18 Galvanised iron doesn't rust even in constant contact with air and water.

PREVENTING RUSTING BY USING SACRIFICIAL PROTECTION

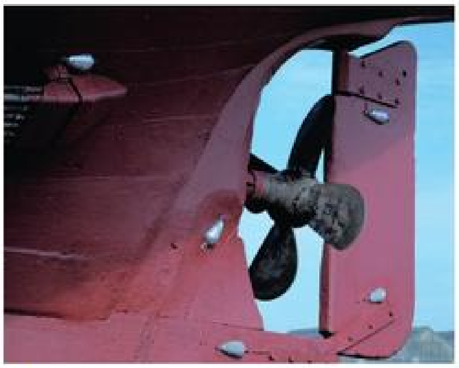


Figure 14.19 A sacrificial anode on a ship

Zinc, magnesium or aluminium blocks are attached to metal hulls or keels of ships to prevent the iron/steel from rusting. For this to work, you have to use a metal that is *more reactive than iron;* the more reactive metal reacts (is oxidised) more readily in the presence of oxygen/water than the iron. The corrosion of the more reactive metal prevents the iron from rusting. Such blocks are called sacrificial anodes.

These sacrificial anodes have to be replaced occasionally when all the more reactive metal has been oxidised. This type of protection is used on large structures where it would be very difficult to use a barrier method effectively.

Galvanising is a combination of a barrier method and **sacrificial protection**.

Underground pipelines are also protected using sacrificial anodes. In this case, lumps of magnesium are attached at intervals along the pipe. The very reactive magnesium corrodes in preference to the iron. The electrons produced as the magnesium forms its ions prevent the ionisation of the iron.

CHAPTER QUESTIONS

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 6

1 a List the following metals in order of decreasing reactivity: aluminium, copper, iron, sodium.

b Some magnesium powder was mixed with some copper(II) oxide and heated strongly. There was a vigorous reaction, producing a lot of sparks and a bright flash of light.

5

i State the names of the products of the reaction.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 9

ii Write a balanced symbol equation for the reaction.

SKILLS REASONING

iii Explain which substance in the reaction has been reduced.

iv Explain which substance is the oxidising agent.

c If a mixture of zinc powder and cobalt(II) oxide is heated, the following reaction occurs:

$$Zn(s) + CoO(s) \rightarrow ZnO(s) + Co(s)$$

7

i Explain which metal is higher in the reactivity series.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 9

ii The zinc can be described as a reducing agent. Using this example, explain what is meant by the term 'reducing agent'.

iii Explain which substance in this reaction has been oxidised.

SKILLS REASONING

d Aluminium, chromium and manganese are all moderately reactive metals. Use the following information to arrange them in the correct reactivity series order. Start with the most reactive one.

- Chromium is manufactured by heating chromium(III) oxide with aluminium.
- If manganese is heated with aluminium oxide there is no reaction.
- If manganese is heated with chromium(III) oxide, chromium is produced.

2 Study the following equations and in each case decide whether the substance in bold type is oxidised or reduced. Explain your choice in terms of either oxygen transfer or electron transfer as appropriate.

a $\mathbf{Zn(s)} + CuO(s) \rightarrow ZnO(s) + Cu(s)$

b $\mathbf{Fe_2O_3(s)} + 3C(s) \rightarrow 2Fe(s) + 3CO(g)$

c $\mathbf{Mg(s)} + Zn^{2+}(aq) \rightarrow Mg^{2+}(aq) + Zn(s)$

d $Zn(s) + \mathbf{Cu^{2+}(aq)} \rightarrow Zn^{2+}(aq) + Cu(s)$

3 The equation for the reaction when solid magnesium and solid lead(II) oxide are heated together is:

$$Mg(s) + PbO(s) \rightarrow MgO(s) + Pb(s)$$

Explain what this tells you about the position of lead in the reactivity series.

4 Some iron filings were shaken with some copper(II) sulfate solution. The ionic equation for the reaction is:

$$Fe(s) + Cu^{2+}(aq) \rightarrow Fe^{2+}(aq) + Cu(s)$$

a Explain any one change that you would observe during this reaction.

b Explain which substance has been oxidised in this reaction.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

c Write down the full (not ionic) equation for this reaction.

SKILLS REASONING

5 Some experiments were carried out to place the metals copper, nickel and silver in reactivity series order.

Experiment 1: A piece of copper was placed in some green nickel(II) sulfate solution. There was no change to either the copper or the solution.

Experiment 2: A coil of copper wire was suspended in some silver nitrate solution. A furry grey growth appeared on the copper wire, out of which grew spiky silvery crystals. The solution gradually turned from colourless to blue.

a Use this information to place copper, nickel and silver in reactivity series order, starting with the most reactive one.

b In another experiment, a piece of nickel was placed in some copper(II) sulfate solution.

  i State one change that you would observe during this reaction.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

  ii Write the full balanced equation for this reaction.

  iii Write the ionic equation for this reaction and use it to explain which substance has been oxidised during the reaction.

SKILLS REASONING

6 a Look carefully at the following equations and then explain what you can say about the position of the metal X in the reactivity series.

$$X(s) + 2HCl(aq) \rightarrow XCl_2(aq) + H_2(g)$$

$$X(s) + CuSO_4(aq) \rightarrow XSO_4(aq) + Cu(s)$$

$$X(s) + FeSO_4(aq) \rightarrow \text{no reaction}$$

SKILLS REASONING

b Decide whether X will react with the following substances. If it will react, state the names of the products, if not state 'no reaction'.
   - **i** Silver nitrate solution
   - **ii** Zinc oxide
   - **iii** Cold water
   - **iv** Copper(II) chloride solution
   - **v** Dilute sulfuric acid

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

7 If you add some powdered aluminium to a small amount of cold dilute hydrochloric acid in a boiling tube, very little happens. If you warm this gently, it starts to fizz very rapidly.

a State the name of the gas given off to produce the fizzing.

b If you used an excess of hydrochloric acid, the result would be a colourless solution. State the name of the solution.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

c Write the full balanced equation for the reaction.

SKILLS REASONING

d Explain why the aluminium hardly reacts at all with the dilute acid in the cold, but reacts vigorously after even gentle heating.

SKILLS EXECUTIVE FUNCTION

8 If you have some small pieces of the metal titanium and any simple apparatus that you might need, describe how you would find out the approximate position of titanium in the reactivity series, using only water and dilute hydrochloric acid. You only need to find out that the reactivity is 'similar to iron' or 'similar to magnesium', for example. Your experiments should be done in an order that guarantees maximum safety. For example, if titanium's reactivity turned out to be similar to potassium, dropping it into dilute hydrochloric acid wouldn't be a good idea!

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

9 In the past, cars were made from mild steel, which was then painted. In more modern cars, the mild steel is galvanised before it is painted.

a State the conditions under which iron/steel rusts.

b Explain how painting prevents iron/steel from rusting.

c What is meant by *galvanised steel*?

d Describe and explain the effect that galvanised steel has on the life of the car.

SKILLS INTERPRETATION

10 A student tested four unknown metals (the names are all imaginary) with different metal salt solutions. She put a tick (✓) if there was a reaction and a cross (✗) if there was no change. Some of her results are shown in the table.

	Pearsonium chloride solution	Mollium chloride solution	Rosium chloride solution	Amelium chloride solution
pearsonium	✗		✗	
mollium	✓	✗	✓	✓
rosium			✗	✗
amelium				✗

a Copy and complete the table.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

b Arrange the metals in an order of reactivity (most reactive first).

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

c Copy and complete the equation:

mollium + pearsonium chloride →

CHEMISTRY ONLY

15 EXTRACTION AND USES OF METALS

Metals are some of the most important materials that we use in everyday life. This chapter explores the principles behind the extraction of metals from their ores. We will also look at the properties of alloys and the uses of some metals.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Know that most metals are extracted from ores found in the Earth's crust and that unreactive metals are often found as the uncombined element
- Explain how the method of extraction of a metal is related to its position in the reactivity series, illustrated by carbon extraction for iron and electrolysis for aluminium
- Be able to comment on a metal extraction process, given appropriate information *(detailed knowledge of the processes used in the extraction of a specific metal is not required)*
- Explain the uses of aluminium, copper, iron and steel in terms of their properties *(the types of steel will be limited to low-carbon (mild), high-carbon and stainless)*
- Know that an alloy is a mixture of a metal and one or more elements, usually other metals or carbon
- Explain why alloys are harder than pure metals

EXTRACTING METALS FROM THEIR ORES

MINERALS AND ORES

Most metals are found in the Earth's crust combined with other elements. The individual compounds are called **minerals**.

Figure 15.1 Pyrite (iron pyrites), FeS_2

Figure 15.2 Magnetite, Fe_3O_4

Figures 15.1 and 15.2 show samples of some iron-containing minerals; they are normally found mixed with other unwanted minerals in rocks. An **ore** is a sample of rock that contains enough of a mineral for it to be worthwhile to extract the metal. Most metals are extracted from ores found in the Earth's crust.

A few very unreactive metals, such as gold, are found **native**. That means that they exist naturally as the uncombined element. Silver and copper are also sometimes found native, although much more rarely.

DID YOU KNOW?

The price of a metal is affected by how common the ore is and how difficult it is to extract the metal from the ore.

HINT

You do not need to remember the names of these ores/minerals for the exam.

EXTRACTING THE METAL

Many ores contain either oxides or compounds that are easily converted to oxides. Sulfides such as sphalerite (zinc blende), ZnS, can be easily converted into an oxide by heating in air, a process known as **roasting**.

$$2ZnS(s) + 3O_2(g) \rightarrow 2ZnO(s) + 2SO_2(g)$$

REMINDER

If you have forgotten about oxidation and reduction, you might find it useful to re-read Chapter 14.

To obtain the metal from the oxide, you have to remove the oxygen. Removal of oxygen is called reduction. Metals exist as positive ions in their ionic compounds, and to produce the metal you would have to add electrons to the positive ion. Addition of electrons is also called reduction.

METHODS OF EXTRACTION AND THE REACTIVITY SERIES

How a metal is extracted depends to a large extent on its position in the reactivity series. A manufacturer obviously wants to use the cheapest possible method of extracting a metal from an ore. There are two main economic factors to take into account:

- the cost of energy
- the cost of the reducing agent.

potassium
sodium
calcium
magnesium
aluminium
(carbon)
zinc
iron
copper

▲ Figure 15.3 A part of the reactivity series

METALS BELOW CARBON IN THE REACTIVITY SERIES

For a metal below carbon in the reactivity series, the cheapest method of reducing the ore is often to heat it with carbon.

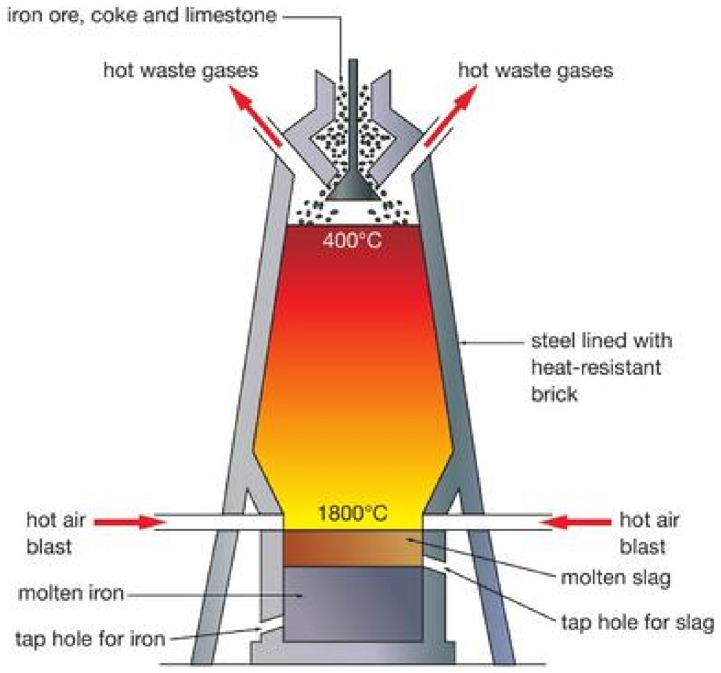
The extraction of iron is a good example of this. One of the main ores of iron contains a high percentage of iron(III) oxide. The iron can be extracted from this by heating with carbon:

$$Fe_2O_3(s) + 3C(s) \rightarrow 2Fe(l) + 3CO(g)$$

Carbon is higher in the reactivity series than iron and will take the oxygen away from the iron oxide. This is a redox reaction; the Fe_2O_3 is reduced to Fe in the reaction and the C is oxidised to CO. In this reaction the carbon is the reducing agent, it reduces the iron(III) oxide.

The extraction of iron is carried out in a blast furnace. The process is a bit more complicated than we have shown here. Other reactions also occur and the main reducing agent is actually carbon monoxide:

$$Fe_2O_3(s) + 3CO(g) \rightarrow 2Fe(l) + 3CO_2(g)$$


iron ore, coke and limestone
hot waste gases
hot waste gases
400°C
steel lined with heat-resistant brick
hot air blast
1800°C
hot air blast
molten slag
molten iron
tap hole for iron
tap hole for slag

▲ Figure 15.4 Iron is extracted from its ore in a blast furnace.

HINT

You are not required to learn the details of the blast furnace.

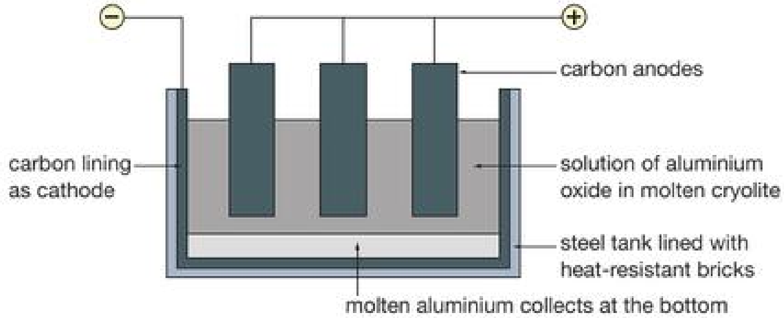
METALS ABOVE CARBON IN THE REACTIVITY SERIES

Ores of metals higher in the reactivity series than zinc can't be reduced using carbon at reasonable temperatures. This is because the metals are more reactive than carbon and therefore carbon cannot take the oxygen away from the metal oxide. Metals above zinc are usually produced by *electrolysis*.

Aluminium is extracted by the electrolysis of aluminium oxide (Al_2O_3) dissolved in a molten salt called cryolite.

KEY POINT

This is essentially the same as the electrolysis of molten aluminium oxide. The cryolite is simply used to make the process more economical. Aluminium oxide melts at over 2000 °C but if it is dissolved in molten cryolite the whole process can be carried out at around 1000 °C. This saves a lot of energy and therefore also saves a lot of money.


⊖
⊕
carbon anodes
carbon lining as cathode
solution of aluminium oxide in molten cryolite
steel tank lined with heat-resistant bricks
molten aluminium collects at the bottom

▲ Figure 15.5 Aluminium is produced by electrolysis.

At the cathode the reaction is $Al^{3+} + 3e^- \rightarrow Al$ reduction

At the anode the reaction is $2O^{2-} \rightarrow O_2 + 4e^-$ oxidation

This process requires huge amounts of electricity, which makes it expensive. A metal such as aluminium, which has to be extracted by electrolysis, is much more expensive than one like iron, which can be extracted by reduction with carbon, despite the fact that aluminium is more abundant in the Earth's crust than iron. Iron (and all other metals) could also be extracted by electrolysis but because the process is so expensive we do not use it unless we have to.

Some metals, such as titanium, are extracted by heating the compound with a more reactive metal. This is also an expensive method because the more reactive metal itself will have had to be extracted by an expensive process first.

ALLOYS

An **alloy** *is a mixture of a metal with, usually, other metals or carbon*. For example, brass is a mixture of copper and zinc, and steel is an alloy of iron with carbon.

Alloys are harder than the individual pure metals from which they are made. In an alloy, the different metals/elements have slightly differently sized atoms. This breaks up the regular lattice arrangement and makes it more difficult for the layers of ions to slide over each other.

Figure 15.6 A brass propeller. Brass is an alloy.

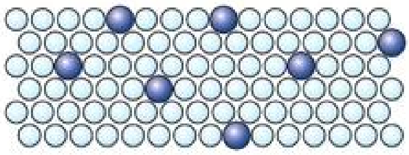


Figure 15.7 Atoms in an alloy

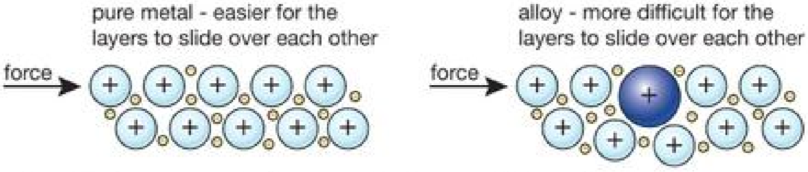

pure metal - easier for the layers to slide over each other
force
+
alloy - more difficult for the layers to slide over each other
force
+

Figure 15.8 The layers cannot slide over each other as easily in an alloy as in a pure metal.

Other common alloys include bronze (a mixture of copper and tin), stainless steel (an alloy of iron with chromium and usually nickel), and the mixture of copper and nickel (cupronickel) which is usually used to make ‘silver’ coins.

REMINDER

Remember, a metal consists of a regular lattice of metal ions surrounded by a sea of delocalised electrons.

PROPERTIES AND USES OF SOME METALS

USES OF ALUMINIUM

Pure aluminium isn’t very strong, so aluminium alloys are normally used instead. The aluminium can be strengthened by adding other elements, such as silicon, copper or magnesium.

Figure 15.9 shows one of the uses of aluminium.

Figure 15.9 Aluminium resists corrosion, it has a low density and is a good conductor of electricity. The aluminium in the cables in the photo is strengthened by a core of steel.

Other uses of aluminium include planes, electricity cables, and pots and pans. Its uses depend on its low density and strength (when alloyed), its ability to conduct electricity and heat, and its ability to resist corrosion.

Aluminium resists corrosion because it has a very thin, but very strong, layer of aluminium oxide on the surface. This prevents anything else reaching the surface and reacting with it.

PROPERTIES AND USES OF DIFFERENT KINDS OF STEEL

There are lots of different alloys of iron that contain various proportions of carbon and sometimes other metals. An alloy of iron and carbon is called steel.

MILD STEEL

Mild steel is the name given to an alloy of iron containing up to about 0.25% of carbon. This small amount of carbon increases the hardness and strength of the iron. Mild steel is a strong material that can be easily hammered into various shapes (malleable) and drawn into wires (ductile). It is used for (among other things) nails, car bodies, ship building, girders and bridges.

▲ Figure 15.10 Mild steel is used for car bodies . . .

A disadvantage of mild steel is that it rusts when exposed to oxygen and water. It is also about three times denser than aluminium. Some car bodies are made from aluminium. This has the advantage that the car body will not rust and, because the car is lighter, less fuel will have to be used.

▲ Figure 15.11 Some cars have a body made of aluminium. In this photo the car body has been painted. The paint is mainly for decoration; it is not required to prevent rusting.

HIGH-CARBON STEEL

High-carbon steel is iron containing about 0.6–1.2% carbon (these amounts are variable). High-carbon steel is harder and more resistant to wear than mild steel but more brittle (not as malleable and ductile). It is used for cutting tools. High-carbon steel also usually contains small amounts of manganese.

▲ Figure 15.12 High-carbon steel is used to make cutting tools.

STAINLESS STEEL

Figure 15.13 Some cars have a stainless steel body. They do not need to be painted.

Stainless steel is an alloy of iron with chromium and often nickel. Chromium forms a strong oxide layer in the same way as aluminium, and this oxide layer protects the iron as well. Stainless steel is therefore very resistant to corrosion.

Uses include kitchen sinks, saucepans, knives and forks, and gardening tools, but there are also major uses for it in the brewing (making beer), dairy (milk and cheese production) and chemical industries, where corrosion-resistant vessels are essential. Stainless steel is significantly more expensive than mild steel.

Table 15.1 A summary of types of steel

Type of steel	Iron mixed with	Some uses
mild steel	up to 0.25% carbon	nails, car bodies, ship building, girders
high-carbon steel	0.6–1.2% carbon	cutting tools, masonry nails
stainless steel	chromium (and nickel)	cutlery, cooking utensils, kitchen sinks

COPPER

Figure 15.14 Copper pots and pans

Some properties and uses of copper and its alloys are summarised in Table 15.2.

Table 15.2 Copper and its alloys have a variety of uses

Use	Property
electrical wires	very good conductor of electricity and ductile
pots and pans	very good conductor of heat (thermal conductor), very unreactive and malleable
water pipes	unreactive – does not react with hot or cold water and malleable
surfaces in hospitals	antimicrobial properties and malleable

CHAPTER QUESTIONS

SKILLS REASONING, PROBLEM SOLVING 9

1 Explain why different methods are used to extract aluminium and iron from their ores and write equations for the reactions occurring.

SKILLS CREATIVITY 10

2 Sodium is the sixth most abundant element in the Earth's crust, occurring in large quantities as common salt, NaCl, and yet sodium metal wasn't first produced until the early 19th century.

   a From your knowledge of the position of sodium in the reactivity series, suggest a method for manufacturing sodium from sodium chloride. You aren't expected to give details of the manufacturing process, but should describe and explain (including equation(s) where relevant) how sodium is formed in your process.

SKILLS REASONING 7

   b Suggest why sodium wasn't produced until the early 19th century.

   c Suggest three other metals which might have been first isolated from their compounds at the same sort of time.

SKILLS CREATIVITY 8

3 Lead is between iron and copper in the reactivity series. Explain a method that could be used to extract lead from its ore.

4 The extraction of chromium from its ore is quite complicated, but in the final stage chromium(III) oxide is reacted with aluminium to form chromium and aluminium oxide.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 9

- a Write a balanced equation for this reaction.

SKILLS REASONING

- b Explain what the reducing agent is in this reaction.

8

- c Explain whether chromium is more or less reactive than aluminium.

5 The first stage in the extraction of titanium from its ore is heating the ore with chlorine and carbon. The equation for the reaction is:

$$2FeTiO_3 + 7Cl_2 + C \rightarrow 2TiCl_4 + 2FeCl_3 + CO$$

This equation is not completely balanced.

The $TiCl_4$ is separated from the $FeCl_3$ and then, in the second stage, heated with magnesium.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

- a Balance the equation for the first stage in this process.

9

- b Write a balanced chemical equation for the second stage in the process.

SKILLS REASONING 8

- c Explain whether magnesium is more or less reactive than titanium.

SKILLS CREATIVITY

- d Explain a method that could be used to extract magnesium from its ore.

SKILLS REASONING

- e Explain whether you would expect titanium to be more or less expensive than magnesium.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 4

6 This question is about the properties and uses of some metals.

- a Aluminium alloys are used in aircraft construction.
  - i Explain which property of aluminium makes it particularly suitable for this purpose.

SKILLS REASONING 8

  - ii Explain, in terms of structure and bonding, why aluminium alloys are used in preference to pure aluminium.

7

  - iii Some cars have aluminium bodies rather than mild steel bodies. Explain two advantages and one disadvantage of using aluminium rather than mild steel.
- b Explain two properties of copper that make it suitable for use in:

4

  - i electrical wiring

5

  - ii water pipes

7

- c Explain why car bodies are made from mild steel rather than high-carbon steel.

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

16 ACIDS, ALKALIS AND TITRATIONS

This chapter explores what indicators, acids and alkalis are, and how to carry out an acid–alkali titration. The reactions of acids are also discussed in Chapter 17.

▲ Figure 16.1 Acids range from the extremely dangerous, needing protective clothing to clean up spills . . .

▲ Figure 16.2 . . . to a natural part of our diet: oranges contain citric acid.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Describe the use of litmus, phenolphthalein and methyl orange to distinguish between acidic and alkaline solutions
- Understand how the pH scale, from 0–14, can be used to classify solutions as strongly acidic (0–3), weakly acidic (4–6), neutral (7), weakly alkaline (8–10) and strongly alkaline (11–14)
- Describe the use of universal indicator to measure the approximate pH value of an aqueous solution
- Know that acids in aqueous solution are a source of hydrogen ions, and alkalis in an aqueous solution are a source of hydroxide ions
- Know that alkalis can neutralise acids

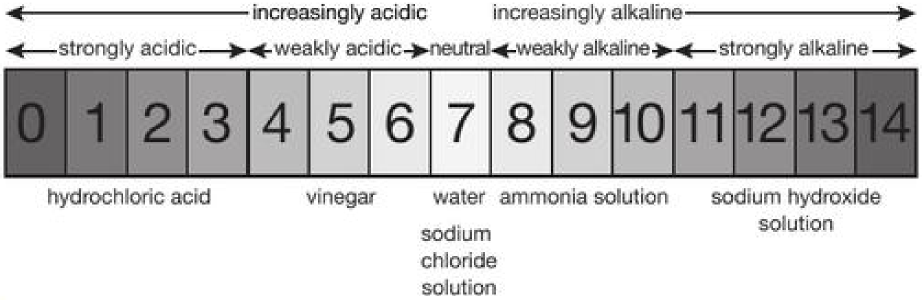
CHEMISTRY ONLY

- Describe how to carry out an acid–alkali titration.

pH AND INDICATORS

THE pH SCALE

The pH scale ranges from about 0 to about 14, and tells you how acidic or how alkaline a solution is.


increasingly acidic
increasingly alkaline
strongly acidic
weakly acidic
neutral
weakly alkaline
strongly alkaline
0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
hydrochloric acid
vinegar
water
ammonia solution
sodium hydroxide solution
sodium chloride solution

▲ Figure 16.3 The pH scale. Vinegar is a solution of ethanoic acid.

We can classify substances as strongly acidic/alkaline or weakly acidic/alkaline based on their pH. Remember, when writing pH, it is a small p and a big H (the symbol for hydrogen).

Table 16.1 We can classify solutions according to their pH

	pH	Solution
strongly acidic	0–3	hydrochloric acid
weakly acidic	4–6	ethanoic acid (vinegar)
neutral	7	sodium chloride
weakly alkaline	8–10	ammonia
strongly alkaline	11–14	sodium hydroxide

EXTENSION WORK

These are actually only approximate ranges and depend on the concentration of the acid/alkali solution. A 0.10 mol/dm^3 solution of ethanoic acid actually has a pH of 2.88.

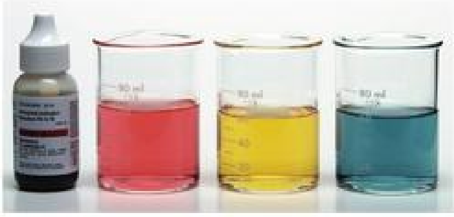
MEASURING pH

USING UNIVERSAL INDICATOR

HINT

You can measure pH much more accurately using a pH meter.

Universal indicator is made from a mixture of indicators, which change colour in a gradual way over a range of pH values. It can be used as a solution or as paper. The most common form is known as *full-range* universal indicator. It changes through a variety of colours from pH 1 right up to pH 14, but it isn't very accurate.



▲ Figure 16.4 Using universal indicator solution to measure the pH of various solutions.

The colour of the paper or solution is checked against a chart to find the pH.

ACID–ALKALI INDICATORS

Any substance that has different colours depending on the pH can be used as an indicator. Some common indicators and their colours in acidic and alkaline solutions are shown in Table 16.2.

Table 16.2 The colours of various indicators in acidic and alkaline solutions

	Acid	Alkali
litmus	red	blue
methyl orange	red	yellow
phenolphthalein	colourless	pink
universal indicator	red	blue

KEY POINT

Litmus can be used as a solution or as litmus paper.

Litmus is red in acidic solutions and blue in alkaline ones. In neutral solutions, the colour is purple, which is an equal mixture of the red and blue forms. Universal indicator is green in neutral solutions.

ACIDS

The formulae of some acids are given in Table 16.3.

Table 16.3 Some acids showing the replaceable hydrogen

Acid	Formula
hydrochloric acid	HCl
nitric acid	HNO_3
sulfuric acid	H_2SO_4
ethanoic acid	CH_3COOH
phosphoric acid	H_3PO_4

All acids contain hydrogen and when acids react the hydrogen shown in red in Table 16.3 is replaced by something else; all acids have replaceable H. For example, when hydrochloric acid reacts with sodium hydroxide we obtain:

$$HCl(aq) + NaOH(aq) \rightarrow NaCl(aq) + H_2O(l)$$

The H of the HCl has been replaced by an Na.

Not all of the hydrogens in acids are replaceable, for example in ethanoic acid only the H attached to the O is replaceable, not the ones joined to the C. The reactions of carboxylic acids such as ethanoic acid are discussed further in Chapter 27.

When acids are in water they dissociate (break apart) to form hydrogen ions (H^+), for example:

$$HCl(aq) \rightarrow H^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq)$$
$$HNO_3(aq) \rightarrow H^+(aq) + NO_3^-(aq)$$
$$H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow 2H^+(aq) + SO_4^{2-}(aq)$$

When we are measuring pH we are actually measuring the concentration of these H^+ ions in the solution. This is why the H in pH is written with a capital letter.

We can define acids as *substances that act as a source of hydrogen ions (H^+) in solution*.

EXTENSION WORK

At the next level, you will discover that pH is defined by a mathematical equation: $pH = -\log_{10}[H^+(aq)]$.

BASES

Bases are substances that neutralise acids by combining with the hydrogen ions in them. When we are referring to a base at this level we usually mean a metal oxide, a metal hydroxide or ammonia (NH_3).

ALKALIS

Some bases dissolve in water to form solutions containing hydroxide ions. These are alkalis.

Alkalis are a source of hydroxide (OH^-) ions in solution.

Examples of alkalis are sodium hydroxide and potassium hydroxide (all the Group 1 hydroxides). When sodium hydroxide is in water it breaks apart to form sodium and hydroxide ions:

$$NaOH(aq) \rightarrow Na^+(aq) + OH^-(aq)$$

The other alkali you will meet is a solution of ammonia (NH_3). The ammonia reacts with the water to form ammonium ions and hydroxide ions:

$$NH_3(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons NH_4^+(aq) + OH^-(aq)$$

These alkalis all have a pH greater than 7.

Ammonia
Janitorial Strength

▲ Figure 16.5 Ammonia solution is sometimes called ammonium hydroxide. It is an alkali and is used in some cleaning products. Some universal indicator solution has been added to it in the beaker.

OTHER ALKALINE SOLUTIONS

There are some other substances, such as soluble metal carbonates, that react with water to form hydroxide ions:

$$Na_2CO_3(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons NaOH(aq) + NaHCO_3(aq)$$

There are not many soluble carbonates, but sodium carbonate and potassium carbonate are both alkalis with a pH greater than 7. This is due to the OH^- ions in the solution. Only some of the carbonate ions react with water, so these solutions are only weakly alkaline.

EXTENSION WORK

The ionic equation for a carbonate reacting with water is:

$CO_3^{2-}(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons OH^-(aq) + HCO_3^-(aq)$

REACTING ACIDS WITH BASES AND ALKALIS

Acids react with bases or alkalis in a neutralisation reaction.

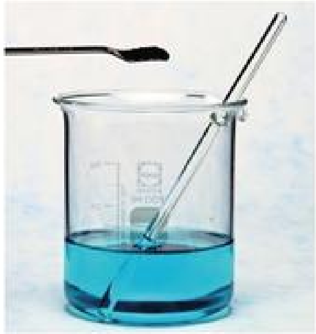
REACTING ACIDS WITH BASES

Metal oxides, such as copper(II) oxide and magnesium oxide, are bases.

Copper(II) oxide reacts with hot dilute sulfuric acid, in a neutralisation reaction, to produce a solution of copper(II) sulfate and water:

$$CuO(s) + H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow CuSO_4(aq) + H_2O(l)$$

Copper(II) oxide is an ionic compound containing the O^{2-} ion and what has happened in this reaction is that the H^+ ions from the acid have combined with the O^{2-} ions from the base to form water (H_2O).



▲ Figure 16.6 Copper(II) oxide reacts with hot dilute sulfuric acid to form blue copper(II) sulfate solution.

REACTING ACIDS WITH ALKALIS

Sodium hydroxide solution (an alkali) reacts with dilute hydrochloric acid to form sodium chloride and water:

$$NaOH(aq) + HCl(aq) \rightarrow NaCl(aq) + H_2O(l)$$

This is a neutralisation reaction. Sodium hydroxide and sodium chloride are both ionic compounds and so will be present as ions in solution. HCl(aq) is an acid and so will dissociate into $H^+(aq)$ and $Cl^-(aq)$. We can therefore re-write this equation showing all the ions.

$$Na^+(aq) + OH^-(aq) + H^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq) \rightarrow Na^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq) + H_2O(l)$$

The $Na^+(aq)$ and $Cl^-(aq)$ ions are the same on both sides of the equation and so are spectator ions. We can leave the spectator ions out of this equation to just show the things that have changed:

$$OH^-(aq) + H^+(aq) \rightarrow H_2O(l)$$

This is an ionic equation. All neutralisation reactions for an acid reacting with an alkali will have the same ionic equation. This is because they all involve the OH^- ions from the alkali reacting with the H^+ ions from the acid to form water.

CHEMISTRY ONLY

TITRATION

We can use titration to follow the course of a neutralisation reaction between an acid and alkali. Titration can be used to find out how much of the acid/alkali reacts with a certain volume of the alkali/acid.

The technique for carrying out a titration using phenolphthalein as indicator is shown in Figure 16.7.

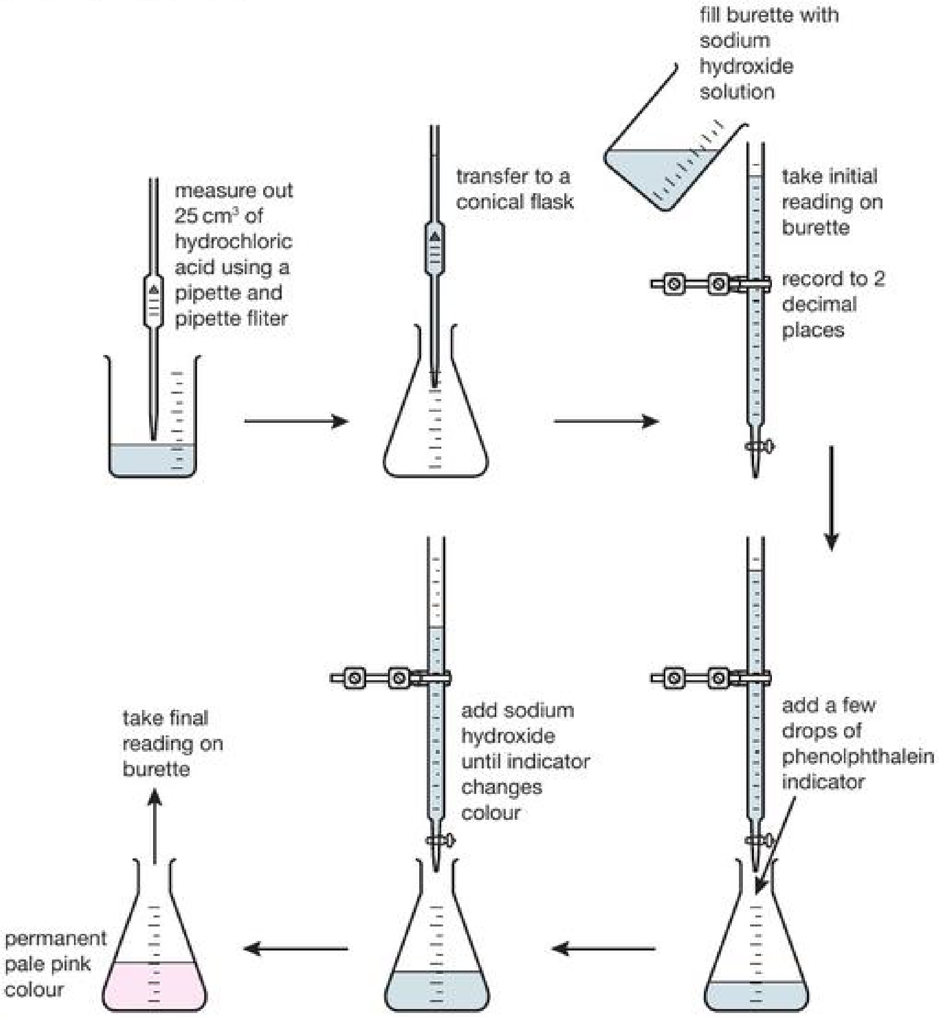

fill burette with sodium hydroxide solution
measure out 25 cm³ of hydrochloric acid using a pipette and pipette fliter
transfer to a conical flask
take initial reading on burette
record to 2 decimal places
take final reading on burette
add sodium hydroxide until indicator changes colour
add a few drops of phenolphthalein indicator
permanent pale pink colour

Figure 16.7 How to carry out an acid–alkali titration

Calculations involving titrations are discussed in Chapter 6.

The alkali is added to the acid from the burette until the indicator changes colour. We usually do a rough titration first in order to find out approximately how much alkali is required to neutralise the acid. Imagine we found out that we required 22.50 cm^3 of alkali in the rough titration. We would then do the experiment again but this time running in about 20 cm^3 of the alkali quite quickly, swirling the conical flask all the time to mix the solutions. We would then add the alkali very slowly (dropwise) until one drop of alkali causes the indicator to change from its acid to its alkali colour. We then know the amount needed for neutralisation to within 1 drop; this is about as precise as we can be. In the above titration we could also have added the acid to the alkali but it is easier to see this indicator turning pink rather than going colourless.

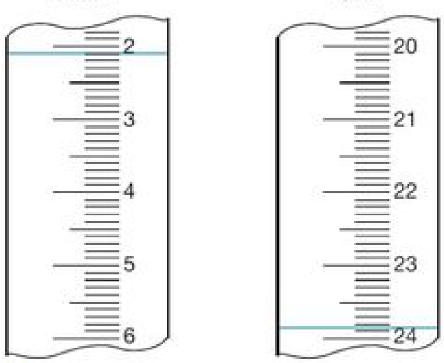

before
after
2
3
4
5
6
20
21
22
23
24

Figure 16.8 Reading a burette

When reading a burette it is important to remember that the numbers increase from the top to the bottom: 0 is at the top and 50 is at the bottom. We normally record readings from the burette to the nearest 0.05 cm^3, therefore all readings should be written down to 2 decimal places. The second decimal place is given as '0' if the level of solution is on the line and '5' if it is between the lines. The readings from the burette in Figure 16.8 should be recorded as shown in Table 16.4.

KEY POINT

The endpoint of a titration is the point at which the indicator changes colour.

The point at which the indicator changes colour does not necessarily indicate the point at which the solution is neutral. The pH changes very rapidly near the endpoint of the titration and in some titrations 1 drop of an alkali can change the pH from about 3 to 11. So the most precise we can be is to know the neutralisation point to within 1 drop.

Table 16.4 Results table from a titration experiment

final reading on burette/cm^3	23.85
initial reading on burette/cm^3	2.10
volume of alkali added/cm^3	21.75

The volume of alkali added is obtained by subtracting the initial reading from the final reading:

volume of alkali = 23.85 − 2.10 = 21.75 cm^3

Various other indicators can also be used, such as methyl orange, but not universal indicator. We do not use universal indicator because it has a range of colours and changes gradually between them; this means we would not be able to see a clear endpoint for the titration.

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

CHAPTER QUESTIONS

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

1 State the colours of methyl orange, phenolphthalein and litmus in each of the following solutions:
  a sodium hydroxide solution
  b hydrochloric acid solution.

SKILLS ANALYSIS

2 Table 16.5 gives the pH of some solutions. Classify each as strongly acidic, strongly alkaline, weakly acidic, weakly alkaline or neutral by copying the table and putting ticks in the appropriate boxes.

Table 16.5

Solution	pH	Strongly acidic	Weakly acidic	Neutral	Weakly alkaline	Strongly alkaline
potassium iodide	7					
propanoic acid	4.2					
sodium carbonate	9.5					
potassium hydroxide	13					
iron(III) chloride	2.4					
nitric acid	1.3					

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

3 Write equations for the reactions between:
  a sodium oxide and nitric acid
  b potassium hydroxide and sulfuric acid.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

4 Explain what type of reaction is occurring in 3.

CHEMISTRY ONLY

5 A student carried out an acid–alkali titration. They used the following set of instructions. Copy out the paragraph and fill in the blanks.

Measure out 25.0 cm^3 of potassium hydroxide solution using a __________. Transfer the potassium hydroxide solution to a __________ __________. Add a few drops of an __________. Put sulfuric acid into the __________. Add the acid to the alkali until the __________ __________ __________.

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

17 ACIDS, BASES AND SALT PREPARATIONS

Acids were introduced in Chapter 16. In this chapter we will look more closely at some of the reactions of acids and how to make salts.

▲ Figure 17.1 Sodium chloride is common salt. You don't normally make it. It occurs naturally.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Know the general rules for predicting the solubility of ionic compounds in water:
  - common sodium, potassium and ammonium compounds are soluble
  - all nitrates are soluble
  - common chlorides are soluble, except those of silver and lead(II)
  - common hydroxides are insoluble except for those of sodium, potassium and calcium (calcium hydroxide is slightly soluble)
- Understand acids and bases in terms of proton transfer
- Understand that an acid is a proton donor and a base is a proton acceptor
- Describe the reactions of hydrochloric acid, sulfuric acid and nitric acid with metals, bases and metal carbonates (excluding the reactions between nitric acid and metals) to form salts
- Know that metal oxides, metal hydroxides and ammonia can act as bases, and that alkalis are bases that are soluble in water
- Describe an experiment to prepare a pure, dry sample of a soluble salt, starting from an insoluble reactant
- Practical: Prepare a sample of pure, dry hydrated copper(II) sulfate crystals, starting from copper(II) oxide

CHEMISTRY ONLY

- Describe an experiment to prepare a pure, dry sample of a soluble salt, starting from an acid and alkali.
- Describe an experiment to prepare a pure, dry sample of an insoluble salt, starting from two soluble reactants.
- Practical: Prepare a sample of pure, dry lead(II) sulfate

SALTS

All acids contain hydrogen. When that hydrogen is replaced by a metal, the compound formed is called a **salt**. Magnesium sulfate is a salt, and so is zinc chloride, and so is potassium nitrate.

The formulae of some acids and salts are given in Table 17.1.

Table 17.1 Some acids and salts

Acid	Formula	Example of salt	Name of salts
hydrochloric acid	HCl	$NaCl$	chlorides
nitric acid	HNO_3	KNO_3	nitrates
sulfuric acid	H_2SO_4	$CuSO_4$	sulfates
ethanoic acid	CH_3COOH	CH_3COONa	ethanoates
phosphoric acid	H_3PO_4	K_3PO_4	phosphates

Sulfuric acid can be thought of as the **parent acid** of all the sulfates (the salts formed from sulfuric acid are all called sulfates). It doesn't matter if the replacement of the hydrogen can't be done directly. For example, you can't make copper(II) sulfate from copper and dilute sulfuric acid because they don't react. There are, however, other ways of making it from sulfuric acid – copper(II) sulfate is still a salt.

REMINDER

These salts contain the NH_4^+ ion.

Salts are also formed when the hydrogen in an acid is replaced with NH_4. These are ammonium salts, for example NH_4Cl (ammonium chloride) and $(NH_4)_2SO_4$ (ammonium sulfate).

REACTIONS OF ACIDS

Before we look at some practical methods to make salts, we need to study the reactions of acids.

REACTING ACIDS WITH METALS

KEY POINT

Of the common acids in the lab, nitric acid has much more complex reactions with metals. You won't be asked about this at International GCSE.

Simple dilute acids react with metals depending on their positions in the reactivity series.

- Metals below hydrogen in the series don't react with dilute acids.
- Metals above hydrogen in the series react to produce hydrogen gas.
- The higher the metal is in the reactivity series, the more vigorous the reaction. You would never mix metals such as sodium or potassium with acids because their reactions are too violent.

REMINDER

Remember: MASH

A summary equation for metals above hydrogen in the reactivity series:

metal + acid → salt + hydrogen

REACTIONS INVOLVING MAGNESIUM AND ACIDS

WITH DILUTE SULFURIC ACID

There is rapid fizzing and a colourless gas is evolved, which pops with a lighted splint (the test for hydrogen). The reaction mixture becomes very warm as heat is produced. The magnesium gradually disappears to leave a colourless solution of magnesium sulfate.

$$Mg(s) + H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow MgSO_4(aq) + H_2(g)$$

This is a displacement reaction. The more reactive magnesium has displaced the less reactive hydrogen.

▲ Figure 17.2 Magnesium reacting with dilute sulfuric acid

WITH DILUTE HYDROCHLORIC ACID

The reaction looks exactly the same. The only difference is that this time a solution of magnesium chloride is formed.

$$Mg(s) + 2HCl(aq) \rightarrow MgCl_2(aq) + H_2(g)$$

EXTENSION WORK

Acids in solution form ions. Dilute sulfuric acid contains hydrogen ions and sulfate ions. Dilute hydrochloric acid contains hydrogen ions and chloride ions.

You can rewrite the equations above as ionic equations. In the case of sulfuric acid:

$$Mg(s) + 2H^+(aq) + SO_4^{2-}(aq) \rightarrow Mg^{2+}(aq) + SO_4^{2-}(aq) + H_2(g)$$

The sulfate ion hasn't been changed by the reaction. It is a spectator ion, and so we don't include it in the ionic equation:

$$Mg(s) + 2H^+(aq) \rightarrow Mg^{2+}(aq) + H_2(g)$$

Repeating this with hydrochloric acid, we find that the chloride ions are also spectator ions:

$$Mg(s) + 2H^+(aq) + 2Cl^-(aq) \rightarrow Mg^{2+}(aq) + 2Cl^-(aq) + H_2(g)$$

Not including the spectator ions produces the ionic equation:

$$Mg(s) + 2H^+(aq) \rightarrow Mg^{2+}(aq) + H_2(g)$$

The reactions look the same because they are the same. All solutions of acids contain hydrogen ions. That means that magnesium will react with any simple dilute acid in the same way.

REMINDER

Ionic compounds are present as separate ions in solution, so in $MgSO_4(aq)$ the $Mg^{2+}(aq)$ and $SO_4^{2-}(aq)$ ions are separated from each other.

REACTIONS INVOLVING ZINC AND ACIDS

Again, the reactions between zinc and the two acids look exactly the same. The reactions are slower because zinc is lower down the reactivity series than magnesium.

The equations are:

$$Zn(s) + H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow ZnSO_4(aq) + H_2(g)$$
$$Zn(s) + 2HCl(aq) \rightarrow ZnCl_2(aq) + H_2(g)$$

EXTENSION WORK

The ionic equations are both the same:

$$Zn(s) + 2H^+(aq) \rightarrow Zn^{2+}(aq) + H_2(g)$$

BASES

We saw in Chapter 16 that bases are substances that neutralise acids by combining with the hydrogen ions in them to produce water. When we are referring to a base at this level, we usually mean a metal oxide, a metal hydroxide or ammonia.

REACTING ACIDS WITH BASES

Metal oxides, such as copper(II) oxide and magnesium oxide, are bases.

REACTING DILUTE SULFURIC ACID WITH COPPER(II) OXIDE

The copper(II) oxide (black powder) reacts with hot dilute sulfuric acid to produce a blue solution of copper(II) sulfate.

$$CuO(s) + H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow CuSO_4(aq) + H_2O(l)$$

All the metal oxide and acid combinations that you will meet at International GCSE behave in exactly the same way as the reaction between copper(II) oxide and dilute sulfuric acid, that is, they produce a salt and water. Most need to be heated for the reaction to start.

Copper(II) oxide is an ionic compound containing the O^{2-} ion. What has happened in this reaction is that the H^+ ions from the acid have combined with the O^{2-} ions to form water (H_2O).

The general equation for the reaction of a metal oxide (base) with an acid is

metal oxide + acid → salt + water

This is a neutralisation reaction – the base neutralises the acid (water is formed).

BASES AND ALKALIS

Some metal oxides are soluble in water and react with it to form solutions of metal hydroxides, for example:

$$Na_2O(s) + H_2O(l) \rightarrow 2NaOH(aq)$$

All the Group 1 oxides do this reaction, so for potassium oxide we would get:

$$K_2O(s) + H_2O(l) \rightarrow 2KOH(aq)$$

Most other metal oxides are not soluble in water.

Calcium oxide dissolves slightly to form calcium hydroxide:

$$CaO(s) + H_2O(l) \rightarrow Ca(OH)_2(aq)$$

Another alkali you will meet is a solution of ammonia (NH_3). The ammonia reacts with the water to form ammonium ions and hydroxide ions:

$$NH_3(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons NH_4^+(aq) + OH^-(aq)$$

All these solutions contain hydroxide ions. We learned in the last chapter that we can define alkalis as solutions that are a source of hydroxide (OH^-) ions, so all of these solutions are alkalis.

REACTING ACIDS WITH METAL HYDROXIDES

All metal hydroxides react with acids in a neutralisation reaction:

metal hydroxide + acid → salt + water

REACTING DILUTE HYDROCHLORIC ACID WITH SODIUM HYDROXIDE SOLUTION

Mixing sodium hydroxide solution and dilute hydrochloric acid produces a colourless solution so not much seems to have happened. But if you repeat the reaction with a thermometer in the beaker, the temperature rises several degrees, showing that there has been a chemical change. Sodium chloride solution has been formed:

$$\mathrm{NaOH(aq) + HCl(aq) \rightarrow NaCl(aq) + H_2O(l)}$$

We saw in Chapter 16 that the ionic equation for this reaction is:

$$\mathrm{OH^-(aq) + H^+(aq) \rightarrow H_2O(l)}$$

All neutralisation reactions for an acid reacting with an alkali have the same ionic equation: they all involve the hydroxide ions from the alkali reacting with the H^+ ions from the acid to form water.

REACTING ACIDS WITH CARBONATES

Carbonates react with cold dilute acids to produce carbon dioxide gas.

A summary equation for acids and carbonates:

carbonate + acid → salt + carbon dioxide + water

THE REACTION BETWEEN COPPER(II) CARBONATE AND DILUTE ACIDS

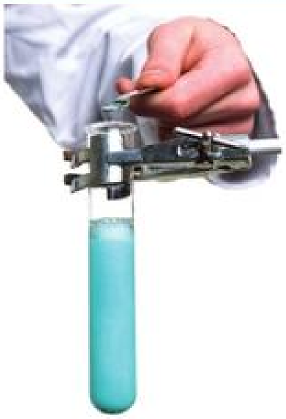
Green copper(II) carbonate reacts with the common dilute acids to give a blue or blue-green solution of copper(II) sulfate, copper(II) nitrate or copper(II) chloride. Carbon dioxide gas is given off. You can recognise this because it turns limewater milky.

All the equations have the same form:

$$\mathrm{CuCO_3(s) + H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow CuSO_4(aq) + CO_2(g) + H_2O(l)}$$

$$\mathrm{CuCO_3(s) + 2HNO_3(aq) \rightarrow Cu(NO_3)_2(aq) + CO_2(g) + H_2O(l)}$$

$$\mathrm{CuCO_3(s) + 2HCl(aq) \rightarrow CuCl_2(aq) + CO_2(g) + H_2O(l)}$$



▲ Figure 17.3 The reaction between copper(II) carbonate and dilute sulfuric acid.

THE REACTION BETWEEN SODIUM CARBONATE AND DILUTE ACIDS

Sodium carbonate is soluble in water. The equation for the reaction of sodium carbonate with hydrochloric acid is:

$$\mathrm{Na_2CO_3(aq) + 2HCl(aq) \rightarrow 2NaCl(aq) + CO_2(g) + H_2O(l)}$$

HINT

Carbonates are not mentioned as bases on the syllabus; only metal oxides, metal hydroxides and ammonia.

EXTENSION WORK

If we show the ions (remembering that HCl splits apart into its ions in solution):

$$\boxed{\mathrm{2Na^+(aq)}} + \mathrm{CO_3^{2-}(aq) + 2H^+(aq)} + \boxed{\mathrm{2Cl^-(aq)}} \rightarrow \boxed{\mathrm{2Na^+(aq)}} + \boxed{\mathrm{2Cl^-(aq)}} + \mathrm{CO_2(g) + H_2O(l)}$$

By not including the spectator ions we obtain the ionic equation:

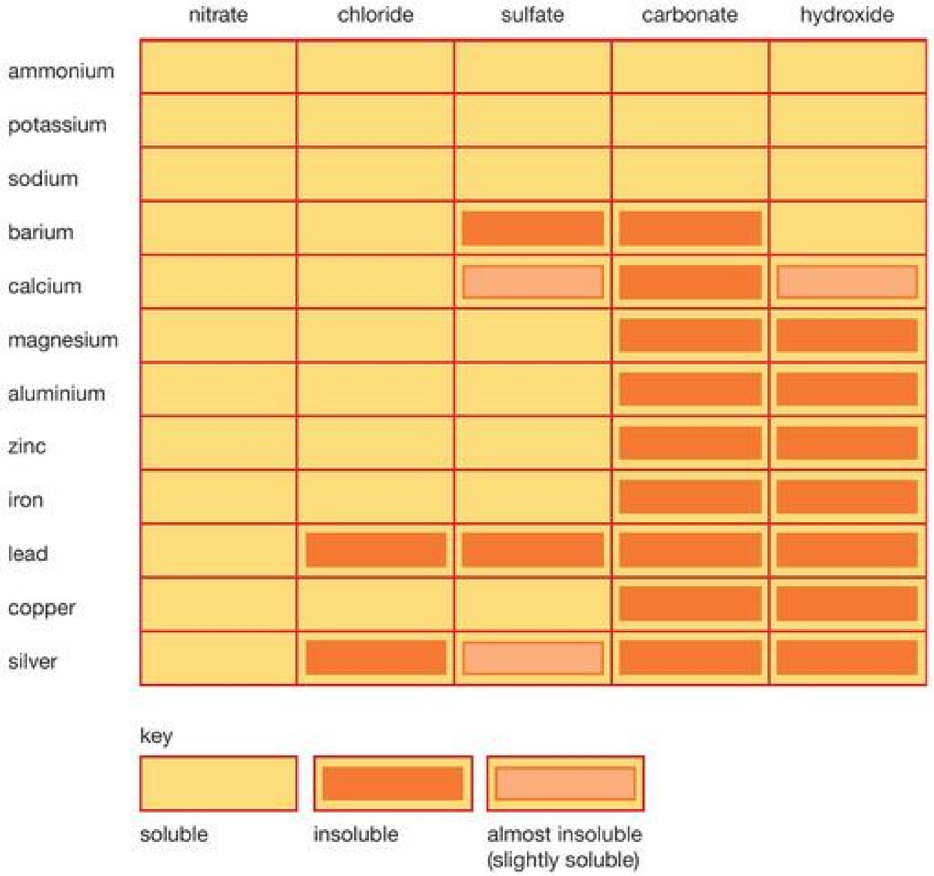
$$\mathrm{CO_3^{2-}(aq) + 2H^+(aq) \rightarrow CO_2(g) + H_2O(l)}$$

Because carbonate ions react by accepting hydrogen ions, we can classify carbonate ions as bases.

SALT PREPARATIONS

In the next sections we will learn about some practical methods to make salts. Before we can do this, we need to know which substances are soluble and which are insoluble in water because the method we use depends on this.

THE SOLUBILITY OF IONIC COMPOUNDS IN WATER



	nitrate	chloride	sulfate	carbonate	hydroxide
ammonium	🟨	🟨	🟨	🟨	🟨
potassium	🟨	🟨	🟨	🟨	🟨
sodium	🟨	🟨	🟨	🟨	🟨
barium	🟨	🟨	🟧	🟧	🟨
calcium	🟨	🟨	▨	🟧	▨
magnesium	🟨	🟨	🟨	🟧	🟧
aluminium	🟨	🟨	🟨	🟧	🟧
zinc	🟨	🟨	🟨	🟧	🟧
iron	🟨	🟨	🟨	🟧	🟧
lead	🟨	🟧	🟧	🟧	🟧
copper	🟨	🟨	🟨	🟧	🟧
silver	🟨	🟧	▨	🟧	🟧

key

🟨 soluble

🟧 insoluble

▨ almost insoluble (slightly soluble)

▲ Figure 17.4 **Solubility patterns**

Note that:

- all sodium, potassium and ammonium compounds are *soluble*
- all nitrates are *soluble*
- most common chlorides are *soluble*, except lead(II) chloride and silver chloride
- most common sulfates are *soluble*, except lead(II) sulfate, barium sulfate, silver sulfate and calcium sulfate
- most common carbonates are *insoluble*, except sodium, potassium and ammonium carbonates
- most metal hydroxides are *insoluble* (or *almost insoluble*), except sodium, potassium and ammonium hydroxides. Calcium hydroxide is slightly soluble in water.

NOTES ON THE TABLE

To keep the table simple, it includes one or two compounds (aluminium carbonate, for example) which don't actually exist. Don't worry about these. The problem won't arise at International GCSE.

There is no clear line between 'insoluble' and 'almost insoluble' compounds. The ones picked out as 'almost insoluble' include the more common ones that you might need to know about elsewhere in the course.

HINT

It can seem a bit frightening to have to remember all this, but it isn't as difficult as it looks at first sight.

Except for the carbonates and hydroxides, most of these compounds are soluble. Learn the exceptions in the sulfates and chlorides.

The reason for the exceptions in the carbonates and hydroxides is that all sodium, potassium and ammonium compounds are soluble.

MAKING SOLUBLE SALTS (EXCEPT SODIUM, POTASSIUM AND AMMONIUM SALTS)

These all involve reacting a solid with an acid. You can use any of the following mixtures:

- acid + metal (but only for the moderately reactive metals from magnesium to iron in the reactivity series)
- acid + metal oxide or hydroxide
- acid + carbonate.

Whatever mixture you use, the method is basically the same.

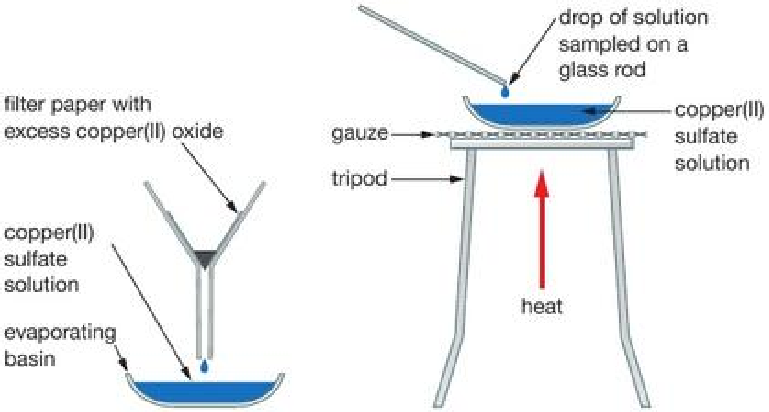
Safety Note: Direct heating of the acid is not recommended. Wear eye protection and do not evaporate the solution to dryness. The acid is best heated in a boiling tube placed in a water bath. Avoid contact with the crystals as they are harmful and irritating to both the skin and eyes.

ACTIVITY 5

▼ PRACTICAL: MAKING COPPER(II) SULFATE CRYSTALS

The practical procedure for this is as follows:

- Measure 50 cm³ of dilute sulfuric acid into a beaker and heat it on a tripod and gauze using a Bunsen burner.
- Add a spatula full of black copper(II) oxide and continue heating. If all the copper(II) oxide disappears add more copper(II) oxide until there is some left in the beaker. Stir the mixture well to make sure that no more will react. At this stage, we have added *excess* copper(II) oxide – there is more than enough to react with all the acid present. When there is copper(II) oxide left, we know that all the acid has been neutralised.
- Filter off the excess copper(II) oxide and transfer the filtrate (solution), which is blue, to an evaporating basin. The solution we have now is copper(II) sulfate.


drop of solution sampled on a glass rod
filter paper with excess copper(II) oxide
gauze
copper(II) sulfate solution
tripod
copper(II) sulfate solution
heat
evaporating basin

▲ Figure 17.5 Making copper(II) sulfate crystals

The equation for the formation of the solution is:

$$CuO(s) + H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow CuSO_4(aq) + H_2O(l)$$

- Heat the solution of copper(II) sulfate over a Bunsen burner to boil off some of the water and concentrate the solution.
- Keep heating until a saturated solution is formed. We can test this by dipping a glass rod into the solution. If crystals form on the glass rod when we remove it we know that the solution is very close to saturated and crystals will also begin to form in the solution.

- Stop heating the reaction mixture and allow it to cool slowly at room temperature so that larger crystals can form.
- Remove the blue crystals from the reaction mixture by filtration, or by just pouring off the remaining solution.
- The crystals can be dried by blotting them with a paper towel, or they can be left to dry in a warm place.

WHY NOT SIMPLY EVAPORATE THE SOLUTION TO DRYNESS?

It would seem much easier to just evaporate off all the water by boiling rather than crystallising the solution slowly, but evaporating to dryness wouldn't give you blue copper(II) sulfate crystals. Instead, you would produce a white powder of anhydrous copper(II) sulfate.

KEY POINT

'Anhydrous' means 'without water'.

When many salts form their crystals water from the solution becomes chemically bound up with the salt. This is called *water of crystallisation*. A salt which contains water of crystallisation is said to be *hydrated*. We can show the crystallisation part of the reaction as:

$$CuSO_4(aq) + 5H_2O(l) \rightarrow CuSO_4{\cdot}5H_2O(s)$$

Safety Note: Wear eye protection. Heating must be very gentle to avoid 'spitting' of hot particles.

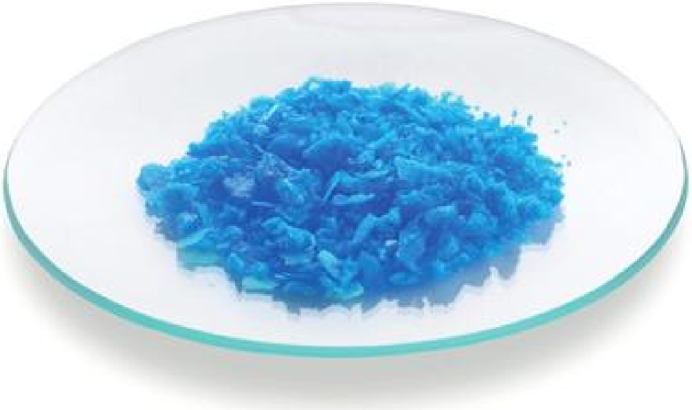


Figure 17.6 Copper(II) sulfate crystals

MAKING MAGNESIUM SULFATE CRYSTALS

We can add excess magnesium to sulfuric acid. This time the acid does not have to be heated.

When we add the magnesium the reaction mixture will fizz (hydrogen is given off). We keep adding magnesium until the fizzing stops and there is magnesium left in the beaker. This means that all the acid has reacted. The equation for the formation of the solution of magnesium sulfate is:

$$Mg(s) + H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow MgSO_4(aq) + H_2(g)$$

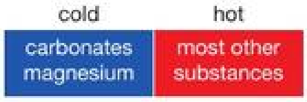
Again the solution is concentrated by heating it and allowed to crystallise. The crystallisation reaction is:

$$MgSO_4(aq) + 7H_2O(l) \rightarrow MgSO_4{\cdot}7H_2O(s)$$

Figure 17.7 Dilute sulfuric acid with magnesium

HOW DO YOU KNOW WHETHER YOU NEED TO HEAT THE MIXTURE?

Carbonates react with dilute acids in the cold, and so does magnesium. Most other things that you are likely to come across need to be heated.



cold	hot
carbonates magnesium	most other substances

Figure 17.8 Do you need to heat the mixture?

CHEMISTRY ONLY

MAKING SODIUM, POTASSIUM AND AMMONIUM SALTS

THE NEED FOR A DIFFERENT METHOD

In the method we've just been looking at, you add an excess of a solid to an acid, and then filter off the unreacted solid. You do this to make sure all the acid is used up. This method does not work for making sodium, potassium and ammonium salts.

The problem is that all sodium, potassium and ammonium compounds are soluble in water. The solid you added to the acid would not only react with the acid, but any excess would just dissolve in the water present. You wouldn't have any visible excess to filter off. There's no simple way of seeing when you have added just enough of the solid to neutralise the acid.

SOLVING THE PROBLEM BY DOING A TITRATION

You normally make these salts from sodium or potassium hydroxide or ammonia solution, but you can also use the carbonates. Fortunately, the solutions of all these are alkaline. That means you can find out when you have a neutral solution by using an indicator.

The method of finding out exactly how much of two solutions you need for them to neutralise each other is called titration (see Chapter 16). You carry out a titration using an indicator to tell you when you have added exactly enough of the acid to neutralise the alkali. Having found out how much acid and alkali are needed, you can make a pure solution of the salt by mixing those same volumes again, but without the indicator.

MAKING SODIUM SULFATE CRYSTALS

KEY POINT

Methyl orange is red in acidic solutions and yellow in alkaline ones. However, when it is used as an indicator in titrations (see Chapter 16) involving adding an acid to an alkali, an orange colour is usually obtained, which indicates the endpoint. Orange is a mixture of the red and yellow forms.

- 25 cm^3 of sodium hydroxide solution is transferred to a conical flask using a pipette, and a few drops of methyl orange are added as the indicator.
- Dilute sulfuric acid is run in from the burette until the indicator just turns from yellow to orange.
- The volume of acid needed is noted, and the same volumes of acid and alkali are mixed together in a clean flask *without any indicator*.

The equation for the formation of the solution is:

$$2NaOH(aq) + H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow Na_2SO_4(aq) + 2H_2O(l)$$

- The solution is heated to evaporate off some of the water until a saturated solution is formed. It is then left to cool so that crystals form.
- The crystals are finally separated from any remaining solution by filtration (or the remaining solution can be poured away).
- The crystals are dried by patting them dry with a paper towel or by leaving them in a warm place.

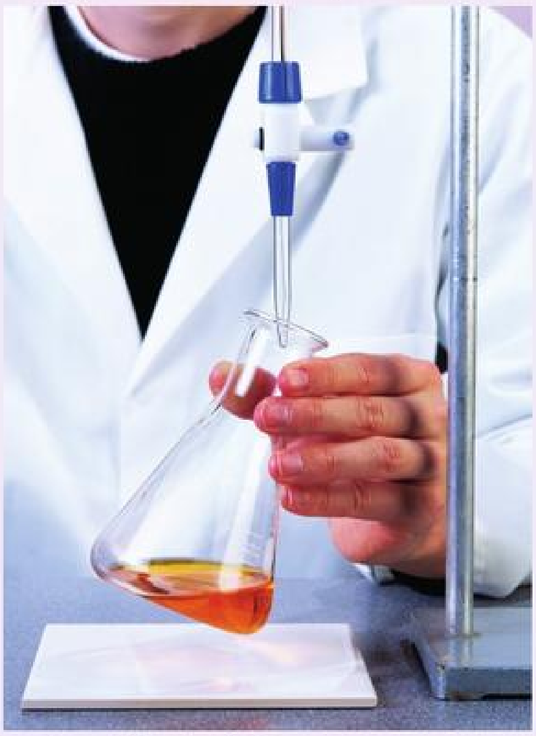
The equation for the crystallisation process is:

$$Na_2SO_4(aq) + 10H_2O(l) \rightarrow Na_2SO_4 \cdot 10H_2O(s)$$

EXTENSION WORK

Methyl orange actually changes colour between pH 3.1 and pH 4.4, so below pH 3.1 methyl orange is red and above pH 4.4 it is yellow.

Between these pHs methyl orange will be a mixture of red and yellow, that is, orange. This means that it is actually yellow in a solution with pH 7. This technique does not, therefore, give us the exact neutralisation point, but because the pH changes very rapidly near the endpoint of a titration, if we do the titration carefully we will be able to find the neutralisation point to the nearest drop of acid, which is very good!



▶ Figure 17.9 **Titration using methyl orange indicator**

MAKING SODIUM CHLORIDE CRYSTALS

$$NaOH(aq) + HCl(aq) \rightarrow NaCl(aq) + H_2O(l)$$

You would need to do the titration using dilute hydrochloric acid rather than dilute sulfuric acid. You would then follow the same procedure as for sodium sulfate.

HINT

Once you have re-mixed the acid and the alkali without the indicator, you could evaporate the sodium chloride solution to dryness rather than crystallising it slowly. Sodium chloride crystals don't contain any water of crystallisation, so you could save time by evaporating all the water in one go. The disadvantage is that you obtain either a powder or very tiny crystals. In the exam you will not necessarily know whether something contains water of crystallisation or not, so it is always better to concentrate the solution and let crystals form slowly.

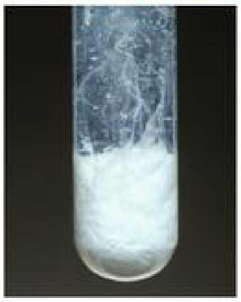
MAKING AMMONIUM SULFATE CRYSTALS

$$2NH_3(aq) + H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow (NH_4)_2SO_4(aq)$$

Using ammonia solution rather than sodium hydroxide solution makes no difference to the method. Although simple ammonium salts don't have water of crystallisation, you would still crystallise them slowly rather than evaporating them to dryness. Heating dry ammonium salts tends to break them up.

MAKING INSOLUBLE SALTS

PRECIPITATION REACTIONS



▲ Figure 17.10 A precipitate of silver chloride

The basic procedure is to mix solutions of two soluble salts to form an insoluble salt and a solution of a soluble one. For instance, to make insoluble silver chloride we would mix together solutions of silver nitrate and sodium chloride.

$$AgNO_3(aq) + NaCl(aq) \rightarrow AgCl(s) + NaNO_3(aq)$$

This is called a **precipitation reaction**. A **precipitate** is a solid that is formed by a chemical reaction involving liquids or gases. A precipitation reaction is simply a reaction that produces a precipitate. In this reaction, a white precipitate of silver chloride is produced. A white precipitate is formed because silver chloride won't dissolve in water, and so it is seen as a fine white solid. Figure 17.10 shows the results of this reaction.

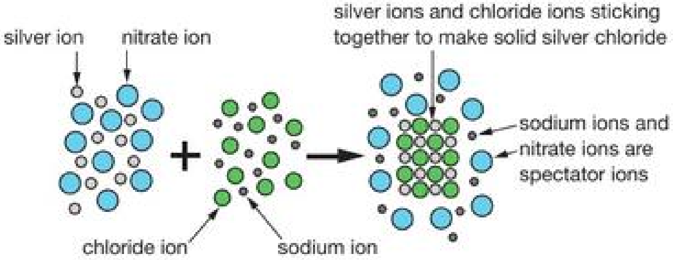
EXPLAINING WHAT'S HAPPENING

Silver nitrate solution contains silver ions and nitrate ions in solution. The positive and negative ions are attracted to each other, but the attractions aren't strong enough to make them stick together. Similarly, sodium chloride solution contains sodium ions and chloride ions; again, the attractions aren't strong enough for them to stick together.

When you mix the two solutions, the various ions meet each other. When silver ions meet chloride ions, the attractions are so strong that the ions clump together and form a solid. The sodium and nitrate ions remain in solution because they aren't sufficiently attracted to each other.

KEY POINT

The water molecules in the solutions have been left out to avoid cluttering the diagram.


silver ion
nitrate ion
silver ions and chloride ions sticking together to make solid silver chloride
sodium ions and nitrate ions are spectator ions
chloride ion
sodium ion

▶ Figure 17.11 **Precipitation of silver chloride**

EXTENSION WORK

The ionic equation for a precipitation reaction is much easier to write than the full equation. All that is happening is that the ions of the insoluble salt are coming together to form the solid. The ionic equation simply shows that happening.

To work out the ionic equation for the precipitation reaction:

- Write down the formula for the precipitate/insoluble salt on the right-hand side of the equation.
- Write down the formulae for the ions that have come together to produce it on the left-hand side.
- Don't forget the state symbols.

So, for the formation of silver chloride we have:

$$Ag^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq) \rightarrow AgCl(s)$$

or for the formation of barium sulfate:

$$Ba^{2+}(aq) + SO_4^{2-}(aq) \rightarrow BaSO_4(s)$$

You don't need to worry about the spectator ions because they aren't doing anything.

WHAT DO WE MIX TOGETHER TO MAKE INSOLUBLE SALTS?

Our procedure for making insoluble salts is to mix together two solutions containing soluble salts, but how do we know what to mix together? To determine this, two really useful facts are:

- all nitrates are soluble
- all sodium and potassium salts are soluble.

So all we have to do is mix the nitrate of the metal part of our insoluble salt with the sodium or potassium salt of the non-metal part.

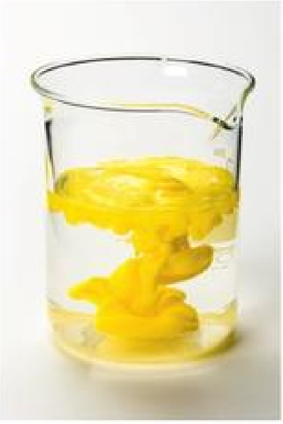
For instance, if we have to make lead(II) iodide:

- the metal part is lead, so we use a solution of lead(II) nitrate
- the non-metal part is iodide, so we use a solution of sodium iodide.

The equation for the reaction is:

$$Pb(NO_3)_2(aq) + 2NaI(aq) \rightarrow PbI_2(s) + 2NaNO_3(aq)$$

Figure 17.12 shows the yellow precipitate of lead(II) iodide.



▲ Figure 17.12 A precipitate of lead(II) iodide

EXTENSION WORK

The ionic equation is:

$Pb^{2+}(aq) + 2I^-(aq) \rightarrow PbI_2(s)$

TO MAKE BARIUM SULFATE

We can use barium nitrate solution and potassium sulfate solution:

$$Ba(NO_3)_2(aq) + K_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow BaSO_4(s) + 2KNO_3(aq)$$

The barium sulfate is a white precipitate.

There are other ways we could make barium sulfate. We could also use barium chloride, which is soluble in water. The sulfate part doesn't necessarily have to come from a salt; dilute sulfuric acid contains sulfate ions, so we can use that as well.

EXTENSION WORK

The ionic equation is:

$Ba^{2+}(aq) + SO_4^{2-}(aq) \rightarrow BaSO_4(s)$

Safety Note: Wear eye protection. The lead nitrate and sulfate are toxic and all skin contact must be avoided.

ACTIVITY 6

▼ PRACTICAL: PREPARING A PURE, DRY SAMPLE OF LEAD(II) SULFATE

The following procedure is used:

- Take 25 cm³ of a solution of lead(II) nitrate in a beaker and add 25 cm³ of a solution of sodium sulfate. The amounts don't really matter as we will get rid of any excess later.
- A white precipitate of lead(II) sulfate will form.
- The equation for the reaction is:

$$Pb(NO_3)_2(aq) + Na_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow PbSO_4(s) + 2NaNO_3(aq)$$

- The reaction mixture is filtered.
- A white residue of lead(II) sulfate is left in the filter paper and a colourless solution of sodium nitrate and any excess reactants (either lead(II) nitrate or sodium sulfate) passes through into the beaker or conical flask. The white residue on the filter paper is the compound we want, but it is contaminated with solutions of sodium nitrate and the reactant that was in excess.

- Wash the residue with *distilled water* by pouring a 20 cm^3 portion (the amount is not important) into the filter paper and allowing it to filter through the paper. This washes away everything apart from the insoluble lead(II) sulfate. This should be repeated several times to make sure that our sample is not contaminated with anything.
- We then transfer the filter paper and lead(II) sulfate to a warm oven to dry (the water evaporates).

We must wash the lead(II) sulfate with distilled (pure) water because tap water contains dissolved substances. If we wash with tap water and then transfer our sample to the oven, the water will evaporate, leaving behind the dissolved solids from the water, which will contaminate our salt.

SUMMARISING THE METHODS OF MAKING SALTS

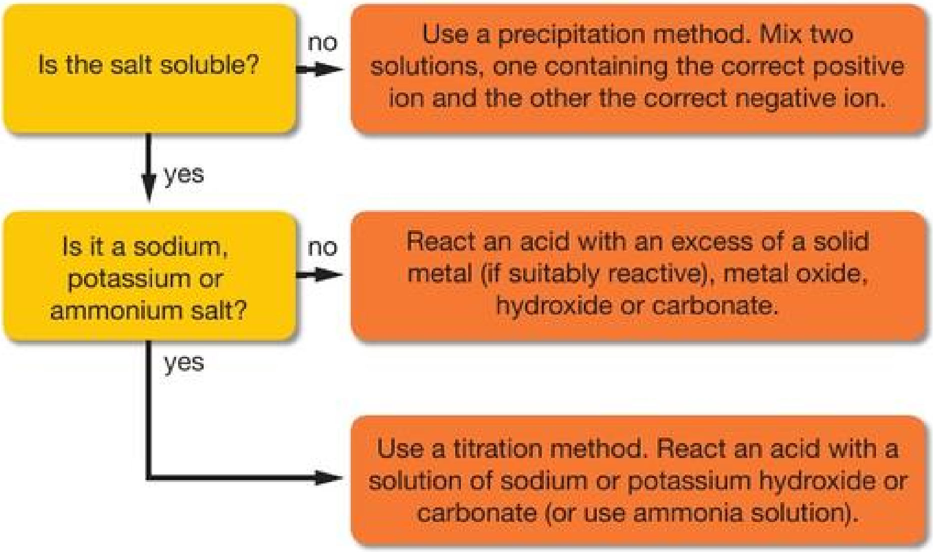

Is the salt soluble?
no
Use a precipitation method. Mix two solutions, one containing the correct positive ion and the other the correct negative ion.
yes
Is it a sodium, potassium or ammonium salt?
no
React an acid with an excess of a solid metal (if suitably reactive), metal oxide, hydroxide or carbonate.
yes
Use a titration method. React an acid with a solution of sodium or potassium hydroxide or carbonate (or use ammonia solution).

Figure 17.13 Methods of making salts

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

THEORIES OF ACIDS AND BASES

In Chapter 16, we met the idea that an acid is something that produces $H^+(aq)$ ions in solution and an alkali is something that produces $OH^-(aq)$ ions in solution. This is called the Arrhenius theory of acids and bases. For example, when hydrogen chloride gas is dissolved in water to form hydrochloric acid the molecules dissociate to form H^+ ions:

$$HCl(aq) \rightarrow H^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq)$$

A neutralisation reaction can be shown as H^+ from an acid reacting with OH^- from an alkali to form water.

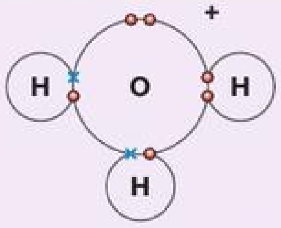
$$H^+(aq) + OH^-(aq) \rightarrow H_2O(l)$$

The problem with this definition of acids and bases is that it only applies to reactions that occur in aqueous solution and is not more widely applicable.

HINT

You do not have to remember the names of the theories.

EXTENSION WORK



In the dot-and-cross diagram for the H_3O^+ ion you can see that the covalent bond that formed between the H_2O and the H^+ is unusual in that both the shared electrons come from the O. This is called a dative covalent bond or a co-ordinate covalent bond. Once it has been formed, it is exactly the same as a 'normal' covalent bond.

KEY POINT

You have already met the ammonium (NH_4^+) ion, which is obtained when H^+ is added to ammonia (NH_3). The hydroxonium ion is the equivalent ion for water. You do not have to remember the name *hydroxonium ion*.

KEY POINT

To understand the reaction between ammonia and hydrochloric acid in relation to the Arrhenius theory we have to realise that ammonia reacts with water to form OH^- ions:

$$NH_3(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons NH_4^+(aq) + OH^-(aq)$$

and that hydrochloric acid dissociates to form H^+ ions:

$$HCl(aq) \rightarrow H^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq)$$

and that the overall reaction involves H^+ ions reacting with OH^- ions to form water:

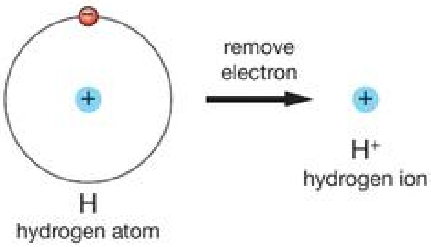
$$H^+(aq) + OH^-(aq) \rightarrow H_2O(l)$$

▲ Figure 17.17 Ammonia and hydrogen chloride gases also react to form ammonium chloride (the white smoke): $NH_3(g) + HCl(g) \rightleftharpoons NH_4^+Cl^-(s)$

There is a more general theory of acids and bases that can be used in more situations:

- *An acid is a proton (hydrogen ion) donor.*
- *A base is a proton (hydrogen ion) acceptor.*

This is called the Brønsted–Lowry theory.

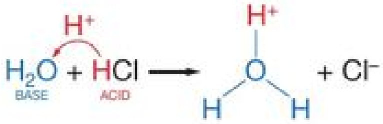


▲ Figure 17.14 A hydrogen ion (H^+) is a proton. If an electron is removed from a hydrogen atom, only a proton is left.

A better way of writing the reaction that occurs when hydrogen chloride dissolves in water is:

$$H_2O(l) + HCl(aq) \rightarrow H_3O^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq)$$

The HCl donates (gives) a proton (H^+) to an H_2O molecule. So, according to our definition, the HCl is an acid and H_2O is a base because it accepts the proton.



▲ Figure 17.15 HCl donates a proton and H_2O accepts it.

The H_3O^+(aq) ion is called the **hydroxonium ion**. This is the ion that we usually write simply as H^+(aq). You can think of it as a hydrogen ion joined to a water molecule. Cl^- has a negative charge because the H^+ left an electron behind when it transferred to the H_2O.

THE REACTION BETWEEN NH_3 AND HCl

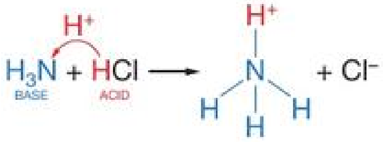
Dilute hydrochloric acid reacts with ammonia solution in a neutralisation reaction to form a salt, ammonium chloride:

$$NH_3(aq) + HCl(aq) \rightarrow NH_4Cl(aq)$$

Ammonium chloride is an ionic salt so we can show the ions that are present:

$$NH_3(aq) + HCl(aq) \rightarrow NH_4^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq)$$

We can see now that, in order to form ammonium chloride, the HCl must donate a proton (H^+) to the NH_3. The HCl is an acid because it donates a proton and the NH_3 is a base because it accepts the proton.



▲ Figure 17.16 HCl is an acid and donates a proton to NH_3 (a base).

MORE ACID-BASE REACTIONS

Acids in solution are acidic because they donate a proton (H^+) to water to form the hydroxonium ion. If we take a general acid (HA), this is what happens when it is put into water:

$$HA(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightarrow H_3O^+(aq) + A^-(aq)$$

HA donates a proton to H_2O, which acts as a base. For nitric acid this would be:

$$\underset{\text{acid}}{HNO_3(aq)} + \underset{\text{base}}{H_2O(l)} \rightarrow H_3O^+(aq) + NO_3^-(aq)$$

When bases, such as metal oxides (e.g. Na_2O), react with water they accept a proton from water, for example:

$$(Na^+)_2O^{2-}(s) + H_2O(l) \rightarrow 2Na^+(aq) + 2OH^-(aq)$$

The O^{2-} ion accepts a proton from the water. In this reaction the water acts as an acid because it donates a proton.

When sulfuric acid reacts with copper(II) oxide (CuO) we have:

$$Cu^{2+}O^{2-}(s) + H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow Cu^{2+}(aq) + SO_4^{2-}(aq) + H_2O(l)$$

H_2SO_4 is an acid, it donates protons to CuO, the base.

Ammonia is also a base:

$$\underset{\text{base}}{NH_3(aq)} + \underset{\text{acid}}{H_2O(l)} \rightleftharpoons NH_4^+(aq) + OH^-(aq)$$

The ammonia accepts a proton (H^+) from the water.

For reactions such as:

$$HCl(aq) + NaOH(aq) \rightarrow NaCl(aq) + H_2O(l)$$

What actually happens is that the H_3O^+ ion formed when the acid reacts with water donates a proton to the base, OH^-.

$$\underset{\text{acid}}{H_3O^+(aq)} + \underset{\text{base}}{OH^-(aq)} \rightarrow 2H_2O(l)$$

But for International GCSE purposes, we almost always use the simplified version:

$$H^+(aq) + OH^-(aq) \rightarrow H_2O(l)$$

HINT

Water can act as proton acceptor (base) or proton donor (acid) in reactions on this page. Do not get confused with what is happening here; remember, water is still neutral! We are simply understanding the reactions that occur in terms of proton transfer.

CHAPTER QUESTIONS

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 5

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 9

1 State which of the following will react with dilute sulfuric acid:

  a copper, copper(II) oxide, copper(II) hydroxide, copper(II) carbonate

  b In the case of each of the substances which does react, write the equation (including state symbols) for the reaction. All of these substances are insoluble solids.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 7

2 Read this description of the chemistry of metal **A** and some of its compounds, and then answer the questions.

Metal **A** has no reaction with dilute hydrochloric acid or dilute sulfuric acid. It forms a black oxide, **B**, which reacts with hot dilute sulfuric acid to give a blue solution, **C**. Metal **A** also forms a green compound, **D**, which reacts with dilute nitric acid to give a colourless gas, **E**, and another blue solution, **F**. The colourless gas, **E**, turned limewater milky.

- a State the names of **A**, **B**, **C**, **D**, **E** and **F**.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 9

- b Write equations for the reactions between:
  - i **B** and dilute sulfuric acid
  - ii **D** and dilute nitric acid.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 6

3 a Nickel, Ni, is a silvery metal just above hydrogen in the reactivity series. Nickel(II) compounds in solution are green.

- i Describe what you would see if you warmed some nickel with dilute sulfuric acid in a test-tube.
- ii State the name of any gas formed.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 9

- iii Write the equation for the reaction between nickel and dilute sulfuric acid.

b Nickel(II) carbonate is a green, insoluble powder. A spatula measure of nickel(II) carbonate is added to some dilute hydrochloric acid in a test-tube.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 6

- i Describe what you would observe in this experiment.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 9

- ii Write an equation for the reaction that occurs.

SKILLS EXTENSTION QUESTION 8

- iii Write an ionic equation for the reaction that occurs.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 6

4 Organise the following compounds into two lists: those that are soluble in water and those that are insoluble.

sodium chloride, lead(II) sulfate, zinc nitrate, calcium carbonate, iron(III) sulfate, lead(II) chloride, potassium sulfate, copper(II) carbonate, silver chloride, aluminium nitrate, barium sulfate, ammonium chloride, magnesium nitrate, calcium sulfate, sodium phosphate, nickel(II) carbonate, chromium(III) hydroxide, potassium dichromate(VI)

SKILLS EXECUTIVE FUNCTION

5 a Describe in detail the preparation of a pure, dry sample of copper(II) sulfate crystals, $CuSO_4{\cdot}5H_2O$, starting from copper(II) oxide.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 9

b Write equations for i the reaction producing copper(II) sulfate solution and ii the crystallisation reaction.

CHEMISTRY ONLY

SKILLS EXECUTIVE FUNCTION 7

6 a Read the following description of a method for making sodium sulfate crystals, $Na_2SO_4{\cdot}10H_2O$, and then explain the reasons for each of the underlined phrases or sentences.

25 cm³ of sodium carbonate solution was transferred to a conical flask using a pipette, and a few drops of methyl orange were added. Dilute sulfuric acid was run in from a burette until the solution became orange. The volume of acid added was noted. That same volume of dilute sulfuric acid was added to a fresh 25 cm³ sample of sodium carbonate solution in a clean flask, but without the methyl orange. The mixture was evaporated until a sample taken on the end of a glass rod crystallised on cooling in the air. The solution was left to cool. The crystals formed were separated from the remaining solution and dried.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

b Write equations for **i** the reaction producing sodium sulfate solution and **ii** the crystallisation reaction.

SKILLS REASONING, PROBLEM SOLVING

7 Suggest solutions that could be mixed together to make each of the following insoluble salts. In each case write the equation for the reaction you choose.

a Silver chloride
b Calcium carbonate
c Lead(II) sulfate
d Lead(II) chloride

SKILLS EXECUTIVE FUNCTION, PROBLEM SOLVING

8 Describe in detail the preparation of a pure, dry sample of barium carbonate. Write the equation for the reaction you use.

9 There are three main methods of making salts:

A Reacting an acid with an excess of a suitable solid.
B Using a titration.
C Using a precipitation reaction.

For each of the following salts, write down the letter of the appropriate method, and state the names of the substances you would react together. You should state whether they are used as solids or solutions. Write an equation for each reaction.

a Zinc sulfate
b Barium sulfate
c Potassium nitrate
d Copper(II) nitrate
e Lead(II) chromate(VI) (a bright yellow insoluble solid; chromate(VI) ions have the formula CrO_4^{2-}).

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

SKILLS REASONING

10 All of the following equations represent acid–base reactions. For each of the equations, state which substance is the acid and which the base.

a $CO_3^{2-}(s) + H_3O^+(aq) \rightarrow HCO_3^-(aq) + H_2O(l)$
b $MgO(s) + H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow MgSO_4(aq) + H_2O(l)$
c $HNO_3(aq) + NH_3(aq) \rightarrow NH_4^+(aq) + NO_3^-(aq)$
d $H_2SO_4(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightarrow HSO_4^-(aq) + H_3O^+(aq)$
e $NH_3(g) + HCl(g) \rightarrow NH_4Cl(s)$
f $CH_3COOH(aq) + NH_3(aq) \rightarrow CH_3COO^- (aq) + NH_4^+(aq)$

18 CHEMICAL TESTS

In this chapter we will look at how to identify substances using chemical tests.

▲ Figure 18.1 Although the reactions we learn here are useful for identifying substances in the lab and we are also introduced to some interesting chemistry, analysis of substances is now routinely carried out using sophisticated machines.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Describe tests for these gases:
  - hydrogen
  - oxygen
  - carbon dioxide
  - ammonia
  - chlorine
- Describe how to carry out a flame test
- Know the colours formed in flame tests for these cations:
  - Li^+ (red)
  - Na^+ (yellow)
  - K^+ (lilac)
  - Ca^{2+} (orange-red)
  - Cu^{2+} (blue-green)
- Describe tests for these cations:
  - NH_4^+ using sodium hydroxide solution and identifying the gas evolved
  - Cu^{2+}, Fe^{2+} and Fe^{3+} using sodium hydroxide solution
- Describe tests for these anions:
  - Cl^-, Br^- and I^- using acidified silver nitrate solution
  - SO_4^{2-} using acidified barium chloride solution
  - CO_3^{2-} using hydrochloric acid and identifying the gas evolved
- Describe a test for the presence of water using anhydrous copper(II) sulfate
- Describe a physical test to show whether or not a sample of water is pure

TESTING FOR GASES

HYDROGEN, H_2

THE TEST FOR HYDROGEN GAS

A lighted splint is held to the mouth of the tube. The hydrogen explodes with a squeaky pop.

The hydrogen combines explosively with oxygen in the air to make water.

$$2H_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightarrow 2H_2O(l)$$

OXYGEN, O_2

THE TEST FOR OXYGEN GAS

A glowing splint is put into the tube containing the gas. Oxygen relights a glowing splint.

CARBON DIOXIDE, CO_2

KEY POINT

If you keep bubbling the carbon dioxide through the limewater, the white precipitate will eventually disappear again. This is because the CO_2 reacts with the calcium carbonate to form calcium hydrogencarbonate, which is soluble in water:

$$CaCO_3(s) + H_2O(l) + CO_2(g) \rightarrow Ca(HCO_3)_2(aq)$$

THE TEST FOR CARBON DIOXIDE GAS

The carbon dioxide is bubbled through limewater. Carbon dioxide turns limewater milky/chalky/cloudy.

Limewater is calcium hydroxide solution. Carbon dioxide reacts with it to form a white precipitate of calcium carbonate.

$$Ca(OH)_2(aq) + CO_2(g) \rightarrow CaCO_3(s) + H_2O(l)$$

CHLORINE, Cl_2

THE TEST FOR CHLORINE GAS

A piece of damp litmus paper or universal indicator paper is put into the test-tube or held over its mouth. Chlorine is a green gas that bleaches (turns white) the damp litmus paper or universal indicator paper.

If blue litmus paper or universal indicator paper are used for this test, they go red first (the chlorine dissolves in the water to form an acidic solution) and then white.

Safety Note: Wear eye protection. Avoid inhaling or 'sniffing' chlorine or ammonia, especially if you have a breathing problem such as asthma.

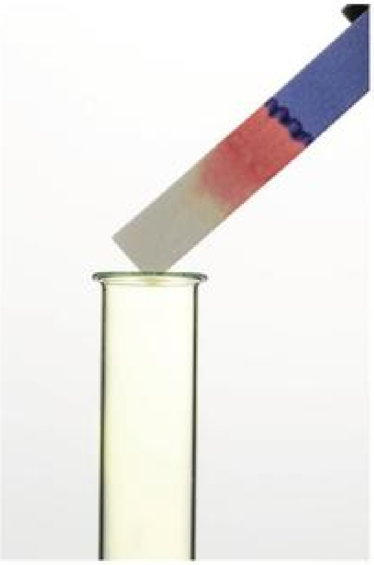


Figure 18.2 Chlorine bleaches damp litmus paper.

AMMONIA, NH_3

THE TEST FOR AMMONIA GAS

Hold a piece of damp universal indicator paper or red litmus paper at the mouth of the test-tube. Ammonia turns the universal indicator paper/litmus paper blue.

Ammonia is the only alkaline gas that you will meet at International GCSE.

TESTING FOR WATER

USING ANHYDROUS COPPER(II) SULFATE

Water turns white anhydrous copper(II) sulfate blue.

Anhydrous copper(II) sulfate lacks water of crystallisation and is white. Dropping water onto it replaces the water of crystallisation and turns it blue.

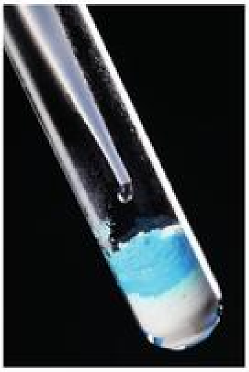
anhydrous copper sulfate + water → hydrated copper sulfate

$$\underset{\text{white}}{CuSO_4(s)} + 5H_2O(l) \rightarrow \underset{\text{blue}}{CuSO_4{\cdot}5H_2O(s)}$$

If you aren't sure about water of crystallisation, see Chapter 17.

This test works for anything that contains water, so would work with sodium chloride solution or sulfuric acid. It does *not* show that the water is pure.

Safety Note: Avid skin contact with the copper salts.



▲ Figure 18.3 Testing for water with anhydrous copper(II) sulfate.

PHYSICAL TEST TO SHOW THAT WATER IS PURE

You can find out whether a sample of water is pure by measuring the freezing (melting) point or boiling point. Pure water freezes at exactly 0 °C and boils at exactly 100 °C at 1 atmosphere pressure. If the water is impure, it will usually freeze at a lower temperature and boil at a higher temperature.

TESTING FOR IONS

All salts contain at least one cation (positive ion) and anion (negative ion). In this section we will learn how to test for these anions and cations. We do the tests for these anions and cations separately.

FLAME TESTS

A flame test is used to show the presence of certain metal ions (cations) in a compound. A platinum or nichrome wire is dipped into concentrated hydrochloric acid and then into the salt you want to test, so that some salt sticks on the end. The wire and the salt are then held just within a non-luminous (roaring) Bunsen burner flame and the colour observed.

KEY POINT

If a new piece of wire is not being used, it is usually cleaned by dipping it into concentrated hydrochloric acid and then holding it in a non-luminous Bunsen flame. This is repeated until the wire doesn't give any colour to the flame.

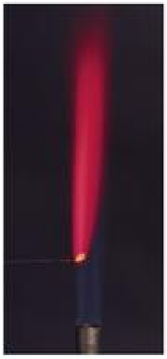
HINT

The colour for sodium is described as yellow in the specification, but you will also see it described as orange. Both are usually acceptable.

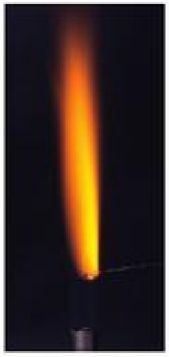
KEY POINT

Lithium isn't the only ion to give a red flame colour. Strontium gives a very similar colour. The only way to be sure is to compare the flame colour next to the flame colour of a known compound of lithium or strontium.

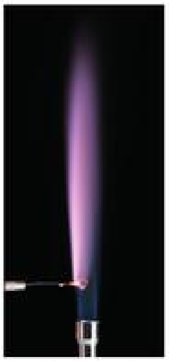
Safety Note: Wear eye protection and take great care with the concentrated acid. Do not get it on your skin and watch out for 'spitting' when heating it on the wire.



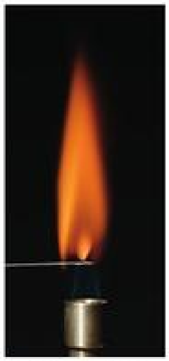
▲ Figure 18.4 Red shows lithium ions.



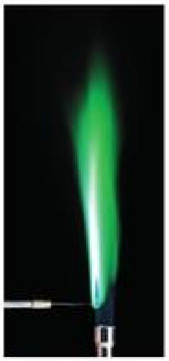
▲ Figure 18.5 Yellow shows the presence of sodium ions.



▲ Figure 18.6 Lilac shows potassium ions.



▲ Figure 18.7 Orange-red shows calcium ions.



▲ Figure 18.8 Blue-green shows the presence of copper(II) ions.

TESTING FOR CATIONS (POSITIVE IONS) USING SODIUM HYDROXIDE SOLUTION

Of the common hydroxides, only sodium, potassium and ammonium hydroxides dissolve in water to any extent. Most metal hydroxides are insoluble. That means that if you add sodium hydroxide solution to a solution containing the metal ions, you will get a precipitate of the metal hydroxide.

To carry out this test, you dissolve the salt in distilled (pure) water and put about 1 cm^3 in a test-tube. Add about the same volume of dilute sodium hydroxide solution. What you are looking for in most of these tests is the formation of a precipitate; the solution will go cloudy as a solid forms.

THE TEST FOR COPPER(II) IONS

HINT

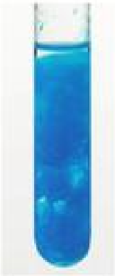
Ionic equations, which just show the things that actually react, can be a useful way of showing what is happening in a precipitation reaction.

Formation of a blue precipitate shows the presence of copper(II) ions. The precipitate is copper(II) hydroxide.

$$Cu^{2+}(aq) + 2OH^-(aq) \rightarrow Cu(OH)_2(s)$$

Any copper(II) salt in solution will react with sodium hydroxide solution in this way. For example, with copper(II) sulfate solution, the full equation is:

$$CuSO_4(aq) + 2NaOH(aq) \rightarrow Cu(OH)_2(s) + Na_2SO_4(aq)$$



▲ Figure 18.9 The blue precipitate of copper(II) hydroxide.

THE TEST FOR IRON(III) IONS

Safety Note: Wear eye protection for all these tests and avoid skin contact with the reactants and products.

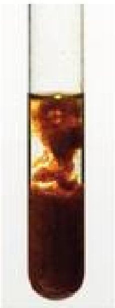
Formation of an orange-brown precipitate shows the presence of iron(III) ions (Fe^{3+}). The precipitate is iron(III) hydroxide.

$$Fe^{3+}(aq) + 3OH^-(aq) \rightarrow Fe(OH)_3(s)$$

Any iron(III) compound in solution will give this precipitate. An example of a full equation might be:

$$FeCl_3(aq) + 3NaOH(aq) \rightarrow Fe(OH)_3(s) + 3NaCl(aq)$$

Notice how much more complicated the full equations for these reactions are. They also hide what is going on. Use ionic equations for precipitation reactions wherever possible.



▲ Figure 18.10 The orange-brown precipitate of iron(III) hydroxide.

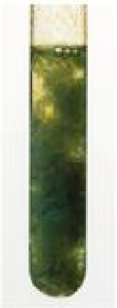
THE TEST FOR IRON(II) IONS

Formation of a green precipitate shows the presence of iron(II) ions (Fe^{2+}). The precipitate is iron(II) hydroxide.

$$Fe^{2+}(aq) + 2OH^-(aq) \rightarrow Fe(OH)_2(s)$$

This could be the result of reacting, say, iron(II) sulfate solution with sodium hydroxide solution.

$$FeSO_4(aq) + 2NaOH(aq) \rightarrow Fe(OH)_2(s) + Na_2SO_4(aq)$$



▲ Figure 18.11 The green precipitate of iron(II) hydroxide.

Safety Note: Wear eye protection for all these tests and avoid skin contact with the reactants and products.

KEY POINT

The green precipitate darkens on standing and turns orange-brown around the top of the tube. This is due to the iron(II) hydroxide being oxidised to iron(III) hydroxide by the air.

KEY POINT

You must carry out these three tests on a solution of the salt you are testing. If you tested the solid you would not be able to see whether a precipitate had been formed because there is already solid present.

THE TEST FOR AMMONIUM IONS

This test shows the presence of an ammonium salt. Sodium hydroxide solution reacts with ammonium salts (either solid or in solution) to produce ammonia gas. In the cold, there is just enough ammonia gas produced for you to be able to smell it. If you warm it, you can test the gas coming off with a piece of damp red litmus paper or universal indicator paper. Ammonia is alkaline and turns the litmus paper/universal indicator blue. The ionic equation is:

$$NH_4^+(aq) + OH^-(aq) \rightarrow NH_3(g) + H_2O(l)$$

This test works on a sample of a solid or a solution as you are not looking for a precipitate.

A full equation for adding sodium hydroxide solution to solid ammonium chloride is:

$$NH_4Cl(s) + NaOH(aq) \rightarrow NaCl(aq) + NH_3(g) + H_2O(l)$$

KEY POINT

Recognising gases by smelling them has to be done with great care. In this case, there is usually so little ammonia gas present in the cold that it is safe to smell if you take the normal precautions. You shouldn't, however, make any attempt to smell the mixture when it is warm.
Safety Note: Do not attempt to smell the ammonia gas if you have a breathing problem such as asthma.

Table 18.1 A summary of the reactions of positive ions with sodium hydroxide solution

Ion	Result of adding NaOH(aq)	Name of precipitate formed	Formula of precipitate
Cu^{2+}	blue precipitate	copper(II) hydroxide	$Cu(OH)_2$
Fe^{2+}	green precipitate	iron(II) hydroxide	$Fe(OH)_2$
Fe^{3+}	orange-brown precipitate	iron(III) hydroxide	$Fe(OH)_3$
NH_4^+	ammonia gas produced	no precipitate	

TESTING FOR CARBONATES (CO_3^{2-})

Add a little dilute hydrochloric acid to your sample of salt and look for fizzing/bubbles of gas. Fizzing indicates that a gas is given off. You can test the gas by bubbling it through limewater to show that it is carbon dioxide.

Most carbonates are insoluble in water and so you will usually be doing this test on a sample of a solid. Soluble carbonates are sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate and ammonium carbonate, and the test also works on solutions of these.

EXTENSION WORK

The ionic equation shows any carbonate reacting with any acid.

$$CO_3^{2-}(s) + 2H^+(aq) \rightarrow CO_2(g) + H_2O(l)$$

For example, using zinc carbonate and dilute nitric acid:

$$ZnCO_3(s) + 2HNO_3(aq) \rightarrow Zn(NO_3)_2(aq) + CO_2(g) + H_2O(l)$$

HINT

You can use any acid to do this test, but you have to be careful, especially with sulfuric acid, as some acid–carbonate combinations can produce an insoluble salt that coats the solid carbonate and stops the reaction. The test works well with dilute hydrochloric acid or dilute nitric acid.

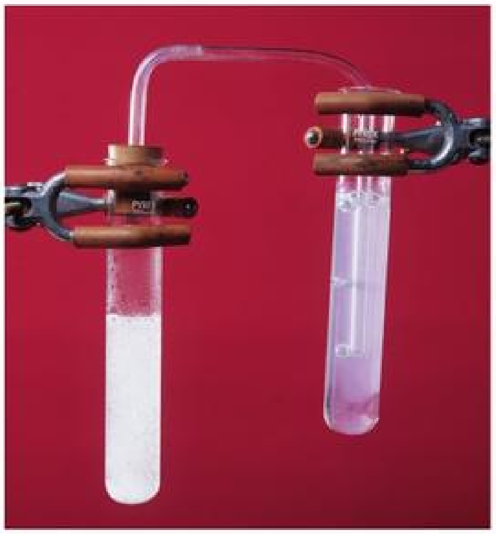


Figure 18.12 We can test to see if carbon dioxide is produced by bubbling the gas through limewater (in the tube on the right) and looking to see whether the limewater goes cloudy/milky (white precipitate of calcium carbonate formed).

Safety Note: Wear eye protection for all these tests and avoid skin contact with the reactants and products.

TESTING FOR SULFATES (SO_4^{2-})

Make a solution of your suspected sulfate in distilled (pure) water, add some *dilute hydrochloric acid* and then add some *barium chloride solution*. A sulfate will produce a white precipitate of barium sulfate.

$$Ba^{2+}(aq) + SO_4^{2-}(aq) \rightarrow BaSO_4(s)$$

You add acid to the solution to react with and remove other anions which might also produce white precipitates when you add the barium chloride solution. For example, if you didn't add acid, you would also obtain a white precipitate if there were carbonate ions present. This is because barium carbonate is also white and insoluble. The acid reacts with the carbonate ions and removes them. It is important to remember that the acid must be added *before* the barium chloride solution.

You must never acidify the solution with sulfuric acid because sulfuric acid contains sulfate ions. If you add those, you are bound to get a precipitate of barium sulfate because you have added sulfate ions.

KEY POINT

You could also use nitric acid and barium nitrate solution in the same way.

TESTING FOR CHLORIDES (Cl^-), BROMIDES (Br^-) AND IODIDES (I^-)

Make a solution of your suspected chloride, bromide or iodide and add enough *dilute nitric acid* to make it acidic. Then add some *silver nitrate solution*.

A *white* precipitate (of silver chloride) shows the presence of chloride ions:

$$Ag^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq) \rightarrow AgCl(s)$$

A *cream* precipitate (of silver bromide) shows the presence of bromide ions:

$$Ag^+(aq) + Br^-(aq) \rightarrow AgBr(s)$$

A *yellow* precipitate (of silver iodide) shows the presence of iodide ions:

$$Ag^+(aq) + I^-(aq) \rightarrow AgI(s)$$

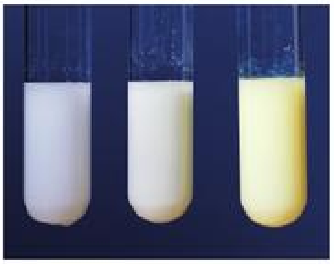


Figure 18.13 Precipitates of silver chloride, silver bromide and silver iodide

Safety Note: Wear eye protection for all these tests and avoid skin contact with the reactants and products.

KEY POINT

All of these precipitates tend to discolour to greys and pale purples on exposure to light.

KEY POINT

The 1– ions formed by the halogens (Group 7) are collectively called *halide ions*. Chloride, bromide and iodide ions are all halide ions.

The acid is added to react with and remove other anions which might also produce precipitates with silver nitrate solution, for example carbonate and hydroxide ions. You must not use hydrochloric acid (or hydrobromic acid or hydroiodic acid) as you will be adding halide ions and you are certain to obtain a precipitate.

Table 18.2 A summary of the tests for negative ions (anions)

Ion	Test	Positive result	Product of reaction
CO_3^{2-}	add dilute hydrochloric acid then bubble any gas produced through limewater	fizzing, limewater goes cloudy (white precipitate)	CO_2 $CaCO_3$ (with limewater)
SO_4^{2-}	add dilute hydrochloric acid followed by barium chloride solution	white precipitate	$BaSO_4$
Cl^-	add dilute nitric acid followed by silver nitrate solution	white precipitate	AgCl
Br^-	add dilute nitric acid followed by silver nitrate solution	cream precipitate	AgBr
I^-	add dilute nitric acid followed by silver nitrate solution	yellow precipitate	AgI

CHAPTER QUESTIONS

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

1 Name the gas being described in each of the following cases.
  - a A green gas that bleaches damp litmus paper.
  - b A gas that dissolves readily in water to produce a solution with a pH of about 11.
  - c A gas that produces a white precipitate with limewater.
  - d A gas that pops when a lighted splint is placed in it.
  - e A gas that relights a glowing splint.

SKILLS EXECUTIVE FUNCTION

2 Describe in detail how you would carry out the following tests. In each case state whether you would carry out the test on the solid or a solution, and describe what you would expect to see happen.
  - a A flame test for lithium ions in lithium chloride.
  - b A test for ammonium ions in ammonium sulfate.
  - c A test for sulfate ions in ammonium sulfate.
  - d A test for carbonate ions in calcium carbonate.
  - e A test for iodide ions in potassium iodide.

3 **A** is an orange solid, which dissolves in water to give an orange solution. When sodium hydroxide solution is added to a solution of **A**, an orange-brown precipitate, **B**, is formed. Adding dilute nitric acid and silver nitrate solution to a solution of **A** gives a white precipitate, **C**.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

  - a State the names of **A**, **B** and **C**.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

  - b Write equations (full or ionic) for the reactions producing **B** and **C**.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING, CRITICAL THINKING

4 **D** is a green crystalline solid that dissolves in water to give a very pale green solution. Addition of sodium hydroxide solution to a solution of **D** produces a green precipitate, **E**, which turns orange-brown around the top after standing in air. Addition of dilute hydrochloric acid and barium chloride solution to a solution of **D** gives a white precipitate, **F**.

a State the names of **D**, **E** and **F**.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

b Write equations (full or ionic) for the reactions producing **E** and **F**.

5 **G** is a colourless crystalline solid which reacts with dilute nitric acid to give a colourless solution, **H**, and a colourless, odourless gas, **I**, which turns limewater milky. **G** has a lilac flame colour.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

a State the names of **G**, **H** and **I**.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

b Write an equation (full or ionic) for the reaction between **G** and dilute nitric acid.

6 **J** is a colourless solid. When it is warmed with sodium hydroxide solution it produces a gas, **K**, which turns damp universal indicator paper blue. When nitric acid, followed by silver nitrate solution, is added to a solution of **J**, a cream precipitate of **L** is formed.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

a State the names of **J**, **K** and **L**.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

b Write an ionic equation for the formation of the cream precipitate.

SKILLS EXECUTVE FUNCTION

7 A student has found that her sample of potassium nitrate is contaminated with small amounts of a green solid. She picks out a small piece of the green solid and finds that it is insoluble in water.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

a Describe how you would make a pure sample of potassium nitrate from the impure mixture.

b The student believes that the green solid could be copper(II) carbonate. Describe a series of tests that the student could use to confirm this.

8 A student finds a bottle containing a colourless liquid in the laboratory.

a Describe a test to show that the bottle contains water.

b Describe a test to show whether it is pure water.

SKILLS EXECUTIVE FUNCTION, REASONING

c The student carried out the test in b and it showed that the water was not pure. He then carried out some more tests to try to identify the solution. The following results were obtained:

Test	Result
add sodium hydroxide solution	no visible reaction but the test-tube became warm
add dilute hydrochloric acid	no reaction
add dilute hydrochloric acid followed by barium chloride solution	no reaction
add nitric acid followed by silver nitrate solution	white precipitate

Explain what could be present in the bottle and how the student could confirm this.

UNIT QUESTIONS

You may need to refer to the Periodic Table on page 320.

SKILLS REASONING 8

1 Lithium, sodium and potassium are three elements in Group 1 of the Periodic Table. All these elements are stored under oil so that they cannot react with air and water.

a Explain in terms of the structure of the atoms why these three elements are all placed in Group 1 of the Periodic Table. **(1)**

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 5

b State the name of the product obtained when potassium reacts with air. **(1)**

c Only three of the statements about the reaction of lithium with water given below are true. Put a cross next to each of the correct statements. **(3)**

The water turns blue ☐
The piece of lithium floats ☐
The lithium burns with a lilac flame ☐
Hydrogen gas is formed ☐
The lithium explodes ☐
The final solution is alkaline ☐
Lithium reacts more violently than sodium ☐

d Some data about the physical properties of lithium, sodium and potassium are shown in the table.

	Melting point/°C	Boiling point/°C	Density/g/cm^3
Li	181	1342	0.53
Na	98	883	0.97
K	63	760	0.86

Caesium is another element in Group 1 of the Periodic Table.

7

i Which of the following are likely to be properties of caesium? Put crosses in two boxes. **(2)**

It forms a 1+ ion in compounds ☐
It has a melting point of 60 °C ☐
It is a non-metal ☐
It reacts with water and air ☐
It is an alkali ☐

SKILLS REASONING 8

ii Explain why the data in the table cannot be used to predict whether caesium has a higher or lower density than potassium. **(2)**

(Total 9 marks)

SKILLS REASONING 6

2 A student carried out some reactions between solutions of chlorine, bromine and iodine, and solutions of potassium halides. Some of their results are shown in the table:

	Potassium chloride solution	Potassium bromide solution	Potassium iodide solution
Chlorine solution	▨	orange solution formed	
Bromine solution		▨	
Iodine solution	no reaction	no reaction	▨

a Explain why the student did not carry out the experiments shaded in dark grey in the table. **(2)**

SKILLS INTERPRETATION

b Complete the table. **(3)**

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 7

c Write a word equation for the reaction between chlorine and potassium bromide. **(1)**

8

d Complete and balance the ionic equation for the reaction between chlorine and potassium bromide solutions: **(3)**

$Cl_2(aq) + Br^-(aq) \rightarrow$

SKILLS REASONING 9

e Explain in terms of electrons why the reaction between chlorine and potassium bromide solution is described as a redox reaction. **(3)**

f Chlorine can be prepared in the laboratory by the reaction between concentrated hydrochloric acid and potassium manganate(VII). The equation for the reaction is:

$2KMnO_4 + 16HCl \rightarrow 2KCl + 2MnCl_2 + 8H_2O + ...Cl_2$

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 8

i The equation is not balanced. Give the number that should be put in front of Cl_2 in order to balance it. **(1)**

SKILLS EXECUTIVE FUNCTION 5

ii Describe a test for chlorine gas. **(2)**

Test:

Positive result:

iii When chlorine dissolves in water some chloride ions are formed. Describe a chemical test to show that a solution contains chloride ions. **(3)**

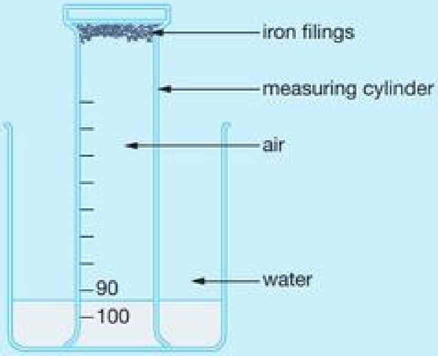
Test:

Positive result: **(Total 18 marks)**

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

3 a State the name of the most common gas in the air. **(1)**

b A student carries out an experiment to measure the percentage of oxygen in the air. He used the following apparatus:



He carried out the following procedure:

- Put some damp iron filings at the bottom of a 100 cm^3 measuring cylinder.
- Invert the measuring cylinder in a beaker of water.
- Take the initial reading of the level of water in the measuring cylinder.
- Take a reading of the level of water in the measuring cylinder every day for 1 week.

The student's results were:

initial reading on measuring cylinder/cm^3	94
reading on measuring cylinder after 1 day/cm^3	85
reading on measuring cylinder after 2 days/cm^3	80
reading on measuring cylinder after 3 days/cm^3	77
reading on measuring cylinder after 4 days/cm^3	76
reading on measuring cylinder after 5 days/cm^3	75
reading on measuring cylinder after 6 days/cm^3	75
reading on measuring cylinder after 7 days/cm^3	75

SKILLS REASONING 5

i Explain why the water level rises. **(2)**

6

ii Explain why the reading on the measuring cylinder eventually remains constant. **(1)**

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

iii Give the name of the iron compound that is formed in this experiment. **(1)**

SKILLS REASONING

iv The student trapped the gas in the tube and put a lighted splint into it. Explain why the splint goes out. **(2)**

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

v Using the results in the table, calculate the percentage oxygen present in the air in the measuring cylinder after 1 day. **(4)**

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 7

vi The student decided that 1 week is too long to wait for results so suggested using a more reactive metal such as calcium or lithium in this experiment. Explain one reason, other than that it might be too dangerous, why the experiment will not work with these metals. **(2)**

SKILLS EXECUTIVE FUNCTION 5

vii Suggest one change that the student could make to the experiment so he does not have to wait so long for the results. **(1)**

c Sulfur reacts with oxygen. A teacher burns a piece of sulfur in a gas jar of oxygen.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

i State the colour of the flame. **(1)**

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 9

ii Write a balanced equation for the reaction that occurs. **(1)**

SKILLS REASONING 6

iii A few drops of litmus solution are put into the gas jar at the end of the experiment. State and explain what colour will be seen. **(2)**

d Sodium reacts with oxygen to form sodium oxide.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 9

i Write a chemical equation for this reaction. **(2)**

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 5

ii When sodium oxide reacts with water an alkaline solution is formed. State the name of the ion responsible for making the solution alkaline. **(1)**

(Total 21 marks)

SKILLS DECISION MAKING

4 This question is about copper(II) sulfate solution.

a Describe a procedure to make a solution of copper(II) sulfate starting from copper(II) oxide. **(3)**

b Describe a chemical test that can be used to show that the solution contains sulfate ions. **(2)**

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

c A student added some sodium hydroxide solution to the copper(II) sulfate solution. State the name of the blue precipitate formed. **(1)**

d A student carried out an experiment to investigate displacement reactions of three different metals with copper(II) sulfate solution. She followed this method:

- Put some copper(II) sulfate solution into a polystyrene cup.
- Measure the initial temperature.
- Add some metal.
- Stir the solution.
- Record the maximum temperature.

SKILLS EXECUTIVE FUNCTION

i The student uses the same amount in moles of each metal in the experiments. State two other variables the student should keep the same in this experiment to allow her to be able to compare the different metals. **(2)**

SKILLS ANALYSIS

ii The student recorded the following data.

Metal	Temperature change/°C
zinc	15
silver	0
nickel	7

Arrange the four metals, zinc, silver, copper and nickel, in order of reactivity, starting with the most reactive. **(1)**

SKILLS REASONING

iii The student did not carry out the experiment with copper and copper(II) sulfate. Predict, giving a reason, what the temperature rise would be for this experiment. **(2)**

iv The student carried out the experiment using 3.25 g of zinc (0.05 mol). She then used the same amount in moles of nickel and silver. Another student decided to use the same mass (3.25 g) of each metal. The results of the two students were very similar. Suggest reasons for this. **(3)**

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

v The ionic equation for the reaction between copper(II) sulfate solution and nickel is:

$$Ni(s) + Cu^{2+}(aq) \rightarrow Ni^{2+}(aq) + Cu(s)$$

Use the ionic equation to explain whether nickel is oxidised or reduced in this reaction. **(2)**

SKILLS EXECUTIVE FUNCTION

e The student wants to make some anhydrous copper(II) sulfate. Describe how she could do this starting with copper(II) sulfate solution. **(2)**

f The student carried out a flame test on the anhydrous copper(II) sulfate.

i Describe how to carry out a flame test. **(2)**

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

ii State the colour of the flame produced when the student carried out a flame test on copper(II) sulfate. **(1)**

(Total 21 marks)

CHEMISTRY ONLY

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

5 Molybdenite is an ore of molybdenum. The mineral it contains is MoS_2.

The following set of reactions are used to produce pure molybdenum(VI) oxide (MoO_3), from which molybdenum metal can be obtained.

The ore is first roasted in air to form MoO_3. The equation for this reaction is:

$$2MoS_2(s) + 7O_2(g) \rightarrow 2MoO_3(s) + 4SO_2(g) \; . . . \; 1$$

The crude compound is now heated with concentrated ammonia solution:

$$MoO_3(s) + 2NH_3(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightarrow (NH_4)_2MoO_4(aq) \; . . . \; 2$$

Ammonium molybdate is crystallised from the solution and when these crystals are heated pure MoO_3 is formed:

$$(NH_4)_2MoO_4(s) \rightarrow MoO_3(s) + H_2O(l) + 2NH_3(g) \; . . . \; 3$$

The molybdenum can be extracted from MoO_3 by heating with carbon.

a Explain the meaning of the word *ore*. **(1)**

b Put ticks in the appropriate boxes in the table to classify each of the reactions 1 and 3 above. Each reaction type may occur once, twice or not at all. **(2)**

	Thermal decomposition	Neutralisation	Redox
Reaction 1			
Reaction 3			

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

c Molybdenum(VI) oxide can be heated with carbon to form molybdenum metal. The other product of the reaction is carbon monoxide. Write a chemical equation for this reaction. **(2)**

SKILLS REASONING

d Explain which substance is the *reducing agent* when molybdenum(VI) oxide is heated with carbon. **(2)**

e Explain what the reaction in c suggests about the position of molybdenum in the reactivity series. **(2)**

f Molybdenum can also be extracted from MoO_3 by heating with aluminium. Use your knowledge of the reactivity series to give a reason why this method is more expensive than heating with carbon. **(2)**

SKILLS EXECUTIVE FUNCTION

g Describe a chemical test you could use to show that the product of reaction 2 contains ammonium ions. **(2)**

(Total 13 marks)

6 This question is about lead(II) iodide. This is a bright yellow substance that is insoluble in water. In the past it was used as a pigment, but due to its toxicity this no longer happens. It is now used in the development of new types of solar cell.

a Describe a method a student could use to produce a pure, dry sample of lead(II) iodide. **(5)**

SKILLS EXECUTIVE FUNCTION

b The student adds nitric acid followed by silver nitrate solution to their sample of lead(II) iodide. The student stated that the formation of a yellow precipitate showed that it contained iodide ions. Explain why the student's conclusion is incorrect. **(2)**

(Total 7 marks)

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

7 This question is about hydrogen chloride and hydrochloric acid.

SKILLS INTERPRETATION

a Hydrochloric acid is made when hydrogen chloride dissolves in water. Draw a dot-and-cross diagram for hydrogen chloride. **(2)**

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

b When hydrogen chloride dissolves in water an acid–base reaction occurs. The equation for this reaction is:

$$HCl(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightarrow Cl^-(aq) + H_3O^+(aq)$$

Explain why this is classified as an acid–base reaction and identify the acid and the base. **(3)**

CHEMISTRY ONLY

SKILLS INTERPRETATION

c Hydrochloric acid can be used to make chloride salts. Complete the table by stating what you would add to dilute hydrochloric acid to make each of the salts. In each case, state whether you would add it as a solid or in solution and state any other products formed. The first one has been done for you. **(4)**

Reagent	Solid or solution?		Salt	Other product
magnesium	solid	hydrochloric acid	magnesium chloride	hydrogen
copper(II) oxide		hydrochloric acid	copper(II) chloride	
	solution	hydrochloric acid	sodium chloride	water
	solution	hydrochloric acid	silver chloride	nitric acid

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

d A student wants to show that an unknown solution she has been given contains chloride ions. She puts a small amount of the solution in a test-tube and adds dilute nitric acid followed by silver nitrate solution.

i Describe what would be seen if the solution contains chloride ions. **(1)**

ii Explain why hydrochloric acid cannot be added instead of nitric acid. **(2)**

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

e Write an equation, including state symbols, for the reaction that occurs when hydrochloric acid is added to solid copper(II) carbonate. **(3)**

(Total 15 marks)

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

8 This question is about chemical tests.

Samples of a very pale green solution, **X**, were tested as follows:

Test	Observation
A sample of **X** was acidified with dilute nitric acid and silver nitrate solution was added	A white precipitate (**A**) was formed
A small amount of sodium hydroxide solution was added to a sample of solution **X**	A dark green precipitate (**B**) was formed
Chlorine was bubbled through a sample of **X**	The pale green solution turned yellow (solution **C**)
A small amount of sodium hydroxide solution was added to solution **C**	An orange-brown precipitate (**D**) was formed

a Use the results from the first two tests to identify **X**. **(2)**

b State the name and formula of **B**. **(2)**

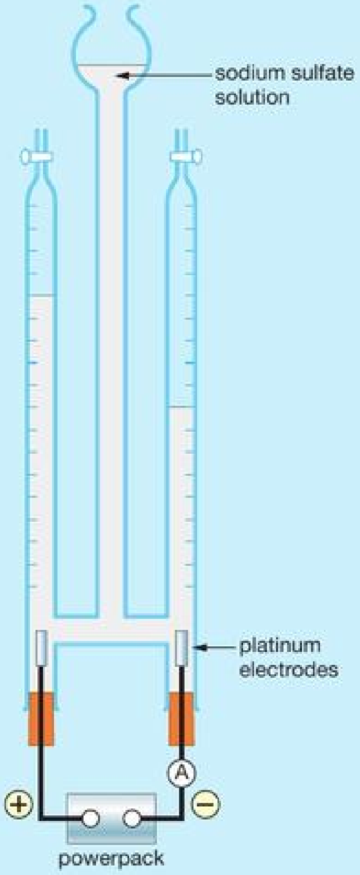
c State the name and formula of **D**. **(2)**

d Explain what type of reaction occurred when chlorine was bubbled through **X**. **(2)**

(Total 8 marks)

CHEMISTRY ONLY

9



This question is about sodium sulfate.

a State the formula of sodium sulfate. **(1)**

SKILLS EXECUTIVE FUNCTION

b Describe a practical method by which a student could make a solution of sodium sulfate starting from an acid and an alkali. You should state the names of any pieces of apparatus used and of all chemicals required. **(5)**

c A student used the apparatus shown in the diagram to investigate the effect of changing the time of electrolysis on the volume of oxygen produced when the solution of sodium sulfate was electrolysed.

The student followed this method:

- Set the current to be 0.50 A.
- Record the initial volume of gas in the left-hand arm of the apparatus.
- Leave the current running for 2 minutes and record the final volume of gas in the left-hand arm of the apparatus.
- Repeat for times of 4 minutes, 6 minutes, 8 minutes and 10 minutes.

His results are shown in the table.

Time/min	2	4	6	8	10
Volume of gas/cm^3	3.6	7.2	9.0	14.4	18.0

SKILLS INTERPRETATION 7

i Plot these results on a piece of graph paper and draw a straight line of best fit. **(3)**

SKILLS ANALYSIS, REASONING 4

ii The student suggested that one of the points is anomalous. Identify the anomalous point and suggest the volume of gas that should have been obtained for that time. **(2)**

SKILLS ANALYSIS 5

iii State the relationship between the volume of gas produced and the time of electrolysis. **(2)**

iv Describe a chemical test for the gas produced at the cathode **(2)**

Test:

Positive result:

(Total 15 marks)

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

ENERGETICS 207
RATES OF REACTION 227
REVERSIBLE REACTIONS AND EQUILIBRIA 240

UNIT 3
PHYSICAL CHEMISTRY

In a world where the population has more than trebled in the last 100 years, fighting against hunger is an extremely important challenge. At the beginning of the 20th century scientists developed industrial processes to make artificial fertilisers that can be used to increase crop yields. In order to develop these processes, chemists and chemical engineers from around the world have had to understand the principles of energy changes, rates of reaction and equilibrium. The world's resources are limited and it is vital that these processes are as efficient and environmentally friendly as possible. This is also the work of scientists.

▲ Figure 19.1 Burning fuel produces enough energy to launch a rocket.

19 ENERGETICS

Some chemical reactions produce heat. Others need to be heated constantly to make them occur at all. This chapter explores some examples of both kinds of reaction and examines how energy changes during reactions can be measured by experiments or calculated using bond energies.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Know that chemical reactions in which heat energy is given out are described as exothermic, and those in which heat energy is taken in are described as endothermic
- Describe simple calorimetry experiments for reactions such as combustion, displacement, dissolving and neutralisation
- Calculate the heat energy change from a measured temperature change using the expression $Q = mc\Delta T$
- Calculate the molar enthalpy change (ΔH) from the heat energy change, Q
- Practical: Investigate the temperature changes accompanying some of the following types of change:
  - salts dissolving in water
  - neutralisation reactions
  - displacement reactions
  - combustion reactions

CHEMISTRY ONLY

- Draw and explain energy level diagrams to represent exothermic and endothermic reactions.
- Know that bond breaking is an endothermic process and that bond making is an exothermic process.
- Use bond energies to calculate the enthalpy change during a chemical reaction.

EXOTHERMIC REACTIONS

Some chemical reactions give out energy in the form of heat. A reaction that *gives out heat to the surroundings* is said to be **exothermic**. If you are holding a test-tube in which an exothermic reaction is occurring, you will notice that the test-tube *gets warmer*.

An example of an exothermic reaction is adding water to calcium oxide. If you add water to solid calcium oxide, the heat produced is enough to boil the water and produce steam. Calcium hydroxide is produced.

$$CaO(s) + H_2O(l) \rightarrow Ca(OH)_2(s)$$

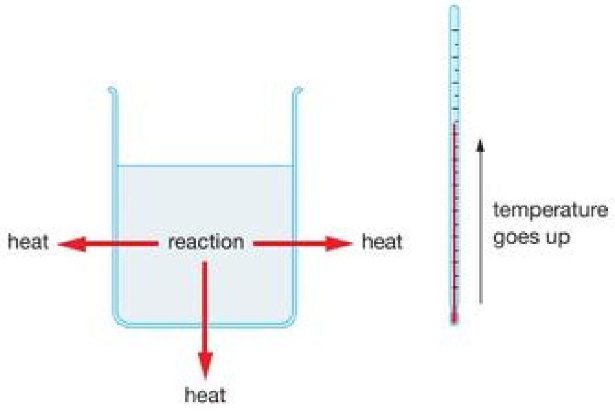
In an *exothermic* reaction, *the products of the reaction have less (chemical) energy than the reactants*. In the reaction, *chemical energy* (stored in the bonds of chemicals) *is converted to heat energy*, which is released to the surroundings. The temperature of the reaction mixture and its surroundings *goes up*.

▲ Figure 19.2 Calcium oxide reacting with water.

DID YOU KNOW?

Calcium oxide is known as **quicklime**. Adding water to it is described as *slaking* it. The calcium hydroxide produced is known as **slaked lime**.

Safety Note: It is less hazardous to use a lump of calcium oxide, rather than powered calcium oxide



▲ Figure 19.3 In an exothermic reaction, chemical energy is converted to heat energy. Heat is released so the temperature goes up.

You will come across lots of exothermic reactions in this course. Some examples are given below.

COMBUSTION REACTIONS

▲ Figure 19.4 The burning of hydrogen is used in oxy-hydrogen cutting equipment underwater.

Any reaction that produces a flame is exothermic. Burning things produces heat energy.

For instance, hydrogen burns in oxygen, producing water and lots of heat:

$$2H_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightarrow 2H_2O(l)$$

Apart from burning, other exothermic changes include:

- the reactions of metals with acids
- neutralisation reactions
- displacement reactions.

THE REACTIONS OF METALS WITH ACIDS

REMINDER

This reaction is described in detail in Chapter 14 (pages 152–153).

When magnesium reacts with dilute sulfuric acid, for example, the mixture gets very warm:

$$Mg(s) + H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow MgSO_4(aq) + H_2(g)$$

NEUTRALISATION REACTIONS

REMINDER

You can read about this reaction in Chapter 16 (page 170). We will investigate how much heat energy is released in a typical neutralisation reaction later in this chapter (pages 217–219).

About the only interesting thing that you can observe happening when sodium hydroxide solution reacts with dilute hydrochloric acid is that the temperature rises:

$$NaOH(aq) + HCl(aq) \rightarrow NaCl(aq) + H_2O(l)$$

DISPLACEMENT REACTIONS

The thermite reaction between powdered aluminium and iron(III) oxide is a displacement (competition) reaction. This reaction releases a large amount of heat, which can be used in railway welding:

$$2Al(s) + Fe_2O_3(s) \rightarrow 2Fe(l) + Al_2O_3(s)$$

ENTHALPY CHANGE OF A REACTION

KEY POINT

ΔH is pronounced 'delta *H*'. The Greek letter Δ is used to mean 'change in'. ΔH means 'change in heat'. Note: it is not possible to measure how much enthalpy (*H*) something has – you can only measure the change in enthalpy (ΔH) when it reacts.

REMINDER

The mole is a unit for the amount of a substance. You can read more about it in Chapter 5.

KEY POINT

The units for ΔH can be written as kJ/mol or kJ mol^{-1}.

You can measure the amount of heat energy taken in or released in a chemical reaction. It is called the **enthalpy change** of the reaction and is given the symbol ΔH. The enthalpy change is *the amount of heat energy taken in or given out in a chemical reaction*. It is the difference between the energy of the products and the energy of the reactants.

ΔH is given a minus or a plus sign to show whether heat is being given out or absorbed by the reaction. You always look at it from the point of view of the reactants. For an exothermic reaction, ΔH is given a *negative* number because the reactants are *losing* energy as heat. That heat is transferred to the surroundings, which then get warmer. ΔH is measured in units of kJ/mol (kilojoules per mole).

In an equation, the amount of heat given out or taken in can be shown as, for example:

$$Mg(s) + H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow MgSO_4(aq) + H_2(g) \qquad \Delta H = -466.9\,kJ/mol$$

The ΔH written next to an equation represents the enthalpy change of the reaction, i.e. 466.9 kJ of heat is given out when *one mole* of magnesium reacts in this way. You know heat has been given out because ΔH has a negative sign.

CHEMISTRY ONLY

SHOWING AN EXOTHERMIC CHANGE ON AN ENERGY LEVEL DIAGRAM

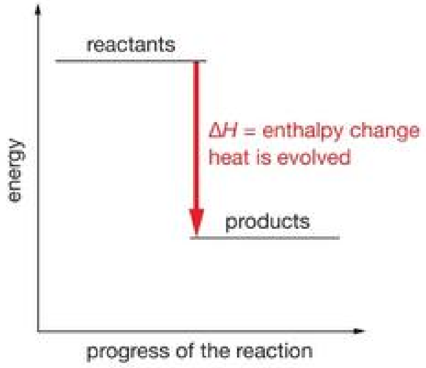
KEY POINT

The term **stability** is usually used to describe the relative energies of the reactants and the products in a chemical reaction. The more energy a chemical has, the less stable it is.

REMINDER

Remember that in a chemical reaction, the reactants are the chemicals you start with.

In an exothermic reaction, the reactants have more (chemical) energy than the products; we say that the products are *more stable* than the reactants. As the reaction happens, energy is given out in the form of heat. That energy warms up both the reaction itself and its surroundings.



▲ Figure 19.5 An exothermic change

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

ENDOTHERMIC REACTIONS

▲ Figure 19.6 A boy using a cold pack to relieve pain in his elbow. Endothermic reactions occur in the chemical cold pack to absorb heat from the surroundings and reduce the temperature of his arm.

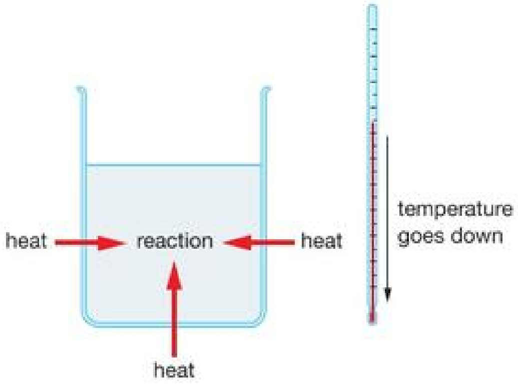
A reaction that absorbs heat from the surroundings is said to be **endothermic**. If you hold a test-tube in which an endothermic reaction is occurring you will notice that it *gets colder*.

In an endothermic reaction, *the products have more (chemical) energy than the reactants*. In order to supply the extra energy that is needed to convert the reactants (lower energy) into the products (higher energy), heat energy

REMINDER

Not all reactions that have to be heated are endothermic reactions. Sometimes we just heat something to make it go faster.

needs to be absorbed from the surroundings. This *heat energy is converted to chemical energy* (energy stored in the bonds of chemicals). The temperature of the reaction mixture and the surroundings *goes down* because heat energy has been converted into a different form of energy.



▲ Figure 19.7 In an endothermic reaction, heat energy is converted to chemical energy. Heat is absorbed so the temperature goes down.

You have seen the *thermal decomposition* of metal carbonates before in Chapter 13. These are examples of endothermic reactions. You have to heat a carbonate constantly to make it decompose.

For example, copper(II) carbonate (green) decomposes on heating to produce copper(II) oxide (black).

$$CuCO_3(s) \rightarrow CuO(s) + CO_2(g)$$

Similarly, zinc carbonate decomposes to form zinc oxide when heated.

$$ZnCO_3(s) \rightarrow ZnO(s) + CO_2(g)$$

CHEMISTRY ONLY

SHOWING AN ENDOTHERMIC CHANGE ON AN ENERGY LEVEL DIAGRAM

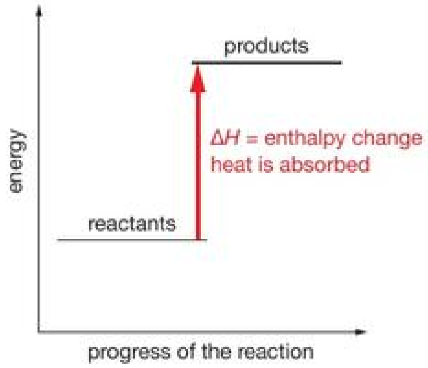
In an endothermic change, the products have more energy than the reactants so we say that the products are *less stable* than the reactants. That extra energy has to come from somewhere, and it is taken from the surroundings. In the case of the thermal decomposition of carbonates in the laboratory, it comes from the Bunsen burner.

Because the reactants are *gaining* energy, the enthalpy change of the reaction ΔH is given a *positive* sign.

For example:

$$CaCO_3(s) \rightarrow CaO(s) + CO_2(g) \qquad \Delta H = +178 \text{ kJ/mol}$$

This means that 178 kJ of heat energy must be absorbed to convert 1 mole of calcium carbonate into calcium oxide and carbon dioxide.



▲ Figure 19.8 An endothermic change

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

MEASURING ENTHALPY CHANGES OF REACTIONS

Here we discuss how we can measure how much heat is taken in or given out by a chemical reaction, in other words the enthalpy change of a reaction.

SPECIFIC HEAT CAPACITY

KEY POINT

The unit for specific heat capacity is J/g/°C or $\text{J g}^{-1}\,{}^{\circ}\text{C}^{-1}$.

When we heat something up, it gets hotter. The **specific heat capacity** tells us about *how much* energy has to be put in to increase the temperature of something. The specific heat capacity of a substance is defined as *the amount of heat needed to raise the temperature of 1 gram of a substance by 1 °C.*

For water, the value is 4.18 J/g/°C (joules per gram per degree Celsius). This means that 4.18 J of heat energy is needed if we want to increase the temperature of 1 g of water by 1 °C. If you want the temperature of 1 g of water to go up by 2 °C, then 4.18 × 2 = 8.36 J of heat energy must be supplied. If now you have 2 g of water, then 2 × 8.36 J of energy would be needed to raise the temperature by 2 °C.

KEY POINT

Again, we are using the delta (Δ) symbol to indicate a change, but this time a temperature change.
The concept of specific heat capacity also applies to the cooling of a substance. For example, to cool 1 g of water by 1 °C we need to take out 4.18 J of energy.

The amount of heat energy required is *directly proportional* to the mass (m) and the temperature change (ΔT) of the substance. The following equation can be used to calculate how much heat energy needs to be supplied to raise the temperature of mass m by ΔT °C:

heat energy change = mass × specific heat capacity × temperature change

$$Q = m \times c \times \Delta T$$

CALORIMETRY EXPERIMENTS FOR DETERMINING THE ENTHALPY CHANGES OF REACTIONS

It is fairly uncomplicated to measure the amount of heat absorbed or given out in several kinds of chemical reactions and physical changes. The technique used to do this is called **calorimetry** and it is based on the idea that if we use the heat from a reaction to heat another substance, such as water, we can then use the equation introduced above ($Q = mc\Delta T$) to calculate the amount of heat released. Here the mass, the specific heat capacity and the temperature change are all referring to *the substance heated*. If we know how many moles of reactants are used in the reaction, we can then work out the **molar enthalpy change**, ΔH, of the reaction in the unit kJ/mol.

The following activity illustrates how we can use calorimetry to determine the molar enthalpy change of combustion of an alcohol, i.e. how much heat energy is released when 1 mole of alcohol burns.

ACTIVITY 1

▼ PRACTICAL: MEASURING ENTHALPY CHANGES IN COMBUSTION REACTIONS

Safety Note: Wear eye protection. Do not carry a lit spirit burner and do not fill or re-fill one when there is a naked flame nearby.

One of the most common calorimetry experiments at International GCSE is to measure the amount of heat given off when a number of small alcohols are burned. You could use methanol, ethanol, propan-1-ol and butan-1-ol (see Chapter 22 for an introduction to the naming of alcohols).

The alcohols are burned in a small spirit burner, and the heat produced is used to heat some water in a copper can (the calorimeter).

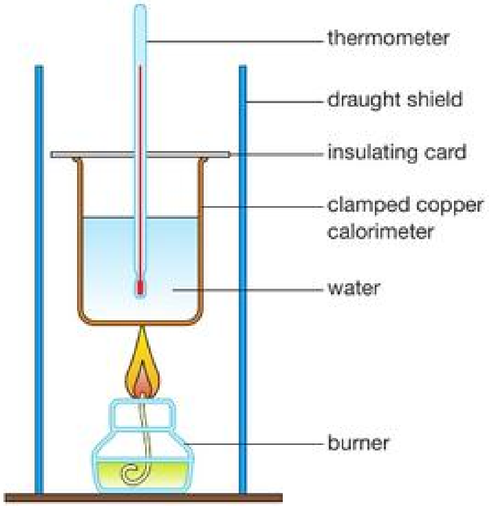
KEY POINT

A *calorimeter* is simply something that we do a calorimetry experiment in; here it is a copper can, in other experiments it can be a polystyrene cup.

The following procedure could be used:

- Measure 100 cm^3 of cold water using a measuring cylinder and transfer the water to a copper can.
- Take the initial temperature of the water.
- Weigh a spirit-burner containing ethanol with its lid *on*. The lid should be kept on when the wick is not lit to prevent the alcohol from evaporating.

- Arrange the apparatus as shown in Figure 19.9 so that the spirit-burner can be used to heat the water in the copper can. The apparatus is shielded as far as possible to prevent draughts.
- Light the wick to heat the water. Stop heating when you have a reasonable temperature rise of water (say, about 40.0 °C). The flame can be extinguished by putting the lid back on the wick.
- Stir the water thoroughly and measure the maximum temperature of the water.
- Weigh the spirit-burner again with its lid *on*.
- The experiment can be repeated with the same alcohol to check for reliability, and then carried out again with whatever other alcohols are available.



▲ Figure 19.9 A calorimetry experiment to measure the enthalpy change of combustion of alcohols.

KEY POINT

You may see other versions of this experiment recommending a different temperature rise or suggesting that you heat the water for a fixed number of minutes. There's no ideal answer to this. The higher the temperature the water reaches, the greater the heat losses during the experiment. On the other hand, if you just increase the temperature of the water by a small amount, errors in reading the thermometer or in finding the mass change of the alcohol become too significant.

SAMPLE DATA

volume of water/cm^3	100
mass of burner + ethanol before experiment/g	137.36
mass of burner + ethanol after experiment/g	136.58
original temperature of water/°C	21.5
final temperature of water/°C	62.8

Combustion is an exothermic reaction so the temperature of the water goes up. As ethanol is burned, the total mass of the burner and ethanol goes down.

Using the above data we can determine how much heat is released when one mole of an alcohol is burned, that is, the molar enthalpy change of combustion.

CALCULATIONS FOR ACTIVITY 1

We are going to use the equation $Q = mc\Delta T$ so we need to find out what each quantity is.

Temperature change of water = $\Delta T = 62.8 - 21.5 = 41.3$ °C.

Mass of water being heated = m = 100 g, the density of water is approximately 1 g/cm^3 at room temperature, so 100 cm^3 of water has a mass of 100 g.

c is the specific heat capacity of the water (it is the water that is being heated): $c = 4.18\,\text{J/g/°C}$

Heat gained by water = $Q = mc\Delta T = 100 \times 4.18 \times 41.3 = 17\,260\,\text{J}$.

Divide Q by 1000 to give energy in kJ = 17.26 kJ.

KEY POINT

The enthalpy change when 1 mole of a substance is burned is called the *enthalpy change of combustion*.

This means 17.26 kJ of heat energy is released by the combustion of the ethanol in this experiment. To calculate the amount of heat produced when 1 mole of ethanol, CH_3CH_2OH, burns, you need to find out how many moles of ethanol are burned in your experiment.

Mass of ethanol burned = decrease in the mass of the burner
= 137.36 − 136.58 = 0.78 g

HINT

We have quoted the final answer to *3 significant figures*. In the exam, it is usually best to quote answers to 3 significant figures. When we are doing experiments we should actually base our answers on *the piece of data with the fewest significant figures*. When you are doing calculations carry more significant figures through on your calculator and then round the value at the end.

Ethanol has the formula C_2H_5OH. We can calculate the relative molecular mass of ethanol by adding up the relative atomic masses:
$(2 \times 12) + (5 \times 1) + 16 + 1 = 46$

Number of moles (n) of ethanol, CH_3CH_2OH, burned

$$n = \frac{\text{mass } (m)}{\text{relative molecular mass } (M_r)} = \frac{0.78}{46} = 0.01696\,\text{mol}$$

Molar enthalpy change of combustion of ethanol (ΔH)

$$\Delta H = \frac{\text{heat energy change } (Q)}{\text{number of moles of ethanol burned } (n)}$$

$$= \frac{17.26}{0.01696} = 1020\,\text{kJ/mol}$$

HINT

Always remember to put in the sign of the enthalpy change at this stage. You will be able to see whether the reaction is endothermic (ΔH +) or exothermic (ΔH −) from looking at the original temperature change: does it go up (exothermic) or down (endothermic)?

The amount of heat released in the complete combustion of 1 mole of ethanol is therefore:

$$CH_3CH_2OH + 3O_2 \rightarrow 2CO_2 + 3H_2O \qquad \Delta H = -1020\,\text{kJ/mol}$$

The negative sign shows that heat is released and the combustion reaction is exothermic.

EVALUATION OF THE EXPERIMENTAL RESULTS

How accurate is the figure of −1020 kJ/mol for the enthalpy change of the combustion of ethanol? The accepted value found in data booklets for ethanol is −1370 kJ/mol, which means that 1370 kJ of heat should be given out when 1 mole of ethanol burns. You can see that the value we obtained is less exothermic than expected; our reaction seemed to give out less heat than expected.

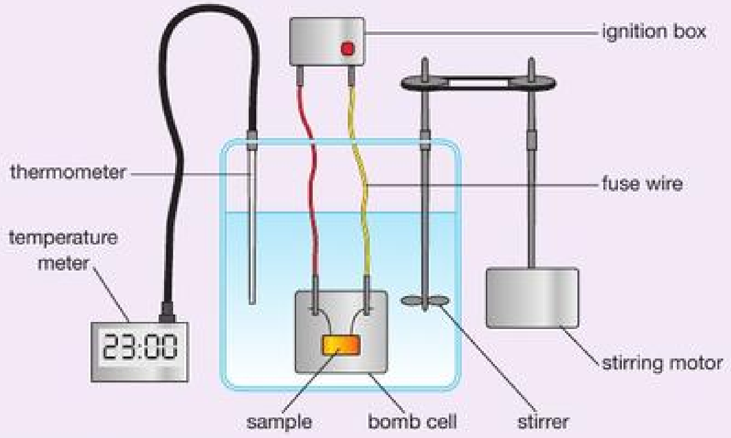
There are many sources of error in this experiment, in particular *large amounts of heat loss*.

The warm water gives out heat to the air, heat is lost from the flame, which goes straight into the air rather than into the water, and heat is used to raise the temperature of the copper can and the thermometer.

Another major source of error is the *incomplete combustion* of alcohol. We will talk about incomplete combustion in more detail in Chapter 23. Incomplete combustion of an alcohol occurs when there is not enough oxygen present. Incomplete combustion releases less heat than complete combustion. We can see that the combustion in Activity 1 is incomplete because the flame of the wick is often yellow orange rather than blue, and soot (carbon) is produced at the bottom of the copper can. If the combustion is complete, the flame should be blue and carbon dioxide should be produced instead of carbon.

EXTENSION WORK

A bomb calorimeter can be used to obtain more accurate values of the enthalpy changes of combustion. The substance to be combusted is ignited electrically and burns in the presence of pure oxygen. The heat transferred to both water and the calorimeter itself is determined to give a more accurate value of the enthalpy change.



▲ Figure 19.10 Bomb calorimeter

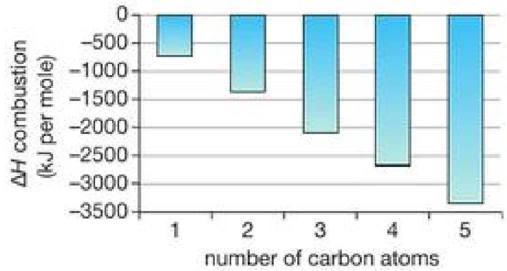
That doesn't mean you can't use this experiment to make useful comparisons. If you repeat it with other alcohols, under conditions that are as similar as possible, you can find how the heat evolved (given out) changes as the alcohol gets bigger.

In Figure 19.11 we can see that the combustion reaction gets more exothermic as the alcohol chain becomes longer. In other words, longer alcohols give out more heat energy per mole when they burn than shorter ones.

The increase in the heat evolved as alcohol chain lengthens is regular. The difference between one alcohol and the next is always an extra CH_2 (see Chapter 26, page 288, for more detail on the structures of alcohols), and so the number of extra bonds broken and made (see below) increases in a regular way. That means that the heat evolved will also increase in a regular way.

KEY POINT

You may sometimes see these plotted as smooth graphs, but that is technically wrong. A smooth curve should only be used for a continuous independent variable, one which can take any value. There is no such thing as an alcohol with 0.5 or 1.64 carbon atoms! The number of carbon atoms is a **non-continuous variable** because it can only take whole number values.



▲ Figure 19.11 Molar enthalpy change of the combustion of alcohols.

WORKING OUT ENTHALPY CHANGES FOR REACTIONS INVOLVING SOLUTIONS USING CALORIMETRY EXPERIMENTS

You can use very similar methods for measuring molar enthalpy changes in displacement reactions (e.g. zinc and copper(II) sulfate solution), dissolving (e.g. dissolving ammonium chloride in water to form a solution) and neutralisation reactions (e.g. between potassium hydroxide solution and dilute hydrochloric acid). These experiments also involve heating water, but this time the water is part of the solutions we are using. We will look at how to do this in the next few practicals.

Safety Note: Avoid skin contact with the chemicals.

ACTIVITY 2

▼ PRACTICAL: MEASURING ENTHALPY CHANGES FOR DISPLACEMENT REACTIONS

In order to determine the enthalpy change of the reaction of zinc and copper(II) sulfate, the following procedure could be used:

- Place a polystyrene cup in a 250 cm³ glass beaker.
- Transfer 50 cm³ of 0.200 mol/dm³ copper(II) sulfate solution into the polystyrene cup using a measuring cylinder.
- Weigh 1.20 g of zinc using a weighing boat on a balance.
- Record the initial temperature of the copper(II) sulfate solution.
- Add the zinc.
- Stir the solution as quickly as possible.
- Record the maximum temperature reached.

▲ 19.12 A calorimetry experiment to measure the enthalpy change of a displacement reaction.

SAMPLE DATA

initial temperature of copper(II) sulfate solution/°C	17.0
maximum temperature of the reaction mixture/°C	27.3

We can use this data to calculate the enthalpy change for this displacement reaction, when 1 mole of copper(II) sulfate reacts with zinc.

CALCULATIONS FOR ACTIVITY 2

Heat given out in this reaction: $Q = mc\Delta T = 50 \times 4.18 \times (27.3 - 17.0)$

$= 2152.7\,\text{J}$

$= 2.1527\,\text{kJ}$

Here we assume the following:

1. The density of the copper sulfate solution is the same as that of water, so 1 cm³ of solution has a mass of 1 g.
2. The specific heat capacity of the mixture is the same as that of water. This is a fairly reasonable assumption because the reaction mixture is mostly water.

In this experiment we have used excess zinc. *Excess* means more than enough zinc is present to ensure all the copper(II) sulfate reacts. If you calculate the number of moles of copper(II) sulfate and the number of moles of zinc used in this procedure, you should spot that the number of moles of zinc used is more than that of copper(II) sulfate:

$$\text{number of moles } (n) \text{ of zinc added} = \frac{\text{mass } (m)}{\text{relative atomic mass } (A_r)} = \frac{1.20}{65} = 0.0185\,\text{mol}$$

$$\text{number of moles } (n) \text{ of copper(II) sulfate added} = \text{volume } (V) \times \text{concentration } (C) = 0.050 \times 0.200 = 0.0100\,\text{mol}$$

KEY POINT

1 mol of Zn reacts with 1 mol of $CuSO_4$, therefore 0.0100 mol of $CuSO_4$ reacts with 0.0100 mol of Zn. We added 0.0185 mol of Zn, so Zn is in excess.

REMINDER

Remember that we have to divide the volume by 1000 to convert it to dm^3 because the concentration is given in mol/dm^3.

Now we need to calculate how much heat is released when 1 mole of copper sulfate reacts with excess zinc:

Molar enthalpy change of reaction (ΔH)

$$\Delta H = \frac{\text{heat energy change } (Q)}{\text{number of moles of copper sulfate reacted } (n)} = \frac{2.1527}{0.0100} = 215\,\text{kJ/mol}$$

The amount of heat released in the displacement reaction when 1 mole of $CuSO_4$ reacts with excess Zn is therefore:

$$Zn(s) + CuSO_4(aq) \rightarrow ZnSO_4(aq) + Cu(s) \qquad \Delta H = -215\,\text{kJ/mol}$$

We have added the negative sign because we know that the temperature of the reaction mixture went up. The negative sign shows that this is an exothermic reaction; heat is released.

EXTENSION WORK

You could repeat this experiment with metals of different reactivities. The more reactive a metal is, the more heat should be released in the displacement reaction. Make sure you keep everything else the same: the number of moles of the metals, the size of the solid particles, and the volume and concentration of the copper(II) sulfate solution. Do not use metals that are more reactive than magnesium, otherwise you are measuring the heat released when the metal reacts with water instead!

ACTIVITY 3

▼ PRACTICAL: MEASURING ENTHALPY CHANGES WHEN SALTS DISSOLVE IN WATER

Safety Note: Wear eye protection and avoid skin contact with the salts and their solutions.

We can also use calorimetry experiments to work out the amount of heat given out/taken in when salts dissolve in water. The following procedure could be used:

- Place a polystyrene cup in a 250 cm^3 glass beaker.
- Transfer 100 cm^3 of water into the polystyrene cup using a measuring cylinder.
- Record the initial temperature of the water.
- Weigh 5.20 g of ammonium chloride using a weighing boat on a balance.
- Add the ammonium chloride to water and stir the solution vigorously until all the ammonium chloride has dissolved.
- Record the minimum temperature.

The set-up is very similar to the one used in Activity 2, see Figure 19.12.

SAMPLE DATA

initial temperature of water/°C	18.3
minimum temperature of salt solution/°C	15.1

Note: the temperature of the water decreases, so the reaction is endothermic and heat is absorbed from the surroundings for the dissolving process to occur.

We can use this data to calculate the molar enthalpy change for dissolving ammonium chloride.

CALCULATIONS FOR ACTIVITY 3

Heat absorbed: $Q = mc\Delta T = 100 \times 4.18 \times (18.3 - 15.1) = 1337.6\,\text{J} = 1.3376\,\text{kJ}$

Here we assume the following:

1. The specific heat capacity of the diluted solution of ammonium chloride is the same as that of water. This is quite a reasonable assumption because the mixture is mostly water.
2. The mass of the solution is 100 g. The mass of the ammonium chloride is relatively small and it is ignored in the calculation. There are other major sources of error in the experiment, for example heat absorbed from the surrounding air, which makes much more difference to the results.

Now we need to calculate how much heat is absorbed when 1 mole of ammonium chloride dissolves in excess water.

The relative formula mass of ammonium chloride (NH_4Cl) is $14 + 4 \times 1 + 35.5 = 53.5$.

Number of moles (n) of ammonium chloride dissolved

$$n = \frac{\text{mass } (m)}{\text{relative formula mass } (M_r)} = \frac{5.20}{53.5} = 0.0972\,\text{mol}$$

Molar enthalpy change of solution (ΔH)

$$\Delta H = \frac{\text{heat energy change } (Q)}{\text{number of moles of ammonium chloride dissolved } (n)}$$

$$= \frac{1.3376}{0.0972}$$

$$= 13.8\,\text{kJ/mol}$$

The amount of heat absorbed when dissolving 1 mole of ammonium chloride in water is therefore:

$$NH_4Cl(s) \rightarrow NH_4Cl(aq) \qquad \Delta H = +13.8\,\text{kJ/mol}$$

The positive sign shows that heat is absorbed and the dissolving of ammonium chloride in water is an endothermic process (the temperature goes down).

KEY POINT

Dissolving is a physical process rather than a chemical reaction. When some salts dissolve in water heat is given out (exothermic), but when others dissolve the process is endothermic.

ACTIVITY 4

▼ PRACTICAL: MEASURING ENTHALPY CHANGES OF NEUTRALISATION BETWEEN AN ALKALI AND AN ACID

The reaction between an alkali and an acid is essentially between OH^- and H^+ ions to form water (see Chapter 16):

$$OH^-(aq) + H^+(aq) \rightarrow H_2O(l)$$

Let's look at the reaction between potassium hydroxide (an alkali) and hydrochloric acid. Suppose you know the concentration of the

Safety Note: Wear eye protection and avoid skin contact with the acid and alkali.

potassium hydroxide but are not so sure of the concentration of the dilute hydrochloric acid solution (the label has gone missing!). The following method could be used to find out the concentration of the acid and how much heat is released during the neutralisation reaction.

- Place a polystyrene cup in a 250 cm^3 glass beaker.
- Transfer 25 cm^3 of 2.00 mol/dm^3 potassium hydroxide into the polystyrene cup using a measuring cylinder.
- Record the initial temperature.
- Fill a burette with 50.00 cm^3 of dilute hydrochloric acid.
- Use the burette to add 5.00 cm^3 of dilute hydrochloric acid to the potassium hydroxide.
- Stir vigorously and record the maximum temperature reached.
- Continue adding further 5.00 cm^3 portions of dilute hydrochloric acid to the cup, stirring and recording the maximum temperature each time, until a total volume of 50.00 cm^3 has been added.

We can plot a graph of the temperature of the mixture versus the volume of acid added.

SAMPLE DATA

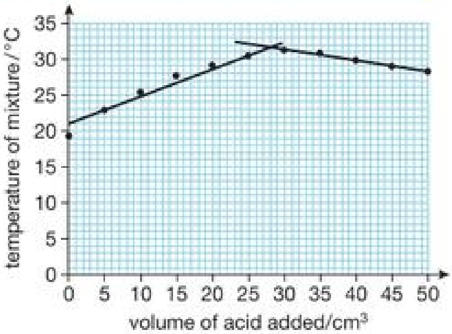


Figure 19.13 Temperature change in the neutralisation reaction between KOH and HCl.

In this reaction the temperature increases at first but then decreases. The reaction between the acid and the alkali is exothermic. At the beginning the temperature goes up because the acid reacts with the alkali, giving out heat. But when all the alkali has been used up, we are just adding cold acid to our warm solution (there is no reaction because there is nothing for the acid to react with) and the temperature goes down.

Two lines of best fit can be drawn on our graph. The point where the lines cross represents complete neutralisation. From the graph, we can identify the maximum temperature reached during the experiment as 31.8 °C. At this point, 28.00 cm^3 of acid has been used.

CALCULATIONS FOR ACTIVITY 4

To work out how much heat is released in the neutralisation reaction, we can use the same calculation as before.

The total volume of the solution at the neutralisation point is 25 + 28 = 53 cm^3.

Heat given out is shown by $Q = mc\Delta T = 53 \times 4.18 \times (31.8 - 19.3) = 2769.3$ J.

If we divide by 1000 we get 2.7693 kJ.

Here we assume the following:

1. The density of the reaction mixture is the same as that of water, so 1 cm^3 of solution has a mass of 1 g.
2. The specific heat capacity of the mixture is the same as that of water. This is a fairly reasonable assumption because the neutralised solution is mostly water.

Now we need to calculate how much heat is released when 1 mole of potassium hydroxide reacts with 1 mole of hydrochloric acid:

$$\text{Number of moles of KOH } (n) = \text{concentration } (C) \times \text{volume } (V)$$

$$= 2.00 \times \frac{25}{1000} = 0.0500 \text{ mol}$$

The number of moles of HCl will be exactly the same because we have taken the temperature at the neutralisation point.

Molar enthalpy change of neutralisation (ΔH)

$$\Delta H = \frac{\text{heat energy change } (Q)}{\text{number of moles of KOH or HCl reacted } (n)}$$

$$= \frac{2.7693}{0.0500} = 55.4\,\text{kJ/mol}$$

The amount of heat released in the neutralisation reaction when 1 mole of KOH reacts with 1 mole of HCl is therefore:

$$KOH(aq) + HCl(aq) \rightarrow KCl(aq) + H_2O(l) \qquad \Delta H = -55.4\,\text{kJ/mol}$$

The negative sign shows that heat is released in this exothermic neutralisation reaction.

CHEMISTRY ONLY

We can also work out the unknown HCl concentration.

We know that there was 0.0500 mol KOH originally present.

28.00 cm^3 of HCl was required for neutralisation therefore this contained 0.0500 mol of HCl:

$$\text{Concentration of HCl } (C) = \frac{\text{number of moles of HCl } (n)}{\text{volume of HCl used for neutralisation } (V)}$$

$$= \frac{0.0500}{0.02800} = 1.79\,\text{mol/dm}^3$$

WHY DO REACTIONS EITHER GIVE OUT OR ABSORB HEAT?

During chemical reactions bonds in the reactants have to be broken and new ones formed to make the products. *Breaking bonds needs energy (endothermic) and making bonds releases energy (exothermic).*

Think about what happens when hydrogen burns in oxygen to make water:

$$2H_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightarrow 2H_2O(l)$$

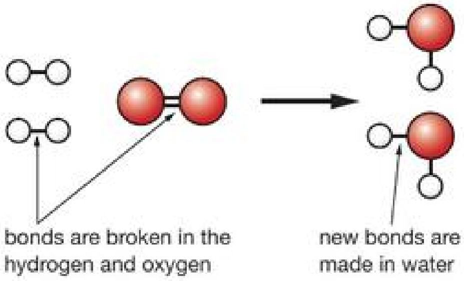

bonds are broken in the hydrogen and oxygen
new bonds are made in water

Figure 19.14 Hydrogen burning in oxygen to make water

KEY POINT

If you want to be really accurate about this, the water would originally be formed as steam. Heat is also given out when the steam condenses to form liquid water. This is due to formation of *intermolecular forces* of attraction between the molecules in liquid water. Formation of attractive forces between molecules is also exothermic.

Energy has to be *supplied* to *break the bonds* in the hydrogen molecules and in the oxygen molecule. Energy is *released* when *new bonds are formed* between the hydrogen and oxygen atoms in the water molecules.

In this particular reaction, the products are more stable than the reactants. This means the total amount of energy released when covalent bonds are formed in the product (water molecules) is more than is required to break the covalent bonds in the reactants (hydrogen and oxygen molecules). The reaction is exothermic.

When you heat calcium carbonate, breaking up the original bonds in the compound uses more energy than you obtain when the new ones are made.

The reactants are more stable than the products. That means that when the reaction is finished, more energy has been absorbed than is released, an endothermic change.

CALCULATION OF ENTHALPY CHANGES OF REACTION USING BOND ENERGIES

BOND ENERGIES

Breaking chemical bonds requires energy. The stronger the bond, the more energy is needed to break it. Bond energies are measured in kJ/mol (kilojoules per mole). For example, the Cl–Cl bond energy is 243 kJ/mol. This means that it will take 243 kJ to break all the Cl–Cl bonds in *1 mole* of chlorine *gas*. The bond energy also represents the amount of energy released when 1 mole of the bonds form. Figure 19.15 shows that it needs an input of 243 kJ of energy to break 1 mole of chlorine molecules into atoms. If the atoms recombine into their original molecules, then exactly the same amount of energy will be released again.

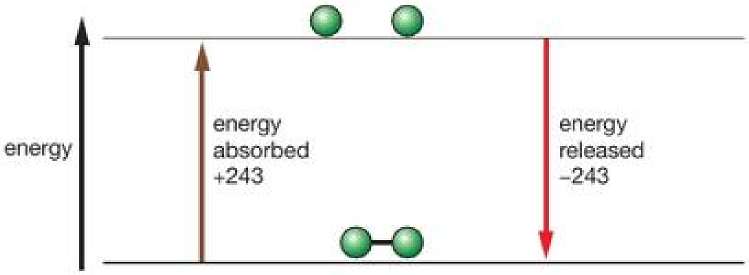


Figure 19.15 Breaking and making bonds between chlorine atoms

- *Breaking bonds needs energy: endothermic.*
- *Making bonds releases energy: exothermic.*

KEY POINT

Bond energy is defined as *the amount of energy needed to break 1 mole of covalent bonds in gaseous molecules*.

The H–Cl bond energy is 432 kJ/mol. If you see '2HCl(g)' in an equation, it will take 2 × 432 kJ to break all the H–Cl bonds in the two moles of hydrogen chloride gas. Or, 2 × 432 kJ will be released when 2HCl(g) is formed from H and Cl atoms.

Table 19.1 The energy needed to break bonds

Bond	C–H	C–Cl	C–I	Cl–Cl	I–I	H–Cl	H–I
Bond energy/kJ/mol	413	346	234	243	151	432	298

You can see that some bonds are much stronger than others, for example the bond between iodine and hydrogen is about twice as strong as the bond between two iodine atoms.

Bond energies can be used to calculate how much heat will be absorbed or released during reactions of *covalent* molecules. If a reaction involves *ionic* compounds, different energy terms have to be used, which are beyond International GCSE.

CALCULATION OF THE HEAT RELEASED OR ABSORBED DURING A REACTION

You can estimate the heat energy released or absorbed in a reaction by calculating how much energy would be needed to break the substances up into individual atoms, and then how much would be given out when those atoms recombine into new arrangements.

EXTENSION WORK

Bond energy calculations only ever give *estimates* of the amount of heat evolved or absorbed. They never give exact values. The strength of a bond varies slightly depending on what is around it in the molecule. Quoted bond energies are usually *average* values, which give fairly good, but not perfect, answers for enthalpy changes of reactions. The enthalpy changes of reactions measured using calorimetry experiments are more specific for particular compounds.

For example:

if: energy needed to break all the bonds in reactants = +1000 kJ (positive sign as the process if endothermic)

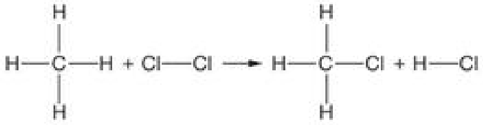
and: energy released when new bonds are made in products = −1200 kJ (negative sign as the process is exothermic)

then: overall change = −200 kJ (the overall reaction is exothermic)

This reaction would release 200 kJ of energy.

THE REACTION BETWEEN METHANE AND CHLORINE

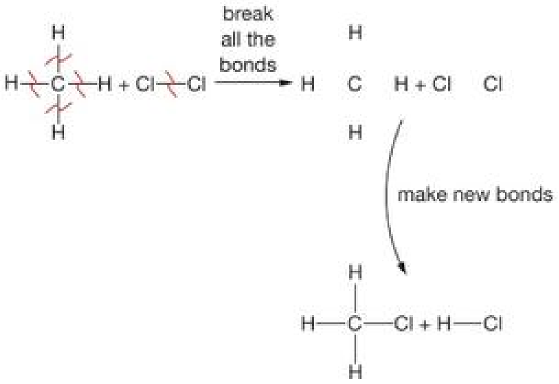
$CH_4(g) + Cl_2(g) \rightarrow CH_3Cl(g) + HCl(g)$



Methane reacts with chlorine in the presence of ultraviolet light to produce chloromethane and hydrogen chloride (see Chapter 24, page 280, for more details on this reaction). You can imagine all the bonds being broken in the methane and chlorine, and then being reformed in new ways in the products:

EXTENSION WORK

The real reaction doesn't actually happen by all the bonds being broken in this way. That isn't important. The overall amount of heat released or absorbed is the same (as long as the reactants and the products are exactly the same) however you do the reaction, even if one of the routes you use to calculate it is entirely imaginary! This is summarised in an important law called *Hess's law*, which you will meet if you do chemistry at a higher level.



You can calculate the energy needed to break all the bonds and the energy given out as new ones are made.

Bonds that need to be broken (endothermic):

4 C–H bonds = 4 × (+413) = + 1652 kJ
1 Cl–Cl bond = 1 × (+243) = + 243 kJ
total = + 1895 kJ

New bonds made (exothermic):

3 C–H bonds = 3 × (−413) = −1239 kJ
1 C–Cl bond = 1 × (−346) = −346 kJ
1 H–Cl bond = 1 × (−432) = −432 kJ
total = −2017 kJ

HINT

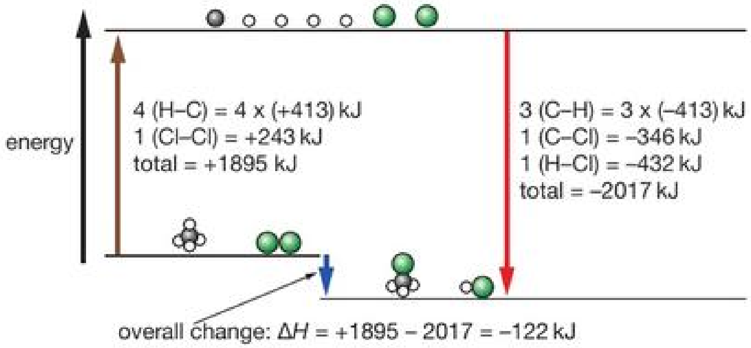
Remember that when energy is given out, you show this by putting a negative sign in front of the value.

We can see that more energy is released when bonds are formed than is required to break them, so the reaction releases energy overall; it is exothermic.

The overall energy change is +1895 + (−2017) kJ = −122 kJ.

The negative sign of the answer shows that, overall, heat is given out as the bonds rearrange.

You can show all this happening on an energy level diagram, as in Figure 19.16.


energy
4 (H–C) = 4 x (+413) kJ
1 (Cl–Cl) = +243 kJ
total = +1895 kJ
3 (C–H) = 3 x (–413) kJ
1 (C–Cl) = –346 kJ
1 (H–Cl) = –432 kJ
total = –2017 kJ
overall change: ΔH = +1895 – 2017 = –122 kJ

▲ Figure 19.16 Methane reacts with chlorine to produce chloromethane and hydrogen chloride.

AN EXAMPLE INVOLVING DOUBLE BONDS

The bond energy for the O=O double bond is 498 kJ/mol. This is the energy required to break the whole of the double bond.

The equation for the combustion of methane is:

$$CH_4(g) + 2O_2(g) \rightarrow CO_2(g) + 2H_2O(g)$$

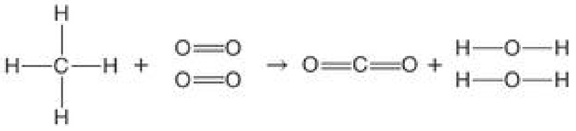
Calculate the enthalpy change for this reaction given the bond energies in the table and draw an energy level diagram for the reaction.

Bond	C–H	O=O	C=O	H–O
Bond energy/kJ/mol	413	498	743	464

EXTENSION WORK

The reaction has been shown with $H_2O(g)$ rather than $H_2O(l)$ because bond energies can only be used for gaseous molecules. We could find out the enthalpy change for this reaction forming $H_2O(l)$ if we knew the amount of energy released in the process $H_2O(g) \rightarrow H_2O(l)$. This is beyond International GCSE level.

We start by drawing out the structures showing all the bonds so that you can make sure that we get the number of bonds correct:


H
H—C—H +
H
O=O
O=O
→ O=C=O +
H—O—H
H—O—H

Bonds that need to be broken (endothermic):

4 C–H bonds = 4 × (+413) = +1652 kJ

2 O=O bonds = 2 × (+498) = +996 kJ

total = +2648 kJ

New bonds made (exothermic):

2 C=O bonds = 2 × (–743) = –1486 kJ

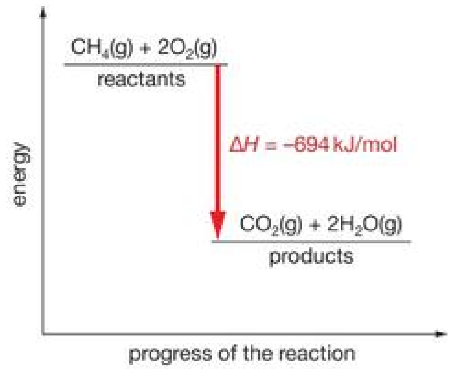
4 O–H bonds = 4 × (–464) = –1856 kJ

total = –3342 kJ

Enthalpy change = +2648 + (–3342) = –694 kJ/mol.

More energy is released when bonds are formed than is required to break them; the reaction is exothermic.

Energy is given out when the reactants are converted to the products. Therefore we know that the products must have less energy than the reactants; the products are more stable. We can show this on an energy level diagram (Figure 19.17).

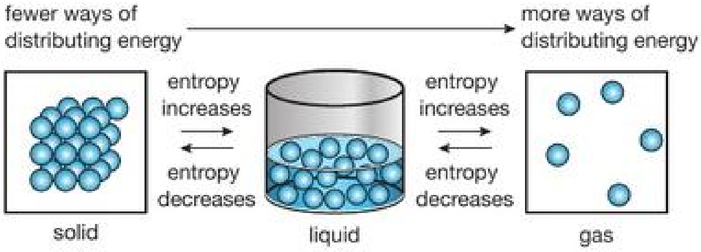

CH₄(g) + 2O₂(g)
reactants
ΔH = –694 kJ/mol
CO₂(g) + 2H₂O(g)
products
energy
progress of the reaction

▲ Figure 19.17 An energy level diagram for the combustion of methane

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

LOOKING AHEAD – ENTROPY

Many reactions we meet at International GSCE level are exothermic, for example combustion and neutralisation. Despite requiring a small amount of energy to get the reactions started (*activation energy*), these reactions release heat energy overall because the products are more stable than the reactants. This shows that enthalpy is certainly a driving force for a reaction to occur. However, endothermic processes do occur. How do they happen? Dissolving ammonium nitrate into water causes the temperature of the solution to decrease, but it dissolves anyway. This is possible because of a different factor called entropy. *Entropy is a measure of the number of ways for the energy in a system to be distributed*. It is greater in a more disordered system because the energy can be dispersed more flexibly. It follows that solids have lower entropy than liquids, which have lower entropy than gases, as shown in Figure 19.18.



▲ Figure 19.18 Entropy is greater in a more disordered system.

If the entropy of a system increases during a reaction, it is more likely for that reaction to occur. When dissolving ammonium nitrate in water, although the process is endothermic, the NH_4^+ and NO_3^- ion particles in the giant ionic lattice become separated from each other. The ions have more freedom of movement in water and the entropy of the system increases, which outweighs the effect of enthalpy.

The reaction between baking soda and vinegar is another example of an endothermic reaction that occurs spontaneously. The reaction produces a gas which leads to an increase in the entropy of the system.

▲ Figure 19.19 The reaction between baking soda and vinegar is used to make papier mâché volcanos.

CHAPTER QUESTIONS

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING, PROBLEM SOLVING

9

1 a Explain what is meant by an *exothermic reaction* and write balanced chemical equations for any two exothermic changes (apart from the combustion of heptane given in part b).

CHEMISTRY ONLY

SKILLS INTERPRETATION

10

b Heptane, C_7H_{16}, is a hydrocarbon found in petrol. The equation for the combustion of heptane is:

$$C_7H_{16}(l) + 11O_2(g) \rightarrow 7CO_2(g) + 8H_2O(l) \qquad \Delta H = -4817\,\text{kJ/mol}$$

Draw an energy level diagram to show the combustion of heptane. Label the axes and show clearly the reactants, the products and the enthalpy change of reaction on your diagram.

SKILLS REASONING

9

c Explain in terms of breaking and making bonds why the reaction in b is exothermic.

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

7

2 a Explain what is meant by an *endothermic reaction*.

CHEMISTRY ONLY

SKILLS INTERPRETATION

10

b Nitrogen and oxygen gases can combine to form nitrogen monoxide as follows:

$$N_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightarrow 2NO(g) \qquad \Delta H = +180\,\text{kJ/mol}$$

Draw an energy level diagram for this process. Label the axes and show clearly the reactants, the products and the enthalpy change of reaction on your diagram.

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

9

3 Identify each of the following changes as exothermic or endothermic. In some cases you will have to rely on your previous knowledge of chemistry. Several reactions are likely to be completely new to you.

a The reaction between sodium and water.

b Burning methane (major constituent of natural gas).

c The reaction between sodium carbonate and ethanoic acid. A thermometer placed in the reaction mixture shows a temperature drop.

d $S(s) + O_2(g) \rightarrow SO_2(g) \qquad \Delta H = -297\,\text{kJ/mol}$

e $CuSO_4(s) \rightarrow CuO(s) + SO_3(g) \qquad \Delta H = +220\,\text{kJ/mol}$

f If you dissolve solid sodium hydroxide in water, the solution becomes very hot.

SKILLS INTRAPERSONAL

11

4 Self-heating cans are used to provide warm food in situations where it is inconvenient to use a more conventional form of heat. By doing an internet (or other) search, find out how self-heating cans work. Write a short explanation of your findings (not exceeding 200 words). You should include equation(s) for any reaction(s) involved, and a diagram or picture if it is useful.

CHEMISTRY ONLY

SKILLS REASONING, PROBLEM SOLVING

5 Use the bond energies in the table to calculate the amount of heat released or absorbed when the following reactions take place. In each case, say whether the change is exothermic or endothermic.

Bond	Bond energy/kJ/mol
C–H	413
C–Br	290
Br–Br	193
H–Br	366
H–H	436
Cl–Cl	243
H–Cl	432
O=O	498
O–H	464
N≡N	944
N–H	388

a $CH_4(g) + Br_2(g) \rightarrow CH_3Br(g) + HBr(g)$

(The structure of CH_3Br is the same as that of CH_3Cl)

b $H_2(g) + Cl_2(g) \rightarrow 2HCl(g)$

c $2H_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightarrow 2H_2O(g)$

d $N_2(g) + 3H_2(g) \rightarrow 2NH_3(g)$

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

SKILLS EXECUTIVE FUNCTION

6 A student investigated the amount of heat given out when hexane, C_6H_{14}, burns using the apparatus in Figure 19.9. Hexane is a highly flammable liquid which is one of the components of petrol (gasoline).

In each case, the student calculated the amount of heat evolved per mole of hexane. Her first two experiments produced answers of –3200 and –3900 kJ/mol of heat evolved. She then decided to do a third experiment. Her results were as follows:

volume of water in copper calorimeter/cm³	100
mass of burner + hexane before experiment/g	35.62
mass of burner + hexane after experiment/g	35.23
original temperature of water/°C	19.0
final temperature of water/°C	55.0

a Suggest a reason why the student decided to do a third experiment.

b Apart from wearing eye protection, suggest two other safety precautions the student should take during the experiment.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 9

c Use the results table to calculate the amount of heat in **kJ** evolved by the burning hexane during the experiment.

(Specific heat capacity of water = 4.18 J/g/°C; density of water = 1 g/cm³.)

d Calculate the amount of heat energy released per gram of hexane.

10

e Calculate the molar enthalpy change of combustion of hexane. (A_r: H = 1, C = 12)

SKILLS REASONING 8

f To calculate the average value of the heat evolved per mole when hexane burns, the student took an average of her results. She decided not to use the figure of –3900 in calculating the average because it was so different from the other two. Suggest two reasons why this reaction might have been more exothermic than the others.

9

g A data book gave a figure of –4194 kJ of heat evolved when 1 mole of hexane burns. Suggest two reasons why all the results in the student's experiment were less negative than this.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

7 When 5.15 g of lithium chloride (LiCl) is dissolved in 50 cm³ of water the temperature of the solution goes from 17.0 °C to 33.5 °C.

a Calculate the heat energy released in this experiment. (Specific heat capacity of water = 4.18 J/g/°C; mass of 1 cm³ of solution = 1 g.)

b Calculate the amount, in moles, of lithium chloride dissolved in the solution.

10

c Using your answers from **a** and **b**, calculate the enthalpy change when 1 mol of lithium chloride dissolves in water in kJ/mol.

SKILLS REASONING 9

d A data book gives a figure of –37.2 kJ/mol for heat released when 1 mole of lithium chloride is dissolved in water. Suggest two reasons why the value you calculated in **c** might be different from the value given in the data book.

CHEMISTRY ONLY

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 10

8 To completely neutralise 200 cm³ of 0.500 mol/dm³ sodium hydroxide (NaOH), a student adds 100 cm³ of 0.500 mol/dm³ sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4). The temperature of the solution goes up by 4.50 °C.

The equation for the reaction is

$$2NaOH(aq) + H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow Na_2SO_4(aq) + 2H_2O(l)$$

a Calculate the amount, in moles, of NaOH in the sodium hydroxide solution.

b Calculate the heat released in this reaction. (Specific heat capacity of solution = 4.18 J/g/°C; mass of 1 cm³ of solution = 1 g.)

c Using your answers from **a** and **b**, calculate the enthalpy change when 1 mol of sodium hydroxide is neutralised by sulfuric acid in kJ/mol.

SKILLS INTERPRETATION

d Draw an energy level diagram for this reaction. Label the axes and show clearly the reactants, the products and the enthalpy change of reaction on your diagram.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

e Predict the temperature rise if the experiment were repeated using 200 cm³ of 1.00 mol/dm³ sodium hydroxide (NaOH) with 100 cm³ of 1.00 mol/dm³ sulfuric acid.

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

20 RATES OF REACTION

Reactions can vary in speed between those that happen within fractions of a second – explosions, for example – and those that never happen at all. Gold can be exposed to the air for thousands of years and not react in any way.

This chapter looks at the factors controlling the speeds of chemical reactions.

▲ Figure 20.1 Some reactions are very fast.

▲ Figure 20.2 Some reactions happen over several minutes.

▲ Figure 20.3 Rusting takes days or weeks.

▲ Figure 20.4 The weathering of limestone and the formation of stalagmites and stalactites takes a very long time.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Describe experiments to investigate the effects of changes in the surface area of a solid, the concentration of a solution, the temperature and the use of a catalyst on the rate of a reaction
- Describe the effects of changes in the surface area of a solid, the concentration of a solution, the pressure of a gas, the temperature and the use of a catalyst on the rate of a reaction
- Explain the effects of changes in the surface area of a solid, the concentration of a solution, the pressure of a gas and the temperature on the rate of a reaction in terms of particle collision theory
- Know that a catalyst is a substance that increases the rate of a reaction, but is chemically unchanged at the end of the reaction
- Know that a catalyst works by providing an alternative pathway with lower activation energy

CHEMISTRY ONLY

- Draw and explain reaction profile diagrams showing ΔH and activation energy.

- Practical: Investigate the effect of changing the surface area of marble chips and of changing the concentration of hydrochloric acid on the rate of reaction between marble chips and dilute hydrochloric acid
- Practical: Investigate the effect of different solids on the catalytic decomposition of hydrogen peroxide solution

EXPERIMENTS TO MEASURE THE RATE OF REACTION

The **rate** of a reaction is the speed at which the amount of reactants decreases or the amount of products increases. It is measured as *a change in the concentration (or amount) of reactants or products per unit time* (per second, per minute etc.).

$$\text{rate of reaction} = \frac{\text{change in concentration, volume or mass}}{\text{time}}$$

Safety Note: Wear eye protection and avoid skin contact with the acid.

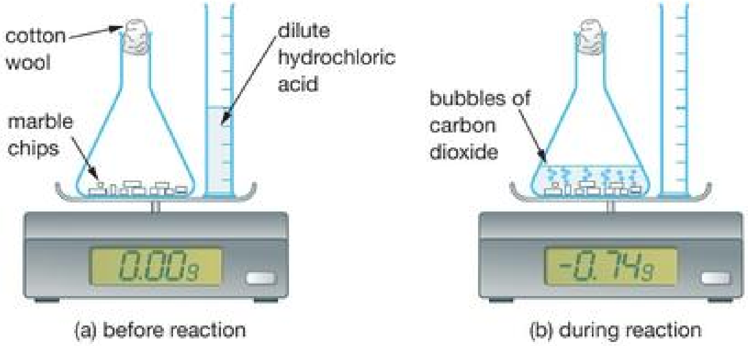
ACTIVITY 5

▼ PRACTICAL: AN INVESTIGATION OF THE RATE OF REACTION BETWEEN MARBLE CHIPS AND DILUTE HYDROCHLORIC ACID

Marble chips are made of calcium carbonate and react with hydrochloric acid to produce carbon dioxide gas. Calcium chloride solution is also formed.

$$CaCO_3(s) + 2HCl(aq) \rightarrow CaCl_2(aq) + H_2O(l) + CO_2(g)$$

Figure 20.5 shows some apparatus that can be used to measure how the mass of carbon dioxide produced changes with time. Part (a) is drawn as the apparatus would look before the reaction starts.



(a) before reaction (b) during reaction

▲ Figure 20.5 Investigating the reaction between calcium carbonate and hydrochloric acid.

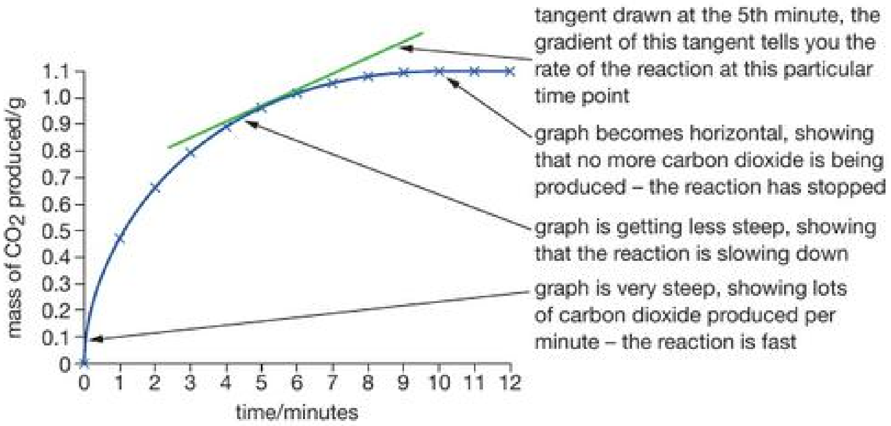
The following procedure could be used:

- Use a measuring cylinder to measure 25 cm³ of 2.00 mol/dm³ dilute hydrochloric acid.
- Add 5.00 g of large marble chips to a conical flask and place a piece of cotton wool at the opening of the flask. The cotton wool is there to allow the carbon dioxide to escape during the reaction, but to stop any acid spitting out. The marble is in *excess* – some of it will be left over when the acid is all used up.
- Place everything on a balance and reset it to zero.
- Add the acid to the marble chips and record the reading on the balance every 30 seconds.

Part (b) shows what happens during the reaction. The acid has been poured into the flask and everything has been replaced on the balance. Once the reaction starts, the balance shows a negative mass. The mass goes down because the carbon dioxide escapes through the cotton wool.

When we plot a graph of mass of carbon dioxide lost against time, we obtain something similar to the one in Figure 20.6.

The steeper the slope (gradient) of the line, the faster the reaction. We can see from Figure 20.6 that about 0.47 g of carbon dioxide is produced in the first minute. Only about 0.20 g of extra carbon dioxide is produced in the second minute, the reaction is slowing down.



▲ Figure 20.6 The mass of carbon dioxide lost when calcium carbonate reacts with hydrochloric acid.

We can calculate the *average rate* of the reaction during any time interval by using

$$\text{rate} = \frac{\text{mass of CO}_2\text{ lost}}{\text{time}}$$

For example, the average rate of the reaction in the *first* minute

$$= \frac{0.47}{1} = 0.47\,\text{g/min}$$

The average rate of the reaction in the *second* minute

$$= \frac{0.20}{1} = 0.20\,\text{g/min}$$

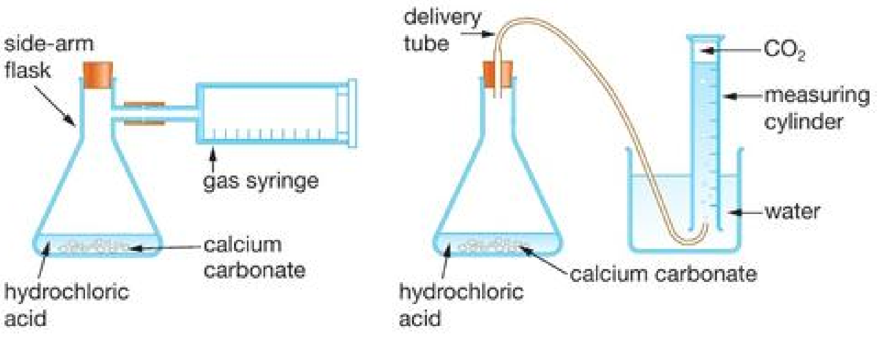
The average rate of the reaction over the *first two* minutes

$$= \frac{0.67}{2} = 0.34\,\text{g/min}$$

We can see the reaction is fastest at the beginning. It then slows down, until it eventually stops because *all the hydrochloric acid has been used up*.

We can measure how fast the reaction is going *at any time point* by finding the slope (gradient) of the line at that point. This is the rate of the reaction *at that point* (rather than the average). This is done by drawing a tangent to the line at the time you are interested in and finding its slope (gradient). For example, at 5 minutes the carbon dioxide is being lost at the rate of about 0.05 g per minute (see Figure 20.6).

We can also follow the rate of this reaction by measuring the *volume* of carbon dioxide given off. The apparatus shown in Figure 20.7 can be used.



▲ Figure 20.7 Either method can be used to measure the volume of CO_2 given off.

HINT

You are unlikely to be asked to draw tangents and find rates like this in an exam.

REMINDER

Remember, the marble chips were in excess (there was more than enough to react with all the hydrochloric acid). There will still be unreacted marble chips in the flask at the end.

EXPLAINING WHAT'S HAPPENING

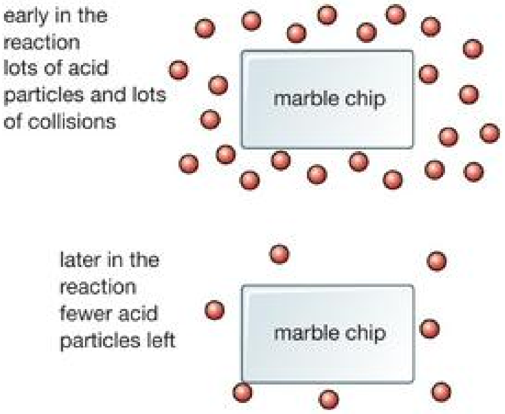
We can explain the shape of the curve by thinking about the particles present and how they interact. This is called the **collision theory**.

Reactions can happen only when particles collide. Not all collisions end up in a reaction. Many particles just bounce off each other. In order for a reaction to actually happen, *the particles have to collide with a minimum amount of energy*, called the **activation energy**. *The collisions with energy greater than or equal to the activation energy* are usually called **successful collisions**.

In the reaction between calcium carbonate and hydrochloric acid, particles in the acid have to collide with the particles at the surface of the marble chips. As the acid particles are getting used up, the collision rate decreases, and so the reaction slows down. The marble is in a large excess so that its shape doesn't change very much during the reaction.

KEY POINT

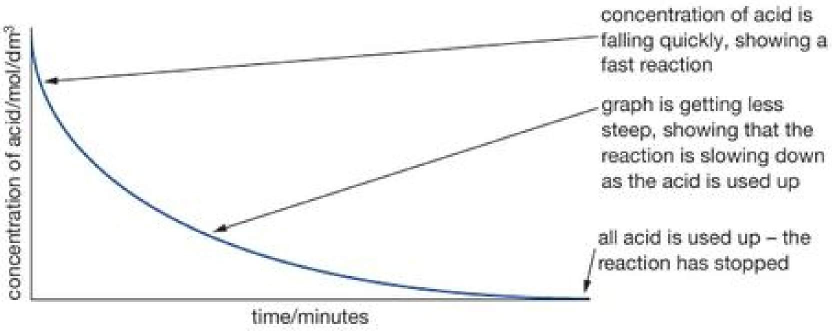
If you have studied Chapter 16, you may realise that the particles we are talking about in the acid are H^+ ions. A reaction occurs when the H^+ ions in the acid collide successfully with the CO_3^{2-} ions in the calcium carbonate. You should not talk about HCl molecules colliding with $CaCO_3$ molecules. If in doubt about what particles are actually colliding, it is probably safer to just use the word *particle*.


early in the reaction
lots of acid particles and lots of collisions
marble chip
later in the reaction
fewer acid particles left
marble chip

▲ Figure 20.8 As the reaction proceeds, the collision rate of acid particles with the marble chips decreases.

A DIFFERENT FORM OF GRAPH

At International GCSE you normally plot graphs showing the mass or volume of product *formed* during a reaction. It is possible, however, that you will see graphs showing the fall in the concentration of one of the *reactants* – in this case, the concentration of the dilute hydrochloric acid.



▲ Figure 20.9 The fall in concentration of hydrochloric acid over time

Where the graph is falling most quickly (is steepest), it shows that the reaction is fastest.

Eventually, the graph becomes horizontal because the reaction has stopped when all the acid has been consumed.

CHANGING THE SURFACE AREA OF THE REACTANTS

ACTIVITY 6

▼ PRACTICAL: INVESTIGATING THE EFFECT OF CHANGING THE SURFACE AREA OF MARBLE CHIPS ON THE RATE OF REACTION BETWEEN MARBLE CHIPS AND DILUTE HYDROCHLORIC ACID

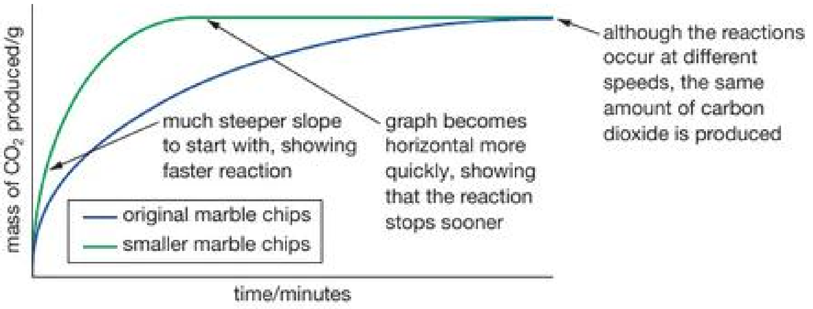
Safety Note: Wear eye protection and avoid skin contact with the acid.

HINT

If we are going to investigate the effect of changing the size of the marble chips, it is important that everything else stays exactly the same to make this a valid (fair) test.

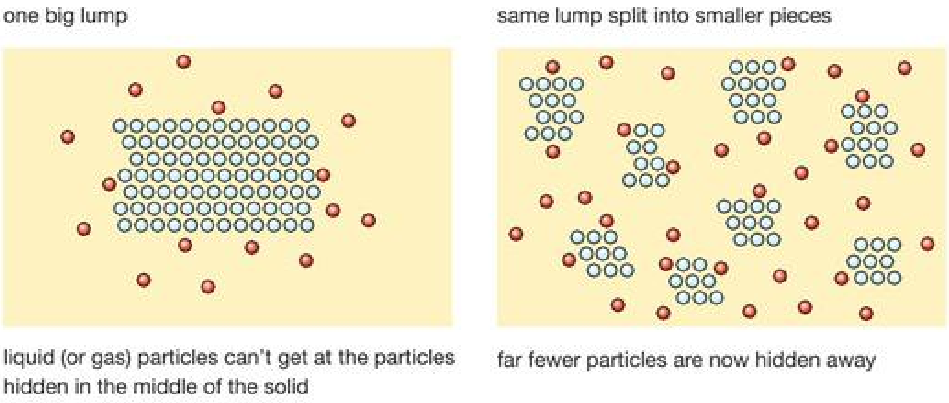
We can repeat the experiment in Activity 5 using exactly the same quantities of everything, but using much smaller marble chips. The reaction with the smaller chips happens faster.

We can plot both sets of results (Activities 5 and 6) on the same graph (Figure 20.10). Notice that the same mass of carbon dioxide is produced because we are using the same quantities of everything in both experiments. However, the reaction with the smaller chips starts off much faster and finishes sooner.



▲ Figure 20.10 The effect of using smaller marble chips

Reactions between solids and liquids (or solids and gases) are faster if the solids are present as a lot of small pieces rather than a few big ones. The more finely divided the solid, the faster the reaction. This is because the *surface area* in contact with the gas or liquid is *much greater* and there are more particles of the solid exposed on the surface. Only the particles on the surface are available for collisions. The *frequency of successful collisions increases* as the surface area of the solid increases.


one big lump
same lump split into smaller pieces
liquid (or gas) particles can't get at the particles hidden in the middle of the solid
far fewer particles are now hidden away

▲ Figure 20.11 The more divided the solid, the faster the reaction

▲ Figure 20.12 A catalytic converter has a honeycomb structure to give a very large surface area for the exhaust gases to flow through.

Large surface areas are frequently used to speed up reactions outside the lab. For example, a **catalytic converter** for a car uses expensive metals such as platinum, palladium and rhodium coated onto a honeycomb structure in a very thin layer to give the maximum possible surface area.

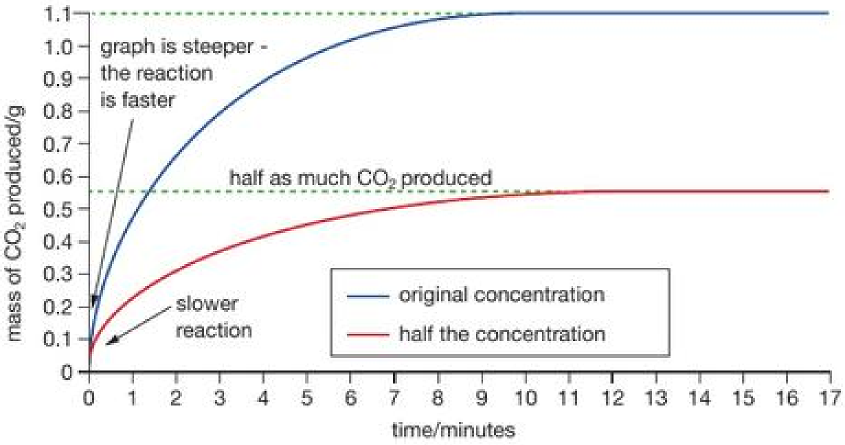
In the presence of these metals, harmful substances such as carbon monoxide and nitrogen oxides are converted into relatively harmless carbon dioxide and nitrogen. The large surface area means the reaction is very rapid. This is important because the gases in the exhaust system are in contact with the catalytic converter for only a very short time.

CHANGING THE CONCENTRATION OF THE REACTANTS

THE EFFECT OF CHANGING THE CONCENTRATION

We can repeat our original experiment with large marble chips and hydrochloric acid. Everything is kept the same except we use hydrochloric acid of half the concentration.

We find that reducing the concentration of the acid makes the reaction slower. We can see this on our graph because the graph (red line) is less steep than for our original experiment (blue line).



▲ Figure 20.13 The effect of changing the concentration of the acid

REMINDER

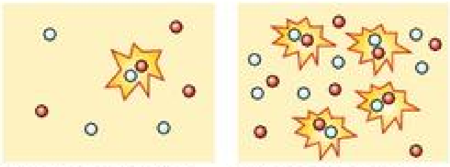
Remember, the marble chips were in excess, so this makes no difference.

In our original experiment we used 25 cm³ of 2.00 mol/dm³ hydrochloric acid. In this experiment we used 25 cm³ of 1.00 mol/dm³ hydrochloric acid. In the second experiment we have started with half the number of hydrochloric acid particles (half as many moles) and so we will produce half as much carbon dioxide.

KEY POINT

When explaining this, do not only say that there are more collisions. You must always include the idea of time. So, you should say things such as '*the particles collide more frequently or there are more collisions per second*'.

In general, if you increase the concentration of the reactants, the reaction becomes faster. *Increasing the concentration increases the number of acid particles within a fixed volume*, therefore the particles are closer together and collide more frequently. There are *more successful collisions* between the acid particles and the marble chips *every second*.



lower concentration higher concentration

▲ Figure 20.14 At a higher concentration, more particles collide per second

ACTIVITY 7

▼ PRACTICAL: INVESTIGATING THE EFFECT OF CHANGING THE CONCENTRATION OF THE ACID ON THE RATE OF REACTION BETWEEN MARBLE CHIPS AND DILUTE HYDROCHLORIC ACID

We can repeat our previous experiment in Activity 5 using the original large marble chips, but using hydrochloric acid of different concentrations. Everything else would be the same, that is, the mass of the marble chips (5.00 g) and the total volume of the acid (25 cm^3). We can dilute the acid by adding distilled water to the original 2.00 mol/dm^3 solution but making sure the total volume of water and acid remains at 25 cm^3.

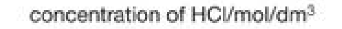
For example, if 12.5 cm^3 of the original HCl is mixed with 12.5 cm^3 of distilled water, we get an acid solution of half of the original concentration (1.00 mol/dm^3). If only 5 cm^3 of the original HCl is mixed with 20 cm^3 of distilled water, the acid solution is now one-fifth (5 out of 25) of the original concentration (0.40 mol/dm^3).

In this experiment we are going to calculate the average rate during the first 30 seconds, so we record the mass of carbon dioxide lost in 30 seconds.

We can calculate the average rate of reaction within the first 30 seconds by dividing the mass loss by 30. For example, if we obtain a loss of 0.32 g:

$$\text{average rate} = \frac{0.32}{30} = 0.011\ \text{g/s}$$

To identify the effect of changing concentration on rate, we can plot the results for the different concentrations on a piece of graph paper with rate on the *y*-axis and concentration of acid on the *x*-axis (Figure 20.15). The line of best fit should go through the origin (0, 0). If there is no acid, there should be no rate. A straight line going through the origin shows that the rate of the reaction is *directly proportional* to the concentration of the hydrochloric acid. If the concentration doubles, the rate should double. If the concentration triples, the rate should triple.



▲ Figure 20.15 The more concentrated the acid, the faster the reaction

Safety Note: Wear eye protection and avoid skin contact with the acid.

KEY POINT

To calculate the concentration of hydrochloric acid you need to look at the proportions of acid and water. The equation to calculate the concentration of hydrochloric acid is:

$$\text{concentration (mol/dm}^3\text{)} = \frac{\text{volume of hydrochloric acid (cm}^3\text{)}}{\text{total volume of solution (25 cm}^3\text{)}} \times \text{original concentration (2.00 mol/dm}^3\text{)}$$

DID YOU KNOW?

The words *proportional* and *directly proportional* mean the same thing. If the graph we plotted was a straight line that did not go through the origin, this is not a proportional relationship. In that case we would describe the relationship as *linear*.

EXTENSION WORK

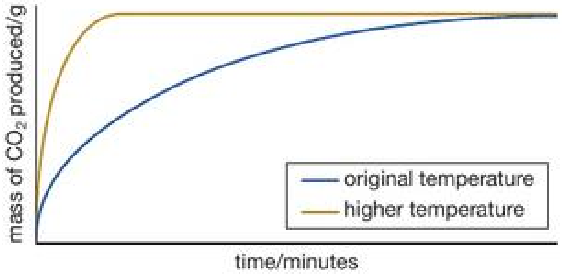
The relationship between the rate of a reaction and the concentration of the reactants is not always as uncomplicated as it seems. In some reactions, the rate of the reaction is proportional to the concentration of the reactants, as shown by the example in Figure 20.15. We say the reaction is first order with respect to a particular reactant.

If you go on to do chemistry at a higher level, you will come across reactions in which increasing the concentration of one of the reactants has no effect on how fast the reaction happens. These reactions are of zero order with respect to the reactants. In some other cases the rate of a reaction might be proportional to the square of the concentration of a reactant. In this case we say the reaction is of second order with respect to the reactant.

CHANGING THE TEMPERATURE OF THE REACTION

We can do the original experiment again, but this time at a higher temperature. We keep everything else exactly the same as before.

Reactions get faster as the temperature is increased; the graph is *steeper* and *finishes sooner*. The same mass of gas is given off because we have used the same quantities of everything in the mixture.



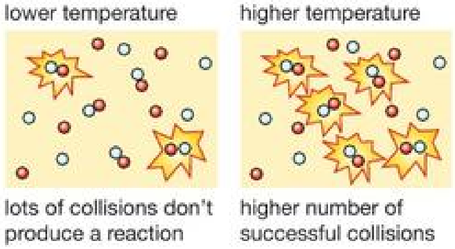
▲ Figure 20.16 The effect of changing the temperature of the reaction

There are two factors that need to be considered when explaining why increasing temperature increases the rate of reaction:

- Increasing the temperature means that the particles are moving faster, and so collide more frequently. That will make the reaction go faster, but it only accounts for a small part of the increase in rate.
- We learned above that in order for a collision to cause a reaction (*a successful collision*), the particles have to collide with a minimum amount of energy, called the *activation energy*. A relatively small increase in temperature produces *a very large increase in the number of particles with energy greater than or equal to the activation energy*. This means that it is going to be much more probable that two particles which have sufficient energy to react collide with each other. So *the frequency of successful collisions increases*.

KEY POINT

As an approximation, a 10 °C increase in temperature approximately doubles the rate of a reaction. This works for quite a lot of reactions that we meet in the lab, as long as the temperature remains within a few tens of degrees of room temperature.


lower temperature
higher temperature
lots of collisions don't produce a reaction
higher number of successful collisions

▲ Figure 20.17 A small increase in temperature produces a large increase in the number of collisions with energy greater than the activation energy.

CHANGING THE PRESSURE ON THE REACTION

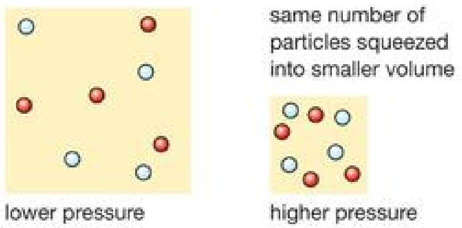
Changing the pressure of a reaction in which the reactants are only solids or liquids makes almost no difference to the rate of reaction. But increasing the pressure of a reaction where the reactants are *gases* does speed up the reaction.

If we have a fixed mass of a gas, we increase the pressure by squeezing it into a smaller volume.

This forces the particles *closer together*, so they *collide more frequently*. This is exactly the same as increasing the concentration of the gas.

KEY POINT

In solids and liquids, particles are packed closely together and there is hardly any space in between. Increasing the pressure would not change the volumes of the solids or liquids much, therefore there would hardly be any change in the number of particles in a certain volume.



▲ Figure 20.18 Increased pressure means gas particles collide more frequently.

CATALYSTS

WHAT ARE CATALYSTS?

Catalysts are *substances that speed up chemical reactions*, but aren't used up in the process. They are still there, *chemically unchanged, at the end of the reaction*. Because they aren't consumed, small amounts of catalyst can be used to process lots and lots of reactant particles. Different reactions need different catalysts.

THE CATALYTIC DECOMPOSITION OF HYDROGEN PEROXIDE

▲ Figure 20.19 Bombardier beetles use hydrogen peroxide as part of their defence mechanism.

Bombardier beetles defend themselves by spraying a hot, unpleasant liquid at their attackers. Part of the reaction involves splitting hydrogen peroxide into water and oxygen, using the enzyme catalase. **Enzymes** are *biological catalysts*. This reaction happens almost explosively, and produces a lot of heat. The same enzyme can be found in potatoes, or even liver tissues.

There are a lot of other things that also catalyse the decomposition of hydrogen peroxide. Some examples are manganese(IV) oxide (also called manganese dioxide), MnO_2, and lead(IV) oxide, PbO_2. Manganese(IV) oxide is what is normally used in the lab to speed up the decomposition of hydrogen peroxide.

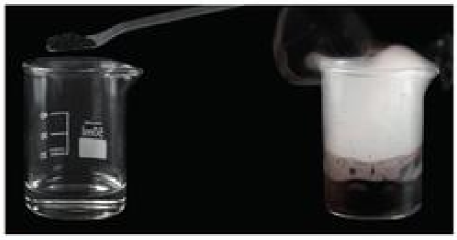
The reaction happening with the hydrogen peroxide is:

hydrogen peroxide → water + oxygen

$$2H_2O_2(aq) \rightarrow 2H_2O(l) + O_2(g)$$

Notice that we don't write catalysts into the equation because they are chemically unchanged at the end of the reaction. If you like, you can write their name or formula over the top of the arrow.

SHOWING THAT A SUBSTANCE IS A CATALYST



▶ Figure 20.20 The beakers both contain hydrogen peroxide solution, the right-hand one has MnO_2 added to speed up oxygen production.

It isn't difficult to show that manganese(IV) oxide speeds up the decomposition of hydrogen peroxide to produce oxygen. Figure 20.20 shows two beakers, both of which contain hydrogen peroxide solution. Without the catalyst, there is only a trace of bubbles in the solution. With it, oxygen is given off quickly.

How can you show that the manganese(IV) oxide is chemically unchanged by the reaction? It still looks the same, but has any been used up? You can only find out by weighing it before you add it to the hydrogen peroxide solution and then reweighing it at the end.

You can separate the manganese(IV) oxide from the liquid by filtering it through a weighed filter paper, allowing the paper and residue to dry, and then reweighing to calculate the mass of the remaining manganese(IV) oxide. You should find that the mass hasn't changed.

Safety Note: Wear eye protection and avoid skin contact with the solution.

HINT

The experiment in Figure 20.21 is very simple and easy to set up. However, using this setup has the disadvantage that some oxygen will escape at the beginning of the reaction when MnO_2 is added to H_2O_2 before the bung can be put back on the conical flask. Using a weighing bottle like the one in Figure 20.22 is a simple way of mixing the chemicals together without losing any oxygen before you can get the bung in. When you are ready to start the reaction, shake the flask so that the weighing bottle falls over and the manganese(IV) oxide comes into contact with the hydrogen peroxide. You need to keep shaking so that an even mixture is formed.

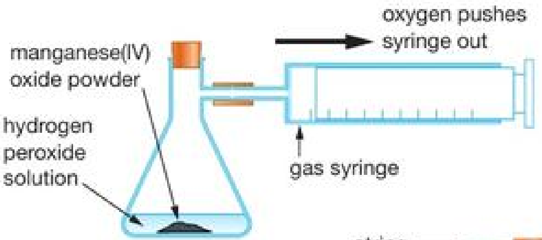
DID YOU KNOW?

'*vol*', meaning volume, is a measurement for concentration for hydrogen peroxide. 1 cm³ of 2 vol hydrogen peroxide solution decomposes completely to give 2 cm³ of oxygen.

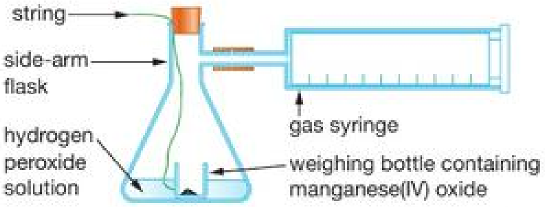
ACTIVITY 8

▼ PRACTICAL: INVESTIGATE THE EFFECT OF DIFFERENT SOLIDS ON THE CATALYTIC DECOMPOSITION OF HYDROGEN PEROXIDE SOLUTION

Figure 20.21 shows apparatus that can be used to measure how the volume of oxygen produced changes with time.


oxygen pushes syringe out
manganese(IV) oxide powder
hydrogen peroxide solution
gas syringe

▲ Figure 20.21 Apparatus to measure the volume of oxygen evolved.

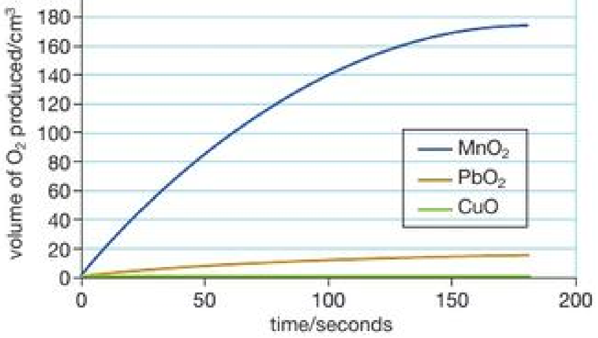

string
side-arm flask
hydrogen peroxide solution
gas syringe
weighing bottle containing manganese(IV) oxide

▲ Figure 20.22 Modified apparatus to avoid the loss of oxygen at the beginning of the experiment.

The following procedure could be used:

- Measure 100 cm³ of 2 *vol* hydrogen peroxide and transfer to a 250 cm³ conical flask.
- Weigh out 0.20 g of manganese(IV) oxide on a balance.
- Add the manganese(IV) oxide to the hydrogen peroxide and quickly replace the bung with the gas syringe already attached. Swirl the reaction mixture at a constant speed.
- Record the amount of oxygen produced every 20 seconds for 3 minutes and plot a graph of volume of oxygen versus time.
- Repeat the reaction with 0.20 g of lead(IV) oxide and copper(II) oxide but keep everything else the same.

The sample data below show manganese(IV) oxide is a very effective catalyst for the decomposition of hydrogen peroxide. In comparison, lead(IV) oxide is less effective as the rate of the reaction is much slower and copper(II) oxide does not act as a catalyst for this reaction at all.



▲ Figure 20.23 The catalytic effect of different solids on the decomposition of H_2O_2.

HOW DOES A CATALYST WORK?

Not all collisions result in a reaction happening. Collisions have to involve at least a certain minimum amount of energy, called the *activation energy* (page 230).

If a reaction is slow, it means that very few collisions have this amount of energy; when most collisions happen, the particles simply bounce off each other.

Catalysts work by providing an alternative route for the reaction, involving a lower activation energy.

If the activation energy is lower, many more collisions are likely to be successful. The reaction happens faster because many more particles *have energy greater than or equal to the activation energy for the alternative route.* The energy of the particles has not changed but it has been made easier for them to react.

▲ Figure 20.24 Traffic passes easily through a road tunnel under a mountain.

You can illustrate this with a simple everyday example. Imagine you have a mountain between two valleys. Only a few very energetic people will climb over the mountain from one valley to the next. Now imagine building a road tunnel through the mountain. Lots of people will be able to travel easily from one valley to the next.

Be careful how you phrase the statement explaining how a catalyst works. You should say 'Catalysts provide an alternative route with a lower activation energy'.

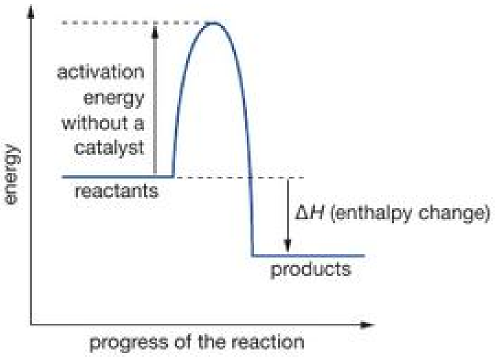
They *do not* 'lower the activation energy' any more than building a tunnel lowers the mountain. The original route is still there, and if particles collide with enough energy they will still use it, just as very energetic people will still choose to climb over the top of the mountain.

CHEMISTRY ONLY

You can show the effect of a catalyst on a reaction profile diagram (Figure 20.25 and Figure 20.26). Adding a catalyst gives the reaction an alternative way to happen that involves a lower activation energy.

KEY POINT

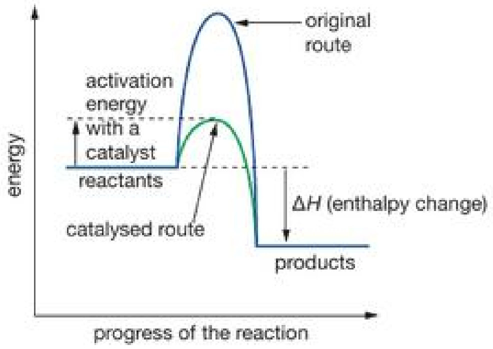
The reaction here is an exothermic reaction: the products have lower energy than the reactants.



▲ Figure 20.25 A reaction profile diagram

KEY POINT

Notice in Figure 20.26 that the difference in energy between the reactants and the products remains the same with or without a catalyst.



▲ Figure 20.26 Activation energy with a catalyst

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

CATALYSTS IN INDUSTRY

Catalysts are especially important in industrial reactions because they help substances to react quickly at lower temperatures and pressures than would otherwise be needed. This saves money.

CHAPTER QUESTIONS

SKILLS CREATIVITY 5

1 A student carried out an experiment to investigate the rate of a reaction between an excess of dolomite (magnesium carbonate) and 50 cm³ of dilute hydrochloric acid. The dolomite was in small pieces. The reaction is:

$$MgCO_3(s) + 2HCl(aq) \rightarrow MgCl_2(aq) + H_2O(l) + CO_2(g)$$

He measured the volume of carbon dioxide given off at regular intervals, with the results shown in the table below.

Time/s	0	30	60	90	120	150	180	210	240	270	300	330	360
Volume/cm³	0	27	45	59	70	78	85	90	94	97	99	100	100

a Draw a diagram of the apparatus you would use for this experiment and label it.

SKILLS INTERPRETATION

b Plot these results on a piece of graph paper, with time on the *x*-axis and volume of gas on the *y*-axis.

SKILLS ANALYSIS, REASONING 6

c At what time is the gas being given off most quickly? Explain why the reaction is fastest at that time.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 5

d Use your graph to find out how long it took to produce 50 cm³ of gas.

6

e Use your graph to calculate the average rate of this reaction in the first 80 seconds.

SKILLS REASONING

f In each of the following questions, state and explain what would happen to the initial rate of the reaction and to the total volume of gas given off if various changes were made to the experiment.

 i The mass of dolomite and the volume and concentration of acid were kept constant, but the dolomite was in one big lump instead of small pieces.

 ii The mass of dolomite was unchanged and it was still in small pieces. 50 cm³ of hydrochloric acid was used, which had half the original concentration.

SKILLS REASONING

6

- **iii** The dolomite was unchanged again. This time 25 cm^3 of the original acid was used instead of 50 cm^3.
- **iv** The acid was heated to 40 °C before the dolomite was added to it.

7

2 The effect of concentration and temperature on the rate of a reaction can be explored using the reaction between magnesium ribbon and dilute sulfuric acid:

$$Mg(s) + H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow MgSO_4(aq) + H_2(g)$$

A student dropped a 2 cm length of magnesium ribbon into 25 cm^3 of dilute sulfuric acid (a large excess of acid) in a boiling tube. She stirred the contents of the tube continuously and timed how long it took for the magnesium to disappear.

- **a** What would you expect to happen to the time taken for the reaction if the student repeated the experiment using the same length of magnesium with a mixture of 20 cm^3 of acid and 5 cm^3 of water? Explain your answer in relation to the collision theory.
- **b** What would you expect to happen to the time taken for the reaction if she repeated the experiment using the original quantities of magnesium and acid, but first heated the acid to 50 °C? Explain your answer in relation to the collision theory.
- **c** Give a reason why is it important to keep the reaction mixture stirred continuously.

CHEMISTRY ONLY

SKILLS INTERPRETATION

10

- **d** The reaction between magnesium ribbon and dilute sulfuric acid is exothermic. Draw a reaction profile diagram for this reaction, label the axes clearly and show both the activation energy and enthalpy change on your diagram.

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

3 Catalysts speed up reactions, but can be recovered chemically unchanged at the end of the reaction.

SKILLS REASONING

- **a** Explain how a catalyst works to increase the rate of reactions.

SKILLS DECISION MAKING

- **b** Describe how you would find out whether iron(III) oxide was a catalyst for the decomposition of hydrogen peroxide solution. Note: you need to show not only that it speeds the reaction up, but that it is chemically unchanged at the end.

CHEMISTRY ONLY

- **c** Draw a clearly labelled reaction profile diagram showing the effect of using a catalyst in a reaction.

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

21 REVERSIBLE REACTIONS AND EQUILIBRIA

This chapter explores the idea of 'reversibility' in a reaction, and how you can control the conditions of such reactions in order to obtain as much as possible of what you want.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

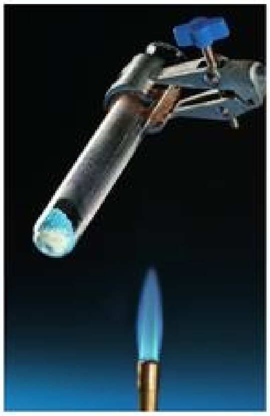
- Know that some reactions are reversible and that this is indicated by the symbol ⇌ in equations
- Describe reversible reactions such as the dehydration of hydrated copper(II) sulfate and the effect of heat on ammonium chloride

CHEMISTRY ONLY

- Know that a reversible reaction can reach dynamic equilibrium in a sealed container.
- Know that the characteristics of a reaction at dynamic equilibrium are:
  - the forward and reverse reactions occur at the same rate
  - the concentrations of reactants and products remain constant.
- Understand why a catalyst does not affect the position of equilibrium in a reversible reaction.
- Know the effect of changing either temperature or pressure on the position of equilibrium in a reversible reaction:
  - an increase (or decrease) in temperature shifts the position of equilibrium in the direction of the endothermic (or exothermic) reaction
  - an increase (or decrease) in pressure shifts the position of equilibrium in the direction that produces fewer (or more) moles of gas.

REVERSIBILITY AND DYNAMIC EQUILIBRIA

TWO REVERSIBLE REACTIONS



▲ Figure 21.1 Copper(II) sulfate crystals are split into anhydrous copper(II) sulfate and water on gentle heating.

DEHYDRATION OF COPPER(II) SULFATE CRYSTALS

If you heat blue copper(II) sulfate crystals gently, the blue crystals turn to a white powder and water is driven off. Heating causes the crystals to lose their *water of crystallisation* and white *anhydrous* copper(II) sulfate is formed. 'Anhydrous' simply means 'without water'.

$$\underset{\text{blue}}{CuSO_4{\cdot}5H_2O(s)} \rightarrow \underset{\text{white}}{CuSO_4(s)} + 5H_2O(l)$$

Heat is needed for this reaction to occur

If you add water to the white solid, it turns blue again; it also becomes very warm. See Figure 18.3 (page 192).

$$\underset{\text{white}}{CuSO_4(s)} + 5H_2O(l) \rightarrow \underset{\text{blue}}{CuSO_4{\cdot}5H_2O(s)}$$

Heat is released from this reaction

The original change has been exactly reversed. Even the heat that you put in originally has been given out again. This is called a **reversible** reaction and is indicated by a special arrow:

$$CuSO_4{\cdot}5H_2O(s) \rightleftharpoons CuSO_4(s) + 5H_2O(l)$$

HEATING AMMONIUM CHLORIDE

If you heat ammonium chloride, the white crystals disappear from the bottom of the tube and reappear further up. Heating ammonium chloride splits it into the colourless gases ammonia and hydrogen chloride.

$NH_4Cl(s) \rightarrow NH_3(g) + HCl(g)$ Heat is needed for this reaction to occur
white solid colourless gases

KEY POINT

This reaction is an example of *thermal decomposition*.

These gases recombine further up the tube, where it is cooler, to form a white solid:

$NH_3(g) + HCl(g) \rightarrow NH_4Cl(s)$ Heat is released from this reaction
colourless gases white solid

KEY POINT

This is a reaction between an acid (HCl) and a base (NH_3) (see Chapter 17, page 186).

HINT

If you add water to the white solid, it turns blue again; it also becomes very warm. See Figure 11.11 (page 93).

The reaction reverses when the conditions are changed from hot to cool.

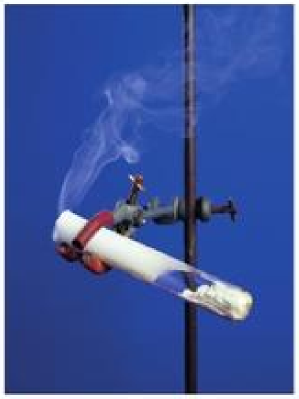


Figure 21.2 Heating ammonium chloride

This can, again, be shown with the reversible arrow:

$NH_3(g) + HCl(g) \rightleftharpoons NH_4Cl(s)$

CHEMISTRY ONLY

REVERSIBLE REACTIONS IN A SEALED CONTAINER

A *sealed container* means that no substances are added to the reaction mixture and no substances escape from it. On the other hand, heat may be either given off or absorbed.

Imagine a substance that can exist in two forms, one of which we'll represent by a blue square and the other by a yellow square. Suppose you start off with a sample which is entirely blue.

KEY POINT

Imagine you started with 64 blue squares, and in any second there was a one in four chance of each of them changing colour. In the first second, 16 would change colour, leaving 48 blue squares. In the next second, a quarter of these change colour, but that's only 12; this leaves 36 blue ones. In the third second, nine would change colour, and so on. The rate of change falls as the number (concentration) of blue squares falls.

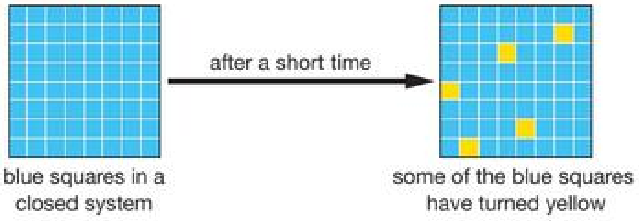
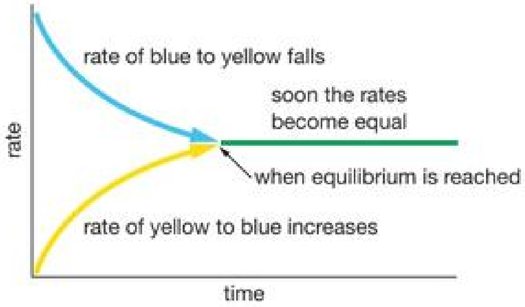

after a short time
blue squares in a closed system
some of the blue squares have turned yellow

Figure 21.3 Blue squares converting to yellow ones

Because you are starting with a high concentration of blue squares, at the beginning of the reaction the rate at which they turn yellow will be relatively high in terms of the number of squares changing colour per second. The number of blue squares changing colour per second (the rate of change) will fall as the blue gradually gets used up.

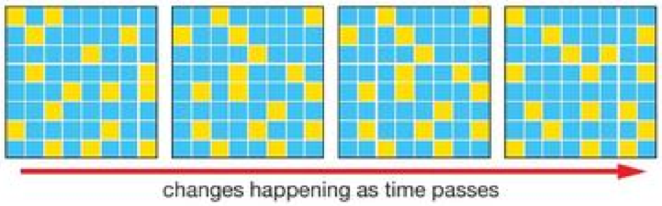
But the yellow squares can also change back to blue ones again. This is because it is a *reversible* reaction, *in which the products can react with each other and go back to form reactants*. At the start, there aren't any yellow squares, so the rate of change from yellow into blue is zero. As their number increases, the rate at which yellow change to blue also increases.



▲ Figure 21.4 The rates of the forward reaction and the reverse reaction become equal when equilibrium is reached.

Soon the rates of both reactions become equal. At that point, blue squares are changing into yellow ones at exactly the same rate that yellow ones are turning blue.

What would you see in the reaction mixture when that happens? The total numbers of blue squares and of yellow squares would remain constant, but the reaction would still be happening. If you followed the fate of any one particular square, sometimes it would be blue and sometimes yellow.



▲ Figure 21.5 The reaction continues, but total numbers of blue and yellow squares remain constant.

HINT

Be careful with the wording of your answer in the exam - the concentrations of the reactants and products at equilibrium are *constant*, they are not *equal*.

This is an example of a **dynamic equilibrium**. It is dynamic in the sense that the reactions are still continuing, but *the rate of the forward reaction is equal to the rate of the reverse reaction*. It is an equilibrium in the sense that the total amounts or *concentrations of the various things present (reactants and products) are now constant*.

Notice that you can set up a dynamic equilibrium only if the system is closed *in a sealed container*. If, for example, you removed the yellow squares as soon as they were formed, they would never get the chance to turn blue again. What was a reversible reaction would now go entirely in one direction as blue squares turn yellow without being replaced.

Consider the reversible reaction that occurs when calcium carbonate decomposes:

$$CaCO_3(s) \rightleftharpoons CaO(s) + CO_2(g)$$

If this were not done in a closed container then all the CO_2 would escape and the reverse reaction would not occur.

Reversible reactions will eventually reach a state of equilibrium if they are left in a sealed container.

THE POSITION OF EQUILIBRIUM

Taking a general case where A reacts reversibly to give B:

$$A \rightleftharpoons 2B$$

The reaction from A to B (the left-to-right reaction) is described as the **forward reaction**. The reaction between from B to A (the right-to-left reaction) is called the **reverse reaction**.

If we let this reaction come to equilibrium then measure the amount of each substance present we might find that we have

$$\begin{array}{cc} A & \rightleftharpoons 2B \\ 90\% & 10\% \end{array}$$

Because there is more A than B present at equilibrium, we say that the **position of equilibrium** lies to the left. It is important to realise that equilibrium does not mean 50% of reactants and products; the key thing is that the concentrations of A and B stay constant at equilibrium. These concentrations will remain constant until we change the conditions, for instance the temperature or the pressure. If we increase the temperature and allow the reaction time to reach equilibrium again, we might find that we have:

$$\begin{array}{cc} A & \rightleftharpoons 2B \\ 80\% & 20\% \end{array}$$

Because the change we made decreased the concentration of what is on the left (A) and increased the concentration of what is on the right (B), we say that *the position of equilibrium has shifted to the right*. It does not matter that we still have more A than B, what we are looking at is how things change when we change the conditions.

HOW TO PREDICT THE EFFECT OF CHANGING CONDITIONS ON THE POSITION OF EQUILIBRIUM

This section looks at what can be done to change the position of equilibrium to produce as much as possible of what you want in the equilibrium mixture.

When the conditions in a system in dynamic equilibrium are changed, for example the temperature or the pressure, the position of equilibrium might shift left or right to give less or more of the products. A useful way to help you to decide what happens if various conditions are changed is to remember that *the reaction always sets about counteracting any changes you make*. This is similar to the idea that if a room is too warm you might take off your jacket so that you can cool down, or if the room is too cold you might put some more clothes on!

Things we might try to do to influence the reaction include:

- changing the pressure
- changing the temperature
- adding a catalyst (in fact, this turns out to have no effect on the position of equilibrium).

CHANGING THE PRESSURE

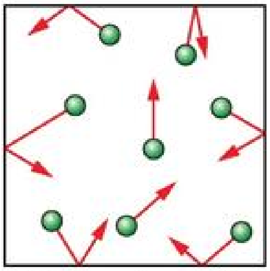
KEY POINT

The particles in solids and liquids are very close together and they are affected very little by changes in pressure. Their concentration does not really change as the pressure changes.

This only really applies to reactions in which at least one of the reactants or products is a *gas*, and where *the total numbers of gaseous molecules on both sides of the equation are different*. In the example here, there are three gaseous molecules on the left, but only two on the right.

$$A(g) + 2B(g) \rightleftharpoons C(g) + D(g)$$

Pressure is caused by molecules hitting the walls of their container. If you have fewer molecules in the same volume at the same temperature, you will have a lower pressure.



▲ Figure 21.6 Pressure is caused by molecules hitting the walls of their container – the fewer molecules, the lower the pressure.

If you increase the pressure, the reaction will respond by reducing it again. It can reduce the pressure by producing fewer gaseous molecules to hit the walls of the container, in this case by converting A + 2B (3 molecules) into C + D (2 molecules). Increasing the pressure will always cause the position of equilibrium to shift in the direction which produces the smaller number of gaseous molecules.

Consider the reaction between nitrogen gas and hydrogen gas to make ammonia:

$$N_2(g) + 3H_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2NH_3(g)$$

If we want to make as much ammonia as possible, we need to make the pressure as high as possible. There are four molecules of gas on the left-hand side but only two on the right-hand side. Increasing the pressure will therefore shift the position of equilibrium to the right (the ammonia side), the side with fewer gas molecules.

If there is the same number of gaseous molecules on both sides of the equation, changing the pressure will make no difference to the position of equilibrium. For example, in this reaction:

$$H_2(g) + I_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2HI(g)$$

increasing or decreasing the pressure has no effect on the position of equilibrium – it does not affect how much hydrogen, iodine and hydrogen iodide we have at equilibrium.

To summarise:

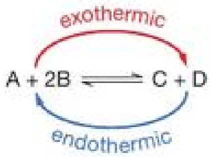
Increasing pressure: the position of equilibrium shifts to the side which has *fewer gas molecules.*

Decreasing pressure: the position of equilibrium shifts to the side which has *more gas molecules.*

CHANGING THE TEMPERATURE

REMINDER

Exothermic and endothermic reactions and ΔH values are explained in Chapter 19.



▲ Figure 21.7 If a reaction is exothermic in the forward reaction it will be endothermic in the reverse direction.

KEY POINT

At equilibrium, the rate of the forward reaction is equal to the rate of the reverse reaction so as much heat is being given out as is taken in – nothing appears to change.

KEY POINT

In an endothermic reaction the heat is converted to a different form (chemical energy), so it is being removed.

When we write a reversible reaction showing an enthalpy change, the ΔH always shows the enthalpy change for the *forward* reaction. The value of ΔH is given as if the reaction was a one-way process.

$$A + 2B \rightleftharpoons C + D \quad \Delta H = -100\,\text{kJ/mol}$$

So, in this case ΔH being negative tells us that the *forward* reaction is *exothermic*.

The reverse reaction will be *endothermic* by exactly the same amount.

Suppose you changed the conditions by decreasing the temperature of the equilibrium, for example if the reaction was originally in equilibrium at 500 °C you lower the temperature to 100 °C. The reaction will respond in a way that increases the temperature again. How can it do that?

If some A and B are converted into C and D, more heat is given out because this is an exothermic change. The extra heat that is produced will warm the reaction mixture up again. In other words, decreasing the temperature will cause the position of equilibrium to move to the right-hand side and more C and D to be formed.

	$A + 2B \rightleftharpoons C + D$	
Equilibrium at 500 °C	80%	20%
Equilibrium at 100 °C	60%	40%

Increasing the temperature will have exactly the opposite effect. The reaction equilibrium will change to remove the extra heat by absorbing it in an endothermic change. This time the reverse reaction is favoured and the position of equilibrium moves to the left.

To summarise:

Increasing temperature: the position of equilibrium shifts in the *endothermic direction*.

Decreasing temperature: the position of equilibrium shifts in the *exothermic direction*.

ADDING A CATALYST

Adding a catalyst speeds up reactions. In a reversible change, it speeds up the forward and reverse reactions by *the same proportion*. For example, if it speeds up the forward reaction ten times, it speeds up the reverse reaction ten times as well.

The net effect of this is that there is *no change* in the position of equilibrium if you add a catalyst. The catalyst is added to increase the rate at which equilibrium is reached.

AN EXAMPLE TO ILLUSTRATE HOW CHANGING REACTION CONDITIONS CAN AFFECT THE POSITION OF EQUILIBRIUM IN A REVERSIBLE REACTION

Nitrogen dioxide, NO_2, is a dark brown, poisonous gas. It can join together in pairs (**dimerise**) to make molecules of dinitrogen tetroxide, N_2O_4, which is colourless. There is a dynamic equilibrium between the two forms:

$$\underset{\text{brown}}{2NO_2(g)} \rightleftharpoons \underset{\text{colourless}}{N_2O_4(g)} \qquad \Delta H = -57\ \text{kJ/mol}$$

THE EFFECT OF PRESSURE

If you increase the pressure, the position of equilibrium will shift to reduce it again by producing fewer gaseous molecules. In other words, the position of equilibrium will move to the right and the reaction will produce more dinitrogen tetroxide.

If you lower the pressure, the position of equilibrium will shift to increase it again by producing more gaseous molecules. Therefore the position of equilibrium shifts to the left, and you will obtain a higher proportion of the brown nitrogen dioxide in the equilibrium mixture.

HINT

Warning! You have to be very careful here about predicting exactly what colour changes you would see. If you increase the pressure, for example, you squeeze the same number of molecules into a smaller space and so the colour will darken initially. Then it fades a bit as the equilibrium re-establishes, but not to its original colour. The gases are still compressed.

THE EFFECT OF TEMPERATURE

Notice from the equation that the change from nitrogen dioxide to dinitrogen tetroxide is exothermic. The negative sign for ΔH shows that heat is given out by the forward reaction.

If you decrease the temperature, the position of equilibrium will shift to produce more heat to counteract the change you have made. In other words, lowering the temperature causes the position of equilibrium to shift in the exothermic direction and there will be more dinitrogen tetroxide in the equilibrium mixture. The colour of the reaction mixture will fade.

If you increase the temperature, the position of equilibrium will shift to lower it again – the position of equilibrium shifts in the reverse, endothermic direction. In other words, more nitrogen dioxide will be formed and the colour of the gas will darken.

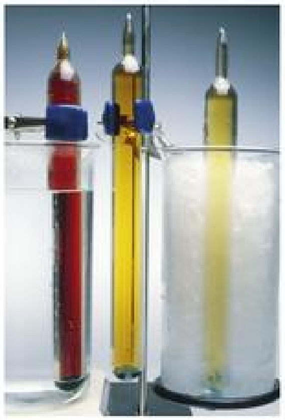


Figure 21.8 Tubes containing the NO_2/N_2O_4 equilibrium at different temperatures.

You can see this happening in Figure 21.8. Of the three tubes containing this equilibrium mixture, one is at lab temperature, one is in ice and one is in hot water. Notice that the hot one is very dark brown and therefore contains a high proportion of nitrogen dioxide.

The one in the ice is slightly paler than the one in the air, showing that it must have a slightly greater proportion of the colourless dinitrogen tetroxide.

THE EFFECT OF CONCENTRATION

EXTENSION WORK

Changing the concentrations of reactants or products in a reversible reaction also has an effect on the position of equilibrium.

Take the reaction in Figure 21.9 as an example. If you add more A, the system responds by removing it again. That produces more C and D, which is what you probably want. You might choose to increase the amount of A if it was essential to convert as much B as possible into product because it was expensive, for example.

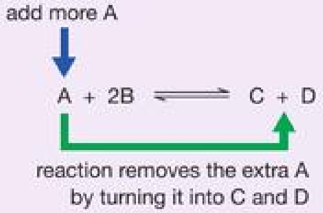


Figure 21.9 Adding more of substance A

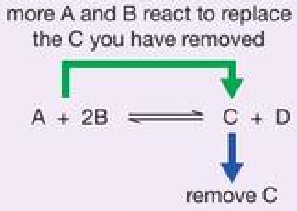


Figure 21.10 Removing substance C as soon as it is formed

Alternatively, if you remove C as soon as it is formed, the reaction will respond by replacing it again by reacting more A and B (Figure 21.10). Removing a substance as soon as it is formed is a useful way of moving the position of equilibrium to generate more product.

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

CHAPTER QUESTIONS

SKILLS REASONING

1 The thermal decomposition of ammonium chloride is a reversible reaction.

$$NH_4Cl(s) \rightleftharpoons NH_3(g) + HCl(g)$$

a Explain how the equation shows that the reaction is reversible.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

b Give one observation associated with the forward reaction.

c Name all the substances present in the reaction mixture if an equilibrium state is reached.

CHEMISTRY ONLY

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 8

2 For the following reactions at equilibrium, predict in which direction (**Left** or **Right** or **No change**) the position of equilibrium might shift if the conditions were changed:

		Change in conditions
$N_2O_4(g) \rightleftharpoons 2NO_2(g)$	Endothermic	Increase in temperature
$2NH_3(g) \rightleftharpoons N_2(g) + 3H_2(g)$	Endothermic	Increase in pressure
$N_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2NO(g)$	Endothermic	Decrease in temperature
$H_2(g) + I_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2HI(g)$	Endothermic	Decrease in pressure
$CO(g) + 2H_2(g) \rightleftharpoons CH_3OH(g)$	Exothermic	Adding a catalyst

7

3 An important stage in the Contact process for the production of sulfuric acid involves a reversible reaction:

$$2SO_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2SO_3(g) \qquad \Delta H = -196\,\text{kJ/mol}$$

At 450 °C the reaction mixture consists of a *dynamic equilibrium* involving sulfur dioxide, oxygen and sulfur trioxde.

a Explain what is meant by the term *dynamic equilibrium*. Be sure that you have explained what both of the words mean.

SKILLS REASONING 8

b Predict and explain the effect of an increase in pressure on the proportion of the sulfur trioxide present in the equilibrium mixture.

c Predict and explain the effect of lowering the temperature of the mixture on the position of equilibrium of the reaction.

4 Hydrogen can be made by the reaction between methane (natural gas) and steam. The reaction can be carried out by passing a mixture of methane and steam over a nickel catalyst at pressures between 2 and 30 atmospheres and a temperature of about 1000 °C.

$$CH_4(g) + H_2O(g) \rightleftharpoons CO(g) + 3H_2(g) \qquad \Delta H = +210\,\text{kJ/mol}$$

a The pressure used is relatively low. What would be the effect on the conversion of the methane into carbon monoxide and hydrogen if the pressure was higher?

b Explain why a high temperature is used to get a good conversion of methane into hydrogen.

c Explain the use of the nickel catalyst in the production of hydrogen, referring to both the rate of the reaction and the position of equilibrium.

5 Ammonia, NH_3, is manufactured by passing a mixture of nitrogen and hydrogen over an iron catalyst at a pressure of 200 atmospheres or more, and a temperature of 450 °C.

$$N_2(g) + 3H_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2NH_3(g) \qquad \Delta H = -92\,\text{kJ/mol}$$

a Explain why this reaction will produce a higher percentage conversion into ammonia if the pressure is very high.

b 200 atmospheres is a high pressure, but not very high. Give a reason why most ammonia manufacturers don't use a pressure of, for example, 1000 atmospheres. (Hint: think about the risk of using high pressure.)

c Predict and explain whether you would get the best yield of ammonia in the equilibrium mixture at a low or a high temperature.

d The temperature used, 450 °C, is neither very high nor very low. Suggest a reason why a manufacturer might choose a temperature which gave less than an ideal percentage conversion. (Hint: think about rates of reaction.)

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

UNIT QUESTIONS

SKILLS INTERPRETATION 8

1 Hydrogen, H_2, and bromine, Br_2, react vigorously to form hydrogen bromide, HBr, according to the following equation:

$$H_2(g) + Br_2(g) \rightarrow 2HBr(g)$$

a Draw a dot-and-cross diagram to show the arrangement of the electrons in a hydrogen bromide molecule, showing electrons in the outer shell only. **(2)**

CHEMISTRY ONLY

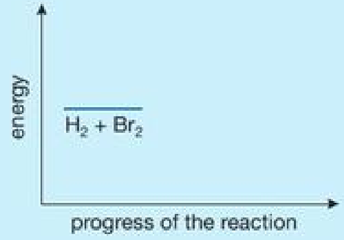
SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 10

b Use the bond energies given below to calculate the enthalpy change for the reaction shown in the above equation. **(3)**

Bond	Bond energy/kJ/mol
H–H	436
Br–Br	196
H–Br	368

SKILLS INTERPRETATION 9

c i Complete the reaction profile diagram by showing the products of the reaction. **(1)**



ii Label the diagram to show the enthalpy change, ΔH, and the activation energy of the reaction. **(2)**

(Total 8 marks)

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

3

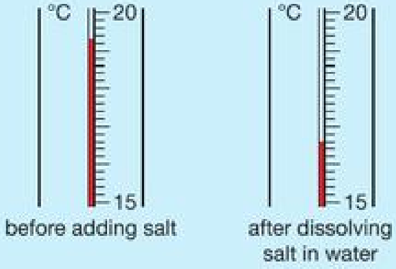
2 A group of students wanted to investigate the energy changes when salts dissolve in water. The teacher suggested that they should measure the temperature changes that occur when the salts were dissolved.

This is the method they followed:

- Add 100 cm^3 of water to a beaker.
- Record the temperature of the water.
- Weigh 5.00 g of salt and add it to the water in the beaker.
- Stir the mixture with a glass rod vigorously until all the solid has dissolved.
- Record the maximum (or minimum) temperature of the solution.

SKILLS ANALYSIS, PROBLEM SOLVING

a The diagram below shows the readings on the thermometer before and after the student dissolved a salt, potassium chloride, in water.



before adding salt

after dissolving salt in water

i Write down the thermometer readings and calculate the temperature change. **(3)**

Temperature before .... °C

Temperature after .... °C

Temperature change .... °C

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 8

ii Which of the following statements is true about the dissolving of potassium chloride in water (choose one answer)? **(1)**

A The process is endothermic and ΔH is positive.

B The process is exothermic and ΔH is positive.

C The process is endothermic and ΔH is negative.

D The process is exothermic and ΔH is negative.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

b Another student repeated the experiment with a different salt, calcium chloride, using the same method and recorded these results.

Volume of water = 100 cm^3

Starting temperature of water = 15.9 °C

Maximum temperature of solution = 23.2 °C

Mass of salt = 5.00 g

9

i Calculate the heat energy released in this experiment. The specific heat capacity of the solution c = 4.2 J/g/°C and the mass of 1 cm^3 of mixture = 1 g. **(3)**

ii How many moles of calcium chloride dissolved in the solution? **(2)**

10

iii Work out the molar enthalpy change, in kJ/mol, for dissolving calcium chloride in water. **(2)**

SKILLS REASONING 9

c Another student dissolved magnesium chloride in water. She compared her result with a data book value.

Student's value = –105 kJ/mol

Data book value = –141 kJ/mol

There are no errors in the calculation of her result.

Suggest two reasons why the student's value differs from the data book value. **(2)**

(Total 13 marks)

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 9

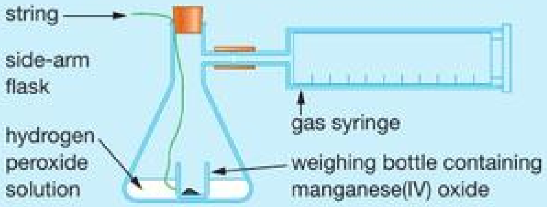
3 In an experiment to investigate the rate of decomposition of hydrogen peroxide solution in the presence of manganese(IV) oxide, a student mixed 10 cm³ of hydrogen peroxide solution with 30 cm³ of water and added 0.20 g of manganese(IV) oxide. She measured the volume of oxygen evolved at 60 s intervals. The results of her experiment are recorded in the table below.

Time/s	0	60	120	180	240	300
Volume/cm³	0	30	48	57	60	60

a Write a balanced equation for the decomposition of hydrogen peroxide. **(2)**

SKILLS REASONING 6

b Explain why the manganese(IV) oxide was added in a weighing bottle rather than directly into the hydrogen peroxide solution. **(1)**


string
side-arm flask
hydrogen peroxide solution
gas syringe
weighing bottle containing manganese(IV) oxide

SKILLS INTERPRETATION 7

c Plot a graph of her results and draw a line of best fit. Make sure that you label the axes. **(4)**

SKILLS ANALYSIS, PROBLEM SOLVING 5 6

d Use your graph to find out the following:

- **i** How long it took to produce 50 cm³ of oxygen. **(1)**
- **ii** The volume of gas produced after 100 seconds. **(1)**
- **iii** The average rate (with unit) in the first 150 seconds. **(2)**

e Explain why the graph becomes horizontal after 240 seconds. **(2)**

f Manganese(IV) oxide acts as a catalyst for this reaction.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 7

- **i** A catalyst speeds up a chemical reaction by (choose one answer): **(1)**
  - **A** increasing the number of collisions between the reactant particles.
  - **B** providing an alternative reaction pathway with lower activation energy.
  - **C** increasing the energy of the reactant particles.
  - **D** changing the enthalpy of the reaction.

SKILLS DECISION MAKING 9

- **ii** Describe a method you could use to show that the manganese(IV) oxide is acting as a catalyst in this reaction. **(4)**

SKILLS INTERPRETATION 7

g Suppose the experiment had been repeated using the same quantities of everything, but with the reaction flask immersed in ice.
Sketch the graph you would expect to get. Use the same grid as in c.
Label the new graph **G**. **(2)**

h On the same grid as in c and g sketch the graph you would expect to get if you repeated the experiment at the original temperature using 5 cm³ of hydrogen peroxide solution, 35 cm³ of water and 0.20 g of manganese(IV) oxide. Label this graph **H**. **(2)**

(Total 22 marks)

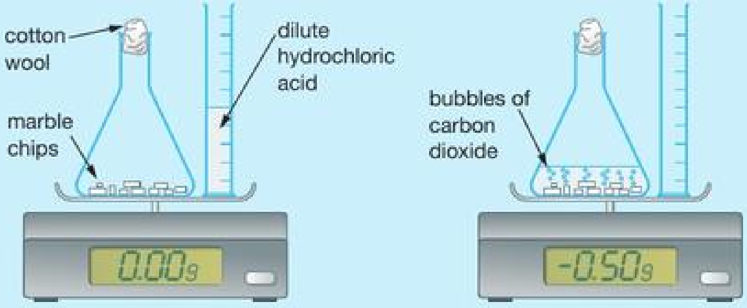
SKILLS EXECUTIVE FUNCTION 6

4 A group of students investigated the effect of changing the concentration of dilute hydrochloric acid on the rate of its reaction with marble chips (calcium carbonate).

The equation for this reaction is

$$CaCO_3(s) + 2HCl(aq) \rightarrow CaCl_2(aq) + H_2O(l) + CO_2(g)$$

They used the following method:



a) before reaction b) during reaction

The students recorded the time taken for the mass of the flask and contents to decrease by 0.50 g.

The experiment was then repeated using different concentrations of hydrochloric acid.

a To ensure it was a valid (fair) test, the students kept the number of marble chips constant in each experiment. Suggest two other properties of the marble chips that should be kept the same in each experiment. **(2)**

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 5

b What is the purpose of the cotton wool? **(1)**

c The teacher gave the students some hydrochloric acid that was labelled 100%. The table below shows the results.

Students	Mass of $CaCO_3$/g	Volume of 2.00 mol/dm³ HCl/cm³	Volume of water/cm³	Concentration of HCl/%	Time to lose 0.50 g /s
1	5.00	25	0	100	105
2	5.00	20	5	80	150
3	5.00	15		60	175
4	5.00	10	15	40	272
5	5.00	5	20	20	520

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 6

i The results of Student 3 are incomplete.
Calculate the volume of water the student should have used for the result to be comparable with the other four (choose one answer). **(1)**

A 5
B 10
C 15
D 20

SKILLS INTERPRETATION 7

ii Plot a graph of the results on a separate piece of graph paper, with concentration of acid on the *x*-axis and time on the *y*-axis.
Draw a line of best fit. **(4)**

SKILLS ANALYSIS, PROBLEM SOLVING

SKILLS REASONING

iii Use your graph in ii to find the time taken for the loss of 0.50 g of mass from the flask when the concentration of acid is 70%. **(1)**

iv One of the points on the graph is anomalous. Identify a reason for this (choose one answer). **(1)**

A The student started the stopwatch too late.

B The student stopped the stopwatch before mass loss reached 0.50 g.

C The student added too much water at the beginning of the experiment.

D The student spilt some water before adding it into the reaction mixture.

d Another group of students repeated the experiment, but this time they measured the mass loss after 1 minute.

The table below shows the results obtained by the students.

Mass of carbon dioxide given off/g	0.36	0.72	0.88	1.28	1.44	1.65
Concentration of acid /mol/dm^3	0.20	0.40	0.50	0.70	0.80	0.90

i Describe the relationship between the mass of carbon dioxide given off in 1 minute and the concentration of the acid. **(2)**

ii Explain this relationship in terms of particles. **(3)**

(Total 15 marks)

5 During the manufacture of nitric acid from ammonia, the ammonia is oxidised to nitrogen monoxide, NO, by oxygen in the air.

$$4NH_3(g) + 5O_2(g) \rightarrow 4NO(g) + 6H_2O(g)$$

The ammonia is mixed with air and passed through a stack of large circular gauzes made of platinum–rhodium alloy at red heat (about 900 °C). The platinum–rhodium gauzes act as a catalyst for the reaction.

a Gas particles have to collide before they can react. Use the collision theory to help you to answer the following questions.

i Because the gases are in contact with the catalyst for only a very short time, it is important that the reaction happens as quickly as possible. Explain why increasing the temperature to 900 °C makes the reaction very fast. **(3)**

ii Explain what will happen to the reaction rate if the pressure is increased. **(2)**

iii Explain why the platinum–rhodium alloy is used as gauzes rather than as pellets. **(2)**

b Platinum and rhodium are extremely expensive metals. Explain why the manufacturer can justify their initial cost. **(2)**

(Total 9 marks)

6 At temperatures above 150 °C, brown nitrogen dioxide gas dissociates (splits up reversibly) into colourless nitrogen monoxide and oxygen:

$$2NO_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2NO(g) + O_2(g) \qquad \Delta H = +114 \text{ kJ/mol}$$

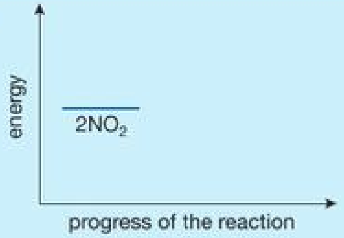
a Write down the meaning of the symbols $\rightleftharpoons$ and ΔH. **(2)**

b What does the positive sign of ΔH indicate about the reaction? **(1)**

CHEMISTRY ONLY

SKILLS INTERPRETATION

c Complete the reaction profile diagram for this reaction.



Label the diagram clearly with the activation energy and the ΔH of the reaction. **(3)**

SKILLS REASONING

d Predict what would happen to the position of equilibrium and the colour of the mixture if you:

- i increase the temperature **(3)**
- ii increase the pressure **(3)**

e Reactions can be accelerated using a catalyst. Write down and explain the effect of a catalyst on the position of equilibrium in this reaction. **(2)**

(Total 14 marks)

7 Nitrogen and hydrogen are used in the manufacture of ammonia (NH_3).

The reaction is reversible and can reach a state of dynamic equilibrium:

$$N_2(g) + 3H_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2NH_3(g)$$

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

a What are the characteristics of a reaction at dynamic equilibrium (choose two answers)? **(2)**

A The rate of the forward reaction is the same as the rate of the reverse reaction.

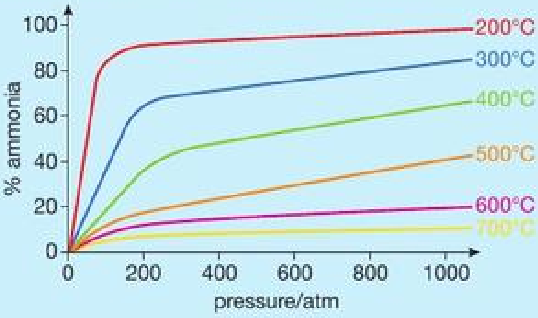
B The concentrations of the reactants and the products are always equal.

C The position of equilibrium can be shifted by adding a catalyst.

D The concentrations of the reactants and the products are constant.

SKILLS REASONING

b The graph below shows how the percentage of NH_3 in the equilibrium mixture varies with temperature and pressure (in atmospheres (atm)).



- i Increasing pressure increases the percentage of NH_3 at equilibrium. Explain why this is the case. **(3)**
- ii Describe the relationship between temperature and the percentage of NH_3 at equilibrium. **(1)**
- iii Using your answer from ii, comment on the sign of enthalpy change (ΔH) for the forward reaction. **(2)**
- iv Predict and explain what happens to the rate of the reaction when the temperature is increased. **(3)**

(Total 11 marks)

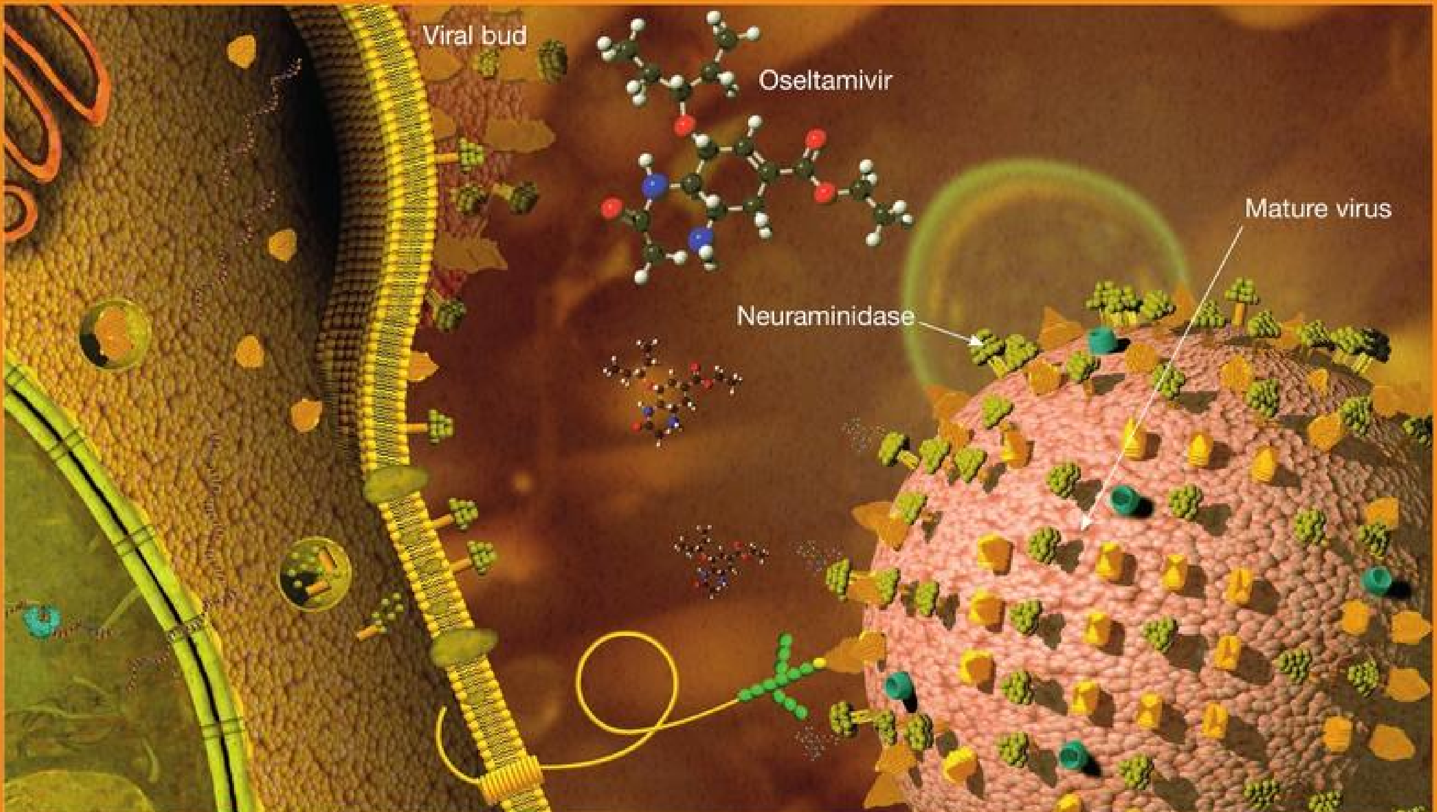
END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

INTRODUCTION TO ORGANIC CHEMISTRY 255
CRUDE OIL 268
ALKANES 277
ALKENES 282
ALCOHOLS 287
CARBOXYLIC ACIDS 293
ESTERS 297
SYNTHETIC POLYMERS 302

UNIT 4

ORGANIC CHEMISTRY

Organic chemistry is the study of the compounds of carbon (there are some inorganic carbon compounds as well). There are more organic compounds than all the other compounds put together. These compounds include naturally occurring ones that are found in our bodies, for example proteins, DNA and fats. There are also artificially made compounds such as plastics, dyes and drugs. The artificial compounds are derived from chemicals obtained from crude oil. When all the crude oil has been used we will have to find new sources for more than just fuel for cars and making electricity. Organic chemists are involved in the synthesis of a huge variety of new compounds, including drugs and medicines used to treat diseases such as cancer, AIDS, influenza and asthma. The synthesis of these drugs can involve a large number of steps and requires the knowledge and understanding of a great number of organic chemistry reactions. It can take many years and millions of dollars to develop a new drug.



▲ Figure 22.1 Oseltamivir (Tamiflu®) is a drug that targets the influenza virus.

22 INTRODUCTION TO ORGANIC CHEMISTRY

There are millions of different organic compounds. They all contain carbon and hydrogen, and often other elements such as oxygen, nitrogen and chlorine. Carbon atoms can join together to form chains and rings, which is why there are so many carbon compounds. This chapter introduces you to some of the important ideas that you need to know before you can start to understand organic chemistry.

▲ Figure 22.2 What do caffeine, aspirin and dyes have in common? They are all organic compounds.

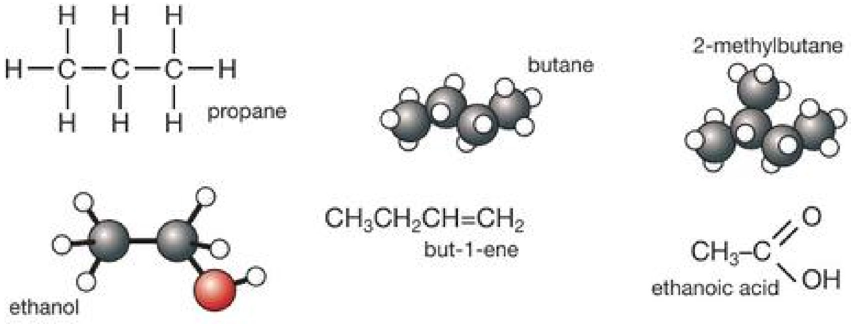
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Know that a hydrocarbon is a compound made up of hydrogen and carbon only
- Understand how to represent organic molecules using empirical formulae, molecular formulae, general formulae, structural formulae and displayed formulae
- Know what is meant by the terms homologous series, functional group and isomerism
- Understand how to name compounds (containing up to six carbon atoms) using the rules of International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry (IUPAC) nomenclature
- Understand how to write the possible structural and displayed formulae of an organic molecule given its molecular formula
- Understand how to classify reactions of organic compounds as substitution, addition and combustion

In the next few chapters we will be looking at organic compounds. The term 'organic' was originally used because it was believed that organic compounds could only come from living things. Now it is used for any carbon compound except for the very simplest (carbon dioxide, carbon monoxide, the carbonates and the hydrogencarbonates).

Organic compounds can exist as chains, branched chains or rings of carbon atoms with hydrogens attached.

When you start doing organic chemistry, you are suddenly faced with a whole lot of new compounds with strange names and unfamiliar ways of drawing them. It can be quite scary!



▲ Figure 22.3 Organic chemistry involves a lot of new compounds.

HINT

Your school may have models you can use. Otherwise, you can make your own out of modelling clay and matchsticks or small nails to use as bonds.

The secret at the beginning is to spend a lot of time exploring the subject – understanding names, drawing structures and making models.

HYDROCARBONS

The simplest organic compounds are **hydrocarbons**. *These are molecules that contain carbon and hydrogen only*.

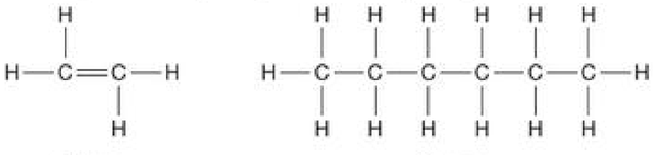
HINT

The word *only* is important here. Virtually all organic compounds contain carbon and hydrogen but hydrocarbons contain *only* carbon and hydrogen.

KEY POINT

Organic compounds can be described as **saturated** (containing only single C–C bonds) or **unsaturated** (containing double or triple C–C bonds). This is discussed in Chapters 24 and 25.

The carbon atoms are joined together with single, double or triple bonds. Carbon atoms are joined to hydrogen atoms by single bonds.



ethene hexane

▲ Figure 22.4 Examples of hydrocarbons

TYPES OF FORMULA FOR ORGANIC MOLECULES

EMPIRICAL FORMULAE

REMINDER

Empirical and molecular formula are introduced in Chapter 5.

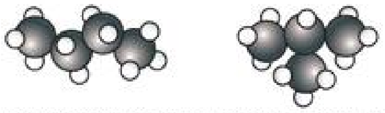
An **empirical formula** tells you *the simplest whole number ratio of the atoms in a compound*. It can be calculated from experimental data. Without more information, it is not possible to identify the 'true' or 'molecular' formula. Sometimes the empirical formula is the same as the molecular formula. For example, the empirical formula of methane is CH_4, which is the same as its molecular formula. However, the empirical formula of ethane is CH_3 whereas its molecular formula is C_2H_6.

MOLECULAR FORMULAE

A **molecular formula** *counts the actual number of each type of atom present in a molecule*. For example, the molecular formula of butane is C_4H_{10} and the molecular formula of ethene is C_2H_4.

The molecular formula is a multiple of the empirical formula. For example, if a compound has empirical formula CH_2, the molecular formula could be C_2H_4, C_3H_6, C_4H_8, etc. The ratio of C:H must always be the same as in the empirical formula.

The molecular formula tells you nothing about the way the atoms are joined together. Both the compounds in Figure 22.5 have the same molecular formula.



▲ Figure 22.5 These two compounds have the same molecular formula but different structures.

Molecular formulae are used very rarely in organic chemistry because they don't give any useful information about the bonding in the molecule. You might use them in equations for the combustion of simple hydrocarbons, where the structure of the molecule doesn't matter. For example:

$$2C_4H_{10}(g) + 13O_2(g) \rightarrow 8CO_2(g) + 10H_2O(l)$$

In almost all other cases, you use a structural or a displayed formula.

GENERAL FORMULAE

There are many different families of organic compounds, known as **homologous series**. Examples of homologous series are alkanes, alkenes, alcohols, carboxylic acids and esters. These homologous series will be discussed in more detail in later chapters.

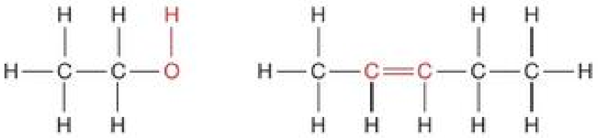
A homologous series is a *series of compounds with similar chemical properties because they have the same functional group. Each member differs from the next by one* –CH_2–.

Members of a homologous series can be represented using a **general formula**. The first few members of the alkane series are shown in Table 22.1.

In the case of alkanes, if there are *n* carbons in a molecule, there are always $2n + 2$ hydrogens. The general formula of alkanes is C_nH_{2n+2}. For methane, CH_4, there is 1 carbon atom in the molecule and $2 \times 1 + 2 = 4$ hydrogen atoms. For propane C_3H_8, there are 3 carbon atoms in the molecule and $2 \times 3 + 2 = 8$ hydrogen atoms. We can therefore work out that dodecane, which has 12 carbon atoms, will have 26 hydrogen atoms and the molecular formula $C_{12}H_{26}$.

Different homologous series usually have different general formulae. For example, the general formula for alkenes is C_nH_{2n} and that for alcohols is $C_nH_{2n+2}O$.

A **functional group** is *an atom or a group of atoms that determine the chemical properties of a compound*. All compounds in the same homologous series have the same functional group. For example, the functional group for alcohols is the –OH group and that for alkenes is C=C.



▲ Figure 22.6 Alcohols contain the –OH functional group and alkenes contain the C=C functional group.

Table 22.1 The first few members of the alkane, alkene and alcohol homologous series

Alkanes	Alkenes	Alcohols
CH_4		CH_4O
C_2H_6	C_2H_4	C_2H_6O
C_3H_8	C_3H_6	C_3H_8O
C_4H_{10}	C_4H_8	$C_4H_{10}O$

HINT

More features of a homologous series are discussed on page 278.

HINT

A way of thinking about this is: the functional group is what makes the behaviour of a particular compound different from that of an alkane.

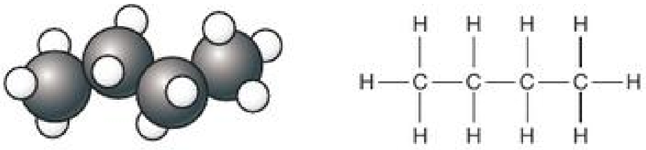
STRUCTURAL FORMULAE

A **structural formula** shows *how the atoms in a molecule are joined together*. There are two ways of representing structural formulae: they can be drawn as a **displayed formula** (full structural formula), or they can be written out in condensed form (*condensed structural formula*) by omitting all the carbon–carbon single bonds and carbon–hydrogen single bonds, for example $CH_3CH_2CH_3$. You need to be confident about using either way.

DISPLAYED FORMULAE

A displayed formula (sometimes called a full structural formula) shows *all* the bonds in the molecule as individual lines. You need to remember that each line represents *a pair of shared electrons in a covalent bond*.

Figure 22.7 shows a model of butane, together with its displayed formula. Notice that the way the displayed formula is drawn is different from the shape of the actual molecule. Displayed formulae are always drawn with the molecule straightened out and flattened. They do, however, show exactly how all the atoms are joined together.



▲ Figure 22.7 Butane. The angles between neighbouring C–H bonds in butane are shown as 90° in the two-dimensional displayed formula. In reality they are about 109.5° in a tetrahedral arrangement in three dimensions, similar to the arrangement of C–C bonds in a diamond structure (see Chapter 8, page 93).

REMINDER

It is important to remember when you draw structures that C always forms four bonds and H always forms one bond. Oxygen will form two bonds and a halogen (chlorine, bromine, etc.) atom one. If you are not sure about why these atoms form this number of bonds, you need to look back at Chapter 8.

KEY POINT

If you are asked to draw the structure for a molecule in an International GCSE exam, always draw it as a displayed formula. You can't lose any marks by doing this, whereas you might if you use the simplified form. If, on the other hand, you are simply writing a structure in an equation, for example, you can use whichever version you prefer.

HINT

The best way to understand that these are all the same is to make some models. If you don't have access to molecular models, use blobs of modelling clay joined together with pieces of matchstick or small nails to represent the bonds. You will find that you can change the shape of the model by rotating around the bonds. That's what happens in real molecules.

KEY POINT

Structural formulae may be drawn in various ways. Sometimes no bonds are shown and other times some bonds are shown. The easiest way to think about it is like this: if all the bonds are shown, then it is a displayed formula but if not all of them are shown (but you can still see what the structure is), then it is a structural formula.

KEY POINT

In more advanced work the structural formula of propene would just be written as CH_3CHCH_2 but at International GCSE the C=C will normally be shown.

HOW TO DRAW A STRUCTURAL FORMULA

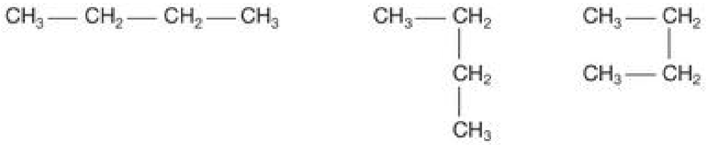
For anything other than the smallest molecules, drawing a fully displayed formula is very time-consuming. You can simplify the formula by writing, for example, CH_3 or CH_2 instead of showing all the carbon–hydrogen bonds.

The structural formula for butane can be shown as

$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_3$ or $CH_3{-}CH_2{-}CH_2{-}CH_3$

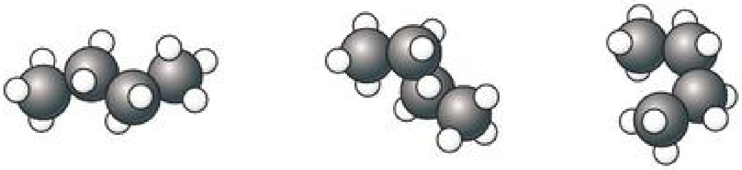
These both show exactly how the atoms in the molecule are joined together. The corresponding molecular formula, C_4H_{10}, doesn't give you the same sort of useful information about the molecule.

All the structures in Figure 22.8 represent butane: even though they look different they are exactly the same molecule.



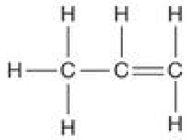
▲ Figure 22.8 All three structures represent butane. The convention is to write the structure with all the carbon atoms in a straight line.

Each structure shows four carbon atoms joined together in a chain, but the chain has simply twisted. This happens in real molecules as well: the atoms can rotate around single carbon–carbon bonds, as shown in Figure 22.9.



▲ Figure 22.9 These diagrams show the shape of a butane molecule better, but you would not draw these in an exam.

A molecule like propene, C_3H_6, has a carbon–carbon double bond. This is shown by drawing two lines between the carbon atoms to show *the two pairs of shared electrons*. You would normally write this in a simplified structural formula as $CH_3CH{=}CH_2$.



▲ Figure 22.10 The displayed formula for propene

NAMING ORGANIC COMPOUNDS

Names for organic compounds can appear quite complicated, but they are simply a code that describes the molecule. Each part of a name tells you something specific about the molecule. One part of a name tells you how many carbon atoms there are in the longest chain, another part tells you whether there are any carbon–carbon double bonds, and so on.

CODING THE CHAIN LENGTH

Look for the code letters in the name – these are given in Table 22.2.

Table 22.2 Coding the chain length

Code letters	Number of carbons in chain
meth	1
eth	2
prop	3
but	4
pent	5
hex	6

For example, **but**ane has a chain of four carbon atoms. **Prop**ane has a chain of three carbon atoms.

HINT

You have to learn these! The first four are the difficult ones because there isn't any pattern. However, a mnemonic can help, something like **M**onkeys **E**at **P**ink **B**ananas. Or you could think of one of your own that you can remember!

'**Pent**' means five (as in **pent**agon) and '**hex**' means six (as in **hex**agon).

CODING FOR THE TYPE OF COMPOUND

ALKANES

Alkanes are *a homologous series of similar hydrocarbons (compounds of carbon and hydrogen only) in which all the carbons are joined to each other with single covalent bonds*. Compounds like this are coded with the ending '**ane**'. For example, eth*ane* is a two-carbon chain (because of 'eth') with a carbon–carbon single bond, $CH_3—CH_3$.

HINT

In more complicated molecules, the presence of the code 'an' in the name again shows that the carbons are joined by single bonds. For example, you can tell that propan-1-ol contains three carbon atoms ('prop') joined together by carbon–carbon single bonds ('an'). The coding on the end gives you more information about the molecule. You will meet this later in the chapter.

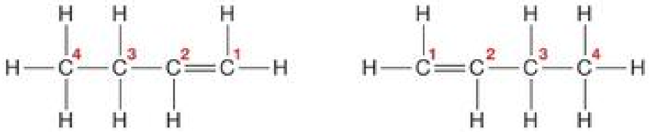
ALKENES

Alkenes are *a homologous series of hydrocarbons which contain a carbon–carbon double bond*. This is shown in their name by the ending '**ene**'. For example, eth*ene* is a two-carbon chain containing a carbon–carbon double bond, $CH_2{=}CH_2$. With longer chains, the position of the double bond could vary in the chain. This is shown by numbering the chain and noting which carbon atom the double bond *starts* from.

Table 22.3 Indicating the position of the double bond in the name of alkenes

Formula	Name	Description
$CH_2{=}CHCH_2CH_3$	but-1-ene	a four-carbon chain with a double bond starting on the first carbon
$CH_3CH{=}CHCH_3$	but-2-ene	a four-carbon chain with a double bond starting on the second carbon

How do you know which end of the chain to number from? The rule is that *you number from the end which produces the smaller numbers in the name*.



▲ Figure 22.11 Both structures represent but-1-ene.

HINT

Both parts of Figure 22.11 show the same molecule, but in one case it has been turned over so that what was originally on the left is now on the right, and vice versa. It would be silly to change the name every time the molecule moved! Both of the forms in Figure 22.11 are called but-1-ene.

CODING FOR BRANCHED CHAINS

Hydrocarbon chains can have side branches on them. You are only likely to come across two small side chains, shown in Table 22.4.

KEY POINT

Notice that the count of the number of carbons in the side chain is coded exactly as before: '**meth**' shows a *one*-carbon side chain, '**eth**' shows *two* carbons. The 'yl' shows that the group is attached to something else.

Table 22.4 Coding for branched chains

Side chain	Coded
CH_3-	methyl
CH_3CH_2-	ethyl

The name of a molecule is always based on the longest chain you can find in it. *The position of the side chain is shown by numbering the carbon atoms from the end of the longest chain which produces the smaller numbers in the name*, exactly as before with the carbon–carbon double bonds in alkenes.

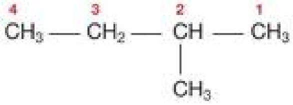


Figure 22.12 Number from the end that produces the smaller number.

The longest chain in the molecule in Figure 22.12 has four carbon atoms ('but') with no double bonds ('ane'). The name is based on butane. There is a methyl group branching from the number 2 carbon. (Remember to number from the end that produces the smaller number.) The compound is called 2-methylbutane.

Where there is more than one side chain, you describe the position of each of them.

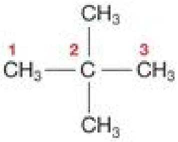


Figure 22.13 Describe the position of each side chain.

The longest chain in the molecule in Figure 22.13 has three carbon atoms and no double bonds. Therefore the name is based on propane.

There are two methyl groups attached to the second carbon. The compound is 2,2-dimethylpropane. The '*di*' in the name shows the presence of the two methyl groups. '2,2' shows that they are both on the second carbon atom.

You can reverse this process and draw a structural formula from a name. All you have to do is decode the name.

For example, what is the structural formula for 2,3-dimethylbut-2-ene?

Start by looking for the code for the longest chain length. 'but' shows a four-carbon chain. 'ene' shows that it contains a carbon–carbon double bond starting on the second carbon atom ('-2-ene'). There are two methyl groups ('dimethyl') attached to the second and third carbon atoms in the chain ('2,3-'). All you have to do now is to fit all this together into a structure.

HINT

It is much more important to be able to decode names to give structures than the other way around. If you don't know what a teacher or an examiner is talking about, you are completely lost!

Start by drawing the structure without any hydrogen atoms on the main chain. It doesn't matter whether you draw the CH_3 groups pointing up or down. Then add enough hydrogens so that each carbon atom forms four bonds. Figure 22.14 shows how your thinking would work.

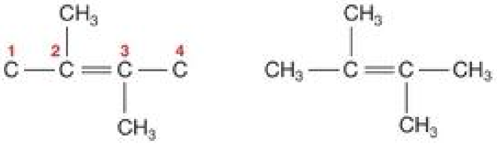


Figure 22.14 First draw the carbon structure, then add hydrogens.

KEY POINT

Warning! Don't confuse the word isomer with isotope. *Isotopes* are different atoms of the same element with the same atomic number but different mass numbers.

STRUCTURAL ISOMERISM

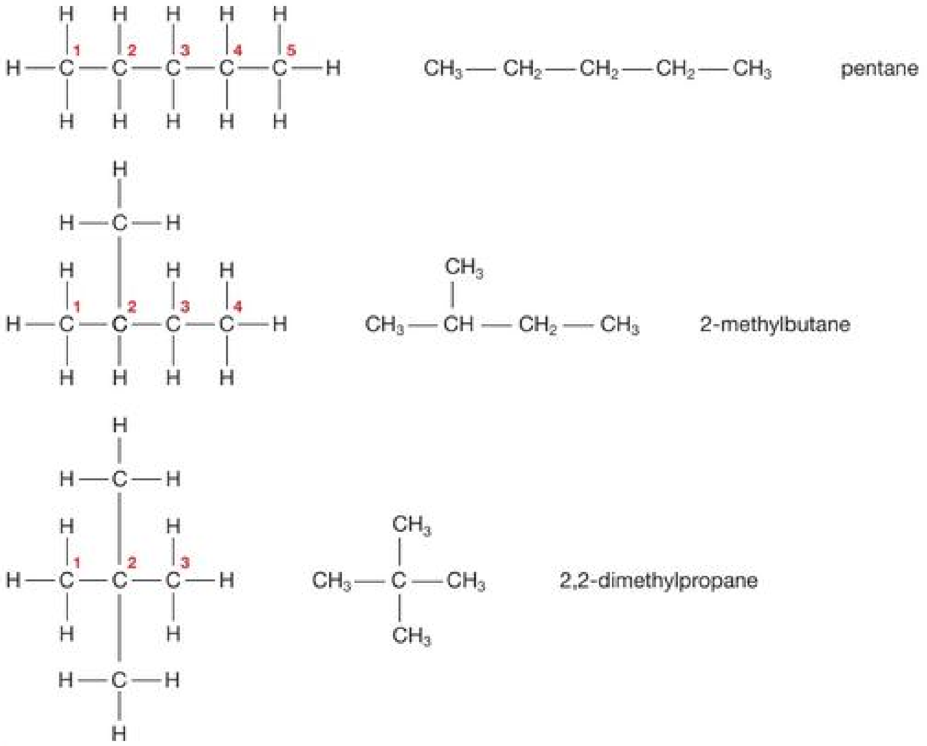
Structural isomers *are molecules with the same molecular formula, but different structural formulae.*

Examples will make this clear.

STRUCTURAL ISOMERISM IN THE ALKANES

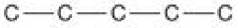
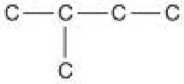
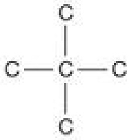
ISOMERS OF C_5H_{12}

If you had some molecular models and picked out five carbon atoms and 12 hydrogen atoms, you would find it was possible to join them together in more than one way. The different molecules formed are known as isomers. All have the molecular formula C_5H_{12}, but different structures.



▲ Figure 22.15 There are three isomers for C_5H_{12}. These can be shown as either displayed formulae or structural formulae.

If you look carefully at the structures in Figure 22.15 you can see that you couldn't change one into the other simply by bending or twisting the molecule. You would have to break some bonds and reconnect the atoms. That's a simple way of telling that you have isomers.

The **straight chain** isomer is called pentane. The *branched chain* isomer in the middle, which has a four-carbon chain ('butane') and a methyl group on the second carbon, is called 2-methylbutane. The final *branched chain* isomer, which has a three-carbon chain ('propane') and two methyl groups on the second carbon, is called 2,2-dimethylpropane. The prefix '*di*' indicates the presence of two identical branches in the molecule.

HINT

It is sometimes easier to see that the molecules are different by drawing only the C atoms joined together, without the hydrogens.

But you must show the hydrogen atoms in the exam!

REMINDER

A straight chain is an unbranched chain.

Students frequently think they can find another isomer as well. If you look closely at this 'fourth' isomer (Figure 22.16) you will see that it is just 2-methylbutane rotated in space.

To avoid this sort of problem, always draw your isomers so that *the longest carbon chain is drawn horizontally* (or draw them out again without the H atoms).

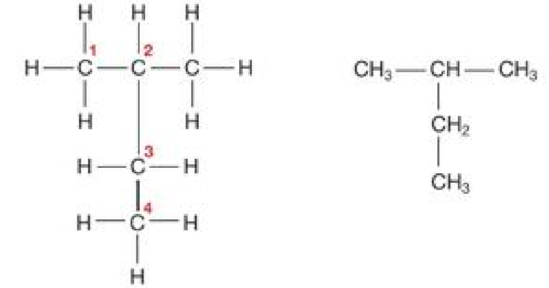


Figure 22.16 There is no fourth isomer for C_5H_{12}.

LOOKING AHEAD

To be precise, the type of isomerism discussed here should be called structural isomerism: molecules have the same molecular formula but different structural formulae. The atoms in the different isomers are joined in a different order. There are also other forms of isomerism and one important type is called optical isomerism. Optical isomers have atoms joined in the same order (i.e. they have the same structural formula), but are arranged differently in three-dimensional space. These isomers are mirror images of each other but cannot be superimposed. A good analogy is to look at your left and right hands. They are exactly the opposite of each other but cannot lie on top of another and align perfectly (Figure 22.17).

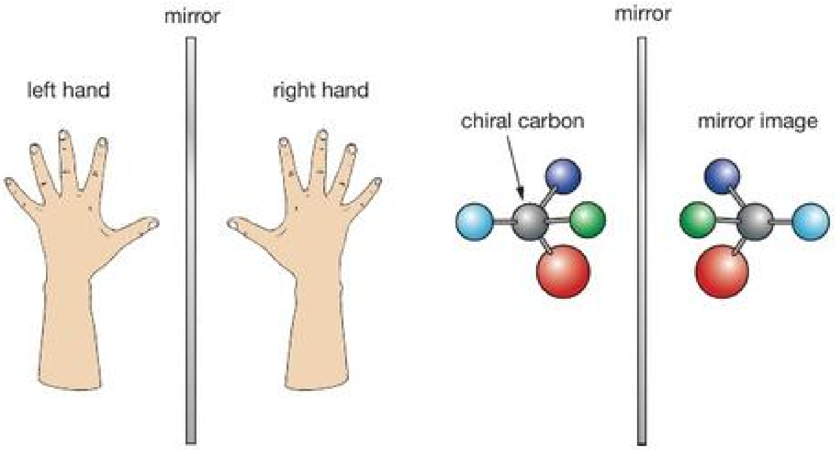


Figure 22.17 Optical isomers are mirror images of each other and cannot be superimposed.

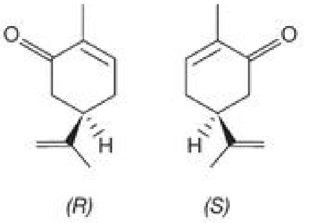
Optical isomerism occurs when a molecule has a *chiral centre*, that is to say it has a carbon atom that is connected to four different atoms or groups of atoms. These molecules have a tetrahedral shape around the chiral centre (molecular shape was mentioned in Chapter 8, pages 88–89). Figure 22.17 shows two molecules that are mirror images of each other. However, if you rotate one of the molecules 180° in space, it cannot be put on top of the other.

Optical isomers have identical chemical properties, except when they interact with something that is also chiral. For example, apart from glycine, all naturally occurring amino acids have optical isomers, which means that all the proteins in our body are chiral. This is why we can distinguish the two optical isomers in

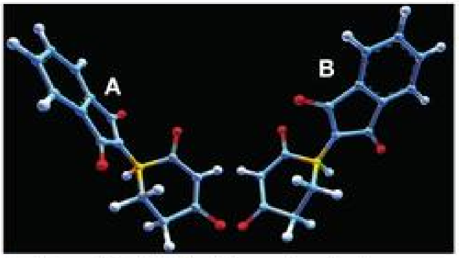
EXTENSION WORK

The optical isomers are assigned a prefix (*R* or *S*) to show the configuration of atoms around the chiral centre.

Figure 22.18. One smells of spearmint and the other of caraway seed because the two molecules interact differently with the protein receptors in our noses.



▲ Figure 22.18 Two optical isomers of carvone



▲ Figure 22.19 Optical isomerism in drug molecules

An important application of optical isomerism is in the synthesis of pharmaceutical drugs. You might have heard of the thalidomide tragedy. Back in the 1960s in Germany, the molecule B shown in Figure 22.19 was found to have anti-nausea effects and was therefore used to treat morning sickness in pregnant woman. Unfortunately, molecule B was being manufactured together with its optical isomer A and little was known about the molecule A until many children born in that era were found to have deformed limbs. These days, many drug companies devote a great deal of money to separating optical isomers of new drugs just in case they have side effects.

STRUCTURAL ISOMERISM IN THE ALKENES

ETHENE AND PROPENE

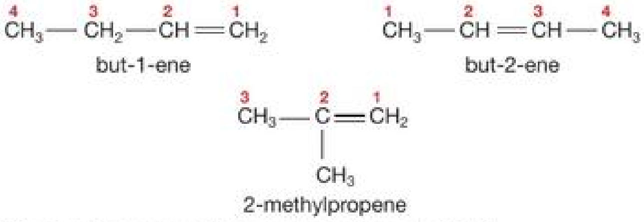
Ethene, $CH_2{=}CH_2$, doesn't have any isomers. Propene, $CH_3CH{=}CH_2$, doesn't have a structural isomer that is still an alkene.

EXTENSION WORK

There is a structural isomer of C_3H_6 that doesn't have a carbon–carbon double bond. It has three carbon atoms joined in a ring. It is called cyclopropane, which indicates 'a ring of three carbons with only single bonds between them'.

ISOMERS OF C_4H_8

There are three structural isomers with the molecular formula C_4H_8 and containing a carbon–carbon double bond.



$\overset{4}{CH_3}-\overset{3}{CH_2}-\overset{2}{CH}=\overset{1}{CH_2}$

but-1-ene

$\overset{1}{CH_3}-\overset{2}{CH}=\overset{3}{CH}-\overset{4}{CH_3}$

but-2-ene

$\overset{3}{CH_3}-\underset{\displaystyle CH_3}{\overset{2}{C}}=\overset{1}{CH_2}$

2-methylpropene

▲ Figure 22.20 Structural isomers with the molecular formula of C_4H_8.

HINT

If you aren't comfortable with the names, see pages 258–260 on organic names.

Notice the way that you can vary the position of the double bond as well as branching the chain.

CHEMISTRY ONLY

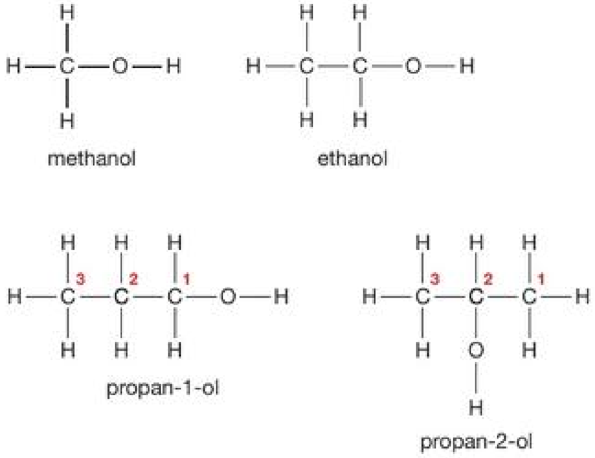
A QUICK INTRODUCTORY LOOK AT THE ALCOHOLS

Alcohols are *a homologous series of compounds which all contain an –OH functional group attached to a hydrocarbon chain*. This is coded for in the name by the ending '**-ol**'.

HINT

Ethanol is what is commonly known just as 'alcohol'.

Figure 22.21 shows four small alcohols.



▲ Figure 22.21 Four small alcohols

The names all end with '-ol', showing there is an –OH functional group in the molecule. Notice the way the number of carbons in the chain is counted exactly as before with 'meth', 'eth' and 'prop'.

There are two different forms of propanol. The –OH group can be attached to the end carbon of the chain (in propan-1-ol) or to the second carbon in the chain (as in propan-2-ol). These are *structural isomers* because there is no way that you can bend or twist one of the molecules to make the other. Bonds would have to be broken to get from one to the other.

EXTENSION WORK

It is possible to find a structural isomer of propanol that doesn't have an –OH functional group, for example $CH_3OCH_2CH_3$, which has the oxygen atom bonded between two carbon atoms rather than joined to a hydrogen atom. This compound is named methoxyethane and belongs to a homologous series of compounds called *ethers*.

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

SOME CHEMICAL REACTIONS OF ORGANIC COMPOUNDS

In this section we will look at how to classify the reactions of organic compounds. These reactions will be explained much more in the next few chapters.

COMBUSTION

▲ Figure 22.22 The burning of a camping stove

All organic compounds that you will meet at International GCSE undergo combustion reactions. Combustion is just another way of saying *burning* and involves a reaction with oxygen.

Combustion of hydrocarbons in *excess oxygen* gives rise to *carbon dioxide* and *water*, together with the release of a large amount of heat energy. For example:

propane burning $C_3H_8(g) + 5O_2(g) \rightarrow 3CO_2(g) + 4H_2O(l)$

butene burning $C_4H_8(g) + 6O_2(g) \rightarrow 4CO_2(g) + 4H_2O(l)$

Propane is frequently used in camping stoves outdoors.

Alcohols undergo similar reactions:

ethanol burning $C_2H_5OH(l) + 3O_2(g) \rightarrow 2CO_2(g) + 3H_2O(l)$

HINT

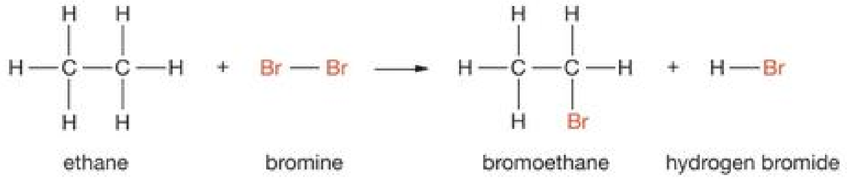
Take care when balancing this equation – do not forget the O in the alcohol!

SUBSTITUTION

A **substitution** reaction occurs when an atom or group of atoms is *replaced* by a different atom or group of atoms. For example, the hydrogen atoms in an alkane can be replaced by halogen atoms. We will go into more detail on this reaction in Chapter 24.

ethane with bromine gas

$$CH_3CH_3(g) + Br_2(g) \rightarrow CH_3CH_2Br(g) + HBr(g)$$



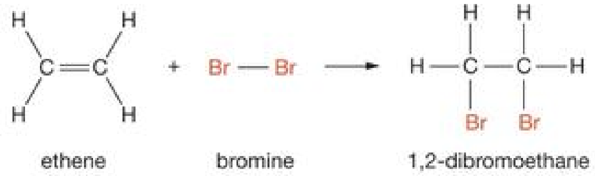
▲ Figure 22.23 A substitution reaction between an alkane and a halogen

ADDITION

In an **addition** reaction something is added to a molecule without taking anything away. Alkenes undergo addition reactions. For example, ethene reacts with bromine:

ethene with Br_2

$$CH_2CH_2(g) + Br_2(l) \rightarrow CH_2BrCH_2Br(l)$$



▲ Figure 22.24 An addition reaction between an alkene and a halogen.

CHAPTER QUESTIONS

Note: the questions below deliberately include some examples which are slightly beyond the level which you would expect to meet in an International GCSE exam.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

1 a Write down the names of the following hydrocarbons:

  i CH_4
  ii $CH_3CH_2CH_3$
  iii $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$
  iv $CH_3CH{=}CH_2$
  v $CH_2{=}CH_2$
  vi $CH_2{=}CHCH_2CH_3$
  vii $CH_3CH_2CH_2OH$
  viii $CH_3CH_2CHOHCH_3$

SKILLS INTERPRETATION

b Draw structural and displayed formulae for:

  i ethane
  ii propan-1-ol
  iii but-2-ene
  iv hexane
  v methanol
  vi 2-methylpropane
  vii methylpropene
  viii pent-1-ene

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

SKILLS INTERPRETATION

2 a Explain the term *structural isomerism*.

b There are two structural isomers of C_4H_{10}. Draw their structures and name them.

c There are five structural isomers of C_6H_{14}. Draw their structures and name them.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

d How many structural isomers containing a carbon–carbon double bond can you find with a molecular formula C_4H_8? Name the straight chain isomers.

SKILLS INTERPRETATION

e Draw two isomers of C_4H_8 that do not contain carbon–carbon double bonds.

3 a Draw the structures for the following structural isomers of C_4H_9OH. (Note: this is beyond what you will be asked to do at International GCSE. The answer to the first one is shown to give you hints as to how to work out the others.)

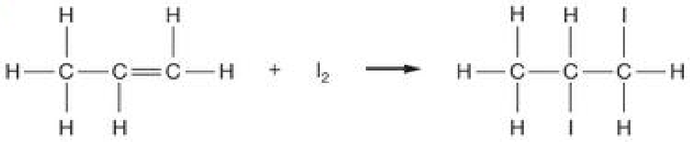
- **i** butan-1-ol (Answer: $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2OH$)
- **ii** butan-2-ol
- **iii** 2-methylpropan-1-ol
- **iv** 2-methylpropan-2-ol

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

b Can you find two more structural isomers with the same molecular formula ($C_4H_{10}O$) which don't contain an –OH group?

4 Classify the following reactions as substitution, addition or combustion.

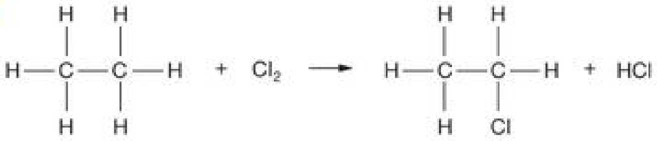
a



b $2C_8H_{18}(l) + 25O_2(g) \rightarrow 16CO_2(g) + 18H_2O(l)$

c $C_4H_8(g) + H_2(g) \rightarrow C_4H_{10}(g)$

d



e $C_2H_5OH(l) + 3O_2(g) \rightarrow 2CO_2(g) + 3H_2O(l)$

f $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_3(g) + Br_2(g) \rightarrow CH_3CH_2CHBrCH_3(g) + HBr(g)$

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 6

5 The table below shows the formulae of some organic compounds.

Compound	Formula
A	C_2H_6
B	$CH_3CH{=}CH_2$
C	$CH_3CH_2CH_2OH$
D	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$

a Select one compound from the table which is not a hydrocarbon. Explain your choice.

SKILLS INTERPRETATION 8

b Draw a dot-and-cross diagram to show the bonding in compound **A**.

c Draw the full displayed formula of compound **B**. Include all bonds in your drawing.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 6

d Compounds **A** and **D** are from the same homologous series. State the general formula for this homologous series.

7

e Other than having the same general formula, state *one* other characteristic of members of the same homologous series.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 9

f Write a balanced chemical equation for the complete combustion of compound **D**.

23 CRUDE OIL

The oil industry is at the very heart of modern life. It provides fuels, plastics and the organic chemicals which go to make things as different as solvents, drugs, dyes and explosives. This chapter explores how an unappealing, sticky, black liquid is converted into useful things.

▲ Figure 23.1 The oil industry is BIG business!

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Know that crude oil is a mixture of hydrocarbons
- Describe how the industrial process of fractional distillation separates crude oil into fractions
- Know the names and uses of the main fractions obtained from crude oil: refinery gases, gasoline, kerosene, diesel, fuel oil and bitumen
- Know the trend in colour, boiling point and viscosity of the main fractions
- Know that a fuel is a substance that, when burned, releases heat energy
- Know the possible products of complete and incomplete combustion of hydrocarbons with oxygen in the air
- Know that in car engines the temperature reached is high enough to allow nitrogen and oxygen from air to react, forming oxides of nitrogen
- Explain how the combustion of some impurities in hydrocarbon fuels results in the formation of sulfur dioxide
- Understand how sulfur dioxide and oxides of nitrogen contribute to acid rain
- Describe how long-chain alkanes are converted to alkenes and shorter-chain alkanes by catalytic cracking (using silica or alumina as the catalyst and a temperature in the range of 600–700 °C)
- Explain why cracking is necessary in terms of the balance between supply and demand for different fractions

WHAT IS CRUDE OIL?

THE ORIGIN OF CRUDE OIL

Millions of years ago, plants and animals living in the sea died and fell to the bottom. Layers of sediment formed on top of them. Their shells and skeletons formed limestone. The soft tissue was gradually changed by heat and high pressure into **crude oil**. Crude oil is a *finite, non-renewable resource*. Once all the existing supplies have been used, they won't be replaced, or at least not for many millions of years.

▲ Figure 23.2 This sticky black liquid is essential to modern life.

CRUDE OIL CONTAINS HYDROCARBONS

Crude oil is a mixture of hydrocarbons, *compounds containing carbon and hydrogen only*. There are lots of different hydrocarbons of various sizes in crude oil, ranging from molecules with just a few carbon and hydrogen atoms to molecules containing over 100 atoms.

HOW THE PHYSICAL PROPERTIES OF HYDROCARBONS CHANGE WITH MOLECULE SIZE

As the number of carbon atoms in hydrocarbon molecules increases, the physical properties of the compounds change. Most of these changes are the result of increasing attractions between neighbouring molecules. *As the molecules become bigger, the intermolecular forces of attraction become stronger* and it becomes more difficult to pull one molecule away from its neighbours.

REMINDER

Intermolecular forces are explained in Chapter 8 (page 92).

As the molecules become bigger, the following changes occur.

- *Boiling point increases*: the larger the molecule, the higher the boiling point. This is because large molecules are attracted to each other more strongly than smaller ones. More energy is needed to break these stronger intermolecular forces of attraction to produce the widely separated molecules in the gas.
- *The liquids become less* **volatile**: the bigger the hydrocarbon, the more slowly it evaporates at room temperature. This is again because the bigger molecules are more strongly attracted to their neighbours and so don't turn into a gas so easily.
- *The liquids become more* **viscous** *and flow less easily*: liquids containing small hydrocarbon molecules are runny. Those containing large molecules flow less easily because of the stronger forces of attraction between their molecules.
- The liquids become darker in colour.
- Bigger hydrocarbons do not burn as easily as smaller ones. This limits the use of the bigger ones as fuels.

HINT

We usually count a substance as being volatile if it turns to a vapour easily at room temperature. That means it will evaporate quickly at that temperature.

SEPARATING CRUDE OIL

Crude oil itself has no uses and it has to be separated into *fractions* before it can be used. These fractions are all mixtures, but each one contains a narrow range of sizes of hydrocarbons with similar boiling points. We use **fractional distillation** to separate crude oil into fractions. This is carried out in an oil refinery.

FRACTIONAL DISTILLATION

Crude oil is heated until it boils and the vapours pass into a **fractionating column**, which is cooler at the top and hotter at the bottom. The vapours rise up the column. How far up the column a particular hydrocarbon moves depends on its boiling point.

KEY POINT

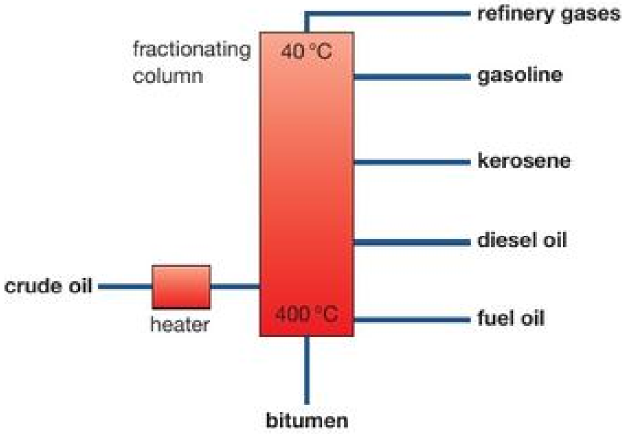
The boiling point is the same as the temperature at which a gas condenses to form a liquid; it could also be called the *condensation point*.

Suppose a hydrocarbon boils at 120 °C. At the bottom of the column, the temperature is much higher than 120 °C and so the hydrocarbon remains as a gas. As it travels up the column, the temperature of the column becomes lower. When the temperature falls to 120 °C, that hydrocarbon will turn into a liquid, it *condenses* and can be removed.

Smaller molecules have lower boiling points and get further up the column before they condense. Longer chain hydrocarbons have higher boiling points and condense lower down in the column. This way, the crude oil is split into various *fractions*.

HINT

You will find a lot of disagreement, from various sources, about exactly what fractions are produced in fractional distillation. Figure 23.3 matches the requirements of the Edexcel International GCSE specification, but this is a major simplification of what really goes on.



▲ Figure 23.3 Fractional distillation of crude oil

The hydrocarbons in the refinery gas fraction (see Figure 23.3) have very small masses and their boiling points are so low that the temperature of the column never falls low enough for them to condense to liquids. The temperature of the column isn't hot enough to boil some of the very large hydrocarbons found in the crude oil, and so they remain as a liquid. These are removed as a residue from the bottom of the column. Bitumen (see below), which is used in road making, is made from this.

USES OF THE FRACTIONS

AS FUELS

All hydrocarbons burn in air (oxygen) to form *carbon dioxide and water*, and release a lot of heat in the process. The various fractions can therefore be used as **fuels**.

A fuel is a substance which, when burned, releases heat energy.

HINT

Don't try to learn these equations as there are too many possible hydrocarbons you could be asked about. Provided you know (or are told) the formula of the fuel and remember the products of the combustion reaction, you can balance the equation yourself.

▲ Figure 23.4 As well as all the other poisonous or cancer-causing compounds, cigarette smoke contains carbon monoxide due to incomplete combustion.

For example, burning methane (the major constituent of natural gas):

$$CH_4(g) + 2O_2(g) \rightarrow CO_2(g) + 2H_2O(l)$$

or burning octane (one of the hydrocarbons present in gasoline, petrol):

$$2C_8H_{18}(l) + 25O_2(g) \rightarrow 16CO_2(g) + 18H_2O(l)$$

If there isn't enough air (or oxygen), you get **incomplete combustion**. This leads to the formation of *carbon (soot)* or *carbon monoxide* instead of carbon dioxide.

For example, if methane burns in a badly maintained gas appliance, there may not be enough oxygen available to produce carbon dioxide, and so you get toxic carbon monoxide instead:

$$2CH_4(g) + 3O_2(g) \rightarrow 2CO(g) + 4H_2O(l)$$

The formation of carbon monoxide from the incomplete combustion of hydrocarbons is very dangerous. Carbon monoxide is colourless and odourless, and is very poisonous. *Carbon monoxide is poisonous because it reduces the ability of the blood to carry oxygen around the body*. This will make you ill, or you may even die, because not enough oxygen gets to the cells in your body for respiration to provide energy.

DID YOU KNOW?

Carbon monoxide combines with *haemoglobin* (the molecule that carries oxygen in the red blood cells), preventing it from carrying the oxygen. It binds more strongly to the haemoglobin than oxygen does.

EXTENSION WORK

If you try to draw a dot-and-cross diagram for carbon monoxide, you will see that it is a very strange molecule because carbon does not form four bonds.

REFINERY GASES

Refinery gases are *a mixture of methane, ethane, propane and butane*, which can be separated into individual gases if required. These gases are commonly used as liquefied petroleum gas (LPG) for domestic heating and cooking.

GASOLINE (PETROL)

As with all the other fractions, petrol is a mixture of hydrocarbons with similar boiling points. It is used as a fuel in cars.

KEROSENE

Kerosene is used as a fuel for jet aircraft, as domestic heating oil and as 'paraffin' for small heaters and lamps.

▲ Figure 23.5 Kerosene is used as aviation fuel.

DIESEL

This is used as a fuel for buses, lorries, some cars, and some railway engines. Some is also converted to other more useful organic chemicals, including petrol, in a process called *cracking* (see page 273–275 for more details on cracking).

▲ Figure 23.6 A train powered by diesel

FUEL OIL

This is used as a fuel for ships and for industrial heating.

▲ Figure 23.7 Ships' boilers burn fuel oil.

BITUMEN

Bitumen is a thick, black material, which is melted and mixed with small pieces of rock to make the top surface of roads.

▲ Figure 23.8 Bitumen is used in road construction.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROBLEMS ASSOCIATED WITH THE BURNING OF FOSSIL FUELS FROM CRUDE OIL

KEY POINT

Fossil fuels include coal, gas and fuels derived from crude oil. These all come from things that were once alive.

There are major environmental problems associated with the burning of fossil fuels derived from crude oil. First of all, the carbon dioxide produced when hydrocarbons are burned is a greenhouse gas. Greenhouse gases *trap the heat radiated from the Earth's surface (originally from the Sun)* and many people believe that this could lead to climate change. For more discussion on the greenhouse effect, see Chapter 13.

ACID RAIN: SULFUR DIOXIDE AND OXIDES OF NITROGEN

KEY POINT

Several oxides of nitrogen are involved, including NO and NO_2. They are often given the general formula NO_x.

Rain is naturally slightly acidic (pH = ~5.6) because of dissolved carbon dioxide. Acid rain is rain with a pH lower than this (pH < 5.6) because of the presence of various pollutants. The pH of acid rain is often about 4.

Acid rain *is formed when water and oxygen in the atmosphere react with sulfur dioxide to produce sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4), or with various oxides of nitrogen, NO_x, to give nitric acid (HNO_3).* SO_2 and NO_x come mainly from power stations and factories burning fossil fuels, or from motor vehicles.

Fossil fuels contain a small amount of sulfur. When the fuel is burned, the sulfur reacts with oxygen, producing sulfur dioxide:

$$S(s) + O_2(g) \rightarrow SO_2(g)$$

Reactions in the atmosphere with oxygen and water can convert this to *sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4)*, a strong acid and an important component of acid rain:

$$2SO_2(g) + 2H_2O(l) + O_2(g) \rightarrow 2H_2SO_4(aq)$$

Note: when sulfur dioxide reacts with water, a weaker acid called *sulfurous acid (H_2SO_3)* is formed:

$$SO_2(g) + H_2O(l) \rightarrow H_2SO_3(aq)$$

Figure 23.9 Use of very low-sulfur fuels limits the production of sulfur dioxide, but the spark in a petrol engine causes oxygen and nitrogen from the air to combine to make oxides of nitrogen, NO_x.

In petrol engines, sparks are used to ignite the petrol–air mixture to power the car. The temperature reached in the engine is high enough to allow nitrogen and oxygen in the air to combine to produce oxides of nitrogen. For example:

$$N_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightarrow 2NO(g)$$

These nitrogen oxides can be converted to *nitric acid (HNO_3)* in the atmosphere and therefore contribute to acid rain.

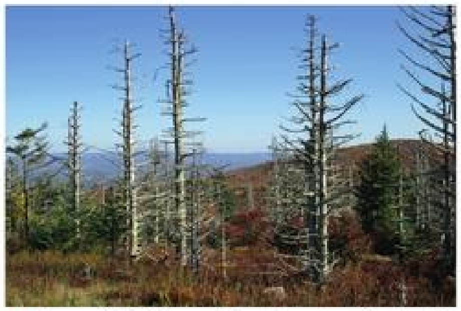


Figure 23.10 Trees dying from the effects of acid rain.

Acid rain is a major problem, mainly because of its devastating effect on trees and on life in lakes. Acid rain kills trees and fish in lakes. In some lakes the water is so acidic that it won't support life at all. Limestone buildings and marble statues (both made of *calcium carbonate*) and some metals such as iron are also attacked by acid rain.

Reaction between limestone and sulfuric acid:

$$CaCO_3(s) + H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow CaSO_4(s) + H_2O(l) + CO_2(g)$$

The solution to acid rain involves removing sulfur from fuels (this is usually done for petrol used in cars), '**scrubbing**' the gases from power stations and factories to remove SO_2 and NO_x, and using catalytic converters in cars.

CRACKING

Although most of the fractions from the fractional distillation of crude oil are useful as fuels, some fractions are more useful and more profitable to sell than others.

The amounts of each fraction obtained will depend on the proportions of the various hydrocarbons in the original crude oil, not the amounts in which they are needed. The problem is:

- there are far too many long-chain hydrocarbons, which are not in such high demand and are not as profitable to sell
- there are not enough shorter-chain hydrocarbons that can be used as fuel for cars.

Far more petrol is needed than can be supplied by just separating crude oil into its fractions.

Cracking is a process in which *long-chain alkanes are converted to alkenes and shorter-chain alkanes*. The big hydrocarbon molecules in fuel oil, for example, can be broken down into the smaller ones needed for petrol. A very simple equation could be:

$$\underset{\text{alkane}}{C_{14}H_{30}} \rightarrow \underset{\text{alkane}}{C_{10}H_{22}} + \underset{\text{alkene}}{C_4H_8}$$

HOW CATALYTIC CRACKING WORKS

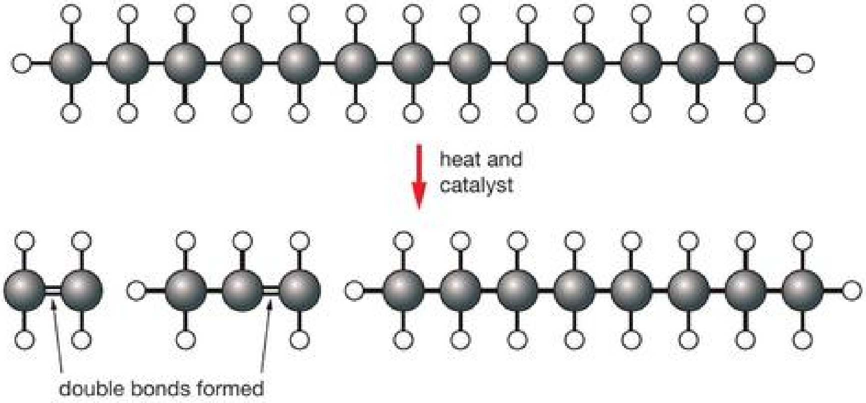
The fuel oil fraction is heated to give a gas and then passed over a catalyst of *silicon dioxide* (also called silica) and *aluminium oxide* (also called alumina) at about *600–700 °C*. Cracking can also be carried out at higher temperatures without a catalyst (*thermal cracking*).

Cracking is just an example of *thermal decomposition*: a big molecule splitting into smaller ones on heating. The majority of the hydrocarbons found in crude oil have single bonds between the carbon atoms. During the cracking process, C–C single bonds are broken and new C=C double bonds are formed.

The molecules are broken up in a fairly random way. One possibility is shown in Figure 23.11.

REMINDER

In Figure 23.11, the molecules have been drawn to show the various covalent bonds. They have also been 'straightened out' with bond angles of 90°.



▲ Figure 23.11 How cracking works.

As an equation, this would read:

$$C_{13}H_{28}(l) \rightarrow C_2H_4(g) + C_3H_6(g) + C_8H_{18}(l)$$

HINT

Don't worry too much if you can't remember which are gases and which are liquids. State symbols are very commonly missed out in organic chemistry.

Cracking produces a mixture of alkanes and alkenes. In this case, two different alkenes are produced: ethene and propene. Octane, an alkane, is also formed. This particular cracking reaction has therefore produced two types of useful molecules for the chemical industry. Ethene and propene are both used to make important polymers, as you will find in Chapter 29. Both are also used in making other organic chemicals. The reaction also produces octane, which is a component of petrol (gasoline).

There are therefore two important reasons why oil companies carry out cracking:

- to produce more petrol
- to produce more alkenes that can be used for making polymers (plastics) (alkenes are more reactive than alkanes and also have other uses).

HINT

It is essential that you don't try to learn these equations. In an exam, you could be given one of a wide range of possible hydrocarbons to start with. You need to understand what is happening, so that you can be adaptable.

The molecule might have split quite differently. All sorts of reactions are happening in a catalytic cracker. Two other possibilities might be:

$$C_{13}H_{28}(l) \rightarrow 2C_2H_4(g) + C_9H_{20}(l)$$

$$C_{13}H_{28}(l) \rightarrow 2C_2H_4(g) + C_3H_6(g) + C_6H_{14}(l)$$

Some reactions might even produce a small percentage of free hydrogen. For example:

$$C_{13}H_{28}(l) \rightarrow 2C_2H_4(g) + C_3H_6(g) + C_6H_{12}(l) + H_2(g)$$

In this case, all the hydrocarbons formed will have double bonds. They are all alkenes.

There will also be very many other ways in which this particular molecule might have split up. Also, remember that the fraction being cracked contains a complex mixture of hydrocarbons, not just one. At the end of the cracking process you will have an equally complex mixture of smaller hydrocarbons, both alkanes and alkenes. This mixture will have to go through a lot of further processing (including further fractional distillation) to separate everything out into pure compounds.

EXTENSION WORK

In industry, catalytic cracking is done by passing hydrocarbons through a bed of zeolite (aluminosilicate) catalyst at about 500 °C and moderate pressures. Apart from breaking down large straight-chain molecules into smaller ones, isomerisation can occur during the process to produce branched-chain alkanes and alkanes with ring structures. The presence of these isomers in a fuel helps to increase the *octane number* of a fuel, which is a measure of the tendency of a fuel to not undergo auto-ignition in an engine. *Auto-ignition* is when fuel burns spontaneously out of control. It leads to wear in the engine and wastage of petrol. The higher the octane number, the lower the tendency for a fuel to undergo auto-ignition.

CHAPTER QUESTIONS

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

5

1 Crude oil is a mixture of hydrocarbons.

- a State which two elements are present in the compounds in crude oil.

7

- b Crude oil is separated into fractions by heating and passing the vapour into a fractionating column. Explain how the fractions separate in the column.

6

- c Two of the fractions are gasoline and diesel. State one use of each.
- d Name two fractions formed in the fractional distillation of crude oil, other than gasoline and diesel.
- e Describe the differences between gasoline and diesel. In your answer you should refer to the average size of the molecules in the two liquids, the colour of the two liquids and the viscosities of the two liquids.

7

- f One of the hydrocarbons found in the diesel fraction is $C_{18}H_{38}$. Suggest the formula of a hydrocarbon that could be found in the gasoline fraction.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

9

- g i Write a balanced chemical equation for the complete combustion of butane, C_4H_{10}.

SKILLS REASONING

6

  - ii Incomplete combustion of hydrocarbons produces carbon monoxide. Explain why carbon monoxide is harmful to humans.

SKILLS REASONING

2 Explain why:

- a burning a fuel containing sulfur as an impurity causes acid rain
- b petrol engines produce oxides of nitrogen
- c the presence of too much sulfur dioxide, SO_2, in the atmosphere has a damaging effect on many buildings made of marble, a form of calcium carbonate, $CaCO_3$.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

3 Cracking is a process that splits larger hydrocarbons into smaller ones.

- a Give two reasons why an oil company might want to crack a hydrocarbon.
- b Give the conditions under which cracking is carried out.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

- c A molecule of the hydrocarbon $C_{11}H_{24}$ was cracked to give two molecules of ethene, C_2H_4, and one other molecule. Write a balanced chemical equation for the reaction which took place. (You can omit the state symbols from your equation.)
- d Write an equation for an alternative cracking reaction involving the same hydrocarbon, $C_{11}H_{24}$.

SKILLS CREATIVITY

4 Imagine a world in which fossil fuels such as coal, natural gas and oil had never formed. This would have effects other than the immediately obvious ones. For example, the iron and steel industry depends on coke made from coal, although in the past (on a much smaller scale) it used charcoal made from wood. Choose one aspect of the modern world and explain, in no more than 300 words, how it would be different in the absence of fossil fuels. You could choose from transport, use of materials, landscape, disease prevention, and power generation, for example, but you don't have to restrict yourself to this list.

Try not to be too simplistic about this, human beings are inventive! For example, it is possible to obtain organic chemicals from alcohol (from fermented sugar) and fuels from plant oils.

24 ALKANES

The hydrocarbons separated from the fractional distillation of crude oil are mainly alkanes. This is the simplest family of hydrocarbons, containing only carbon–carbon and carbon–hydrogen single bonds. Here we look into the structures and chemical reactions of these compounds in more detail. It is assumed that you have already read Chapter 22 (Introduction to Organic Chemistry).

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Know the general formula for alkanes
- Explain why alkanes are classified as saturated hydrocarbons
- Understand how to draw the structural and displayed formulae for alkanes with up to five carbon atoms in the molecule and to name the unbranched-chain isomers
- Describe the reactions of alkanes with halogens in the presence of ultraviolet radiation, limited to mono-substitution

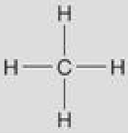
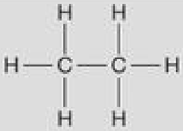
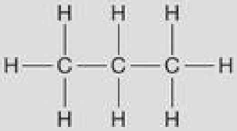
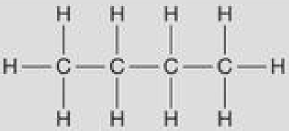
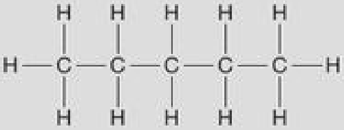
▲ Figure 24.1 The small alkanes are gases and are burned as fuels.

The alkanes are the simplest family of hydrocarbons. Hydrocarbons are compounds that contain carbon and hydrogen only.

Many of the alkanes are used as fuels. Methane is the major component of natural gas. Ethane and propane are also present in small quantities in natural gas, and are important constituents of liquefied petroleum gases (LPG) from crude oil distillation (discussed in Chapter 23).

The first five members of the alkanes series are shown in Table 24.1.

Table 24.1 Some alkanes

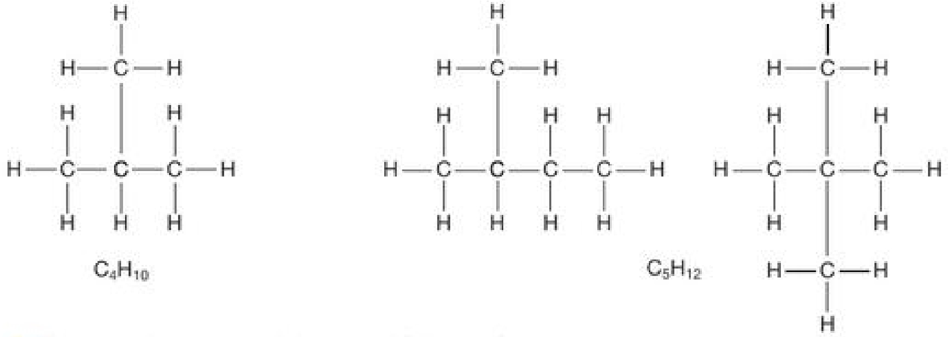
Name	Molecular formula	Structural formula	Displayed formula
methane	CH_4	CH_4	
ethane	C_2H_6	CH_3CH_3	
propane	C_3H_8	$CH_3CH_2CH_3$	
butane	C_4H_{10}	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_3$	
pentane	C_5H_{12}	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$	

KEY POINT

The alkanes are described as *saturated* hydrocarbons because they contain only C–C single bonds and have no double (C=C) or triple (C≡C) bonds. A way of thinking about this is that the alkanes are saturated with hydrogen, in other words they have the maximum number of hydrogen atoms possible for that number of carbon atoms. But do not write this definition down in the exam!

ISOMERS OF ALKANES

Isomers are *compounds which have the same molecular formula but different structural formulae*. The alkanes shown in Table 24.1 can all be described as *straight-chain alkanes* or as having an unbranched chain. There are also isomers of butane and pentane that have branched chains. These are shown in Figure 24.2.



▲ Figure 24.2 Branched chain isomers of C_4H_{10} and C_5H_{12}.

HOMOLOGOUS SERIES

HINT

When asked about a homologous series in the exam, it is probably best to only write about the properties (the second and third bullet points). Sometimes you do not get separate marks for 'the same functional group' and 'similar chemical properties', and perhaps a better way of writing this is 'they have similar chemical properties because they have the same functional group'.

The alkanes form a homologous series. A homologous series is a series of compounds that:

- have the same functional group
- *have similar chemical properties*
- *show a trend (gradation) in physical properties*
- can be described by the same general formula
- differ from the next by a $-CH_2-$ unit.

The alkanes form the simplest homologous series. The alkanes do not really have a functional group as they just contain single C–C and C–H bonds, which are the basis of all other organic compounds.

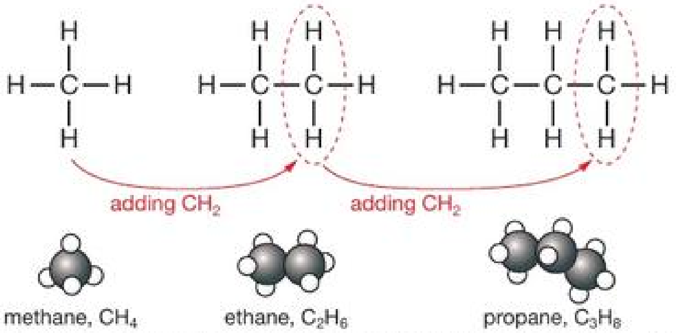
MEMBERS OF A HOMOLOGOUS SERIES HAVE THE SAME GENERAL FORMULA

In the case of the alkanes, if there are *n* carbons, there are $2n + 2$ hydrogens. The general formula for the alkanes is $\mathbf{C_nH_{2n+2}}$.

So, for example, if there are three carbons, there are $(2 \times 3) + 2 = 8$ hydrogens. The formula for propane is C_3H_8.

If you want the formula for an alkane with 15 carbons, you could work out that it is $C_{15}H_{32}$ and so on.

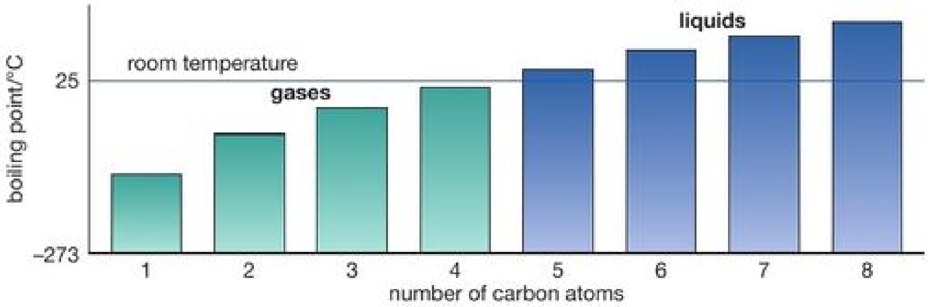
The reason that the alkanes and other homologous series can be described by a general formula is that each member differs from the next by a $-CH_2-$ unit.



▲ Figure 24.3 The three smallest alkanes. Each member differs from the next by a $-CH_2-$ unit.

MEMBERS OF A HOMOLOGOUS SERIES SHOW A TREND (GRADATION) IN PHYSICAL PROPERTIES

Figure 24.4 shows the boiling points of the first eight alkanes.



▲ Figure 24.4 Boiling points of the first eight alkanes

The first four alkanes are gases at room temperature (~25 °C). All the other alkanes you are likely to see at International GCSE are liquids. Solids start to appear at about $C_{18}H_{38}$.

The molecules of the members of a homologous series increase in size in a regular way and you can see that the *boiling points* also *increase* in a regular way.

As the molecules become bigger, the strength of the *intermolecular forces of attraction* between them *increases*. This means that *more energy* has to be put in to *break* the attractions between one molecule and its neighbours. One effect of this is that the boiling points increase in a regular way.

MEMBERS OF A HOMOLOGOUS SERIES HAVE SIMILAR CHEMICAL PROPERTIES

Chemical properties are dependent on the functional groups and bonding within the molecules. Because alkanes only contain carbon–carbon single bonds and carbon–hydrogen bonds, they are all going to behave in the same way. These are strong bonds, therefore alkanes are fairly unreactive organic compounds and are often thought of as being quite **inert**.

KEY POINT

The alkanes are not inert in the sense that they don't react with anything, like neon for example, but they are not very reactive for organic compounds and only really undergo two reactions.

TWO REACTIONS OF THE ALKANES

COMBUSTION

All alkanes burn in air or oxygen. If there is enough oxygen, they burn *completely* to give *carbon dioxide* and *water*, for example:

$$CH_4(g) + 2O_2(g) \rightarrow CO_2(g) + 2H_2O(l)$$

$$2C_2H_6(g) + 7O_2(g) \rightarrow 4CO_2(g) + 6H_2O(l)$$

If there isn't enough oxygen, there is *incomplete* combustion of the hydrocarbon, and you obtain *carbon monoxide* or *carbon (**soot**)* instead of carbon dioxide, for example:

$$2C_2H_6(g) + 5O_2(g) \rightarrow 4CO(g) + 6H_2O(l)$$

or

$$2C_2H_6(g) + 3O_2(g) \rightarrow 4C(s) + 6H_2O(l)$$

HINT

Don't try to learn these equations! Practise working them out for a wide range of different hydrocarbons. You will find guidance on how to work out the ethane equation in Chapter 5, page 41.

HINT

Remember, in combustion reactions it is highly unlikely that hydrogen, H_2, will be formed as a product because hydrogen is very flammable. You always obtain water, H_2O, even if there is insufficient oxygen.

SUBSTITUTION

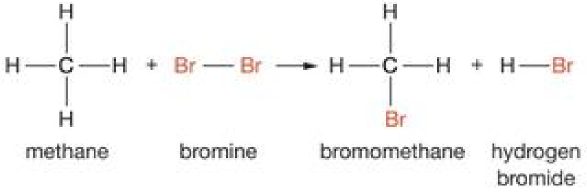
Alkanes react with halogens in the presence of **ultraviolet radiation** (UV light), for example from sunlight. A hydrogen atom in the alkane is replaced by a halogen atom. This is known as a *substitution* reaction because *one atom has been replaced (or substituted) by a different one*.

EXTENSION WORK

UV light is required for substitution reactions to split halogen molecules into atoms. Energy is needed to break the covalent bonds between halogen atoms. The atoms formed are called *free radicals* due to the presence of unpaired electrons on them. These are very reactive species which then go on to react with the usually unreactive alkanes.

A mixture of methane and bromine gas is orange because of the presence of the bromine. If it is exposed to sunlight, it loses its colour, and a mixture of bromomethane and hydrogen bromide gases is formed.

$$CH_4(g) \; + \; Br_2(g) \; \rightarrow \; CH_3Br(g) \; + \; HBr(g)$$



▲ Figure 24.5 A substitution reaction between methane and bromine.

EXTENSION WORK

If bromine is in excess, this reaction can go on to substitute more of the hydrogens in the methane. What you obtain is a mixture of CH_3Br, CH_2Br_2, $CHBr_3$ and CBr_4, plus HBr of course. You will find out more about *multi-substitution* if you go on to do chemistry at a more advanced level.

An exactly similar reaction happens between ethane and chlorine exposed to UV light. In this case, you get a mixture of chloroethane and hydrogen chloride gases:

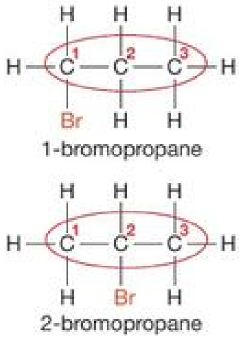
$$CH_3CH_3(g) + Cl_2(g) \rightarrow CH_3CH_2Cl(g) + HCl(g)$$

HINT

Notice the HCl(g) formed in this reaction is called hydrogen chloride rather than hydrochloric acid. To form an acid, hydrogen chloride gas must dissolve in water and dissociate to form H^+ ions (see Chapter 16).

Mono-substitution occurs when *only one hydrogen atom in the alkanes is replaced by a halogen atom*.

When propane reacts with bromine, it is possible to form two organic products even when only mono-substitution occurs. The two products are structural isomers of each other, they have the same molecular formula but different structural formulae.



▲ Figure 24.6 Two isomers of bromopropane, formed from the mono-substitution of propane with bromine.

The products formed from substitution reactions of alkanes with halogens are called *halogenoalkanes*. They are named according to the format *x-haloalkane*, where *x* indicates the position of the halogen atom in the longest carbon chain. So, when bromine reacts with propane we get 1-bromopropane and 2-bromopropane.

CHAPTER QUESTIONS

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

1 a Alkanes are *saturated* hydrocarbons. Explain the term *saturated*.

b Undecane is an alkane with 11 carbon atoms.

i Write down the molecular formula for undecane.

SKILLS REASONING

ii What physical state (solid, liquid or gas) would you expect undecane to be in at room temperature (25 °C)?

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

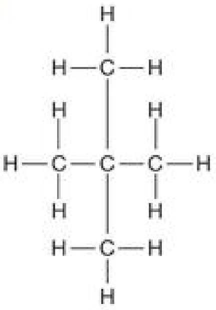
iii Write a balanced chemical equation for the complete combustion of undecane.

iv Write a balanced chemical equation for the incomplete combustion of undecane to produce carbon monoxide and explain why this reaction is harmful to humans.

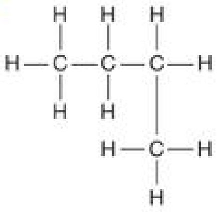
SKILLS ANALYSIS

2 Write the molecular formulae of the following compounds.

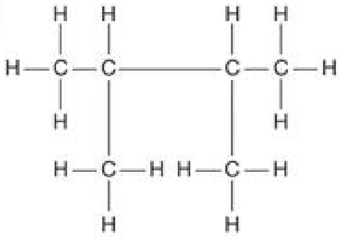
a



b



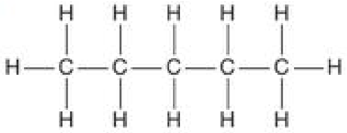
c



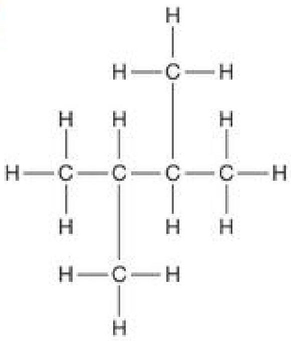
SKILLS INTERPRETATION

3 Draw two isomers of each of the following compounds.

a



b



SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

4 Ethane reacts with bromine under certain conditions.

a State the conditions needed for this reaction to occur.

b What is the type of reaction that occurs?

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

c Write a balanced chemical equation for the reaction using displayed formulae and name the organic product produced.

SKILLS INTERPRETATION

5 Butane reacts with chlorine to form two organic compounds with the formula C_4H_9Cl.

a Write a balanced chemical equation for the formation of one of these compounds.

b Draw the structures and give the names of the two possible *organic* products of this reaction.

25 ALKENES

The alkenes are another family of hydrocarbons. They all contain a carbon–carbon double bond. Alkenes can be produced from alkanes by cracking and they are much more reactive than the alkanes.

▶ Figure 25.1 Sunflower oil is polyunsaturated and contains lots of C=C groups.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Know that alkenes contain the functional group >C=C<
- Know the general formula for alkenes
- Explain why alkenes are classified as unsaturated hydrocarbons
- Describe the reactions of alkenes with bromine to produce dibromoalkanes
- Describe how bromine water can be used to distinguish between an alkane and an alkene

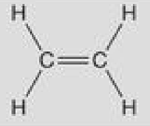
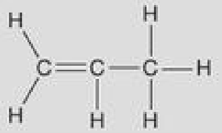
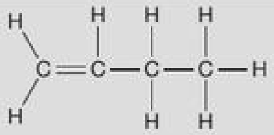
The alkenes are a homologous series of hydrocarbons which contain a carbon–carbon double bond. The **C=C** bond is the functional group of the alkenes.

The first three members of the alkene series are shown in Table 25.1.

KEY POINT

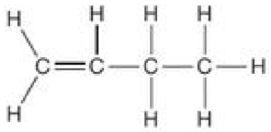
It is not possible to have an alkene with one carbon atom because alkenes must contain a C=C group so you need a minimum of two carbon atoms.

Table 25.1 The first three alkenes

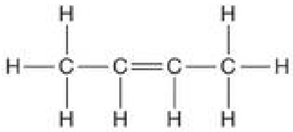
Name	Molecular formula	Empirical formula	Structural formula	Displayed formula
ethene	C_2H_4	CH_2	$CH_2=CH_2$	
propene	C_3H_6	CH_2	$CH_2=CHCH_3$	
but-1-ene	C_4H_8	CH_2	$CH_2=CHCH_2CH_3$	

ISOMERS

There are two straight-chain isomers with the formula C_4H_8:

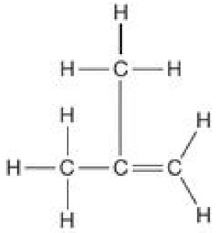


but-1-ene



but-2-ene

and one branched-chain isomer:



HINT

A way of thinking about this is that the alkenes are not saturated with H atoms, they do not have the maximum number of H atoms for that number of C atoms.

UNSATURATED HYDROCARBONS

Alkenes are *unsaturated* compounds because they contain a C=C bond. *A saturated compound contains single C–C bonds only whereas an unsaturated compound contains one or more double or triple C–C bonds*.

THE GENERAL FORMULA

Alkenes have the general formula $\mathbf{C_nH_{2n}}$. The number of hydrogen atoms is twice the number of carbon atoms. This means that all alkenes have the same empirical formula, CH_2.

The alkene with 11 carbon atoms will have 22 hydrogen atoms and the molecular formula $C_{11}H_{22}$.

PHYSICAL PROPERTIES

These are very similar to those of the alkanes. Remember that the small alkanes with up to four carbon atoms are gases at room temperature. The same is true for the alkenes. They are gases up to C_4H_8, and the next dozen or so are liquids. Again, the members of the homologous series *show a trend in physical properties*.

CHEMICAL REACTIONS OF THE ALKENES

COMBUSTION

In common with all hydrocarbons, alkenes burn in air or oxygen to give carbon dioxide and water, for example:

$$C_2H_4(g) + 3O_2(g) \rightarrow 2CO_2(g) + 2H_2O(l)$$

This isn't a reaction anybody would ever choose to do. Alkenes are much too useful to waste by burning them.

ADDITION

The C=C double bond is the functional group. The functional group determines the chemical properties of a compound. Alkenes have characteristic chemical properties which are different from those of alkanes. Alkenes are much more reactive than alkanes.

Alkenes undergo addition reactions. Part of the double bond breaks to become a single C–C bond and the electrons are used to join other atoms onto the two carbon atoms.

THE ADDITION OF BROMINE

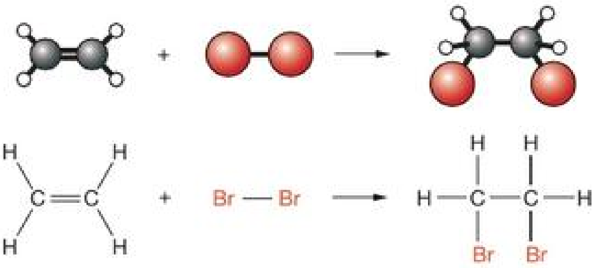
Bromine adds to alkenes without any need for heat, light or a catalyst. The reaction is often carried out using bromine water (aqueous bromine solution) as, for example, in Figure 25.2, with ethene.

You know a reaction has happened because bromine water is *orange* but the product, called 1,2-dibromoethane, is a *colourless* liquid.

HINT

Decode the name and make sure you can see how it works. 'eth' shows a two-carbon chain. 'ane' shows only carbon–carbon single bonds. The beginning of the name, '1,2-dibromo', shows two bromine atoms attached to the first and second carbon atoms.

You can write this as an equation in two ways: first, using displayed formulae and second, using structural formulae.



$CH_2{=}CH_2(g)$ + $Br_2(aq)$ → $CH_2BrCH_2Br(l)$.

ethene bromine 1,2-dibromoethane

▲ Figure 25.2 An addition reaction: an alkene plus bromine

HINT

Make sure you can see how these formulae relate to the full structures in the equation above.

THE TEST FOR UNSATURATED COMPOUNDS

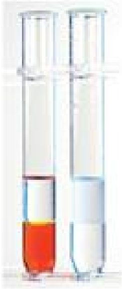
HINT

You must be careful with the words you use here: the final mixture is *colourless* and not clear. Do not use the word clear. Clear means not cloudy, you can see through it. The bromine water is clear and any other solution can also be described as clear.

Any compound with a carbon–carbon double bond will react with bromine in a similar way to ethene. This is used to *test for a carbon–carbon double bond*. If you shake an unknown organic compound with bromine water and the orange bromine water is *decolourised* (the colour changes from orange to colourless), the compound contains a carbon–carbon double bond. If your unknown compound is a gas, you can simply bubble it through bromine water with the same effect.

The left-hand tube in Figure 25.3 shows the effect of shaking a liquid alkene with bromine water. The organic layer (containing the alkene) is on top. You can see that the bromine water has been completely decolourised, showing the presence of the carbon–carbon double bond.

The right-hand tube in Figure 25.3 shows what happens if you use a liquid alkane, which doesn't have a carbon–carbon double bond. The colour of the bromine is still there. Alkanes do not decolourise bromine water because they do not contain a carbon–carbon double bond.

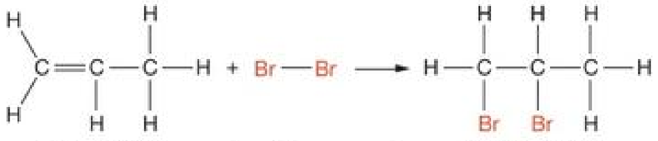


▲ Figure 25.3 The result of shaking a liquid alkene (left) or alkane (right) with bromine water.

EXTENSION WORK

In Figure 25.3, interestingly, most of the colour in the right-hand tube is now in the top organic layer. That is because the covalent bromine, which has a simple molecular structure, is more soluble in the organic compound than it is in water.

The addition reaction between bromine and propene is very similar to that of ethene. Part of the carbon–carbon double bond breaks and two bromine atoms add across the bond, as shown in Figure 25.4.



$CH_2{=}CHCH_3$ + Br_2 → $CH_2BrCHBrCH_3$

propene bromine 1,2-dibromopropane

▲ Figure 25.4 An addition reaction of propene with bromine

The product is called 1,2-dibromopropane. Its structure is based on propane and the prefix '1,2-dibromo' shows there are two bromine atoms, on the first and the second carbon atoms.

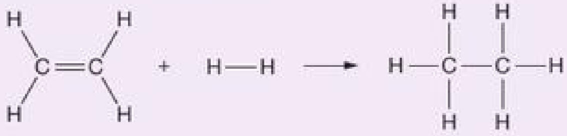
OTHER IMPORTANT ADDITION REACTIONS OF ALKENES

Figure 25.5 Production of margarine

EXTENSION WORK

Hydrogenation

A **hydrogenation** reaction involves the *addition of hydrogen*. An alkene reacts with hydrogen to form an alkane, for example:



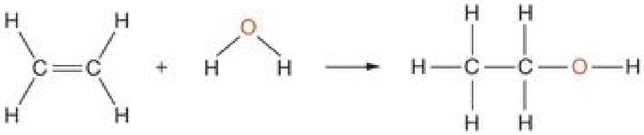
$CH_2{=}CH_2 + H_2 \rightarrow CH_3CH_3$

This reaction is used for the production of margarine, which is made by hydrogenation of polyunsaturated (i.e. many C=C bonds) plant oils.

CHEMISTRY ONLY

HYDRATION

A **hydration** reaction involves the *addition of water*. An alkene reacts with water to form an alcohol, for example:



$CH_2{=}CH_2 + H_2O \rightarrow CH_3CH_2OH$

Starting materials:	ethene and steam
Temperature:	300 °C
Pressure:	60–70 atmospheres (the atmosphere is a unit of pressure, equal to 101325 pascals)
Catalyst:	phosphoric acid

This reaction is used for the production of high-purity ethanol in industry (see Chapter 26 for more detail on this reaction).

EXTENSION WORK

The addition of water to propene could produce two different products, propan-1-ol and propan-2-ol. In reality, much more propan-2-ol is formed than propan-1-ol. In the major reaction, a hydrogen atom from water is first added onto the end carbon and then the –OH group is attached to the middle carbon. The addition of compounds to an unsymmetrical alkene like propene will be explored in detail when you study chemistry at a more advanced level.

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

CHAPTER QUESTIONS

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 6

1 The alkenes are a *homologous series* of *unsaturated* hydrocarbons.

a i State two characteristics of the members of a *homologous series*.

ii Explain the term *unsaturated*.

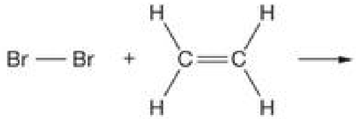
b Ethene is the simplest member of the alkenes. Bromine water can be used to distinguish alkenes from alkanes.

5

i Bromine water is added to ethene. State the starting colour of the bromine water and the finishing colour of the reaction mixture.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING, INTERPRETATION 7

ii Complete the equation by drawing and naming the displayed formula of the product.



Name of the product:

SKILLS INTERPRETATION

c Isomers are compounds that have the same molecular formula but different displayed formulae. Draw the displayed formulae of three alkene isomers that have the molecular formula C_4H_8.

d Can you draw any other isomers of C_4H_8 which are *not* alkenes?

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

2 A gaseous hydrocarbon, **P**, with three carbon atoms, decolourises bromine water.

a Explain what the decolorisation of the bromine water tests for.

b Write the displayed formula for the hydrocarbon.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

c Write a balanced chemical equation for the reaction between the hydrocarbon and bromine, using displayed formulae.

d The reaction between ethane and bromine gas in the presence of UV light also causes the bromine to lose colour.

i Write a balanced chemical equation for this reaction.

SKILLS REASONING

ii This reaction is described as a substitution reaction, whereas the reaction between **P** and bromine is an addition reaction. Using the equations you have already written, explain the difference between addition and substitution.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

3 Alkenes undergo addition reactions.

a Predict the structural formula of the compound formed when chlorine reacts with propene. Name the product formed.

b Ethene reacts with hydrogen. Give the name and structural formula of the product.

4 Propene can be made by heating propane and sulfur.

a Name another method of making propene and state two conditions for making alkenes from alkanes.

SKILLS EXECUTIVE FUNCTION

b Describe a chemical test which can be used to distinguish between propane and propene.

Test:

Result with propane:

Result with propene:

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

5 Give the structural formulae and names of the product when but-1-ene reacts with each of the following:

a steam

b hydrogen chloride (HCl)

c bromine.

CHEMISTRY ONLY

26 ALCOHOLS

Alcohols are an important class of organic compounds. In this chapter we will study some of their reactions.

▶ Figure 26.1 Alcohols are very useful solvents.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Know that alcohols contain the functional group –OH
- Understand how to draw structural and displayed formulae for methanol, ethanol, propanol (propan-1-ol only) and butanol (butan-1-ol only), and name each compound
- Know that ethanol can be oxidised by:
  - burning in air or oxygen (complete combustion)
  - reaction with oxygen in the air to form ethanoic acid (microbial oxidation)
  - heating with potassium dichromate(VI) in dilute sulfuric acid to form ethanoic acid
- Know that ethanol can be manufactured by:
  - reacting ethene with steam in the presence of a phosphoric acid catalyst at a temperature of about 300 °C and a pressure of about 60–70 atm
  - the fermentation of glucose, in the absence of air, at an optimum temperature of about 30 °C and using the enzymes in yeast
- Understand the reasons for fermentation in the absence of air and at an optimum temperature

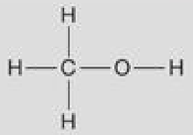
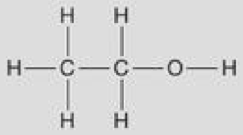
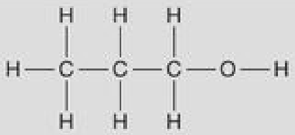
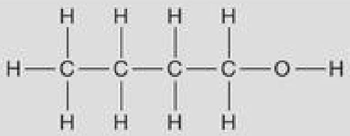
What we commonly refer to as 'alcohol' is just one member of a large family (homologous series) of similar compounds. Alcohols all contain the functional group **–OH** covalently bonded to a carbon chain.

The familiar alcohol in drinks is C_2H_5OH (or, better, showing the structure, CH_3CH_2OH) and should properly be called *ethanol*.

DRAWING AND NAMING THE ALCOHOLS

We are only going to look at the four simplest alcohols: methanol, ethanol, propan-1-ol and butan-1-ol. These are shown in Table 26.1.

Table 26.1 Formulae and names of the first four members of the alcohol homologous series

Name	Molecular formula	Structural formula	Displayed formula
methanol	CH_4O	CH_3OH	
ethanol	C_2H_6O	CH_3CH_2OH	
propan-1-ol	C_3H_8O	$CH_3CH_2CH_2OH$	
butan-1-ol	$C_4H_{10}O$	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2OH$	

HINT

When drawing the displayed formula for alcohols you must show the bond between the O and the H, so O–H.

Look carefully at the names. The 'meth', 'eth', 'prop' and 'but' parts count *the number of carbon atoms*. The 'an' part tells you that the molecules are *saturated* and there aren't any carbon–carbon double bonds. The 'ol' tells you there is *an –OH functional group*.

Why the number 1 in propan-1-ol and butan-1-ol? The number tells you *where the –OH group is in the carbon chain*. You count the numbers from the end which gives you the smallest possible number in the name (see Table 26.1). Here, because the –OH group is attached to the end carbon, it is on carbon number 1. It is also possible to have propan-2-ol or butan-2-ol if the –OH is attached to a middle carbon. Propan-1-ol and propan-2-ol are structural isomers of each other, the same holds for butan-1-ol and butan-2-ol.

HINT

The names propanol and butanol are acceptable to use in the exam.

For the rest of this topic, we are just going to use ethanol as a representation of alcohols.

THE OXIDATION OF ETHANOL

ETHANOL BURNS IN AIR

All alcohols burn to form carbon dioxide and water. With ethanol:

$$C_2H_5OH(l) + 3O_2(g) \rightarrow 2CO_2(g) + 3H_2O(l)$$

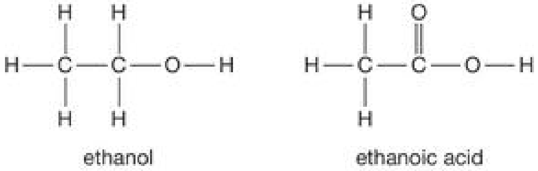
Ethanol is a **biofuel**, that is, *a fuel that is made from biological sources, such as sugar cane or corn*. Mixtures of petrol with ethanol are increasingly used in countries such as Brazil, which have little or no oil industry to produce their own petrol. On the other hand, they often have a climate which is good for growing sugar cane. Other countries are introducing biofuels such as ethanol to reduce dependence on fossil fuels, which are finite **non-renewable resources**.

2
R$
TOTAL A PAGAR
LITROS
R$
PREÇO POR LITRO
Etanol COMUM

▲ Figure 26.2 Ethanol being used as a fuel in Brazil.

ETHANOL IS OXIDISED BY THE AIR IN THE PRESENCE OF MICROBES (MICROBIAL OXIDATION)

A bottle of wine left open to the air turns sour. The French for sour wine is *vin aigre*, which has been distorted into *vinegar*. The ethanol in the wine is oxidised by air with the help of microorganisms such as bacteria or yeast to form ethanoic acid, CH_3COOH.



▲ Figure 26.3 Displayed formulae of ethanol and ethanoic acid

DID YOU KNOW?

The old name for ethanoic acid was acetic acid.

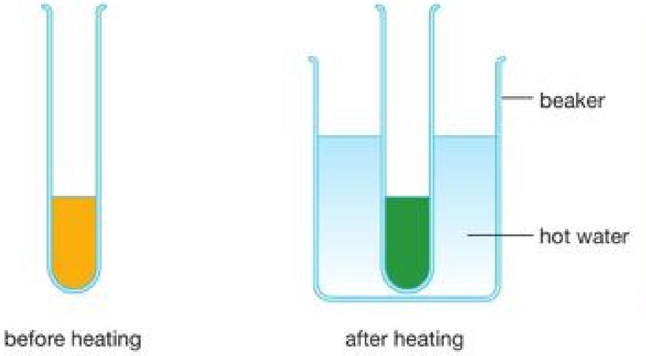
ETHANOL CAN BE OXIDISED BY HEATING WITH POTASSIUM DICHROMATE(VI) IN DILUTE SULFURIC ACID

This is the usual way of oxidising ethanol (and other alcohols) in the lab. The oxidising agent is a mixture of potassium dichromate(VI) and dilute sulfuric acid. Potassium dichromate(VI) is a strong oxidising agent and has the formula $K_2Cr_2O_7$. The dilute sulfuric acid is important for the potassium dichromate(VI) to act as an oxidising agent. Without the H^+ ions from the acid, no redox reaction will occur.

A few drops of ethanol are added to a solution containing the orange mixture of potassium dichromate(VI) and dilute sulfuric acid in a test-tube. The tube is heated in a hot water bath.

EXTENSION WORK

In the name potassium dichromate(VI), the 'di-' tells you that there are two chromium atoms in the compound, and the roman numeral (VI) shows the *oxidation state* of chromium in this compound. We have seen these symbols before in Chapter 7, where they simply represent the charges on the ions, i.e. Cu(II) is Cu^{2+} and Fe(III) is Fe^{3+}. The situation in the dichromate ion, $Cr_2O_7^{2-}$, is a little more complicated as there is covalent bonding between the chromium and oxygen atoms within the ion. You do not need to worry about the concept of oxidation state at International GCSE. However, it is important to add the (VI) after the name of potassium dichromate as there are other types of chromates which cannot oxidise alcohols.

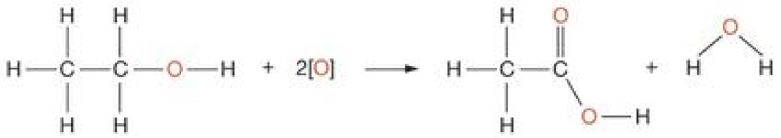


Safety Note: Wear eye protection and add the reactants very slowly to prevent too violent a reaction. Do not point the mouth of the test-tube towards you as the contents may 'spit' out.

▲ Figure 26.4 Oxidation of ethanol by heating with potassium dichromate(VI) and dilute sulfuric acid.

The solution turns green and now contains a very dilute solution of ethanoic acid together with other products. The green colour indicates the presence of Cr^{3+} ions, which are formed when the potassium dichromate(VI) is reduced. The equation for this reaction is very complicated, and so in organic chemistry we frequently show an oxidising agent in equations as [O].

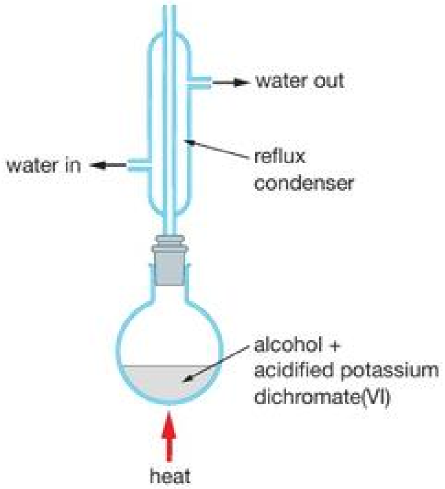
$$CH_3CH_2OH + 2[O] \longrightarrow CH_3COOH + H_2O$$



Starting materials: ethanol and potassium dichromate(VI) in dilute sulfuric acid

Conditions: heat under reflux

▲ Figure 26.5 Oxidation of ethanol to ethanoic acid



▲ Figure 26.6 Ethanol is refluxed with acidified potassium dichromate(VI) to form ethanoic acid.

EXTENSION WORK

You can use this reaction to make a sample of ethanoic acid by heating ethanol with an excess of the oxidising agent in a flask with a condenser placed vertically in the top (Figure 26.6). This is known as *heating under reflux* and condenses any vapours so that they run back into the flask and don't escape.

When the reaction is complete, the condenser is rearranged for a simple distillation. Ethanoic acid and water are both distilled and a solution of ethanoic acid is collected.

THE PRODUCTION OF ETHANOL

Here we will look at two different process that are used industrially to make ethanol.

MAKING ETHANOL BY FERMENTATION

▲ Figure 26.7 Sugar cane: one of the possible raw materials for making ethanol. Others include maize (called corn in the USA), wheat and other starchy materials.

Yeast is added to a sugar (or starch) solution and left in the warm (about 30 °C) for several days in the absence of air (anaerobic conditions). **Enzymes** (biological catalysts) in the yeast convert the sugar into ethanol and carbon dioxide. This process is known as **fermentation**.

The *absence of air* and the *temperature* are both important. In the presence of air (aerobic conditions), enzymes in the yeast produce carbon dioxide and water instead of ethanol. The enzymes are protein catalysts and if the temperature is increased much above 40 °C they lose their structure and don't work any longer. The proteins are said to be **denatured**. At a lower temperature, the reaction is too slow. Somewhere between 30 and 40 °C is the *optimum temperature* for the reaction.

EXTENSION WORK

The biochemistry is very complicated. Assuming you are starting from ordinary sugar (sucrose), the sucrose is split into two smaller sugars, glucose and fructose. Glucose and fructose have the same molecular formulae, but different structures. They are structural isomers.

$$\underset{\text{sucrose}}{C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}(aq)} + H_2O(l) \rightarrow \underset{\text{glucose}}{C_6H_{12}O_6(aq)} + \underset{\text{fructose}}{C_6H_{12}O_6(aq)}$$

Enzymes in the yeast convert glucose into ethanol and carbon dioxide in a large number of steps. The overall equation for that conversion is

$$\underset{\text{glucose}}{C_6H_{12}O_6(aq)} \rightarrow \underset{\text{ethanol}}{2C_2H_5OH(aq)} + \underset{\text{carbon dioxide}}{2CO_2(g)}$$

Starting materials: glucose (from sugar cane)
Temperature: 30 °C
Catalyst: enzymes in yeast
Other conditions: anaerobic

REMINDER

You will find a diagram and discussion for a lab-based fractional distillation of an ethanol/water mixture in Chapter 2, page 18.

Yeast is killed by more than about 15% of alcohol in the mixture, and so it is impossible to make pure alcohol by fermentation. The alcohol is purified by fractional distillation. This takes advantage of the difference in boiling point between ethanol and water. Water boils at 100 °C whereas ethanol boils at 78 °C.

MAKING ETHANOL BY THE HYDRATION OF ETHENE

Ethanol is also made by reacting ethene with steam, a process known as hydration.

$$CH_2{=}CH_2(g) + H_2O(g) \rightarrow CH_3CH_2OH(g)$$

Starting materials:	ethene and steam
Temperature:	300 °C
Pressure:	60–70 atmospheres
Catalyst:	phosphoric acid (H_3PO_4)

KEY POINT

This is an *addition reaction*: the water is added to the ethene without removing anything.

Only a small proportion of the ethene reacts. The ethanol produced is condensed as a liquid and the unreacted ethene is recycled through the process.

COMPARING THE TWO METHODS OF PRODUCING ETHANOL

	Fermentation	Hydration of ethene
Use of resources	Uses renewable resources: sugar beet or sugar cane, corn and other starchy materials	Uses finite, non-renewable resources: once all the oil has been consumed, there won't be any more
Type of process	A batch process: everything is mixed together in a reaction vessel and then left for several days That batch is then removed and a new reaction is set up This is inefficient	A continuous flow process: a stream of reactants is constantly passed over the catalyst This is more efficient than a batch process
Rate of reaction	Slow, taking several days for each batch	Quick
Quality of product	Produces very impure ethanol which needs further processing	Produces much purer ethanol
Reaction conditions	Uses gentle temperatures and atmospheric pressure	Uses high temperatures and pressures, requiring a high input of energy

At the moment, countries which have easy access to crude oil produce ethanol mainly from ethene, but one day there will be no oil remaining. At that point, the production of ethanol from sugar and starch will provide an alternative route to many of the organic chemicals we need.

CHAPTER QUESTIONS

SKILLS INTERPRETATION

1 a Draw the structural formulae for the following compounds:

- **i** methanol
- **ii** propan-1-ol

b Draw the displayed formulae for these compounds:

- **i** ethanol
- **ii** butan-1-ol

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

c Name the following compounds:

- **i** $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2OH$
- **ii** CH_3CH_2OH

SKILLS INTERPRETATION

2 a Draw a dot-and-cross diagram showing the bonding in a molecule of ethanol.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

b Ethanol can be produced by the catalytic hydration of ethene. Describe two conditions used in this conversion.

c In some countries ethanol is manufactured by a different method called fermentation.

- **i** State the raw material used to manufacture ethanol in this way.

SKILLS REASONING

- **ii** Explain why the following conditions are important for making ethanol by the fermentation of glucose.
  - Yeast is added into the reaction mixture.
  - A temperature between 30 and 40 °C is used.
  - Fermentation needs to be carried out in the absence of air.
- **iii** Explain why some countries, such as Brazil, manufacture ethanol in this way.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

d Ethanol is used as a biofuel in Brazil. Write a balanced chemical equation for the complete combustion of ethanol.

3 Glucose can be converted to ethanoic acid in the following sequence of reactions:

$$\text{glucose} \xrightarrow{\text{reaction 1}} \text{ethanol} \xrightarrow{\text{reaction 2}} \text{ethanoic acid}$$

a Write a balanced chemical equation for reaction 1 (the formula for glucose is $C_6H_{12}O_6$).

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

b Ethanoic acid can be made by the oxidation of ethanol in a lab. The ethanoic acid can be distilled off from the resulting mixtures and collected as a solution in water.

- **i** Give suitable reagents for reaction 2.
- **ii** Describe the colour change during reaction 2.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

- **iii** Write a balanced chemical equation for this process, using [O] to represent the oxidising agent.

c Ethanol can be converted to ethene and another product in a single step. Complete the equation below.

$C_2H_5OH \rightarrow C_2H_4 +$ ____________

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

CHEMISTRY ONLY

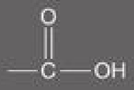
27 CARBOXYLIC ACIDS

Previously you have seen how alcohols can be oxidised to form a class of organic compounds called carboxylic acids. Here we look at their structures and some of their reactions in more detail.

▲ Figure 27.1 Stinging nettles inject methanoic acid.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

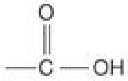
- Know that carboxylic acids contain the functional group



$$-\overset{\overset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-OH$$

- Understand how to draw structural and displayed formulae for unbranched-chain carboxylic acids with up to four carbon atoms in the molecule, and name each compound
- Describe the reactions of aqueous solutions of carboxylic acids with metals and metal carbonates
- Know that vinegar is an aqueous solution containing ethanoic acid

Acids such as ethanoic acid are known as **carboxylic acids** and they all contain the functional group **–COOH**



$$-\overset{\overset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-OH$$

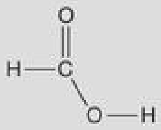
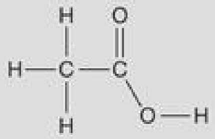
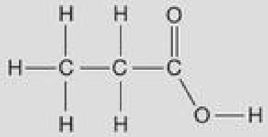
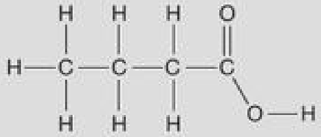
The most familiar one is ethanoic acid (old name *acetic acid*). **Vinegar** is *an aqueous solution containing ethanoic acid*.

Carboxylic acids are formed by oxidation of the corresponding alcohols, for example ethanoic acid is formed when ethanol is left in the air or oxidised using potassium dichromate(VI) in dilute sulfuric acid. If you need a reminder, have at look at Chapter 26, pages 289–290.

DRAWING AND NAMING THE CARBOXYLIC ACIDS

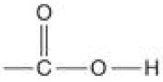
Again, we are only going to be looking at the four simplest carboxylic acids: methanoic acid, ethanoic acid, propanoic acid and butanoic acid. These are shown in Table 27.1.

Table 27.1 Formulae and names of the first four members of the carboxylic acid homologous series

Name	Molecular formula	Structural formula	Displayed formula
methanoic acid	CH_2O_2	HCOOH	
ethanoic acid	$C_2H_4O_2$	CH_3COOH	
propanoic acid	$C_3H_6O_2$	CH_3CH_2COOH	
butanoic acid	$C_4H_8O_2$	$CH_3CH_2CH_2COOH$	

HINT

If you are asked for a displayed formula in an exam, you should draw all the bonding in the COOH group as shown here. If you just want to write the formula in an equation, it is normal to write it as, for example, CH_3COOH.



▲ Figure 27.2 The carboxylic acid functional group

KEY POINT

It is really important to notice that when we name a carboxylic acid we count the total number of carbon atoms, including the one in the –COOH group. So propanoic acid has three carbon atoms in total, which is why it starts with 'prop'. The –COOH group is always on the end carbon, so there is no need to insert a number in the name to represent the position of the functional group.

ACID PROPERTIES OF THE CARBOXYLIC ACIDS

Ethanoic acid and the other carboxylic acids are weak acids with a pH of about 3–5, depending on the concentration of the solution. They will turn blue litmus paper red, and react with all the things you expect acids to react with.

In the reactions described here, we are taking ethanoic acid as an example because it is the one you are most likely to use. All the others will behave similarly, and if necessary all you need to do is change the formula from CH_3COOH to, for example, CH_3CH_2COOH.

REACTION WITH METALS

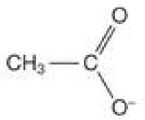
▲ Figure 27.3 Reaction between magnesium ribbon and ethanoic acid.

Dilute ethanoic acid reacts with metals in the same way as other dilute acids such as hydrochloric acid or sulfuric acid, only *more slowly*. Remember *metals react with acids to give a salt and hydrogen* (see Chapter 17, page 174).

For example, dilute ethanoic acid reacts with magnesium with a lot of fizzing to produce a salt and hydrogen. The salt formed is magnesium ethanoate, which is soluble in water and so you get a colourless solution:

$$Mg(s) + 2CH_3COOH(aq) \rightarrow (CH_3COO)_2Mg(aq) + H_2(g)$$

Students frequently have problems with the formulae of salts like magnesium ethanoate. You have to remember that this is an ionic compound, and so contains magnesium ions, Mg^{2+}, and ethanoate ions, CH_3COO^-. That means that you need two ethanoate ions for every magnesium ion to make the charges balance. The metal is written after the ethanoate because that reflects the structure; the magnesium ion is attracted to the negative charge on the oxygen atoms in the ethanoate ions.



▲ Figure 27.4 The structure of an ethanoate ion

Other metals behave as you would expect. Sodium is dangerously reactive; zinc produces bubbles of hydrogen more slowly than it does with hydrochloric acid, for example; metals below hydrogen in the reactivity series won't react.

Wherever a reaction takes place, a metal ethanoate will be formed as well as hydrogen. Zinc ethanoate is $(CH_3COO)_2Zn$.

EXTENSION WORK

Ethanoic acid is a weak acid, whereas the acids we have met before, hydrochloric acid or sulfuric acid, are called strong acids. Students can have the misconception that strong acids are equivalent to concentrated acids. Whether an acid is strong or weak has, in fact, nothing to do with its concentration. Strong acids dissociate completely into their constituent ions in water, for example in hydrochloric acid you find mostly H^+ and Cl^- ions and hardly any HCl molecules. In weak acids, the dissociation is only partial. About 1 in ~75 CH_3COOH molecules will dissociate into H^+ and CH_3COO^- in water. This is why if you have the same concentration of ethanoic acid and hydrochloric acid, the ethanoic acid reacts with metals or metal carbonates much more slowly than the hydrochloric acid as the concentration of the H^+ ions is much less.

REACTION WITH CARBONATES

Carbonates react with acids to give a salt, carbon dioxide and water (Chapter 17, page 177), and ethanoic acid behaves like any other acid. For example, with sodium carbonate you get a lot of fizzing and a colourless solution of sodium ethanoate:

$$Na_2CO_3(s) + 2CH_3COOH(aq) \rightarrow 2CH_3COONa(aq) + CO_2(g) + H_2O(l)$$

With calcium carbonate you again get lots of fizzing and a colourless solution – this time containing calcium ethanoate:

$$2CH_3COOH(aq) + CaCO_3(s) \rightarrow (CH_3COO)_2Ca(aq) + CO_2(g) + H_2O(l)$$

CHAPTER QUESTIONS

SKILLS INTERPRETATION 7

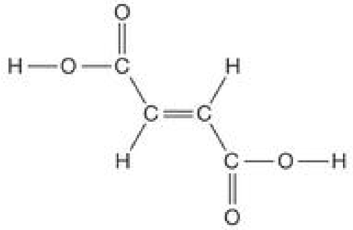
1 a Draw the structural formulae for the following compounds:
  i ethanoic acid
  ii butanoic acid

b Draw the displayed formulae for these compounds:
  i methanoic acid
  ii propanoic acid

c Name the following compounds:
  i $CH_3CH_2CH_2COOH$
  ii CH_3COOH

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 6

2 What are the functional groups shown in the compound below (choose one answer from the table below)?



	Alkene	Alcohol	Carboxylic acid
A	✓	✓	✓
B	✓	✓	✗
C	✓	✗	✓
D	✗	✓	✓

SKILLS INTERPRETATION 8

3 Propan-1-ol can be oxidised by heating it under reflux with potassium dichromate(VI) in dilute sulfuric acid.

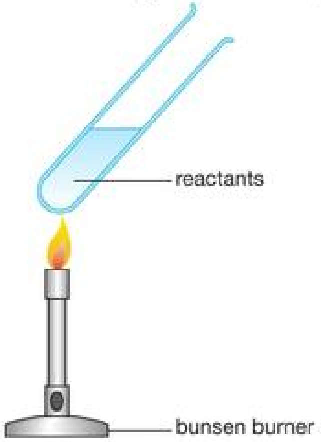
a Draw the full displayed formula of the product of this reaction.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 5

SKILLS EXECUTIVE FUNCTION

b Describe the colour change during the reaction.

c A student suggested the following apparatus for the oxidation of propan-1-ol. Explain why this method might be too dangerous.



SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING, PROBLEM SOLVING 9

d Describe what you would see and write balanced chemical equations for the reactions if you added some of the product you collected to test-tubes containing:

i magnesium ribbon

ii sodium carbonate solution.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 8

4 Vinegar can react with baking soda, which contains sodium hydrogencarbonate ($NaHCO_3$), to give a salt, carbon dioxide and water.

a Balance the following equation for the reaction between vinegar and baking soda.

$$\underset{\text{vinegar}}{\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_} + \underset{\text{baking soda}}{NaHCO_3} \rightarrow \underset{\text{a salt}}{\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_} + CO_2 + H_2O$$

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 6

b Suggest the type of reaction occurring.

c Suggest an observation that could be made during this reaction.

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

CHEMISTRY ONLY

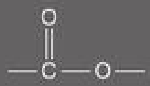
28 ESTERS

Alcohols, carboxylic acids and esters are organic compounds that contain oxygen as well as carbon and hydrogen. They are closely related. Carboxylic acids are made from oxidation of alcohols. In this chapter, you will learn how we can make esters by reacting alcohols with carboxylic acids. Esters are frequently used for perfumes and artificial flavours.

▲ Figure 28.1 Fats and oils contain the ester functional group.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

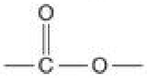
- Know that esters contain the functional group



$$-\overset{\overset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-O-$$

- Know that ethyl ethanoate is the ester produced when ethanol and ethanoic acid react in the presence of an acid catalyst
- Understand how to write the structural and displayed formulae of ethyl ethanoate
- Understand how to write the structural and displayed formulae of an ester, given the name or formula of the alcohol and carboxylic acid from which it is formed and vice versa
- Know that esters are volatile compounds with distinctive smells and are used as food flavourings and in perfumes
- Practical: Prepare a sample of an ester such as ethyl ethanoate

Esters are organic compounds formed by the reaction of an alcohol with a carboxylic acid. They have the functional group



$$-\overset{\overset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-O-$$

This can be written in condensed form as **–COO–**.

MAKING A SIMPLE ESTER: ETHYL ETHANOATE

Heating a mixture of ethanoic acid and ethanol with a few drops of concentrated sulfuric acid produces a liquid called ethyl ethanoate.

$$\underset{\text{ethanoic acid}}{CH_3COOH(l)} + \underset{\text{ethanol}}{CH_3CH_2OH(l)} \rightleftharpoons \underset{\text{ethyl ethanoate}}{CH_3COOCH_2CH_3(l)} + \underset{\text{water}}{H_2O(l)}$$

Starting materials:	ethanol and ethanoic acid
Catalyst:	concentrated sulfuric acid
Conditions:	heat

The concentrated sulfuric acid isn't written into the equation because it is a *catalyst* and it isn't consumed in the reaction.

The reaction is called **esterification**. It can also be described as a **condensation** reaction *because water is made when two molecules are joined together*. We will talk more about condensation reactions in the next chapter.

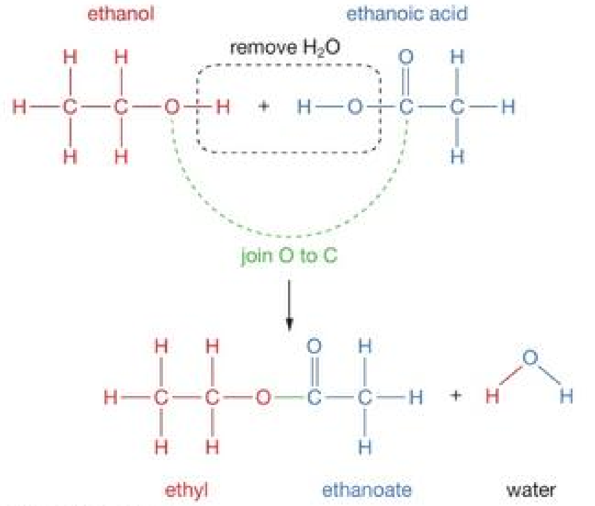
This reaction is *reversible* so to maximise the yield of ethyl ethanoate we often use pure ethanol and ethanoic acid (pure ethanoic acid is called *glacial ethanoic acid*). In Chapter 21 we discussed how the position of equilibrium always shifts to counteract any changes you make. If water is added to the reactants, the system would want to shift to the left to consume the water and therefore decrease the amount of ethyl ethanoate made. That is not what we want if we plan to make an ester!

DID YOU KNOW?

Ethyl ethanoate has quite a strong smell. It can be used as a solvent in nail polish and nail polish remover.

DRAWING AND NAMING ESTERS

In order to work out the structure of the ester formed when an alcohol and a carboxylic acid react together, it is easier to start by drawing the alcohol and carboxylic acid so that their OH groups are next to each other. Now remove H_2O and join together what is left.

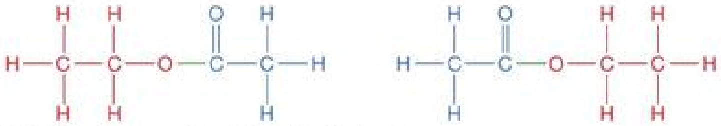


▲ Figure 28.2 Formation of an ester

EXTENSION WORK

In an esterification reaction, an H from the alcohol and an OH from the acid are removed to form water. However, this distinction is not very important at International GCSE level. If you remove OH from the alcohol and H from the acid, you will obtain the same structure if you just join together what is left over.

An ester can be drawn either way round (see Figure 28.3) but the name is always written the same way round: ethyl ethanoate.



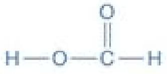
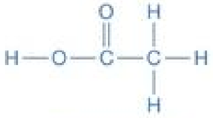
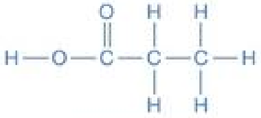
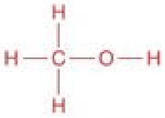
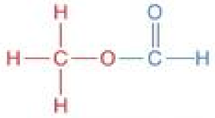
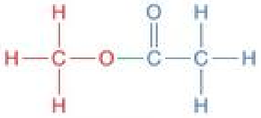
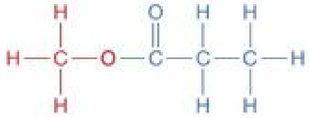
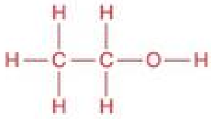
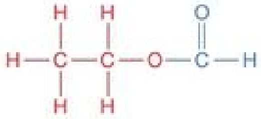
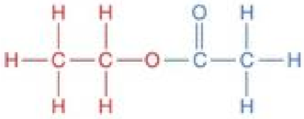
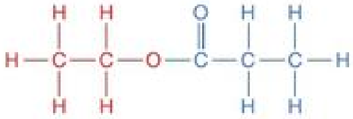
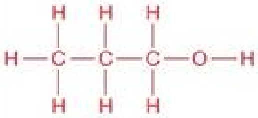
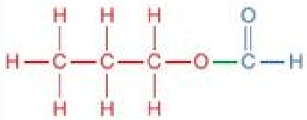
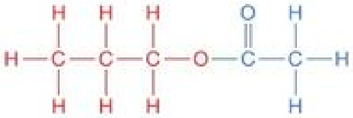
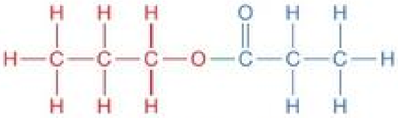
▲ Figure 28.3 Different ways of drawing ethyl ethanoate

KEY POINT

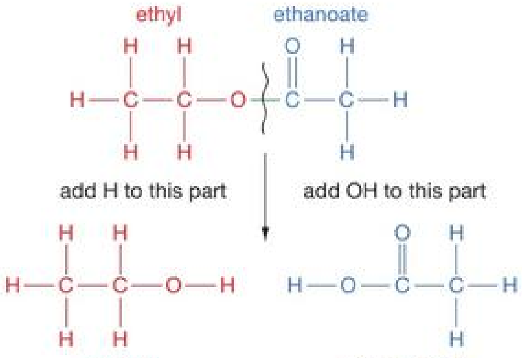
When naming esters the part with the C=O is always the 'oate' part.

Some other examples are shown in Table 28.1.

Table 28.1 Examples of esters

Acid / Alcohol	 methanoic acid	 ethanoic acid	 propanoic acid
 methanol	 methyl methanoate	 methyl ethanoate	 methyl propanoate
 ethanol	 ethyl methanoate	 ethyl ethanoate	 ethyl propanoate
 propan-1-ol	 propyl methanoate	 propyl ethanoate	 propyl propanoate

You also need to be able to reverse this and work out which carboxylic acid and alcohol you would have to react together to produce a given ester. To do this, break apart the molecule between the C and O and add OH to one side and H to the other so that you have two OH groups.



▲ Figure 28.4 Splitting an ester

$$\underset{\text{ethyl ethanoate}}{CH_3COOCH_2CH_3(l)} + \underset{\text{water}}{H_2O(l)} \rightleftharpoons \underset{\text{ethanoic acid}}{CH_3COOH(l)} + \underset{\text{ethanol}}{CH_3CH_2OH(l)}$$

KEY POINT

The colours in Table 28.1 are used to show how the esters are made. The parts in red come from the alcohols and the parts in blue come from the carboxylic acids.

KEY POINT

It isn't actually important which C–O bond you break, as long as you add H to one side and OH to the other to give two OH groups you will get the same answer.

HINT

When working out the alcohol and carboxylic acid that an ester comes from, the '**yl**' bit tells you the alcohol and the '**oate**' bit tells you the carboxylic acid. So, prop**yl** butan**oate** is made from propanol and butanoic acid.

USES OF ESTERS

The small esters like ethyl ethanoate are commonly used in solvents, but most esters are used in food flavourings and perfumes. They are *volatile* liquids (*they turn to vapour easily*) with distinctive smells. The typical smell of bananas, raspberries, pears and other fruit is due in part to naturally occurring esters. Chemists create artificial flavourings and perfumes using mixtures of esters and other organic compounds.

DID YOU KNOW?

Esters are often described as having a sweet, fruity smell.

Safety Note: Wear goggles and dispense the acids in a fume cupboard. Avoid all skin contact with the acids; wash off immediately with plenty of cold water if you get some on your skin. Carefully follow the instructions as to how to smell the esters produced.

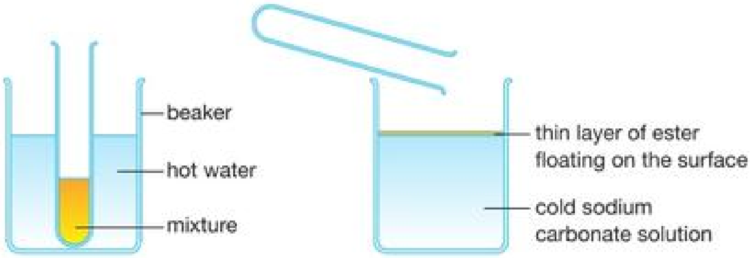
ACTIVITY 1

▼ PRACTICAL: MAKING AND TESTING THE SMELL OF SOME ESTERS IN THE LAB

▲ Figure 28.5 Cosmetics researcher smelling a perfume under development.

It is easy to produce esters in the lab on a test-tube scale by reacting various combinations of carboxylic acids and alcohols in the presence of a few drops of concentrated sulfuric acid. The mixture has to be heated, but not by a direct Bunsen flame because the contents of the tubes are flammable. The following procedure could be used:

- Put 1 cm^3 of ethanoic acid and 1 cm^3 of ethanol into a boiling tube.
- Mix well and carefully add a few drops of concentrated sulfuric acid.
- Place the boiling tube in a beaker of hot water at about 80 °C for 5 minutes.
- Allow the contents of the tube to cool.
- When cool, pour the mixture into a beaker half-full of 0.5 mol/dm^3 sodium carbonate solution. There will be some effervescence as the excess acid reacts with the metal carbonate. The reason for doing this is to be able to smell the ester better. Not much ester is likely to be formed in such a short time, and the smell of the ester in the tube is going to be masked by the smell of the carboxylic acid.
- A layer of ester will separate and float on top of the water. The acid and alcohol will mostly dissolve in the water, but the ester won't. The small esters that you are likely to make in the lab float on the water, which makes them easy to smell.
- Smell the product by gently wafting the odour towards your nose with your hand. Do not put your nose near the top of the beaker!
- Repeat this procedure for other combinations of acids and alcohols. For example, you can make butyl butanoate, which should smell like pineapple, and propyl ethanoate, which smells like pear.


beaker
hot water
mixture
thin layer of ester floating on the surface
cold sodium carbonate solution

▲ Figure 28.6 Making esters on a test-tube scale. The ester is likely to be colourless but colour has been used in the diagram to make it easier to see.

EXTENSION WORK

Esters are hardly soluble in water whereas small alcohols and carboxylic acids usually are. This is because the –OH and the –COOH functional groups in alcohols and carboxylic acids can form a special type of intermolecular force called *hydrogen bonds* with water molecules. The attractions between water and alcohol/acid molecules are strong enough to dissolve these molecules. The lack of these functional groups (–OH and –COOH) in esters means that they form very weak interactions with water molecules and therefore will not dissolve.

CHAPTER QUESTIONS

SKILLS INTERPRETATION

1 a Draw the structural formulae for the following compounds:
   i ethyl ethanoate
   ii butyl butanoate

b Draw the displayed formulae for the following compounds:
   i methyl butanoate   ii ethyl propanoate

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

c Name the following compounds:
   i $CH_3CH_2COOCH_3$ ii $HCOOCH_2CH_3$

SKILLS INTERPRETATION

2 Suppose you have access to bottles of ethanol, propan-1-ol, ethanoic acid, propanoic acid and concentrated sulfuric acid.

a Draw the structural formulae of all the esters you could make from combinations of the alcohols and carboxylic acids.

SKILLS EXECUTIVE FUNCTION

b Describe how you would make small samples of each of these esters.

c Explain how you could detect the formation of the esters in these reactions.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

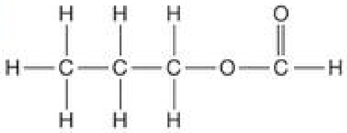
d Give two common uses for esters.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING, INTERPRETATION

3 Give the names and draw the structural formulae of the alcohols and carboxylic acids that could be used to make the following esters:

a methyl propanoate

b



$H-\underset{H}{\overset{H}{C}}-\underset{H}{\overset{H}{C}}-\underset{H}{\overset{H}{C}}-O-\overset{O}{\overset{\|}{C}}-H$

c butyl ethanoate

SKILLS INTERPRETATION

4 Ethyl ethanoate can be made from ethanol as the only organic starting material in a number of steps.

a Draw the displayed formula for ethyl ethanoate.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

b Identify the carboxylic acid that is required for the esterification of ethanol to form ethyl ethanoate.

c Describe how you could make the carboxylic acid in b from ethanol.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

d Write a balanced chemical equation for the formation of ethyl ethanoate from ethanol and the carboxylic acid in b.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

e Write down the conditions required for the esterification step.

SKILLS EXECUTIVE FUNCTION

5 If you were given three unlabelled samples of ethanol, ethanoic acid and ethyl ethanoate, but weren't allowed to smell them, suggest how you might identify which one was which, with as much certainty as possible.

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

29 SYNTHETIC POLYMERS

Polymers are everywhere, ranging from naturally occurring polymers, for example proteins (polypeptides) and sugar (polysaccharides), which you probably have met before, to synthetic polymers used for plastic bags and clothing. Polymers are large molecules consisting of many repeating units. This chapter looks at two different ways that polymers can be made: addition polymerisation for polymers such as poly(ethene) and PVC, and condensation polymerisation for polymers such as polyester.

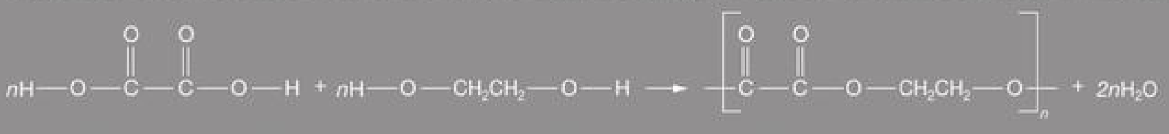
▲ Figure 29.1 Synthetic polymers are extremely useful for making a variety of products, from the coating for electrical wires to plastic bottles and intelligent label chips.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Know that an addition polymer is formed by joining up many small molecules called monomers
- Understand how to draw the repeat unit of an addition polymer, including poly(ethene), poly(propene), poly(chloroethene) and poly(tetrafluoroethene)
- Understand how to deduce the structure of a monomer from the repeat unit of an addition polymer and vice versa
- Explain problems in the disposal of addition polymers, including:
  - their inertness and inability to biodegrade
  - the production of toxic gases when they are burned

CHEMISTRY ONLY

- Know that condensation polymerisation, in which a dicarboxylic acid reacts with a diol, produces a polyester and water.
- Understand how to write the structural and displayed formula of a polyester, showing the repeat unit, given the formulae of the monomers from which it is formed, including the reaction of ethanedioic acid and ethanediol:



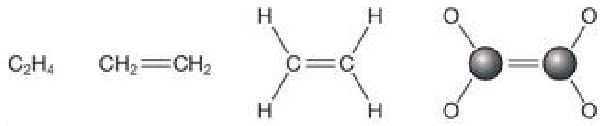
$$n\mathrm{H{-}O{-}\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}O{-}H} + n\mathrm{H{-}O{-}CH_2CH_2{-}O{-}H} \longrightarrow \left[\mathrm{\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}O{-}CH_2CH_2{-}O}\right]_n + 2n\mathrm{H_2O}$$

- Know that some polyesters, known as biopolyesters, are biodegradable.

ADDITION POLYMERISATION

THE POLYMERISATION OF ETHENE

Ethene is the smallest alkene and can be produced by cracking. It is the smallest hydrocarbon containing a carbon–carbon double bond. Figure 29.2 shows different ways of representing an ethene molecule.



▲ Figure 29.2 Ethene

Under the right conditions, molecules containing carbon–carbon double bonds can join together to produce very long chains. Part of the double bond is broken to become a single bond, and the electrons in it are used to join to neighbouring molecules.

Polymerisation *is the joining up of lots of little molecules* (**monomers**) *to make one big molecule* (**polymer**). In the case of ethene, lots of ethene molecules join together to make *poly(ethene)*, which is more usually called *polythene. Molecules simply add onto each other without anything else being formed*. This is called **addition polymerisation**.

KEY POINT

An *initiator* is used to start the process. You mustn't call it a catalyst because it is consumed in the reaction.

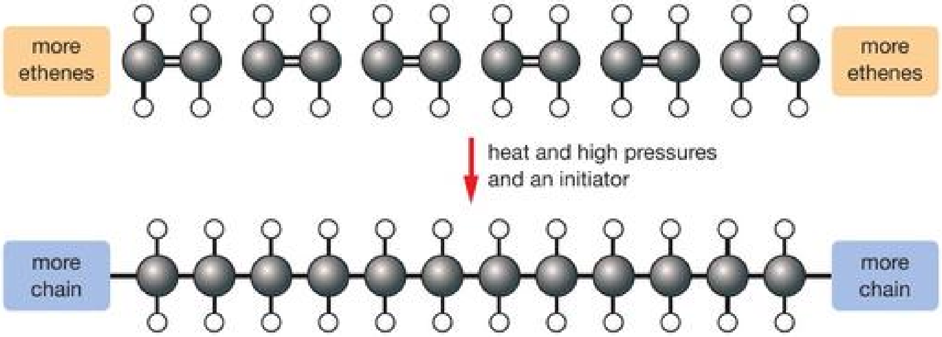


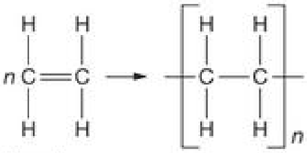
Figure 29.3 The polymerisation of ethene

EXTENSION WORK

People occasionally wonder what happens at the ends of the chains. They don't end tidily! Bits of the initiator are bonded on at either end. You don't need to worry about that for International GCSE.

The chain length can vary from about 4000 to 40 000 carbon atoms.

For normal purposes, the polymerisation reaction is written using displayed formulae.



$$n\,\begin{matrix}H & & H\\ | & & |\\ C & = & C\\ | & & |\\ H & & H\end{matrix} \longrightarrow \left[\begin{matrix}H & & H\\ | & & |\\ C & - & C\\ | & & |\\ H & & H\end{matrix}\right]_n$$

Figure 29.4 Formation of poly(ethene)

KEY POINT

In this structure for poly(ethene) *n* represents a large but variable number. It simply means that the structure in the brackets (called the *repeat unit*) repeats itself many times in the molecule. When representing a polymer, the bonds on the two sides of the repeat unit should extend outside the square brackets to show that the carbon atoms are joined to the next ones in a chain, as shown in Figure 29.4.

HINT

Make sure you can distinguish between the different terms monomer, polymer and repeat unit. In the equation in Figure 29.4, the monomer is $\begin{matrix}H & & H\\ | & & |\\ C & = & C\\ | & & |\\ H & & H\end{matrix}$, the polymer is $\left[\begin{matrix} & H & & H & \\ & | & & | & \\ - & C & - & C & -\\ & | & & | & \\ & H & & H & \end{matrix}\right]_n$ and the repeat unit is $\begin{matrix} & H & & H & \\ & | & & | & \\ - & C & - & C & -\\ & | & & | & \\ & H & & H & \end{matrix}$.

USES FOR POLY(ETHENE)

Poly(ethene) comes in two types: low-density poly(ethene) (LDPE) and high-density poly(ethene) (HDPE). Low-density poly(ethene) is mainly used as a thin film to make polythene bags. It is very flexible and not very strong.

KEY POINT

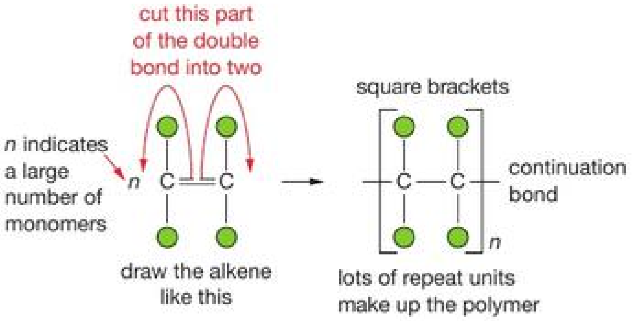
Although the polymer is called *poly(ethene)* it is actually an *alkane*. The polymer is saturated and will not decolourise bromine water.

Figure 29.5 Plastic bags made from poly(ethene)

High-density poly(ethene) is used where greater strength and rigidity are needed, for example to make plastic bottles such as milk bottles. If you can find a recycling symbol with the letters HDPE next to it, then the bottle is made of high-density poly(ethene). If it has some other letters there, then it is made of a different polymer.

HOW TO DEDUCE THE POLYMERISATION REACTION FOR ANY ALKENE

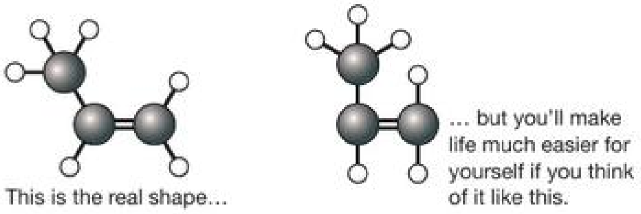
Figure 29.6 shows how to work out a polymerisation reaction starting from any alkene. The key thing is to always draw the alkene as shown with just the C=C in the middle.


cut this part of the double bond into two
n indicates a large number of monomers
n
C
C
draw the alkene like this
square brackets
C
C
continuation bond
n
lots of repeat units make up the polymer

▲ Figure 29.6 How to work out a polymerisation reaction

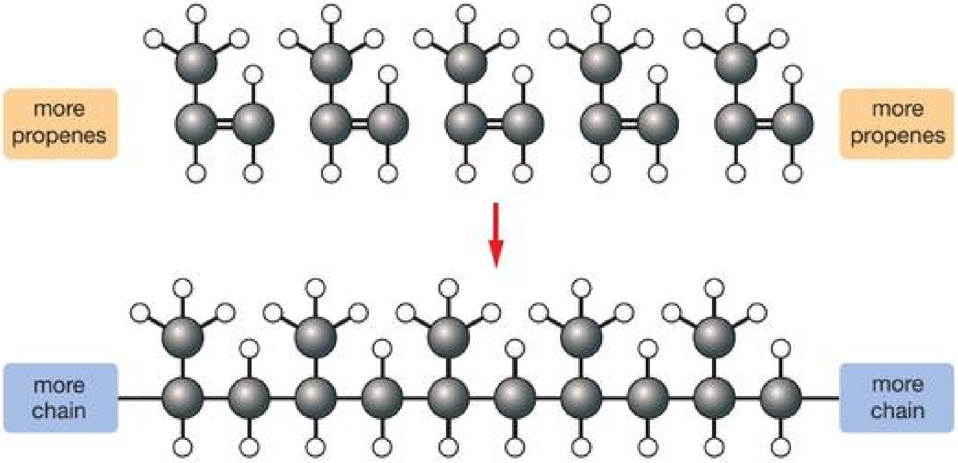
THE POLYMERISATION OF PROPENE

Propene is another alkene, this time with three carbon atoms in each molecule. Its formula is normally written as $CH_3CH{=}CH_2$. Think of it as a modified ethene molecule, with a CH_3 group attached in place of one of the hydrogen atoms.


This is the real shape...
... but you'll make life much easier for yourself if you think of it like this.

▲ Figure 29.7 Propene

When propene is polymerised you obtain *poly(propene)*. This used to be called *polypropylene*.

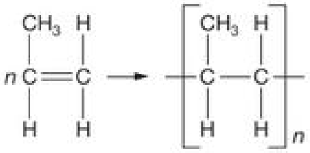

more propenes
more propenes
more chain
more chain

▲ Figure 29.8 The polymerisation of propene

HINT

When you draw an addition polymerisation reaction never change anything except opening out the double bond and drawing the continuation bonds on each side.

Write this as:

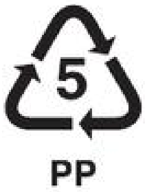


$$n\,\overset{\mathrm{CH_3}}{\underset{\mathrm{H}}{\mathrm{C}}}=\overset{\mathrm{H}}{\underset{\mathrm{H}}{\mathrm{C}}} \rightarrow \left[\overset{\mathrm{CH_3}}{\underset{\mathrm{H}}{\mathrm{C}}}-\overset{\mathrm{H}}{\underset{\mathrm{H}}{\mathrm{C}}}\right]_n$$

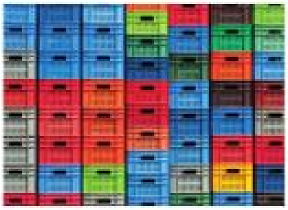
▲ Figure 29.9 Formation of poly(propene)

USES OF POLY(PROPENE)

Poly(propene) is somewhat stronger than poly(ethene). It is used to make ropes and crates (among many other things). If an item has a recycling mark with PP inside it or near it, it is made of poly(propene).



▲ Figure 29.10 PP recycling symbol

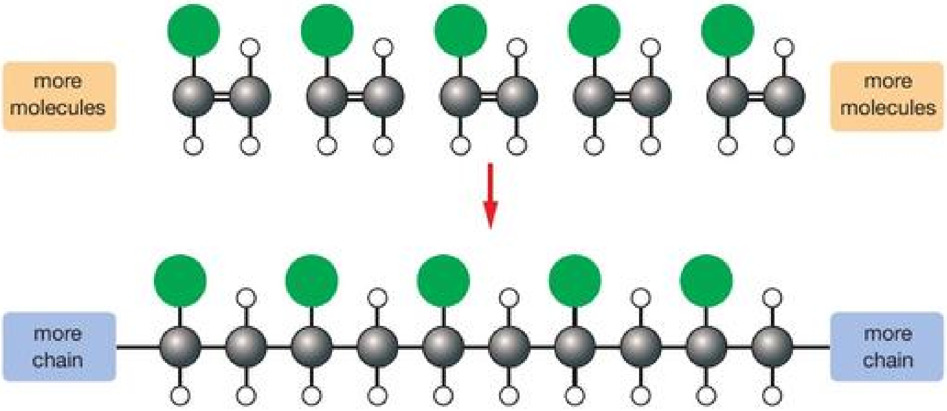


▲ Figure 29.11 Poly(propene) is used to make crates . . .

▲ Figure 29.12 . . . and ropes.

THE POLYMERISATION OF CHLOROETHENE

Chloroethene is a molecule in which one of the hydrogen atoms in ethene is replaced by a chlorine. Its formula is CH_2=CHCl. In the past, it was called vinyl chloride. Polymerising chloroethene gives you poly(chloroethene). This is usually known by its old name, polyvinylchloride or PVC.

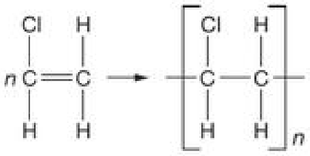


▲ Figure 29.13 The polymerisation of chloroethene

HINT

When you draw this, it isn't important whether you put the chlorine atom on the left-hand carbon atom or the right-hand one.

Write this as:



$$n\,\overset{\mathrm{Cl}}{\underset{\mathrm{H}}{\mathrm{C}}}=\overset{\mathrm{H}}{\underset{\mathrm{H}}{\mathrm{C}}} \rightarrow \left[\overset{\mathrm{Cl}}{\underset{\mathrm{H}}{\mathrm{C}}}-\overset{\mathrm{H}}{\underset{\mathrm{H}}{\mathrm{C}}}\right]_n$$

▲ Figure 29.14 Formation of poly(chloroethene)

USES OF POLY(CHLOROETHENE)

Poly(chloroethene), known as PVC, has a lot of uses. It is quite strong and rigid, and so can be used for water pipes or replacement windows. It can also be made flexible by adding *plasticisers*. This makes it useful for sheet floor coverings, and even clothing. These polymers don't conduct electricity, therefore PVC can be used for electrical insulation.

Figure 29.15 PVC has a variety of uses.

THE POLYMERISATION OF TETRAFLUOROETHENE

Tetrafluoroethene is another molecule derived from ethene in which all four hydrogen atoms are replaced by fluorine. Its formula is $CF_2{=}CF_2$. Polymerising tetrafluoroethene gives you poly(tetrafluoroethene) or PTFE, more commonly known as Teflon®.

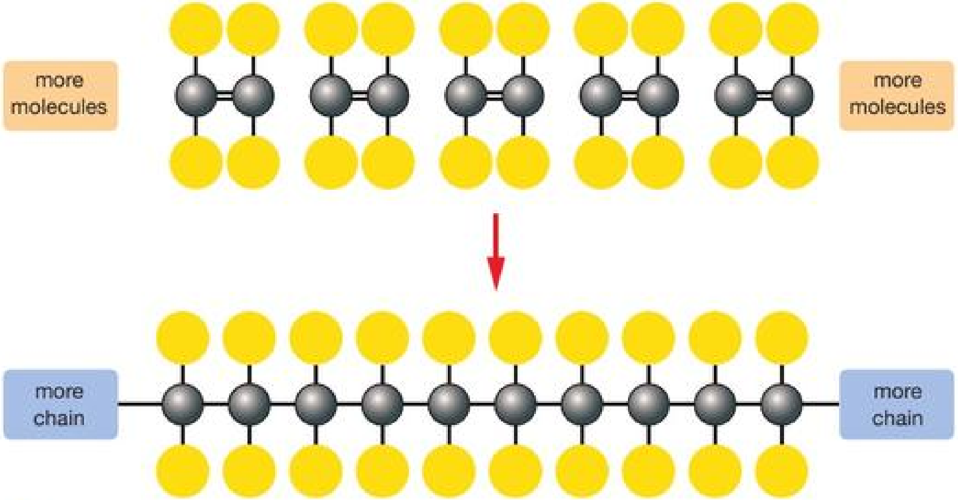
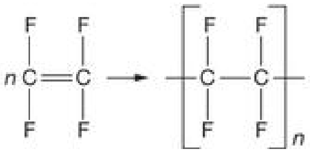


Figure 29.16 The polymerisation of tetrafluoroethene

Write this as:



$$n\,CF_2{=}CF_2 \rightarrow \left[-CF_2-CF_2-\right]_n$$

Figure 29.17 Formation of poly(tetrafluoroethene)

KEY POINT

If you look at this reaction, you can see it is exactly the same as the polymerisation of ethene except that each H has been replaced by an F.

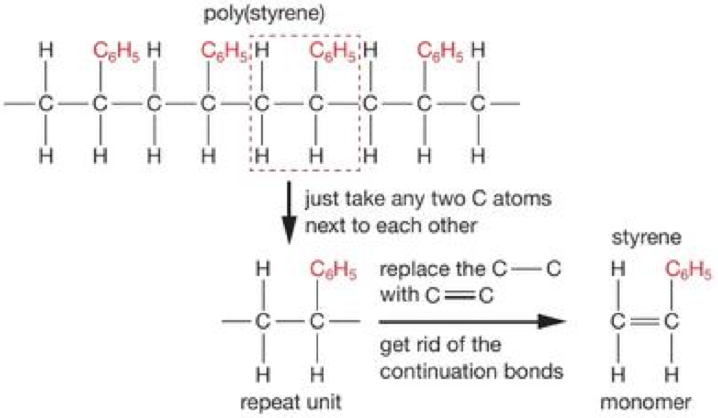
USES OF POLY(TETRAFLUOROETHENE)

Poly(tetrafluoroethene) is often used as a non-stick coating for pots and pans. It is very unreactive due to the strong carbon–fluorine bonds, and can be found lining containers for corrosive chemicals.

Figure 29.18 PTFE is used for non-stick coatings.

WORKING OUT THE MONOMER FOR A GIVEN ADDITION POLYMER

In an exam you may find that you are given the structure of a polymer and asked to deduce what the repeat unit is or what monomer it was made from. Figure 29.19 shows you how to do this.


poly(styrene)
just take any two C atoms next to each other
replace the C—C with C=C
get rid of the continuation bonds
styrene
repeat unit
monomer

▲ Figure 29.19 How to work out the repeat unit and monomer for poly(styrene)

The C_6H_5 group is complicated, but we don't need to worry about that when we write the structure of the monomer; work from the structure you are given. First find the repeat unit, which can be done simply by taking any two adjacent carbon atoms in the main polymer chain. To derive the monomer, a double bond needs to be put back between the two middle carbon atoms of the repeat unit.

DISPOSAL OF ADDITION POLYMERS

Recycling of plastics is important, not just to save raw materials, but because it takes a very long time for addition polymers like poly(ethene) and poly(chloroethene) to break down in the environment. They contain strong covalent bonds, making them essentially *inert* at ordinary temperatures. They are **non-biodegradable**, meaning *they cannot be broken down by bacteria in the environment*.

One solution to the problem of their disposal is to *bury them in landfill sites*, which are basically just big holes in the ground, where they will remain unchanged for thousands of years.

▲ Figure 29.20 Plastics (and other rubbish) can be disposed of in landfill sites.

Some countries, including Denmark and Japan, *incinerate (burn) plastics* in order to tackle the problem of disposal. This releases a lot of heat energy, which can be used to generate electricity. However, there are problems associated with this. For example, carbon dioxide is produced, which contributes to **global warming**. Toxic gases are also released, including carbon monoxide and hydrogen chloride.

There are advantages and disadvantages for using either method to dispose of plastics.

Disposal method	Advantages	Disadvantages
Landfill	No greenhouse gases or toxic gases produced from plastics Cheap	Ugly, smelly and noisy; no one wants to live next to a landfill site Uses large areas of land The waste will be there for thousands of years
Incineration	Requires little space Can produce heat for local homes/offices and/or produce electricity	It is expensive to build and maintain the plant Produces greenhouse gases Releases toxic gases The ash produced must still be disposed of in landfill sites

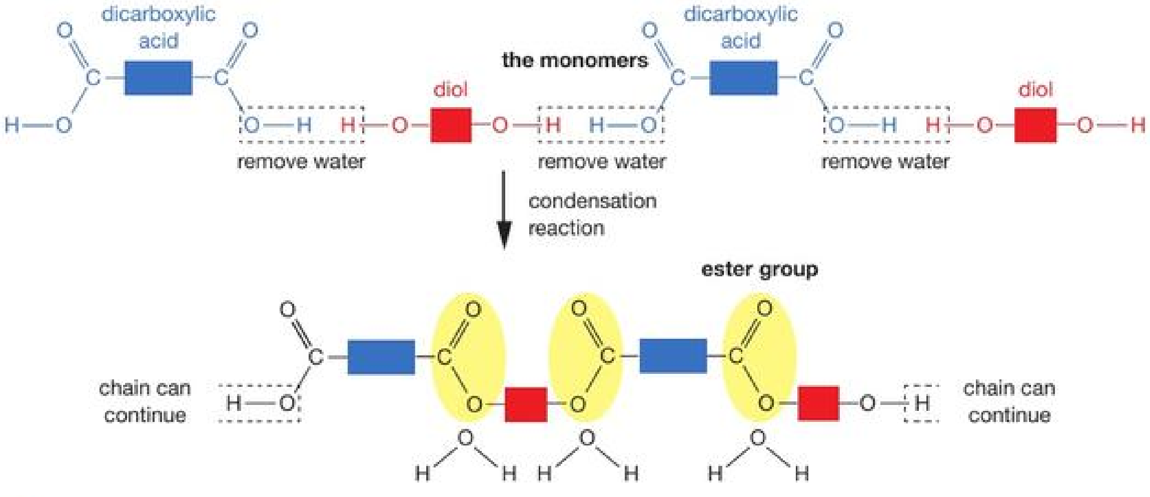
CHEMISTRY ONLY

CONDENSATION POLYMERISATION

MAKING A POLYESTER

When a lot of ethene molecules combine to make a chain, the double bonds break and the monomer molecules just add onto each other to make a polymer. *Nothing is lost*. That is why it is called *addition polymerisation*.

Making a polyester is different. Instead of one type of monomer, you often have two, joining together alternately. Each time two monomers combine, a small molecule such as water or hydrogen chloride is lost. The elimination of water gives the name *condensation* to this type of polymerisation.



▲ Figure 29.21 Making a polyester

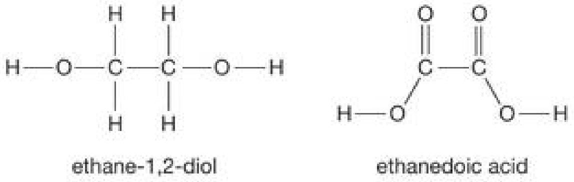
THE MONOMERS

KEY POINT

It is not a mistake, there is an extra 'e' in each of these names. We talk about propan-1-ol but propan*e*-1,3-diol.

One of the monomers is a *diol*, an alcohol molecule with one –OH at each end. For example, ethane-1,2-diol has the structural formula CH_2OHCH_2OH. The prefix 'eth' indicates the presence of two carbon atoms in the molecule. The code 'di' in the name shows that there are two –OH groups present. The number '1,2' tells you the –OH groups are attached to carbons number 1 and 2, one on each carbon. Propane-1,3-diol, which has one more carbon in the carbon chain, has the structural formula $CH_2OHCH_2CH_2OH$.

The second type of monomer is a *dicarboxylic acid*, a carboxylic molecule with one –COOH at each end. For example, ethanedioic acid has the structural formula HOOCCOOH. A more complicated example of a dicarboxylic acid is hexane-1,6-dioic acid, with the formula $HOOCCH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2COOH$, where 'hex' indicates six carbon atoms in the main chain of the molecule and '1,6-dioic acid' means there are two carboxylic acid functional groups at either end of the molecule, on carbons 1 and 6.



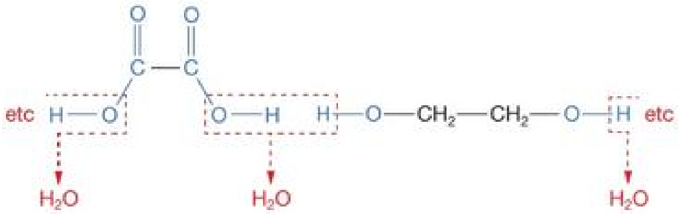
▲ Figure 29.22 Displayed formulae for ethane-1,2-diol and ethanedoic acid, monomers for a condensation polymerisation reaction to form a polyester.

FORMING A POLYESTER

Under the right conditions, diol and dicarboxylic molecules can join together with the loss of a molecule of water each time a new bond is formed.

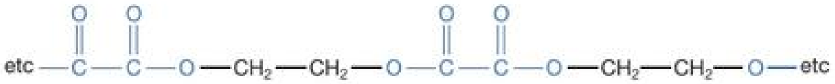
HINT

It does not matter whether you take the OH from the dicarboxylic acid and the H from the alcohol or the other way around – the polymer formed will still be the same.

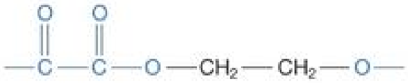


▲ Figure 29.23 Joining the monomers together...

Both monomers react at each end, joining together to form a long-chain polymer held together by a large number of ester groups, as shown in Figure 29.24.

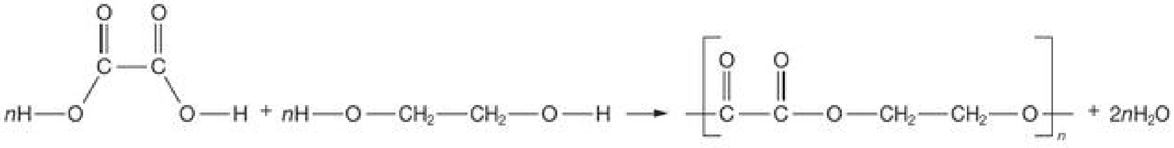


▲ Figure 29.24 … to make a chain.



▲ Figure 29.25 Repeat unit of a polyester made from ethane-1,2-diol and ethanedioic acid.

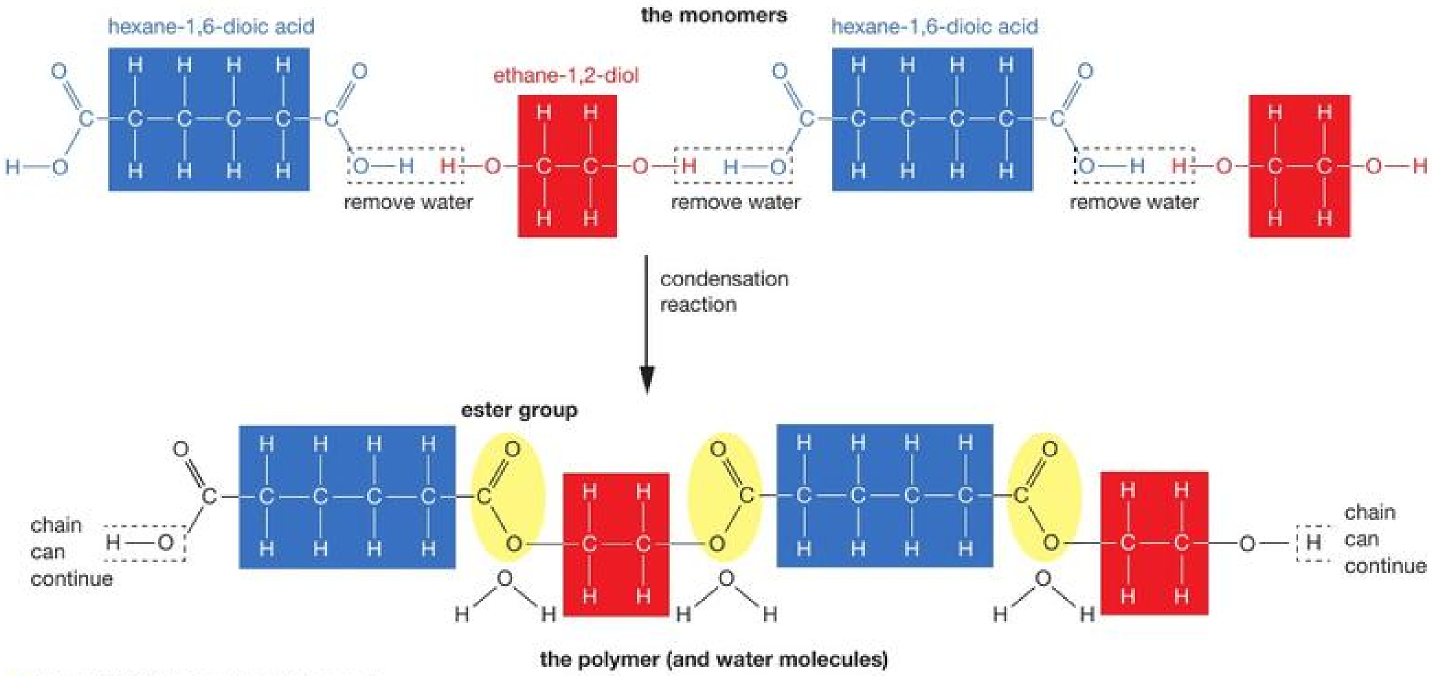
The balanced chemical equation for this polymerisation is:



We have already seen one *block diagram* at the beginning of this section which shows the general condensation polymerisation reaction (Figure 29.21). A block diagram is a useful way of learning this because you can use the box to represent any hydrocarbon chain. For example, if we put in some carbons and hydrogens to make the reaction between hexane-1,6-dioic acid and ethane-1,2-diol, we obtain:

EXTENSION WORK

The equation we have shown balances with $2n$ water molecules but in reality there will only be $(2n - 1)$ water molecules formed because there will still be one –OH and one –COOH left at the ends of the polyester molecule.



▲ Figure 29.26 Using a block diagram to work out the structure of any polyester.

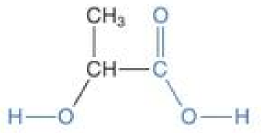
HINT

This is how you should approach learning this. Think of one of the monomers as being a red rectangle with an –OH group at either end. Think of the other one as being a blue rectangle (or a different shape) with a –COOH group at either end. Draw those groups as displayed formulae. Then line them up so that you can remove the water between them. Having removed the water, slot the rest of the molecules together as shown in Figure 29.26. It looks difficult because it is unfamiliar. Practise doing it a few times until it becomes familiar.

BIODEGRADABLE POLYESTERS

As with addition polymers there are environmental issues with the disposal of condensation polymers. These are more reactive because of the ester linkage and will all break down eventually, although this could take hundreds of years. Scientists have developed some *biodegradable polyesters* which break down much more quickly. These are called **biopolyesters**.

Biodegradable polymers can be made from lactic acid. Lactic acid can be obtained from corn starch, and when it undergoes polymerisation it forms a biodegradable polyester (polylactic acid, or PLA), which can be used for making biodegradable plastic bags or in surgery for internal stitches.



▲ Figure 29.27 Lactic acid monomer for making polylactic acid (PLA)

▲ Figure 29.28 A biodegradable plastic bag

DID YOU KNOW?

Lactic acid, more properly known as 2-hydroxypropanoic acid ($CH_3CHOHCOOH$), has both an alcohol and a carboxylic acid group in the same molecule so it can polymerise with itself (self-polymerise).

EXTENSION WORK

Amino acids, a group of compounds containing an *amine* group ($-NH_2$) and a *carboxylic acid* group (–COOH), can *self-polymerise* in condensation polymerisation reactions. The amine group reacts very similarly to the –OH group in alcohols, and it connects with a carboxylic acid to form an amide bond. When amino acids join together, they form polypeptides, which make up the primary structure of a protein.

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

CHAPTER QUESTIONS

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 6

1 Ethene, C_2H_4, is an important molecule used in industry. It is an *unsaturated hydrocarbon*.

a Explain the terms *unsaturated* and *hydrocarbon*.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 9

b Ethene burns easily and releases a large amount of heat during combustion. Write a balanced chemical equation for the complete combustion of ethene.

SKILLS REASONING 7

c Explain why in industry ethene is considered too valuable to be used as a fuel.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 6

2 Propene, C_3H_6, can be polymerised to make poly(propene).

a Explain the term *polymerisation*.

SKILLS INTERPRETATION 7

b Draw a displayed formula for propene.

8

c Draw a diagram to represent the structure of a poly(propene) chain showing three repeat units.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 6

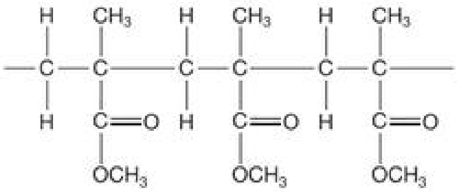
d The formation of poly(propene) is an example of *addition* polymerisation. Explain what is meant by the word *addition*.

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 9

e Styrene has the formula $C_6H_5CH{=}CH_2$. Write a balanced chemical equation to show what happens when styrene is polymerised to make polystyrene. Your equation should clearly show the structure of the polystyrene. (Show the C_6H_5 group as a whole.)

SKILLS INTERPRETATION 8

f A small part of a Perspex molecule looks like this:



Draw the structure of the monomer from which Perspex is made.

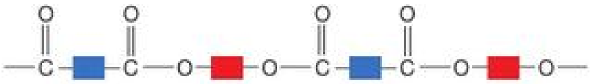
SKILLS DECISION MAKING 7

g Many addition polymers, for example those used for making plastic bags, are not biodegradable. Used plastic bags can be either buried underground in landfill sites or incinerated. State which method of disposal you think is better and give two reasons for your choice.

CHEMISTRY ONLY

SKILLS ANALYSIS

3 A polymer has the structure shown below:



a Identify the type of the polymer.

SKILLS INTERPRETATION

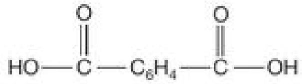
b Draw the structures of the monomers that are used to make this polymer.

SKILLS INTERPRETATION

4 Polyesters such as Terylene (for clothes) or PET (commonly used to make drinks bottles) are made by condensation polymerisation from ethane-1,2-diol and terephthalic acid (properly known as benzene-1,4-dicarboxylic acid). The structures of these are:

Ethane-1,2-diol: $HO–CH_2CH_2–OH$

Terephthalic acid:



$$HO{-}\overset{\overset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}C_6H_4{-}\overset{\overset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}OH$$

a Draw a chain of the polymer with two repeat units.

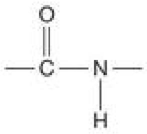
SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

b Write a balanced chemical equation for the formation of PET.

(The structure of the C_6H_4 group is complicated, and you can write it simply as C_6H_4. You can draw this as a block diagram if you wish, but it is more satisfying (and no more difficult in this case) to draw the structure properly.)

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

5 *(This question contains new material and is designed to look difficult. It is actually not too difficult as long as you understand about polyester.)* Nylon-6,6 is made by a condensation polymerisation of the monomers 1,6-diaminohexane ($H_2NCH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2NH_2$) and hexane-1,6-dioic acid. The amine group $–NH_2$ reacts in a very similar manner to the –OH group in an alcohol during condensation polymerisation with carboxylic acids, forming amide functional groups which join the monomers together into a polymer chain.



$$-\overset{\overset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-\underset{\underset{\displaystyle H}{|}}{N}-$$

a i Explain what is meant by *condensation polymerisation* and how it differs from *addition polymerisation*.

SKILLS INTERPRETATION

ii Using a block diagram, draw one repeat unit for nylon-6,6.

SKILLS ANALYSIS, REASONING

b Nylon-6,10 is made from 1,6-diaminohexane and a longer chain acid, decanedioic acid, containing a total of 10 carbon atoms: $HOOCCH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2COOH$.

i How will a chain of nylon-6,10 differ from one of nylon-6,6? Refer to the diagram you drew in a ii.

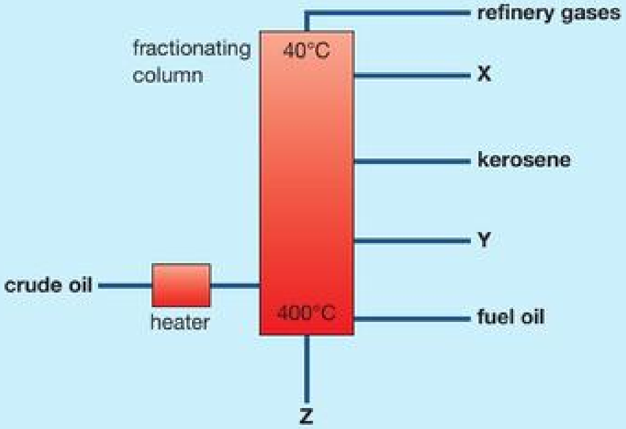
ii In what way(s) will the two chains be the same? Again, refer to the diagram you drew in a ii.

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

UNIT QUESTIONS

SKILLS ANALYSIS 6

1 Crude oil is a complex mixture of hydrocarbons. The diagram shows the separation of crude oil into simpler mixtures called fractions.



a What could X, Y and Z represent (choose one answer)? **(1)**

	X	Y	Z
A	gasoline	bitumen	diesel
B	diesel	gasoline	bitumen
C	bitumen	gasoline	diesel
D	gasoline	diesel	bitumen

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

b State a use for the refinery gas fraction. **(1)**

c Name the liquid that leaves the fractionating column at the lowest temperature. **(1)**

7

d Describe how crude oil is separated into fractions in industry. **(4)**

e Write down and explain the relationship between the number of carbon atoms in a hydrocarbon and its boiling point. **(2)**

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 9

f One of the hydrocarbons, $C_{15}H_{32}$, called pentadecane, is present in the kerosene fraction. It could be used as a fuel in jet engines. Write an equation for the incomplete combustion of pentadecane to produce carbon monoxide. **(2)**

g The complete combustion of alkanes produces carbon dioxide, CO_2, which can dissolve in water to form a weakly acidic solution.

SKILLS INTERPRETATION 8

i Draw a dot-and-cross diagram to show the bonding in CO_2. Show the outer electrons only. **(2)**

SKILLS REASONING 7

ii Predict the most likely pH of a solution of CO_2 (choose one answer). **(1)**

A 1 **B** 5 **C** 7 **D** 9

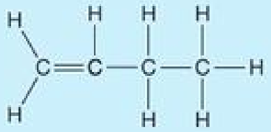
SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

h $C_{15}H_{32}$ is a member of the alkane family. Long-chain alkanes are often cracked to form alkenes.

- **i** Write down two conditions used for cracking alkanes in industry. **(2)**
- **ii** Give two reasons why cracking is necessary in the oil industry. **(2)**
- **iii** During cracking, one molecule of $C_{15}H_{32}$ is converted into one molecule of ethene, one molecule of another alkene C_4H_8 and one molecule of hydrocarbon **W**. State the molecular formula of **W**. **(1)**
- **iv** Alkenes are unsaturated hydrocarbons. Write down what is meant by the term *unsaturated*. **(1)**

SKILLS INTERPRETATION

- **v** One possible structure for C_4H_8 is

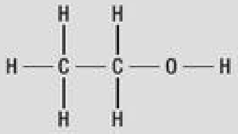
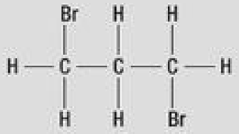


Draw a displayed formula for each of the other two isomers of C_4H_8, which are also alkenes. **(2)**

(Total 22 marks)

SKILLS ANALYSIS

2 The table shows the formulae of some organic compounds.

A $CH_2{=}CHCl$	B $CH_3CH_2CH_3$	C $CH_2{=}CHCH_2CH_3$
D C_2H_6	E 	F 

a Give one reason why compound **E** is *not* a hydrocarbon. **(1)**

b **i** State the name of compound **F**. **(1)**

SKILLS INTERPRETATION

- **ii** Draw the displayed formula of an isomer of compound **F**. **(2)**

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING

c Compound **C** can undergo an addition reaction with bromine. Complete the equation below showing the structural formula of the product(s). **(1)**

$CH_2{=}CHCH_2CH_3 + Br_2 \rightarrow$

d Two of the compounds shown belong to the same homologous series.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

- **i** Give the letters of these two compounds. **(1)**
- **ii** Write down the general formula of this homologous series. **(1)**
- **iii** Write down *two* other characteristics of the compounds in a homologous series. **(2)**

e Compound **A** can undergo addition polymerisation.

- **i** Give the name of the addition polymer formed by compound **A**. **(1)**
- **ii** Draw the repeat unit of the addition polymer of compound **A**. **(1)**

SKILLS REASONING 7

iii Explain the problems in the disposal of the addition polymer formed by compound **A**. **(2)**

6

iv Write down and explain the observations you would make if bromine water was added to the addition polymer of **A**. **(2)**

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

f Compound **B** undergoes a reaction with chlorine.

5

i Write down the condition required for this reaction to take place. **(1)**

6

ii Write down the type of reaction that occurs. **(1)**

SKILLS INTERPRETATION 8

iii Draw the displayed formulae for the two possible organic products from the reaction between compound **B** and chlorine. **(2)**

(Total 19 marks)

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 9

3 Compound **X** contains 55% carbon, 9% hydrogen and 36% oxygen by mass.

a Calculate the empirical formula of **X**. **(3)**

b The relative molecular mass (M_r) of **X** is 88. Deduce the molecular formula of **X**. **(1)**

CHEMISTRY ONLY

SKILLS INTERPRETATION 8

c **X** belongs to a class of compound called the carboxylic acids. Draw the displayed formula of **X** and name the compound. **(2)**

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 9

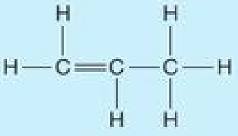
d Write a balanced equation for the reaction between **X** and methanol. Name the organic product formed. **(3)**

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

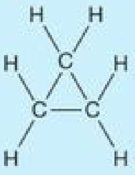
(Total 9 marks)

SKILLS EXECUTIVE FUNCTION 6

4 Below are two hydrocarbons with the molecular formula C_3H_6.



compound 1



compound 2

a Describe a chemical test for distinguishing between the two hydrocarbons and give the results for this test. **(3)**

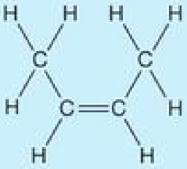
Test:

Result with compound 1:

Result with compound 2:

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 7

b Compound 3 is in the same homologous series as compound 1. Compound 3 can form an addition polymer. Draw the repeat unit of this polymer. **(2)**



compound 3

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 6

c Name the addition polymer formed by compound 3. **(1)**

(Total 6 marks)

CHEMISTRY ONLY

SKILLS INTERPRETATION 7

5 Esters occur naturally, but can be made in the laboratory from an alcohol and a carboxylic acid. Esters have many uses.

a Butyl ethanoate is an important industrial solvent.

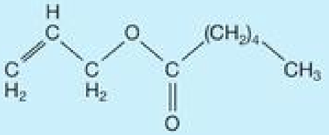
i Draw the displayed formula of butyl ethanoate. **(2)**

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 5

ii Butyl ethanoate can be made from butanol and ethanoic acid. Give the conditions for making ethanoic acid from ethanol in a lab. **(3)**

SKILLS INTERPRETATION 8

b Esters can be used in perfumes. One of them, allyl hexanoate, is used because it smells of pineapple. Draw out the structural formulae of the alcohol and the carboxylic acid used to make allyl hexanoate. **(2)**



SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

c Imagine that you wish to prepare ethyl ethanoate according to the reaction:

$$CH_3COOH(l) + CH_3CH_2OH(l) \rightleftharpoons CH_3COOCH_2CH_3(l) + H_2O(l)$$

6

i Write down the meaning of the sign $\rightleftharpoons$. **(1)**

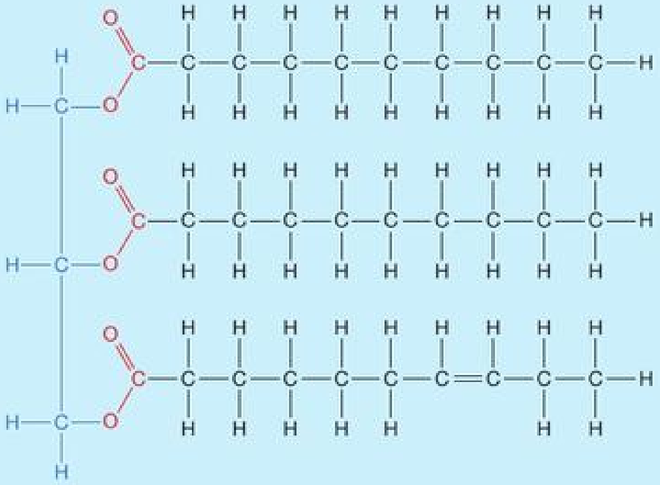
ii The reaction is catalysed in order to increase the rate of the reaction. State the name of the catalyst used for this reaction in a laboratory. **(1)**

7

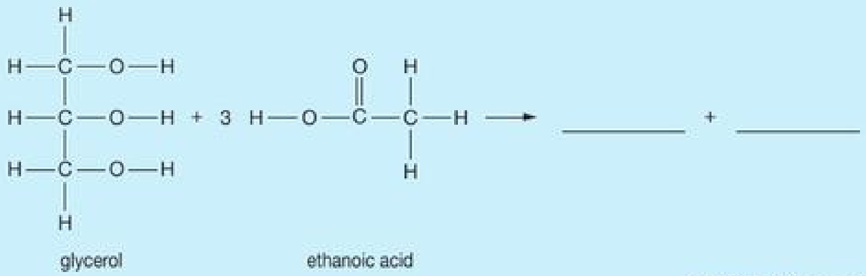
d Write down and explain the effect of the catalyst on the position of equilibrium in the reaction in **c**. **(2)**

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 8

e Fats are naturally occurring esters. The diagram below shows one type of fat in our body, a triglyceride.



Triglycerides are made from the alcohol glycerol and different long-chain carboxylic acids. The structure of glycerol is shown below. Complete and balance the equation for the reaction between glycerol and ethanoic acid. **(3)**



(Total 14 marks)

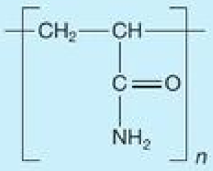
END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

SKILLS INTERPRETATION 8

6 This question is about synthetic polymers. Synthetic polymers can be either addition polymers or condensation polymers.

a Poly(propene) is an addition polymer made from propene $CH_2{=}CHCH_3$. Draw a length of the poly(propene) chain showing two repeat units. **(2)**

b Another addition polymer, polyacrylamide, is used to make hydrogel in contact lenses, nappies and drug delivery systems. The structure of the polymer is shown in the diagram. Draw the structural formula of the monomer used to make polyacrylamide.



(1)

CHEMISTRY ONLY

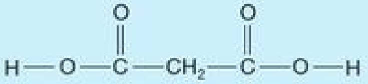
c Polyesters are condensation polymers.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 7

i Describe how condensation polymerisation is different from addition polymerisation. **(2)**

SKILLS INTERPRETATION 8

ii The structures of two monomers that are used to make a polyester are:



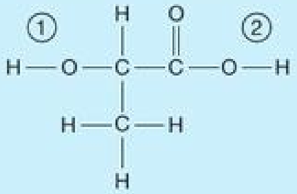
$$H{-}O{-}\overset{\overset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}CH_2{-}\overset{\overset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}O{-}H$$

$HO{-}CH_2{-}CH_2{-}OH$

Draw the structure of the repeat unit of the polyester formed from these two monomers. **(2)**

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING

d Polylactic acid is a biopolyester. Lactic acid has the structure shown below.



7

i Explain the meaning of *biopolyester*. **(1)**

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 5

ii Which of the two –OH groups labelled can react with aqueous sodium hydroxide (choose one answer)? **(1)**

	1	2
A	✓	✓
B	✓	✗
C	✗	✓
D	✗	✗

(Total 9 marks)

SKILLS ANALYSIS, PROBLEM SOLVING

7 The diagram shows one possible synthetic route to make ethyl ethanoate, an important solvent used in glues and nail polish removers.

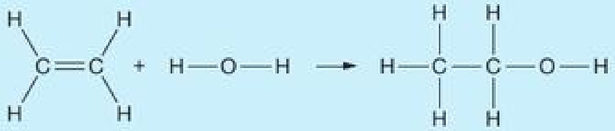
$$\boxed{\text{ethene}} \xrightarrow{\text{process 1}} \boxed{\text{ethanol}} \xrightarrow{\text{process 2}} \boxed{\text{ethanoic acid}} \xrightarrow{\text{process 3}} \boxed{\text{ethyl ethanoate}}$$

a Process 1 is called catalytic hydration.

i Name the catalyst and state one more condition required for this reaction in industry. **(2)**

10

ii The equation for the conversion of ethene to ethanol can be written using displayed formulae.



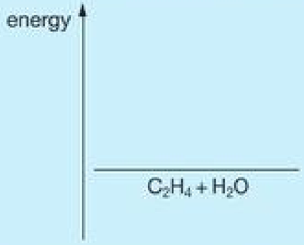
The table below gives some average bond energies.

Bond	C–C	C=C	C–H	C–O	O–H
Average bond energy/kJ/mol	348	612	412	360	463

Use the information in the table to calculate the enthalpy change for this reaction. **(3)**

SKILLS INTERPRETATION 9

iii Complete and label the energy level diagram for this reaction. Show clearly the enthalpy change, ΔH, of the reaction. **(2)**



b Ethanol can also be made from plants, including sugar cane. Yeast is added to a sugar solution and left in the warm for several days in anaerobic conditions.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 5

i Name the process in which ethanol is produced from glucose. **(1)**

6

ii What is the purpose of the yeast? **(1)**

SKILLS REASONING 7

iii Explain why anaerobic conditions are required for this reaction to occur. **(1)**

SKILLS REASONING 6

iv Why do countries such as Brazil use this process to produce ethanol rather than the catalytic hydration of ethene? **(2)**

c In process 2, ethanol is oxidised to form ethanoic acid using potassium dichromate(VI).

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 5

i Write down two other conditions required for this reaction to occur in a laboratory. **(2)**

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 9

ii Write a balanced chemical equation for this reaction. (You may use [O] to represent the oxidising agent.) **(2)**

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 5

iii What colour change do you observe in this reaction? **(2)**

SKILLS PROBLEM SOLVING 9

iv Ethanoic acid can react with metals to produce hydrogen gas. Write a balanced equation for the reaction between ethanoic acid and magnesium. **(2)**

d In process 3, ethanoic acid reacts with ethanol to form ethyl ethanoate in a condensation reaction.

SKILLS CRITICAL THINKING 6

i Explain why this is called a condensation reaction. **(1)**

5

ii How could you separate the product from the reaction mixture? **(2)**

(Total 23 marks)

END OF CHEMISTRY ONLY

APPENDIX A: PERIODIC TABLE

Group

Period	1	2											3	4	5	6	7	0
1	1 H Hydrogen 1																	4 He Helium 2
2	7 Li Lithium 3	9 Be Beryllium 4											11 B Boron 5	12 C Carbon 6	14 N Nitrogen 7	16 O Oxygen 8	19 F Fluorine 9	20 Ne Neon 10
3	23 Na Sodium 11	24 Mg Magnesium 12											27 Al Aluminium 13	28 Si Silicon 14	31 P Phosphorus 15	32 S Sulfur 16	35.5 Cl Chlorine 17	40 Ar Argon 18
4	39 K Potassium 19	40 Ca Calcium 20	45 Sc Scandium 21	48 Ti Titanium 22	51 V Vanadium 23	52 Cr Chromium 24	55 Mn Manganese 25	56 Fe Iron 26	59 Co Cobalt 27	59 Ni Nickel 28	63.5 Cu Copper 29	65 Zn Zinc 30	70 Ga Gallium 31	73 Ge Germanium 32	75 As Arsenic 33	79 Se Selenium 34	80 Br Bromine 35	84 Kr Krypton 36
5	85 Rb Rubidium 37	88 Sr Strontium 38	89 Y Yttrium 39	91 Zr Zirconium 40	93 Nb Niobium 41	96 Mo Molybdenum 42	(98) Tc Technetium 43	101 Ru Ruthenium 44	103 Rh Rhodium 45	106 Pd Palladium 46	108 Ag Silver 47	112 Cd Cadmium 48	115 In Indium 49	119 Sn Tin 50	122 Sb Antimony 51	128 Te Tellurium 52	127 I Iodine 53	131 Xe Xenon 54
6	133 Cs Caesium 55	137 Ba Barium 56	■	178 Hf Hafnium 72	181 Ta Tantalum 73	184 W Tungsten 74	186 Re Rhenium 75	190 Os Osmium 76	192 Ir Iridium 77	195 Pt Platinum 78	197 Au Gold 79	201 Hg Mercury 80	204 Tl Thallium 81	207 Pb Lead 82	209 Bi Bismuth 83	(209) Po Polonium 84	(210) At Astatine 85	(222) Rn Radon 86
7	(223) Fr Francium 87	(226) Ra Radium 88	■■	(267) Rf Rutherfordium 104	(268) Db Dubnium 105	(269) Sg Seaborgium 106	(270) Bh Bohrium 107	(277) Hs Hassium 108	(278) Mt Meltnerium 109	(281) Ds Darmstadbium 110	(282) Rg Roentgenium 111	(285) Cn Copernicium 112	(286) Nh Nihonium 113	(289) Fl Flerovium 114	(290) Mc Moscovium 115	(293) Lv Livermorium 116	(294) Ts Tennessine 117	(294) Og Oganesson 118

■	139 La Lanthanum 57	140 Ce Cerium 58	141 Pr Praseodymium 59	144 Nd Neodymium 60	(145) Pm Promethium 61	150 Sm Samarium 62	152 Eu Europium 63	157 Gd Gadolinium 64	159 Tb Terbium 65	163 Dy Dysprosium 66	165 Ho Holmium 67	167 Er Erbium 68	169 Tm Thulium 69	173 Yb Ytterbium 70	175 Lu Lutetium 71
■■	(227) Ac Actinium 89	232 Th Thorium 90	231 Pa Protoactinium 91	238 U Uranium 92	(237) Np Neptunium 93	(244) Pu Plutonium 94	(243) Am Americium 95	(247) Cm Curium 96	(247) Bk Berkelium 97	(251) Cf Californium 98	(252) Es Einsteinium 99	(257) Fm Fermium 100	(258) Md Mendelevium 101	(259) No Nobelium 102	(266) Lr Lawrencium 103

a X Name b

a = relative atomic mass
X = atomic symbol
b = atomic number

(Masses in brackets are the mass numbers of the longest-lived isotope)

APPENDIX B: COMMAND WORDS

Command word	Definition
Add/label	Requires the addition or labelling of a stimulus material given in the question, for example labelling a diagram or adding units to a table.
Calculate	Obtain a numerical answer, showing relevant working.
Comment on	Requires the synthesis of a number of variables from data/information to form a judgement.
Complete	Requires the completion of a table/ diagram.
Deduce	Draw/reach conclusion(s) from the information provided.
Describe	Give an account of something. Statements in the response need to be developed, as they are often linked, but do not need to include a justification or reason.
Design	Plan or invent a procedure from existing principles/ideas.
Determine	The answer must have an element that is quantitative from the stimulus provided, or must show how the answer can be reached quantitatively. To gain maximum marks, there must be a quantitative element to the answer.
Discuss	■ Identify the issue/situation/problem/ argument that is being assessed within the question. ■ Explore all aspects of an issue/ situation/problem/ argument. ■ Investigate the issue/situation etc. by reasoning or argument.
Draw	Produce a diagram either using a ruler or freehand.
Estimate	Find an approximate value, number or quantity from a diagram/given data or through a calculation.
Evaluate	Review information (e.g. data, methods) then bring it together to form a conclusion, drawing on evidence including strengths, weaknesses, alternative actions, relevant data or information. Come to a supported judgement of a subject's quality and relate it to its context.

Command word	Definition
Explain	An explanation requires a justification/ exemplification of a point. The answer must contain some element of reasoning/justification, which can include mathematical explanations.
Give/state/ name	All of these command words are really synonyms. They generally all require recall of one or more pieces of information.
Give a reason/ reasons	When a statement has been made and the requirement is only to give the reason(s) why.
Identify	Usually requires some key information to be selected from a given stimulus/ resource.
Justify	Give evidence to support (either the statement given in the question or an earlier answer).
Plot	Produce a graph by marking points accurately on a grid from data that is provided and then draw a line of best fit through these points. A suitable scale and appropriately labelled axes must be included if these are not provided in the question.
Predict	Give an expected result.
Show that	Verify the statement given in the question.
Sketch	Produce a freehand drawing. For a graph, this would need a line and labelled axes with important features indicated. The axes are not scaled.
State what is meant by	When the meaning of a term is expected but there are different ways for how these can be described.
Suggest	Use your knowledge to propose a solution to a problem in a novel context.
Verb proceeding a command word	
Analyse the data/graph to explain	Examine the data/graph in detail to provide an explanation.
Multiple-choice questions	
What, why	Direct command words used for multiple-choice questions.

APPENDIX C: A GUIDE TO PRACTICAL QUESTIONS

This appendix is designed to help you better understand the practical work in your study, and also to give you guidance on how to answer the practical-based questions in your International GCSE Chemistry papers.

WHY IS THIS APPENDIX SO IMPORTANT?

Chemistry is a practical subject. Through experiments, you develop better understanding of the theoretical concepts in the subject. This is a guide to things you should consider when planning and carrying out an experiment, and how to process your results.

Of the possible marks in your chemistry exams, about 20% will be given to questions designed to find out whether you have some important laboratory skills. This appendix offers suggestions on how to approach these questions.

SAFETY

Before starting a particular experiment, you need to consider what risks are involved in the experiment and which safety precautions are needed.

The obvious precaution is to *wear eye protection*. That's true of *all* practical work in chemistry. However, you might be asked a question that says 'Apart from wearing eye protection, explain a safety precaution that you would need to take in doing this experiment. **(2 marks)**'.

Notice the word 'explain' in the last sentence. 'Explain' means that, as well as giving a precaution, you have to give a reason for it. Look at the number of marks available. If there is more than 1 mark, you have to give more than one piece of information.

Table A1 Other possible precautions

Presence of:	Precaution and reason (marks)
poisonous gas, e.g. chlorine	Do the experiment in a fume cupboard (1) because chlorine is poisonous (1)
corrosive liquid, e.g. acid or sodium hydroxide solution	Wear gloves (1) because the acid (or whatever) is corrosive (1)
flammable liquid, e.g. ethanol	Keep away from naked flames (1) because the ethanol might catch fire (1)
any hot liquid or apparatus	Take care not to touch (1) in case you burn yourself (for solids) or scald yourself (for liquids) (1)
any especially fragile apparatus, e.g. pipette or thermometer	Be careful not to break the fragile pipette (1) because you might cut yourself (1)

CHOOSING AND USING MEASURING EQUIPMENT

If you want to measure the mass of something, you should use a balance. If you want to measure a temperature, you should use a thermometer. When it comes to volumes, however, you are faced with a number of choices of equipment: measuring cylinders of various sizes, burettes, pipettes and gas syringes. It is important to pick the right item.

MEASURING VOLUMES OF LIQUID

Measuring cylinders

Measuring cylinders are acceptable for approximate volumes. Choose the smallest measuring cylinder that will take the volume you need. Trying to measure, for example, 8 cm^3 in a 100 cm^3 measuring cylinder is going to be fairly imprecise. Use a 10 cm^3 measuring cylinder instead.

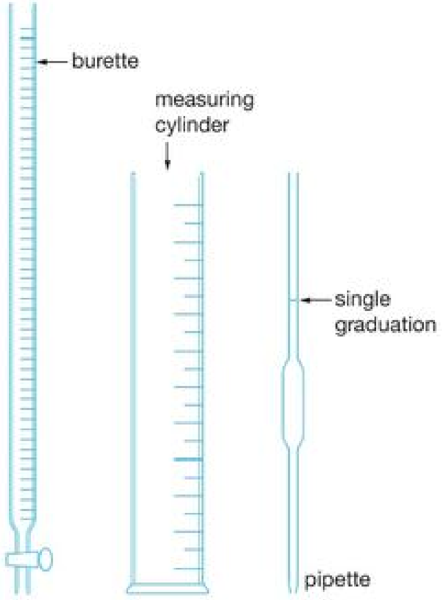
Pipettes

Pipettes will measure the volume printed on them very precisely (typically to within 0.05 cm^3). Common pipettes have volumes of 25 or 10 cm^3, but you might also come across other sizes, such as 5, 20 or 50 cm^3.

Burettes

The most common size of burette will measure variable volumes up to 50 cm^3, and you can take measurements to the nearest 0.05 cm^3.

Note you will never use a beaker or a conical flask to measure the volume of a liquid. They are too imprecise! The precision of a measurement depends on how big the divisions are on an instrument. The smaller the division, the more precise the data.



▲ Figure A1 Devices for measuring volumes of liquid.

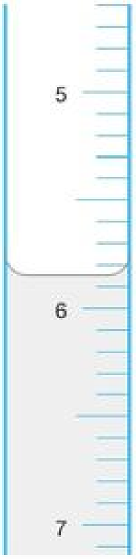
MEASURING VOLUMES OF GAS

To measure the volume of a gas you are collecting, you can either use a gas syringe or collect the gas into an inverted measuring cylinder over water. You will find diagrams for both methods on page 229. A gas syringe is more precise and has to be used if the gas is soluble in water.

TAKING READINGS

You take your measurement from the bottom of the meniscus (if you have a liquid), ignoring any liquid that has 'curled up' at the sides (see Figure A2). Edexcel examiners expect you to read a scale to a precision of *half the smallest divisions* marked on whatever piece of apparatus you are using. If the smallest division is 0.1 cm^3, you are expected to estimate the volume to the nearest 0.05 cm^3 if the meniscus falls between two marks.

The diagram shows a burette reading of 5.85 cm^3. Be very careful to look closely at which way the scale runs. Students might make the mistake of reading this as 6.15 cm^3 because they don't notice that the meniscus is somewhere between 5 and 6 on the scale. Don't simply read from the nearest number, think about what you are doing!



▲ Figure A2 Measuring from the bottom of the meniscus.

RECORDING READINGS

The number you write down should show the degree of precision used. For example, if a burette reading falls exactly on the 11 cm^3 line, you should still record it as 11.00 cm^3 because it was possible to read it to 0.05 cm^3 and your answer wasn't 11.05 or 10.95 cm^3. Recording it as 11 cm^3 implies that you couldn't read it more precisely than to the nearest 1 cm^3.

TABLES OF RESULTS

DRAWING UP A TABLE

Table A2 contains some real measurements taken during a piece of practical work to measure the heat evolved when magnesium reacted with dilute hydrochloric acid. Ignore the bottom row for the moment.

Notice that the figure for volume of acid shows how precisely it was measured.

Volume of acid used = 50.0 cm^3

Table A2 Results from an experiment to measure the heat evolved when magnesium reacts with dilute hydrochloric acid

	Experiment		
	1	2	3
Mass of weighing bottle plus Mg/g	10.81	10.81	10.82
Mass of weighing bottle afterwards/g	10.69	10.69	10.69
Mass of Mg used/g	0.12	0.12	0.13
Initial temperature/°C	17.4	17.5	17.4
Maximum temperature/°C	27.5	27.4	28.4
Temperature rise/°C	10.1	9.9	11.0
Precision check – temperature rise per gram of Mg/°C/g	84.2	(82.5)	84.6

Notice the figure of 28.4 °C in the third column of Table A2. This shows that the temperature was measured to a precision of 0.1 of a degree celsius.

Notice that Table A2 contains both measured and calculated results (the mass of Mg used and the temperature rise). Notice that every row and column is properly labelled, including units, wherever appropriate. Column or row headings for things such as mass, temperature, volume and time are useless unless the units are included, and you will lose marks for leaving them out.

If you have measured time, for example, in a variety of units while you were doing the experiment, you must change them to one consistent unit before you draw up your table. For example, if you have measured times of 15 s, 30 s, 45 s, 1 min, 1 min 30 s, 2 min and 5 min, you must convert them all to seconds before you can make use of them.

There are various ways that you can show the units in a table (or on the axes of a graph). Some people put the units in brackets, for example (g). The most correct way is to divide by the units. So, for example, if we have a mass of 10.81 g and we divide this by the unit we obtain

$$\frac{10.81\,\text{g}}{\text{g}} = 10.81,$$

which is the number we have put in the table.

RELIABILITY OF RESULTS

If you just produce one set of results, you can't be sure that you haven't made a mistake somewhere. Experiments have to be repeated to check their reliability. *Reliable results are those that are in close agreement, but not necessarily the same.* All practical work has built-in errors, which you can't avoid. If you have two results exactly the same, that's just luck!

Sometimes the word 'concordant' is used to represent data that are consistent with each other.

How can you tell whether your results are consistent and reliable? In Table A2, the last row calculates the temperature rise per gram of magnesium used. In this experiment, that result should be consistent if your experiment is reliable.

Notice that in Table A2 two values for temperature rise per gram of Mg are in close agreement, but the other one is slightly different. If you were doing calculations from these results, you would omit the results from experiment 2 because they aren't likely to be quite as reliable as the others.

If you are asked how you would improve the reliability of a set of results, say that you would repeat the experiment (possibly more than once), and check the new results for consistency with the old results. If two sets of results agree closely and a third doesn't, then you discard the third set of results.

PROCESSING THE RESULTS

GRAPHS

Drawing good graphs

It may sound obvious, but the most important tool you need is a *very* sharp pencil. You can't draw a good graph with a pen, and, of course, it is impossible to rub out a mistake.

In an exam, you are likely to be given a graph grid, possibly with at least one axis unlabelled. Choose a scale that uses as much of the graph paper as possible, but without making it really difficult to plot the points. Label each axis clearly (in ink) and don't forget the units. The *independent variable* – what you vary – goes on the *x*-axis and the *dependent variable* – what you measure – goes on the *y*-axis. Plot the points carefully and if any don't seem to be following the general pattern (towards a straight line or a smooth curve), double-check them.

Anomalous results

Sometimes you will see one result that is clearly wrong because it falls well away from the pattern of the others. This is called an **anomalous result**. You might be asked to explain what might have caused it. When you are drawing your straight line or curve, you ignore the anomalous point completely.

Your explanation should be as precise as you can make it. Decide whether the point is too high or too low on the graph, then try to think of an experimental reason why that might have happened. It isn't enough to say simply that 'wrong measurements were taken or human error', you have to be much more specific, for example 'too much calcium carbonate was added by mistake, and that produced more carbon dioxide than expected'.

The best way of being sure what the examiners want in this sort of case is to look at mark schemes and Examiners' Reports from past papers. You will find more about this at the end of this appendix.

Straight-line graphs

Most (but not all) straight-line graphs that you will get at International GCSE will go through the origin (0, 0). Does your graph look as if it is going to go through the origin? If so, is it *reasonable* that it should go through the origin?

For example, if you were plotting results from a reaction between calcium carbonate and hydrochloric acid, it would be reasonable that if you didn't use any calcium carbonate, you wouldn't obtain any carbon dioxide. On the other hand, if you were plotting rates of reaction against temperature, it isn't reasonable to assume that a reaction rate would be zero if the temperature was 0 °C.

Suppose you were plotting a graph from an experiment reacting small amounts of calcium carbonate with dilute hydrochloric acid (Table A3). You are trying to find the relationship between the volume of carbon dioxide produced and the mass of calcium carbonate used.

Table A3 Volume of carbon dioxide produced and mass of calcium carbonate used when reacting calcium carbonate with dilute hydrochloric acid

Mass of $CaCO_3$/g	0.020	0.040	0.060	0.080	0.100	0.120
Volume of CO_2/cm³	3	10	13	13	24	31

The graph is plotted with volume of CO_2 (what you measure – dependent variable) on the *y*-axis and mass of $CaCO_3$ (what you change – independent variable) on the *x*-axis. It must also go through (0, 0) as explained above.

Figure A3 is just a sketch graph of these figures. You would need to draw this yourself on graph paper to see exactly how the points should lie.

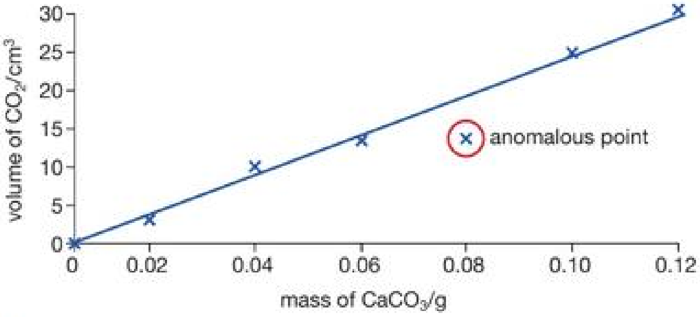


Figure A3 Volume of carbon dioxide produced versus mass of calcium carbonate used.

There is a best-fit line, and the anomalous point hasn't been included. *It mustn't be – it is obviously wrong!* When you draw a best-fit line, make sure that you have an even spread of points on each side of the line you have drawn. Don't worry if it only goes through one or two of your points. In this case, the only point you are certain about is (0, 0). Your line *must* go through (0, 0) in this particular experiment.

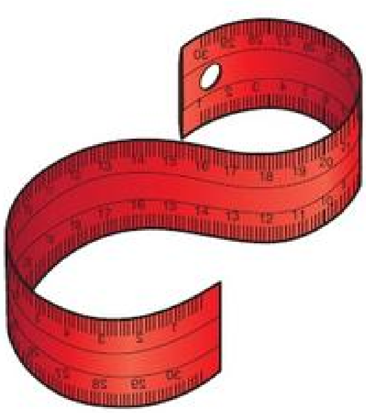
Straight lines *must be drawn with a ruler* rather than freehand.

Curved graphs

Exactly the same principles apply, except that it is more difficult to draw a smooth curve than a straight line. The line should still be a best-fit curve and, again, you shouldn't include any anomalous point(s) when you draw it.

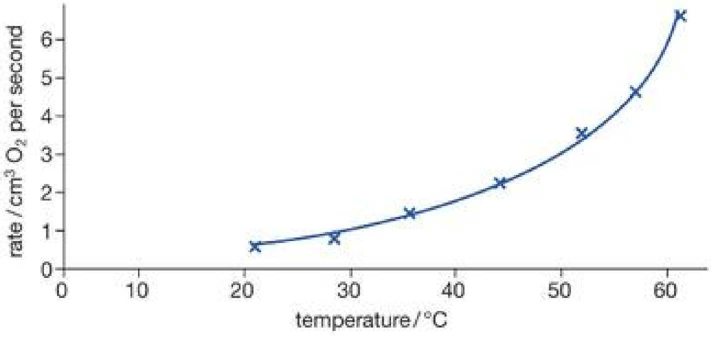
When you are asked to draw a line of best fit, this can be a straight line or a curve.

If you are going to be drawing a lot of graphs in the future (because you are going to do maths or science subjects at a higher level, for example), it is really worth buying a flexible rubber ruler designed for the job. Do an internet search for flexible ruler or 'flexicurve'. These are rulers that can be bent to allow you to draw smooth curves.



▲ Figure A4 A flexible ruler can be used to draw a curve of best fit.

Figure A5 shows how the rate at which oxygen was given off during a reaction (*y*-axis) varied with temperature (*x*-axis). These are imaginary results just to illustrate a point. They don't relate to any real experiment. Don't assume that the curve must go through the origin. In Figure A5, it won't.



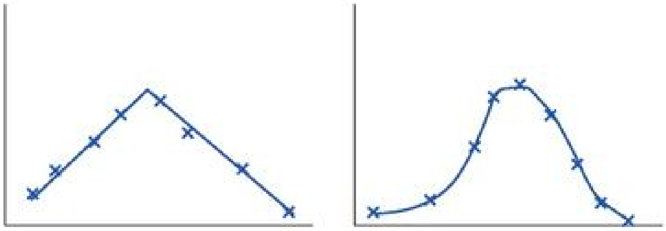
▲ Figure A5 The rate of an imaginary reaction against temperature.

In a case like this, you might be asked how you would modify the experiment to obtain more results between 0 and 20 °C. The obvious thing to do would be to cool the substances you are going to react together before you mix them, by surrounding them with ice. More than once in the past, examiners have commented that students often suggested moving the experiment to a colder climate. You won't get credit for that!

This is an excellent example of why it is essential to look at mark schemes for past papers and read Examiners' Reports. They point out the type of answers they won't accept. If you have read it, you won't make the same mistake yourself.

Graphs with unusual shapes

Occasionally, you might be given results that increase for a bit, and then decrease again. The final graph might be two intersecting straight lines or a curve, as shown in Figure A6.



▲ Figure A6 Plotting unusual curves.

You need to look carefully at how the points fall to see which of these you need to draw. You may well find a clue in the question, for example the use of the word 'curve' at some point or 'draw two straight lines'.

After drawing graphs of this kind, you might be asked how you could improve their accuracy. The answer is to take more readings around what is known as the 'turning point' of the graph. With either of these graphs (but especially the curve), what you draw would be more accurate if you had more points around the peak in each case.

Bar charts

Bar charts are easy to draw. Don't forget to label them. These types of graphs are used when the independent variables are not continuous and can only take certain values. For example, in Figure 19.12 on page 214, the number of carbon atoms in an alcohol molecule is an example of a non-continuous variable.

DESCRIBING THE RELATIONSHIPS SHOWN BY A GRAPH

Look back at the straight line graph in Figure A3. What does it show? The correct expression is that 'the volume of carbon dioxide is *directly proportional to* the mass of calcium carbonate used'. If you just say that 'as the mass of calcium carbonate increases, the volume of carbon dioxide increases', that isn't precise enough, and you may not get the full mark. That faulty statement could equally well describe a curve.

The phrase *directly proportional* means if you double the mass of calcium carbonate, the volume of carbon dioxide produced will double as well. If you triple the mass of calcium carbonate, the volume of carbon dioxide produced also triples. For the relationship between two variables to be directly proportional, the graph must be *a straight line passing through the origin*. If a straight line does not pass through the origin, you should say there is *a linear relationship* between the two variables. If the line has a *positive gradient*, you could say there is a *positive and linear correlation* between the two variables.

The words *proportional* and *directly proportional* mean the same thing, there is no difference between them.

The graph in Figure A5 is more difficult to describe. You can start by saying that as the temperature increases, the rate gets faster, but you have to make the point that the line is curved. The examiners commented on a similar question by saying that they were looking for words like 'non-linear' or 'exponential'. You could say something like 'The rate increases exponentially with temperature'. That suggests a strong upward curve. Alternatively you would have to use more words and say something like 'the amount that the rate increases for each 10 °C rise in temperature is not constant but increases'. This is a bit more complicated, but it explains what is happening.

Technically, the term 'exponential increase' has a precise mathematical meaning, which won't necessarily apply to all curves that look like this. However, you do not need to worry about this at International GCSE level.

CALCULATING RESULTS

You will find that the calculations involved with these questions are usually easy, often with a simple formula that you have to slot numbers into. Two things need a comment.

CALCULATING AVERAGES

If you are calculating an average from a number of results that include one or more inconsistent ones, you would normally just take the average of the consistent ones and ignore the anomalous result.

For example, with good titration technique you should get results that are consistent to within 0.10 cm^3. Suppose your actual results were

21.20 21.45 21.30 cm^3

You have two consistent results (21.20 and 21.30), and one that is outside the usual limits of consistency for a titration. Take the average of the two consistent ones (21.25 cm^3) and ignore the other one. You will sometimes be told in these questions what constitutes consistent results, for example 'concordant results are those within 0.10 cm^3 of each other'.

Important! If a question just gives you some numbers to find an average of, without any comment about consistency, just take a simple average. For example, one past question asked for an average of 95, 96 and 91. Strictly speaking, you should ignore the 91 value because it is out of line with the other two. The answer given in the mark scheme, however, was 94 (an average of all three). You need to look at a lot of mark schemes and Examiners' Reports to judge how to decide what to do in cases like this! (See the end of this appendix.)

SIGNIFICANT FIGURES

You shouldn't quote an answer to more significant figures than the least precise piece of information you are using in the calculation.

For example, if you are measuring a volume of gas as 8.00 cm^3 and a mass of solid of 1.325 g, and use both those figures in your calculation, you can't quote your answer to more than three significant figures because that's all the least precise number (the volume) is quoted to.

When counting significant figures, you start counting from the left with the first non-zero number. For example, 0.0053 has two significant figures because we do not count the first three zeros. It has four *decimal places*, however. 0.6720 has four significant figures and four decimal places. The last zero is significant here.

With zeroes that come before a decimal point, it is more difficult to know how many significant figures there are, for example 500 could be one, two or three significant figures. You would only know which if you took the measurement yourself. Sometimes standard form is used to show this:

5×10^2 one significant figure

5.0×10^2 two significant figures

5.00×10^2 three significant figures

Be careful when you round numbers to the correct number of significant figures. Remember that you are rounding them, not just removing the unwanted figures from your number. So, for example:

12.382651 on your calculator rounds to 12.4 to three significant figures, *not* 12.3.

Remember that you round a digit followed by a 5 or more upwards; a digit followed by less than 5, you leave the same. For example:

2.465 rounds to 2.47 to three significant figures;

2.464 rounds to 2.46 to three significant figures.

MODIFYING EXPERIMENTS

Suppose you were given a question involving rates of reaction, for example the decomposition of hydrogen peroxide in the presence of manganese(IV) oxide as a catalyst. The results you are given are designed to show how the temperature of the reaction affects the rate. At the end of the question, you might then be asked to suggest how you would find out how changing the concentration of the hydrogen peroxide affects the rate, or how changing the quantity of catalyst affects it.

BE PRECISE ABOUT WHAT YOU ARE TALKING ABOUT

Don't use vague expressions like 'I would change the amount of hydrogen peroxide.' Avoid the word 'amount' entirely. If you are talking about a solution, say whether you are intending to change the volume of the solution or its concentration. If you are talking about a solid, say whether you are talking about changing its mass, or how many moles of it you have got, or its surface area. You must be precise in order to get the mark.

Always remember that, as a general rule, one mark equals one piece of information, so three marks equals three pieces of information, and so on.

MAKE SURE YOU ARE DESCRIBING A VALID (FAIR) TEST

Whatever it is that you are changing, *that must be the only thing which changes from one experiment to the next*. If you are changing the concentration of one solution, the concentration of every other solution involved must stay the same as before. The total volume must stay the same. The temperature must stay the same. The mass of any solid must stay the same, and so must its size (powder, small lumps, big lumps and so on) so that its surface area stays the same.

MAXIMISING YOUR SUCCESS

The very best way of revising for the exam at the end of your course is to work through past papers set by your examiners. You should look especially at the most recent ones. You need to check your answers against the published mark schemes and against the comments in the Examiners' Reports. The Examiners' Reports are particularly useful for these practical-based questions, where what the examiners are looking for isn't always obvious.

In question papers from June 2011 onwards, practical-based questions are mixed up with more theoretical ones in the same exam papers. If you use older test papers to practise, note that there was a separate paper in which all the practical questions were found.

On the website accompanying this book, you will find advice about how to obtain past papers, mark schemes and reports for the latest specification.

GLOSSARY

absorb take in (a gas or a liquid)

acid a substance that acts as a source of hydrogen ions (H^+) in solution (Arrhenius theory) or as a proton donor (Brønsted–Lowry theory)

acid rain rain which has a pH of less than about 5.6 It is caused when water and oxygen in the atmosphere react with sulfur dioxide to produce sulfuric acid, or with various oxides of nitrogen, NO_x, to give nitric acid

activation energy the minimum amount of energy required for a collision to be successful, i.e. to result in a reaction

addition a chemical reaction in which one molecule adds to another without taking anything away, to form a single product. For example, when alkenes react with halogens, the halogen atoms add onto the alkene molecule

addition polymerisation polymerisation of monomers containing a carbon–carbon double bond. A large number of monomer molecules add onto each other without anything else being formed

alcohols a homologous series of compounds which all contain an –OH functional group attached to a hydrocarbon chain

alkali metals group 1 elements including lithium, sodium, potassium, rubidium, caesium and francium Note, hydrogen is not an alkali metal

alkanes a homologous series of similar hydrocarbons in which all the carbons are joined to each other with single covalent bonds. These are saturated compounds with the general formula C_nH_{2n+2}

alkenes a homologous series of hydrocarbons which contain a carbon–carbon double bond. These are unsaturated compounds with the general formula C_nH_{2n}

allotropes different forms of the same element, for example diamond, graphite and C_{60} fullerene are three allotropes of carbon

alloy a mixture of a metal with, usually, other metals or carbon. For example, brass is an alloy of copper and zinc, and steel is an alloy of iron and carbon

amphoteric substances that can react with both acids and bases to form salts

anaerobic in the absence of air

anhydrous without water

anion a negative ion, formed by atoms gaining electrons

anode the positive electrode in electrolysis, which attracts negative anions

anomalous result a result that does not fit in with the pattern of the others

aqueous something dissolved in water

array an ordered arrangement of things

ash the soft powder that remains after something has been burned

atom the smallest piece of an element that can still be recognised as that element

atomic number the number of protons in an atom

Avogadro constant the number of ^{12}C atoms in 12 g of ^{12}C (6.02×10^{23} mol^{-1})

balancing the equation a process of putting coefficients in front of formulae so that the same number of atoms of each type is on both side of an equation

barrier method a method of rust prevention by coating iron with paint, oil, grease or plastic, so that oxygen/water cannot reach the iron/steel

base a substance that neutralises acids by combining with the hydrogen ions in them. They are usually metal oxides, hydroxides or ammonia. A soluble base is called an alkali, and it is a substance that acts as a source of hydroxide ions (OH^-) in solution (Arrhenius theory) or as a proton acceptor (Brønsted–Lowry theory)

batch a group of things that are produced or are dealt with together

biofuel a fuel that is made from biological sources, such as sugar cane or corn

biopolyester a polyester which is biodegradable

bleach a chemical used to make something paler or whiter, or to sterilise something

boiling the change of state from a liquid to a gas. It occurs at the boiling point

bond energy the amount of energy required to break 1 mole of covalent bonds in gaseous molecules, or the amount of energy released when 1 mole of covalent bonds are formed in gaseous molecules

branch something that grows out from the main part of an object

bubbling producing bubbles

bulb a glass object that produces light when electricity is passed through it. Or, the wider part of some plastic pipettes, which is squeezed to allow the pipette to be filled

calorimetry measuring the heat given out or taken in by a chemical reaction

carboxylic acids a homologous series of compounds which all contain a –COOH functional group attached to a hydrocarbon chain

catalyst substance that speeds up a chemical reaction by providing an alternative pathway of lower activation energy. Catalysts are not used up and remain chemically unchanged at the end of the reaction

catalytic converter a device used in cars to convert oxides of nitrogen and carbon monoxide into harmless nitrogen gas and carbon dioxide. It uses platinum, palladium and rhodium as catalysts

cathode the negative electrode in electrolysis, which attracts positive cations

cation a positive ion, formed by atoms losing electrons

chemical means methods which involve chemical reactions

chromatogram the adsorbent paper from paper chromatography showing the separation of different coloured substances

clump a small group or cluster

coefficient number written in front of formulae in a balanced chemical equation

coil continuous series of circular rings into which something such as wire or rope has been wound or twisted

collision theory states that for a reaction to occur, the reactant particles must collide with each other and the collision needs to have sufficient energy and the correct orientation

combustion a chemical reaction in which a substance reacts with oxygen (burns) to form products and heat

competition reaction displacement reaction between a more reactive metal and the oxide of a less reactive metal

complete combustion occurs when a hydrocarbon burns in sufficient oxygen (burns) and forms carbon dioxide and water as products

compound a substance that forms when two or more elements chemically combine The elements cannot be separated by physical means

condensation the change of state from a gas to a liquid. It occurs at the condensation point

condensation polymerisation polymerisation of monomers in which each time two monomers combine, a small molecule such as water or hydrogen chloride is removed

condensation reaction a chemical reaction in which two molecules combine to form a larger molecule with elimination of a small molecule such as water

corrosive a substance which can damage living tissue

covalent bonding strong electrostatic force of attraction between the nuclei of the atoms making up the bond and the shared pair of electrons

cracking a process in which long-chain alkanes are converted to alkenes and shorter-chain alkanes. It is carried out using silica or alumina as catalyst at a temperature of 600–700 °C

crude oil formed from the remains of living organisms when their soft tissue was gradually changed by high temperatures and pressures into a thick, black oil. It is a mixture of hydrocarbons

crystallisation a process in which a solute (soluble solid) is obtained from its solvent

damp slightly wet

decomposition reaction a chemical reaction in which a compound is broken down into its elements or simpler compounds

dehydration removal of water

delocalised electrons electrons that are no longer attached to particular atoms or pairs of atoms, but are free to move throughout the whole structure

denatured the loss of function of enzymes due to structural changes, usually caused by changes in temperature or pH

dependent variable what you measure in an experiment

deposition the change of state directly from a gas to a solid

diatomic a molecule that contains two atoms

diffusion the random movement of particles from an area of high concentration to an area of low concentration

dimerise forming a dimer – two identical molecules react to form a larger molecule

dip put something into a liquid and lift out again

discharged when an ion loses its charge by losing or gaining electrons

displacement reaction a chemical reaction in which a more reactive element replaces a less reactive one in its compound

displayed formula a formula that shows all the bonds in a molecule as individual lines. Each line represents a pair of shared electrons in a covalent bond

dot-and-cross diagram a representation of how electrons are arranged in ions or molecules

double bond atoms sharing two pairs of electrons in a covalent bond

drive off force something to go away

dry ice solid carbon dioxide

ductile a property of metal that allows it to be drawn out into wires

dynamic equilibrium equilibrium means the concentrations of the reactants and the products in a reversible reaction remain constant. Dynamic means the reactions are still continuing, but the rate of the forward reaction is equal to the rate of the reverse reaction

electrode a conductor through which electricity is passed into and out of an electrolyte

electrolysis the chemical change caused by passing an electric current through a compound that is either molten or in solution

electrolyte a liquid that undergoes electrolysis. Electrolytes are molten ionic compounds or solutions containing ions

electrolytic cell a compartment in which electrolysis occurs

electron a subatomic particle found in shells (energy levels) outside the nucleus of an atom. It has a relative mass of 1/1836 and a relative charge of 1–. For a neutral atom, the number of electrons = the number of protons = the atomic number

electronic configuration how electrons are arranged in the shells (energy levels) in an atom

electrostatic attraction the force of attraction between something that is positive and something that is negative

element a substance that cannot be split into anything simpler by chemical means. An element contains atoms of the same atomic number

empirical formula gives the simplest whole-number ratio of the atoms present in a compound. It can be worked out from experimental data

end point the point at which the indicator changes colour in a titration

endothermic reactions in which heat energy is taken in from the surroundings

energetics a study of energy change in chemical reactions

enthalpy change the amount of heat energy taken in or given out in a chemical reaction. It has the symbol ΔH

enzymes biological catalysts, usually consisting of proteins

ester esters are organic compounds formed by the reaction of an alcohol with a carboxylic acid. They have the functional group –COO–

esterification a chemical reaction in which an alcohol and a carboxylic acid react together to form an ester

evaporation the change of state from a liquid to a vapour. It occurs at a temperature below the boiling point and only at the surface of the liquid

excess having more than enough of a reactant to react with all of something else

exothermic reactions in which heat energy is given out to the surroundings

fade lose colour and brightness

fermentation converting sugar such as glucose into ethanol and carbon dioxide using enzymes in yeasts

filtrate the liquid that comes through the filter paper during filtration

filtration a process to separate an insoluble solid from a liquid

fizz make many bubbles, producing a continuous sound

flake off come off in small pieces

flash shine suddenly and brightly for a short period of time

flush out force something out

formula a representation of a chemical showing the elements present

forward reaction from reactants to products (the left-to-right reaction)

fossil fuels these include coal, gas and fuels derived from crude oil, which all come from things that were once alive

fractional distillation a process to separate two liquids of similar boiling points, for example ethanol and water or the components of crude oil

fractionating column a piece of equipment used for separating vapours in fractional distillation

freezing the change of state from a liquid to a solid. It occurs at the freezing point

freezing point the temperature at which a substance changes its state from a liquid to a solid

fuel a substance that when burned in oxygen releases heat energy

fume strong-smelling gas or smoke that is unpleasant to breathe in

functional group an atom or a group of atoms that determine the chemical properties of a compound

galvanisation a method of preventing rusting by coating iron with a layer of zinc

general formula a formula applicable to all members of a homologous series, for example C_nH_{2n+2} for alkanes and C_nH_{2n} for alkenes

giant a structure in which there are no individual molecules and the bonding extends in all directions. There is no limit to the number of particles present

giant ionic lattice the arrangement of ions in an ionic compound in its solid state

girder a strong beam, made of iron or steel, that supports a floor, roof or bridge

global warming greenhouse gases, including carbon dioxide, trap the heat radiated from the Earth's surface (originally from the Sun) and lead to an increase in the temperature of the Earth and its atmosphere

glow produce a steady light

greenhouse gas gases such as carbon dioxide which can trap heat radiated from the Earth's surface (originally from the Sun)

group a vertical column in the Periodic Table. All elements in the same group have the same number of outer shell electrons

half-equation a balanced symbol equation to describe either oxidation or reduction

halogen group 7 element, including fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine and astatine

hammered been hit with a hammer to be forced into a particular shape

homologous series a series of compounds with similar chemical properties because they have the same functional group. Each member differs from the next by $-CH_2-$. The members show a gradation in physical properties

hydrated containing water

hydration the addition of water molecules to an unsaturated molecule, for example converting ethene to ethanol

hydrocarbon molecules containing carbon and hydrogen only

hydrogen bond a special type of intermolecular force found between water molecules and in some other substances

hydrogen halide compound formed between hydrogen and a halogen, with the formula HX where X stands for a halogen atom

hydrogenation the addition of hydrogen molecules to an unsaturated molecule, for example converting ethene to ethane

hydroxonium ion an ion formed when water accepts a proton from an acid. It has the formula H_3O^+

incomplete combustion occurs when a hydrocarbon burns in insufficient oxygen. Water is still formed as a product, but carbon monoxide or carbon are formed instead of carbon dioxide

independent variable what you vary in an experiment.

indicator a substance that has different colours depending on the pH

inert unreactive

intermolecular force force of attraction between covalent molecules, much weaker than covalent bonds within the molecules

ion charged particle formed when an atom (or group of atoms) loses or gains electrons

ionic bonding strong electrostatic force of attraction between oppositely charged ions, formed by the transfer of electrons from one atom to another

ionise become an ion. Usually refers to losing electrons to become a positive ion

iron filings small pieces of iron that are used in some chemical experiments

isoelectronic having the same number of electrons

isotopes different atoms of the same element, with the same number of protons but a different number of neutrons. Isotopes have the same chemical properties

kinetic energy a form of energy a substance possesses due to motion

lattice a regular array of particles

Liebig condenser a piece of equipment used to condense gas to liquid in distillation

litre a unit for volume. One litre = one dm^3

lump a mass of solid without a particular shape

malleable a property of metal which allows it to be hammered into different shapes

mass number the total number of protons and neutrons in the nucleus of an atom

melting the change of state from a solid to a liquid. It occurs at the melting point

melting point the temperature at which a substance changes its state from a solid to a liquid. A pure substance has a fixed melting point but a mixture may melt over a range of temperatures

metallic bonding electrostatic force of attraction between a lattice of positive ions and the sea of delocalised electrons

microbial oxidation oxidation by oxygen in the air in the presence of microorganisms such as bacteria and yeast

minerals naturally occurring, crystalline compounds in the Earth's crust

miscible liquids (or gases) which can mix with each other and form a homogenous mixture

mixture two or more substances not chemically combined that can be separated by physical means

molar enthalpy change the change in enthalpy when 1 mole of a particular reactant reacts

molar mass the mass of 1 mole of a substance

molar volume the volume occupied by 1 mole of a gas

mole a unit of the amount of a substance. A mole of anything contains the same number of particles as there are carbon atoms in 12 g of ^{12}C (6.02×10^{23} particles)

molecular formula shows the actual number of each type of atom present in a molecule (covalent compound) or formula unit (ionic compound)

molecule two or more atoms covalently bonded together. Molecules contain a certain fixed number of atoms

molten liquid state when a solid has melted

monomer molecules which can join up to form a polymer

mono-substitution a substitution reaction in which only one hydrogen atom in an alkane is replaced by a halogen atom

native (metals) metals which exist naturally as the uncombined element

neutralisation reaction a chemical reaction in which acids react with bases or alkalis to produce salts

neutron a subatomic particle in the nucleus of an atom. It has a relative mass of 1 and no charge. Number of neutrons in an atom = mass number – atomic number

noble gas group 0 elements, including helium, neon, argon, krypton, xenon and radon

non-biodegradable cannot be broken down by bacteria or fungi in the environment

non-continuous variable an independent variable which can only take certain values

non-renewable resource a finite resource that cannot be replaced, at least not for millions of years

nucleon number same as mass number

nucleus contains protons and neutrons in an atom

octet the octet rule states that atoms generally lose, gain or share electrons in order to have eight electrons in their outer shell

ore rocks that contain enough of the mineral for it to be worthwhile to extract the metal

organic chemistry branch of chemistry that studies the compounds of carbon except for the very simplest (like carbon dioxide, carbon monoxide, the carbonates and the hydrogencarbonates)

oxidation gain of oxygen or loss of electrons

oxidising agent something that oxidises something else by taking electrons away from it. An oxidising agent is reduced in a chemical reaction

paper chromatography a process to separate a mixture of coloured substances using adsorbent paper

parent acid the acid from which a salt is formed, for example sulfuric acid is the parent acid for sulfates

particle a small object. In chemistry, particle can be used to refer to atoms, molecules, ions or the subatomic particles, including protons, neutrons and electrons

period a horizontal row in the Periodic Table. All elements in the same period have the same number of occupied shells

Periodic Table a table in which elements are arranged in the order of increasing atomic number and in terms of chemical and physical properties

pH scale a scale to measure how acidic or how alkaline a solution is

physical means methods which involve changing temperature, dissolving etc., for example distillation, filtration, use of magnet, chromatography, crystallisation, for separating components of a mixture

plot draw a graph to represent information

plunger a part of a syringe that moves in and out

polar a polar covalent bond is one in which electrons are not equally distributed between the two atoms

polymer a large molecule made when many small molecules (monomers) join together. It consists of many repeat units

polymerisation joining up of lots of small molecules (monomers) to make one big molecule (polymer)

pop a sudden short sound, often loud

position of equilibrium a reference to the proportion of the various things in an equilibrium mixture. If the position of equilibrium of a reaction lies towards to the right, the equilibrium mixture contains a higher proportion of products than reactants

pour make something flow out of a container by holding it at an angle

precipitate a fine solid that is formed by a chemical reaction involving liquids or gases

precipitation reaction a chemical reaction in which a fine solid is formed from liquids or gases

pressure the force acting on something per unit area. Pressure has the SI unit of Pa (N/m^2) and is caused by molecules hitting the walls of their container

proton a subatomic particle in the nucleus of an atom. It has a relative mass of 1 and a relative charge of 1+. Number of protons in an atom = atomic number

proton number same as atomic number

quicklime calcium oxide

radioactive having an unstable nucleus that will emit particles and waves to achieve a more stable nucleus

range a number of things that are all of the same general type, or the extent of a variable or series

rate the speed at which the amount of reactants decreases or the amount of products increases. It is measured as a change in the concentration (or amount) of reactants or products per unit time

reactivity series a list of elements (mainly metals) in order of decreasing reactivity

redox reduction and oxidation. A redox reaction involves both reduction and oxidation occurring together

reducing agent something that reduces something else by giving electrons to it. A reducing agent is oxidised in a chemical reaction

reduction loss of oxygen or gain of electrons

refinery gases a mixture of methane, ethane, propane and butane. This mixture is commonly used as liquefied petroleum gas (LPG) for domestic heating and cooking

relative atomic mass the weighted average mass of the isotopes of the element, relative to the mass of 1/12th of a ^{12}C atom

relative formula mass the weighted average mass of a formula unit of a compound, relative to the mass of 1/12th of a ^{12}C atom. It is sometimes called relative molecular mass, when it refers to covalent molecules

relative isotopic mass the mass of one particular isotope of the element, relative to the mass of 1/12th of a ^{12}C atom

repeat unit the basic unit which repeats itself in a chain to form a polymer

residue the solid left on the filter paper during filtration

reverse reaction from products to reactants (the right-to-left reaction)

reversible a reversible reaction is one that can go both ways, in other words, reactants react to form products and products can react to form reactants

R_f value the retardation factor, which is calculated as the distance moved by a spot (from the pencil line) divided by the distance moved by the solvent front (from the pencil line) on a chromatogram

roasting a process in which metal ores are heated in air to convert them into metal oxides

rust the corrosion of iron in the presence of water and oxygen. The rust formed has the formula $Fe_2O_3{\cdot}xH_2O$, where *x* is a variable number, and can be called hydrated iron(III) oxide

sacrificial protection a method of preventing rusting by attaching a block of a more reactive metal to iron. The more reactive metals undergo oxidation in preference to the iron

salt a compound formed when a hydrogen is replaced by a metal or ammonium in an acid

saturated compound a compound containing only carbon–carbon single bonds with no carbon–carbon double or triple bonds

saturated solution a solution that contains as much dissolved solid as possible at a particular temperature

scale up make larger

scrubbing removing pollutant gases from the gases produced in a combustion reaction

set up the way that something is organised or arranged. This can refer particularly to chemical apparatus

shells a series of levels where electrons are found outside the nucleus. Also called energy levels. Each shell can hold a certain number of electrons

shielded/screened a term used to describe how the electrostatic force of attraction on an electron from the nucleus is offset by inner shell electrons. The inner electrons shield the outer electrons from the full attraction of the nucleus

shift move from one place to another

simple distillation a process used to separate two liquids of different boiling points, or to separate the solvent and solid solute from a solution

slaked lime calcium hydroxide

soak make very wet

solubility the mass of solute which must dissolve in 100 g of solvent to form a saturated solution at a particular temperature

solubility curve a graph showing how the solubility of a solute in a particular solvent changes with temperature

solute the substance that dissolves in a solvent

solution the mixture formed when a solute dissolves in a solvent

solvent the liquid that a solute dissolves in

soot black powder consisting largely of carbon

spark very small pieces of burning material produced in a fire or by hitting and rubbing two hard objects together that leads to a sudden discharge of light

specific heat capacity the amount of heat needed to raise the temperature of 1 g of a substance by 1 °C

spectator ion an ion that is not changed in a chemical reaction. It is omitted from both the reactant and the product sides when writing ionic equations

spit send out small pieces of something, for example from a fire

stability a term used to describe the relative energies of the reactants and the products in a chemical reaction. The more energy a chemical has, the less stable it is

straight chain a molecule with no branches in its molecular structure

structural formula a formula that shows how the atoms are joined together in a molecule. It is often written in a condensed form by omitting all the carbon–carbon and carbon–hydrogen single bonds

structural isomerism the existence of two or more different structures with the same molecular formula

structural isomers molecules with the same molecular formula, but different structural formulae

sublimation the change of state from a solid to a gas

subscript a number or symbol written below the line

substitution a chemical reaction in which an atom or group of atoms in a molecule is replaced by a different atom or group of atoms. For example, when alkanes react with halogens in the presence of ultraviolet light, the hydrogen atoms in the alkanes are replaced by halogen atoms

successful collisions collisions with energy greater than or equal to the activation energy. These collisions result in reactions

tangent a straight line that touches a curve, but does not cut across it

tarnish become dull and lose colour

thermal decomposition decomposition reaction that requires heating to occur

titration a technique used to follow the course of a neutralisation reaction between an acid and an alkali. It can be used to find out how much of an acid/alkali reacts with a certain volume of an alkali/acid

trace a very small quantity

trickle flow slowly in drops or in a thin stream

triple bond atoms sharing three pairs of electrons in a covalent bond

ultraviolet radiation (UV light) the part of the electromagnetic radiation spectrum that has wavelengths between those of visible light and X-rays. It is invisible to the human eye

undergo experience something

unsaturated compounds that contain one or more carbon–carbon double or triple bonds

vapours gases that are produced when a liquid is heated

vigourously if something reacts vigorously, it does so rapidly and with energy

vinegar a dilute solution of ethanoic acid in water

viscous a liquid that is resistant to flow

volatile a substance that evaporates easily

waft move gently through the air

water of crystallisation water molecules that are part of a crystal structure in which they are chemically bound up with a salt. They are represented by $\cdot nH_2O$ in the formulae of compounds, for example $CuSO_4\cdot 5H_2O$ means there are five water molecules associated with each $CuSO_4$ unit

weighted average an average which takes into account the percentage abundance of the components

wick the piece of thread/string in a candle, or alcohol burner, from which the flame comes when you light it

word equation a representation of a chemical reaction using the names of the chemicals only

yeast a group of single-cell fungi that contain enzymes to convert sugar into ethanol

yield the amount of something that is produced in a chemical reaction

INDEX

A

acetic acid *see* ethanoic acid
acid–alkali indicators 168
acid rain 273
acidic oxides 35
acids 169
  carboxylic 293–5
  enthalpy change of neutralisation 217–19
  finding position of metals in reactivity series 155
  indicators 168
  pH 167–8, 169
  reaction with alkalis 170
  reaction with bases 170, 176
  reaction with carbonates 177, 295
  reaction with copper(II) carbonate 177
  reaction with magnesium 152–4, 174–5
  reaction with metal hydroxides 176
  reaction with metals 152–5, 174, 208
  reaction with sodium carbonate 177
  reaction with zinc 152–4, 155, 175
  theories 185–7
  in water 169
actinoids 31
activation energy 223, 230, 237
actual yield 58
addition polymerisation 302–8
addition reactions 265, 283–5, 291
air
  composition 137–40
  reaction of alkali metals 127
alcohols 257, 263–4, 287–91
  drawing and naming 288
  enthalpy change of combustion 211–14
  incomplete combustion 213
  see also ethanol
alkali metals 31, 123–8
  compounds 127
  physical properties 123–4
  reaction with air 127
  reaction with halogens 131
  reaction with water 125–6, 150
  reactivity 126
  storage and handling 124
alkalis 169–70
  bases and 176
  enthalpy change of neutralisation 217–19
  indicators 168
  pH 167–8, 169
  reaction with acids 170
  in water 169
alkanes 257, 259, 277–80
  combustion 279
  cracking 274
  general formula 278
  homologous series 278–9
  isomers 261–2, 278
  substitution reactions 280
alkenes 257, 259, 282–5
  addition reactions 283–5
  combustion 283
  general formula 283
  hydration 285
  hydrogenation 285
  isomers 263, 283
  working out the polymerisation reaction 304
allotropes 93–5
alloys 163
aluminium
  alloys 163
  extraction from ore 162
  reaction with acids 154
  reaction with steam 151
  uses 163
aluminium oxide, electrolysis 105, 162
amino acids 310
ammonia
  covalent bonding 88
  diffusion 6
  electrical conductivity 102
  reaction with hydrochloric acid 186
  reaction with hydrogen chloride 7
  reaction with water 169, 176
  test for 192
ammonium chloride 7, 79
  heating 240–1
ammonium hydroxide 169
ammonium ions, test for 194
ammonium salts 181
ammonium sulfate 182
'ane' ending 259
anhydrous salts 53
anions 76, 105
  tests for 194–6
anode 102, 105
anomalous result 324
aqueous solution
  electrolysis 106–10
  state symbol 41
argon 34, 137
Arrhenius theory 185
artificial flavourings 299
aspirin 16
assessment overview viii
astatine 130, 131, 135
'ate' endings 80
atmospheric gases 137–43
atomic number 25–6
atoms
  electrons in 27, 31–3
  in molecules 24
  structure 25
auto-ignition 275
averages 326
Avogadro's constant 46
Avogadro's law 64, 65

B

baking soda, reaction with vinegar 223
balancing equations 39–41
bar charts 325
barium chloride crystals 53
barium nitrate 80

barium sulfate 184
barrier method 156
bases 169
  alkalis and 176
  reaction with acids 170, 176
  theories 185–7
basic oxides 35
best-fit line 324, 325
biodegradable polyesters 310
biofuel 288
biopolyesters 310
bitumen 270, 272
blast furnace 161–2
boiling 5
boiling point
  alkali metals 123, 124
  halogens 92–3, 131
  ionic compounds 82
  mixtures 16
bomadier beetle 235
bomb calorimeter 214
bond energies 220–2
bonding
  covalent 85–96, 186
  hydrogen 92
  ionic 75–83
  metallic 98–100
boron 91
branched chains 260, 261
brass 163
bromides, test for 195–6
bromine
  addition to alkenes 284
  boiling point 92
  colour 130
  diffusion 7
  displacement reactions 132–4
  melting point 92
  physical state at room temperature 130
  reaction with ethane 265
  reaction with ethene 265, 284
  reaction with methane 280
  reaction with propane 280
  reaction with propene 284
  reactivity 134
  safety 131
  temperature-dependent state 6
bromomethane 90–1
Brønsted–Lowry theory 186
bronze 163
burettes 171, 322
but 259
but-1-ene 282
butan-1-ol 288
butane 255, 257, 258, 271, 277
butanoic acid 294
butene 264

C

caesium
  physical properties 123–4
  reaction with water 126
  storage and handling 124
calcium
  electronic configuration 33
  flame test 193
  reaction with acids 154
  reaction with cold water 150
calcium carbonate
  heating 54–5, 142
  molar calculation 45
  reaction with ethanoic acid 295
  reaction with hydrochloric acid 228–33
  reaction with sulfuric acid 273
calcium chloride
  formula for 81
  ionic bonding 78
  mole 44
calcium ethanoate 295
calcium hydroxide 43, 150, 176, 207
calcium oxide
  formulae 46
  heating calcium carbonate 54–5, 142
  reaction with water 176, 207
calculations
  equations involving solutions 69
  gas volumes 64
  masses 54
  molar volume 65–7
  moles 45, 53–4
  percentage yields 57–8
  results 326
  solution concentrations 67–9
  substances in excess 58–9
  titrations 70–2
  water of crystallisation 53
calorimetry 211–19
car bodies 164
carbon
  allotropes 93–5
  electrodes 102
  extracting metals 147, 161–2
  isotopes 26
  reaction with copper(II) oxide 146, 147
  soot 271, 279
  steel 164
carbon-12 scale 42
carbon–carbon double bond 259, 263, 284
carbon–carbon single bond 259
carbon dioxide
  in air 137
  double bond 90
  electrical conductivity 102
  global warming 142–3
  making in the lab 142
  solid (dry ice) 6
  test for 191
  thermal decomposition 142
carbon monoxide 271, 279
carbonates
  metal 142, 169–70
  reaction with acids 177, 295
  test for 194–5
carboxylic acids 293–5
carvone 263
catalysts 235–8
  cracking 274–5
  position of equilibrium 245
catalytic converters 232
cathode 102, 105
cations 76, 105
  testing for 193–4
chain length 259
change of state 4–6
chemical equations 38–9
chemical tests 190–6
chiral centre 262
chlorides 174
  test for 195–6
chlorine
  boiling point 92
  colour 130
  covalent bonding 87
  displacement reactions 132–4

- electronic configuration 32
- melting point 92
- physical properties at room temperature 130
- reaction with ethane 280
- reaction with methane 221–2
- reactivity 134
- relative atomic mass 26
- test for 191

chloroethene
- dot-and-cross diagram 91
- polymerisation 305–6

chromatogram 19
cigarette smoke 271
climate change 143
coal 142
cobalt 26
coding organic compounds 259–60
coefficients 39
collision theory 230
combustion
- alkanes 279
- alkenes 283
- elements in oxygen 140–1
- enthalpy change 211–14
- exothermic reaction 208
- formula of metal oxide 48–9
- incomplete 213, 271, 279
- organic compounds 264

command words 321
competition reactions 50, 146
compounds 15–16
concentration
- position of equilibrium 246
- reaction rate 232–3

condensation 5
condensation point 270
condensation polymerisation 308–10
condensation reaction 298
condensed structural formula 257
co-ordinate covalent bond 186
copper
- measuring oxygen in air 138
- reaction with acids 152–4
- reaction with silver nitrate solution 149–50
- relative atomic mass 26
- uses 165

copper oxide
- formula 49–50
- working out empirical formula 47

copper(II) carbonate
- electrolysis 106
- reaction with acids 177
- thermal decomposition 142

copper(II) ions, test for 193
copper(II) oxide
- percentage by mass of copper in 43
- reaction with carbon 146, 147
- reaction with magnesium 146, 147–8
- reaction with sulfuric acid 170, 176
- thermal decomposition 142

copper(II) sulfate
- dehydration of crystals 240
- electrolysis 108
- making crystals 176, 179–80
- percentage yield 58
- reaction with manganese 156
- reaction with zinc 148–9
- relative formula mass 43
- test for water 192

corn 288, 290
covalent bonding 85–96, 186
covalent compounds
- electrical conductivity 93, 102
- water solubility 93

cracking 272, 273–5
crates 305
crude oil 268–75
cryolite 162
crystallisation 17
crystals, ionic 82–3
cupronickel 163
curved graphs 325
cutting tools 164

D

dative covalent bond 186
deforestation 143
delocalised electrons 95, 98
denatured proteins 290
deposition 5
de-sublimation 5
diamond 93–4
diatomic molecules 86
diesel 272
diffusion 6–8
2,2-dimethylpropane 261
dinitrogen tetroxide 245–6
directly proportional 233, 325
discharged ions 104
displacement reactions
- enthalpy changes 215–16
- exothermic reaction 208
- halogens 132–4
- metal oxides 50, 146–7
- reaction of magnesium with acids 174
- solutions of salts 148–9

displayed formula 257
distillation
- fractional 18–19, 270
- simple 18

dot-and-cross diagrams 76, 86
double bonds 89, 90, 222, 259, 263, 284
drug development 263
dry ice 6
ductile 100
dye, paper chromatography 19–21
dynamic equilibrium 242

E

electrical conductivity
- covalent compounds 93, 102
- ionic compounds 83, 102
- metals 35, 99, 101
- non-metals 35

electrical insulation 305
electrodes 102, 108–10
electrolysis 101–11
- aqueous solutions 106–10
- extracting metals from ore 162
- molten compounds 103–4, 105–6
- quantitative 110–11
- redox and 104–6

electrolyte 102
electrolytic cell 106
electronegativity 143
electronic configuration 32–3, 77
electrons 25, 104
- arrangement in an atom 31–3
- delocalised 95, 98
- lone pairs 89
- number in an atom 27

- oxidation and reduction 104, 133, 147–8, 161
- electrostatic attraction 76
- elements 2, 14–15
- empirical formulae 46, 47, 256
  - converting to molecular 52
- endothermic reactions 209–10, 244
- ‘ene’ ending 259
- energetics 207–23
- energy level 31, 32
- energy level diagrams
  - endothermic change 210
  - exothermic change 209
- enthalpy change 209, 210–22
- entropy 223
- enzymes 235
- equations
  - balancing 39–41
  - writing 38–9
- equilibrium, position of 242–6
- esterification 298
- esters 297–300
- eth 259
- ethane
  - covalent bonding 89
  - formulae 277
  - reaction with bromine gas 265
  - reaction with chlorine 280
  - refinery gases 271
- ethanoate ion 295
- ethanoates 174
- ethanoic acid
  - formula 169, 255, 294
  - glacial 298
  - oxidation of ethanol 289–90
  - reaction with carbonates 295
  - reaction with metals 294–5
  - vinegar 293
- ethanol
  - combustion 264
  - enthalpy change of combustion 211–13
  - esters 298, 299
  - formulae 255, 264, 287, 288
  - oxidation 288–90
  - production 285, 290–1
  - separating from water 18–19
- ethene
  - cracking 274
  - double bond 90
  - formulae 256, 282
  - hydration to produce ethanol 291
  - polymerisation 302–3
  - reaction with bromine 265, 284
  - structural isomerism 263
- ethers 264
- ethyl 260
- ethyl ethanoate 298
- evaporation 5
- excess 58–9
- exothermic reactions 152, 207–9, 244
- experimental skills ix
- exponential relationship 326

F

- fermentation 290–1
- filtrate 17
- filtration 17
- flame tests 192–3
- flavourings 299
- fluorine
  - boiling point 92
  - colour 130
  - melting point 92
  - physical properties at room temperature 130
  - reactivity 134
  - safety 131
- food flavourings 299
- formulae
  - by combustion 48–9
  - converting empirical into molecular 52
  - displayed 257
  - empirical 46, 47, 256
  - general 257
  - ionic compounds 78–81
  - metal oxides 48–50
  - molecular 46, 256
  - organic molecules 256–8
  - percentage composition 51–2
  - by reduction 49–50
  - structural 257–8
  - of water 51
- forward reaction 242
- fossil fuels 142, 143, 272–3
- fractional distillation 18–19, 270
- fractionating column 270
- francium 123, 128
- free radicals 280
- freezing point 4
- fuel oil 272
- fuels
  - biofuel 288
  - crude oil 270–3
  - fossil 142, 143, 272–3
- full-range universal indicator 168
- full structural formula 257
- fullerene 95–6
- functional group 257

G

- galvanised iron 156–7
- gases
  - arrangement of particles 4
  - atmospheric 137–43
  - change of state 5–6
  - diffusion in 6–7
  - entropy 223
  - greenhouse 143, 272
  - molar volume 65–7
  - noble *see* noble gases
  - refinery 271
  - state symbol 41
  - testing for 191–2
  - volume calculations 64
  - volume measurement 322
- gasoline 271
- general formula 257
- giant covalent structures 93–6
- giant ionic lattice 82
- glacial ethanoic acid 298
- global warming 142–3
- gold 154
- graphite 94–5
- graphs 324–6
- greenhouse effect 142–3
- greenhouse gases 143, 272
- groups 31, 34

H

- half-equations 103, 104
- halide ions 196
- halogenoalkanes 280
- halogens 130–5
  - boiling point 92–3, 131
  - colours 130

  displacement reactions 132–4
  melting point 92–3, 131
  organic molecules containing 90–1
  Periodic Table 31
  physical state at room temperature 130
  reactions 131
  reactivity 134
  safety 131
hard water 69
heating to constant mass 9
heating under reflux 290
helium 25, 32, 34
Hess's law 221
hex 259
hexane 83, 102, 256
high-carbon steel 164, 165
high-density poly(ethene) 303, 304
homologous series 257, 278–9
hydrated salts 43, 53
hydration
  alkenes 285
  ethene 291
hydrocarbons 142, 256, 269
  saturated 256, 277
  unsaturated 256, 283–4
hydrochloric acid
  formula 169
  from hydrogen chloride and water 102, 131
  reaction with ammonia 186
  reaction with calcium carbonate 228–33
  reaction with magnesium 175
  reaction with metals 152–5
  reaction with sodium hydroxide 170, 177
hydrogen
  calculation involving 67
  covalent bonding 86
  electronic configuration 32
  molecules 87
  Periodic Table 35
  reaction with halogens 131
  test for 141, 191
hydrogen bonds 92
hydrogen chloride
  covalent bonding 87
  reaction with ammonia 7
  reaction with water 102, 131
hydrogen halides 131
hydrogen peroxide
  catalytic decomposition 235–6
  formulae 46
hydrogenation 285
hydroxonium ion 186

I

'ide' endings 80
impurities 16
incineration of plastics 307–8
incomplete combustion 213, 271, 279
indicators 168
industry
  catalyst use 238
  catalytic cracking 275
  ethanol production 290–1
inert electrodes 102, 108–10
infrared radiation 143
initiator 303
insoluble salts 183–4
intermolecular forces 92
iodides, test for 195–6
iodine
  boiling point 92
  colour 130
  displacement reactions 132–4
  ionic bonding 77
  melting point 92
  physical state at room temperature 130
ionic bonding 75–83
ionic compounds
  boiling point 82
  crystals 82–3
  electrical conductivity 83, 102
  formulae 78–81
  giant structures 81–2
  melting point 82
  solubility in water 83, 178
ionic equation 133, 148, 170, 183
ionic half-equations 104, 149
ions 76, 104
  discharged 104
  spectator 133, 148
  testing for 192–6
iron
  extraction 55, 161–2
  galvanised 156–7
  reaction with acids 152–4, 155
  reaction with steam 151
  rusting 139, 156–7
  uses 164–5
iron(II) ions 194
iron(II) sulfate 44
iron(III) ions 193
iron(III) sulfate 81
isoelectronic 77
isomers 261–3, 275, 278, 283
isotopes 14, 26, 42

K

kerosene 271
krypton 34

L

lactic acid 310
landfill 307, 308
lanthanoids 31
lattice 81, 82
layer structure 94
lead extraction 56–7
lead(II) bromide 103–4
lead(II) sulfate 184–5
limescale 69
limestone *see* calcium carbonate
limewater 191
limiting reagent (reactant) 59
linear relationship 325
liquefied petroleum gas (LPG) 271
liquids
  arrangement of particles 4
  change of state 4, 5
  diffusion in 8
  entropy 223
  state symbol 41
  volume measurement 322
lithium
  electrons 126
  flame test 193
  heating 127
  physical properties 6, 123–4
  reaction with acids 154
  reaction with air 127
  reaction with water 126, 150
  storage and handling 124
lithium fluoride 78
litmus 168

- lone pairs 89
- low-density poly(ethene) 303
- LPG 271

M

- magnesium
  - burning in oxygen 141
  - metallic bonding 99
  - reaction with acids 152–4, 174–5
  - reaction with cold water 151
  - reaction with copper(II) oxide 146, 147–8
  - reaction with ethanoic acid 294
  - reaction with steam 151
  - reaction with zinc oxide 146, 147
- magnesium carbonate 43
- magnesium chloride 175
- magnesium ethanoate 294–5
- magnesium oxide
  - burning magnesium 141, 151
  - formula 48–9
  - ionic bonding 76
  - structure 82
  - water solubility 83
- magnesium sulfate 174, 180
- malleable 99–100
- manganese 155–6
- manganese dioxide 235
- manganese(IV) oxide 235
- marble chips *see* calcium carbonate
- mass number 25–6
- measuring cylinders 322
- measuring equipment 322–3
- melting point 4
  - alkali metals 123, 124
  - halogens 92–3, 131
  - ionic compounds 82
  - metals 99
  - mixtures 16
- Mendeleev, Dmitri 30
- metal carbonates 142, 169–70
- metal hydroxides 176
- metal oxides
  - basic oxides 35
  - displacement reactions 50, 46–7
  - formula 48–50
  - properties 141
  - reaction with water 176
- metallic bonding 98–100
- metals
  - alkali *see* alkali metals
  - alloys 163
  - basic oxides 35
  - compared to non-metals 35–6
  - ductile 100
  - electrical conductivity 35, 99, 101
  - extraction 147, 160–2
  - finding position in reactivity series 155
  - malleable 99–100
  - melting point 99
  - native 160
  - Periodic Table 34–5
  - reaction with acids 152–5, 174, 208
  - reaction with carboxylic acids 294–5
  - reaction with water 150–1
- meth 259
- methane
  - covalent bonding 88
  - electrical conductivity 102
  - formulae 277
  - fuel 271
  - incomplete combustion 271
  - reaction with bromine 280
  - reaction with chlorine 221–2
  - reaction with oxygen 64
  - refinery gases 271
- methanoic acid 294
- methanol
  - esters 299
  - formulae 264, 288
- methoxyethane 264
- methyl 260
- methyl orange 168, 181, 182
- 2-methylbutane 255 261
- microbial oxidation 289
- mild steel 164, 165
- minerals 160
- mixtures 15–16
  - melting point and boiling point 16
  - separation 16–20
- molar enthalpy change 211
- molar mass 45
- molar volume 65–7
- molarity 67
- mole (mol) 44–6
  - calculations using 45, 53–4
- molecular formula 46, 256
  - converting from empirical 52
- molecules
  - atoms in 24
  - shape of 88–9
- molten 83
- molten compounds, electrolysis 103–4, 105–6
- mono-substitution 280
- multiple covalent bonding 89–90

N

- native metals 160
- neon 34
- neutralisation reaction 170, 176, 208, 217–19
- neutrons 25
- nitrates 174
- nitric acid 169, 273
- nitrogen
  - in air 137
  - polarity 143
  - triple bond 90
- nitrogen dioxide 245–6
- nitrogen oxides 273
- noble gases
  - covalent bonding 86
  - ionic bonding 77
  - Periodic Table 31, 34
- non-biodegradable 307
- non-linear relationship 326
- non-metal oxides 35, 142
- non-metals
  - compared to metals 35–6
  - Periodic Table 34–5
- non-stick coatings 306
- nucleon number 25–6
- nucleus 25

O

- octane 271, 274
- octane number 275
- octet rule 86
- optical isomers 262–3
- ores 160
- organic compounds 89, 254, 255–6
  - chemical reactions 264–5
  - formula 256–8
  - naming 258–60

organic solvents 83
oxidation 104, 105, 133, 147–8
  ethanol 288–90
  microbial 289
oxides 35, 141–2
oxidising agent 133, 147, 149
oxygen
  in air 137–40
  combustion reactions 140–1
  double bond 89
  mole 44
  polarity 143
  reaction with methane 64
  temperature-dependent state 6
  test for 191

P

paper chromatography 19–21
paraffin 271
parent acid 174
particles 3–4
pencils 95
pent 259
pentane 261, 277
percentage composition 43–4, 51–2
percentage yields 57–8
perfumes 299
Periodic Table 28, 30–6, 320
  electronic configuration 33
  groups 31, 34
  halogens 31
  metals 34–5
  noble gases 31, 34
  non-metals 34–5
  periods 31
  transition metals 31
periods 31
peroxides 127
petrol 142, 271
pH scale 167–8, 169
phenolphthalein 168
phosphates 174
phosphoric acid 169
phosphorus 140
pipettes 322
plastic bottles 304
plasticisers 305
plastics recycling 304, 305, 307–8
platinum electrodes 102
polar molecules 83, 143
poly(chloroethene) 305–6
polyester 308–10
poly(ethene) 303–4
polylactic acid 310
polymerisation
  addition 302–8
  condensation 308–10
  working out the monomer 307
  working out the reaction 304
poly(propene) 304–5
polypropylene 304
poly(styrene) 307
poly(tetrafluoroethene) 306
polythene 303–4
polyvinylchloride 305–6
position of equilibrium 242–6
potassium
  electronic configuration 33
  flame test 193
  heating 127
  physical properties 123–4
  reaction with acids 154
  reaction with air 127
  reaction with water 126, 150
  storage and handling 124
potassium carbonate 170
potassium chloride 11–12
potassium dichromate (VI) 127, 289
potassium hydroxide 169
potassium iodide 101, 102
potassium manganate (VII) 8, 127
potassium nitrate 9–10
potassium oxide 176
potassium salts 181
practical work 322–7
precipitate 183
precipitation reaction 183
pressure
  position of equilibrium 243–4, 245
  rate of reaction 234–5
prop 259
propan-1-ol 288, 299
propane
  combustion 264
  formulae 255, 277
  reaction with bromine 280
  refinery gases 271
propanoic acid 294
propanol 264
propene
  addition reaction with bromine 284
  cracking 274
  formulae 258, 282
  polymerisation 304–5
  structural isomerism 263
proportional 233, 325
proteins
  amino acids 310
  denatured 290
proton number 25–6
protons 25
PTFE 306
PVC 305–6

Q

quantitative electrolysis 110–11
quicklime 142, 207

R

radon 34
rain 273
rare earth metals 31
rates of reaction 227–38
reaction profile diagram 237–8
reactions
  addition 265, 283–5, 291
  combustion *see* combustion
  competition 50, 146
  condensation 298
  displacement *see* displacement reactions
  endothermic 209–10, 244
  enthalpy change 209, 210–22
  exothermic 152, 207–9, 244
  forward 242
  neutralisation 170, 176, 208, 217–19
  precipitation 183
  proportions of substances 41
  rates of 227–38
  redox 50, 104–6, 133, 147, 148, 149, 156, 161
  reverse 242
  reversible 240–2, 245–6
  substitution 265, 280
reactivity series 145–57
recycling plastics 304, 305, 307–8

redox reaction 50, 104–6, 133, 147, 148, 149, 156, 161
reducing agent 133, 147, 149
reduction 104, 105, 133, 147–8, 161
refinery gases 271
relative atomic mass 26–7, 41–2
relative formula mass 42–4
relative molecular mass 42
reliability 323–4
repeat unit 303
replacement windows 305
residue 17
results
  calculations 326
  processing 324–6
  reliability 323–4
  tables 323
retardation factor 21
reverse reaction 242
reversible reactions 240–2, 245–6
roasting 160
rock salt 17
room temperature 6
ropes 305
rtp 65
rubidium
  ionic bonding 77
  physical properties 123–4
  reaction with water 126
  storage and handling 124
rusting iron 139, 156–7

S

sacrificial protection 157
safety 131, 322
salt *see* sodium chloride
salts 173–4
  displacement reactions 148–9
  enthalpy change when dissolved in water 216–17
  from halogens 130, 131
  hydrated 43, 53
  preparation 178–85
saturated hydrocarbons 256, 277
saturated solution 9
scrubbing 273
sealed container, reversible reactions 241–2
self-polymerise 310
separating mixtures 16–20
shells 31, 32
side chains 260
significant figures 326
silver 154
silver chloride 183
silver nitrate solution 149–50
simple distillation 18
simple molecular structures 92
slaked lime 207
sodium
  electrons 126
  flame test 193
  heating 127
  metallic bonding 98, 99
  physical properties 123–4
  reaction with acids 154
  reaction with air 127
  reaction with water 125, 150
  storage and handling 75, 124
sodium carbonate
  percentage by mass of oxygen in 43–4
  reaction with acids 177
  reaction with ethanoic acid 295
  solution 170
sodium chloride
  distilling pure water from a solution 18
  electrical conductivity 102
  electrolysis 105, 106, 107–8
  formula 81
  ionic bonding 75, 76, 131
  making crystals 182
  making from rock salt 17
  separating from a solution 17
  structure 82
sodium ethanoate 295
sodium hydroxide
  reaction with hydrochloric acid 170, 177
  reaction with water 169
  test for cations 193–4
sodium oxide 80
sodium salts 181
sodium sulfate crystals 181
solids
  arrangement of particles 4
  change of state 4, 5–6
  entropy 223
  solubility 8–10
  state symbol 41
solubility
  covalent compounds 93
  curves 10–12
  ionic compounds 178
  solids 8–10
solute 8
solution 8
  concentrations 67–9
  dilution of coloured solutions 8
  electrolysis 106–10
  enthalpy change of reactions 214–19
  equations involving 69
  saturated 9
  supersaturated 9
solvent front 19
solvents 8, 83, 299
soot 271, 279
specific heat capacity 211
spectator ions 133, 148
sphalerite 160
squeaky pop test 141, 191
stability 87, 209
stainless steel 163, 165
state symbols 41
states of matter 3–6
steam, reaction with metals 151, 156
steel 163, 164, 165
straight chain isomer 261
straight-line graphs 324
structural formula 257–8
structural isomers 261–3, 275, 278, 283
sub-atomic particles 25
sublimation 5–6
substitution reactions 265, 280
successful collisions 230
suck-back 151
sugar cane 288, 290
sulfates 174
  test for 195
sulfur, burning in oxygen 141
sulfur dioxide (sulfur(IV) oxide)
  burning sulfur in oxygen 141
  covalent bonding 91
  formula 46
  fossil fuels 273

sulfuric acid
  acid rain 273
  electrolysis 109
  formula 169
  making esters 298
  oxidation of ethanol 289
  parent acid 174
  reaction with copper(II) oxide 170, 176
  reaction with magnesium 174–5
sulfurous acid 141, 273
superoxides 127
supersaturated solution 9
surface area, reaction rate 231–2
symbol equations 38–9
synthetic polymers 302–10

T

tables of results 323
Teflon® 306
temperature
  physical state of substances 6
  position of equilibrium 244–6
  rate of reaction 234
  room 6
  solubility 10–12
tetrafluoroethene 306
tetrahedron 93
thalidomide 263
theoretical yield 58
thermal cracking 274
thermal decomposition 142, 210, 241, 274
titanium 162
titration 170–2, 181
  calculations from 70–2
transition metals (elements) 31
triangle method 45, 65, 68
tri-iron tetroxide 151
triple bond 90

U

ultraviolet radiation 280
universal indicator 168
unsaturated hydrocarbons 256, 283–4

V

vinegar 289, 293
  reaction with baking soda 223
volatility 269
volume
  calculations involving gases 64
  measurement 322
  molar 65–7
  units 65

W

water
  acids in 169
  alkalis in 169
  covalent bonding 88
  enthalpy change with dissolved salts 216–17
  finding position of metals in reactivity series 155
  formula of 51
  hard 69
  molar calculation 45
  polarity 143
  purity testing 192
  reaction with alkali metals 125–6, 150
  reaction with ammonia 169, 176
  reaction with calcium oxide 176, 207
  reaction with hydrogen chloride 102, 131
  reaction with metal oxides 176
  reaction with metals 150–1
  separating from ethanol 18–19
  shape of molecules 89
  solubility of covalent compounds 93
  solubility of ionic compounds 83, 178
  solubility of solids 9–10
  testing for 192
  weak electrolyte 107
water of crystallisation 43, 53, 180
water pipes 305
weighted average 27

X

xenon 34

Y

yeast 290
yield 57–8

Z

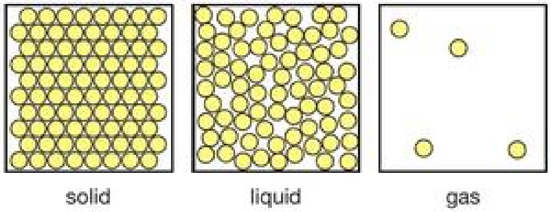
zinc
  galvanised iron 156–7
  reaction with acids 152–4, 155, 175
  reaction with copper(II) sulfate solution 148–9
  reaction with steam 151
zinc blende 160
zinc ethanoate 295
zinc oxide 151
  reaction with magnesium 146, 147
zinc(II) chloride 105

UNIT 1 ANSWERS

CHAPTER 1

1 ▶ a melting **b** freezing
c subliming/sublimation **d** subliming/sublimation

2 ▶ a



Note: Solids should have regularly packed particles touching. Liquids should have most of the particles touching at least some of their neighbours, but with gaps here and there, and no regularity. Gases should have the particles well spaced.

b Solids: vibration around a fixed point. Liquids: particles can move around into vacant spaces, but with some difficulty because of the relatively close packing.

c Evaporation: Some faster moving particles break away from the surface of the liquid. Boiling: Attractive forces are broken throughout the liquid to produce bubbles of vapour.

3 ▶ a i A – gas; B – liquid; C – solid; D – liquid; E – solid
ii A – gas; B – solid; C – solid; D – liquid; E – solid
iii A – gas; B – liquid; C – solid; D – gas; E – solid

b A, because it is a gas.

c It sublimes and therefore is converted directly from a solid to a gas without going through the liquid stage.

d D – because it has a lower boiling point the forces of attraction between particles will be weaker therefore it will also evaporate more easily than substance B (the only other substance that is a liquid at 25 °C).

4 ▶ a The ammonia and hydrogen chloride particles have to diffuse through the air in the tube, colliding with air particles all the way.

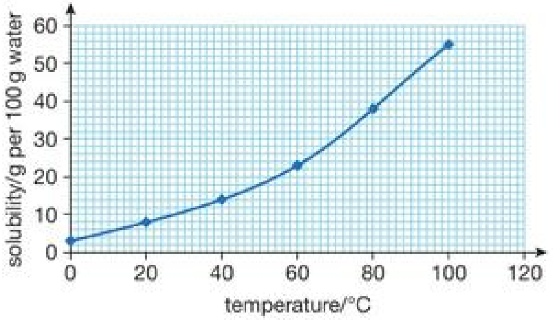
b i Its particles will move faster.
ii It would take slightly longer for the white ring to form, because the gas particles would be moving more slowly at the lower temperature.

c Ammonia particles are lighter than hydrogen chloride particles and so move faster. The ammonia covers more distance than the hydrogen chloride in the same time.

d i Ammonium bromide.
ii The heavier hydrogen bromide particles would move more slowly than the hydrogen chloride particles, and so the ring would form even closer to the hydrobromic acid end than it was to the hydrochloric acid end. The ring will also take slightly longer to form because of the slower moving particles.

5 ▶ Sodium chloride dissolves in water to form a ***solution***. The water is called the ***solvent*** and the sodium chloride is the ***solute***. If the solution is heated to 50 °C some of the water ***evaporates*** until the solution becomes ***saturated*** and sodium chloride crystals start to form.

6 ▶ a



b 94 +/–1 g per 100 g
The values obtained in this question and in c depend on the line of best fit. In the exam there will always be some tolerance – a range of values will be accepted.

c From the graph, the solubility at 30 °C is 10 g per 100 g of water.

$$\frac{40}{100} \times 10 = 4\,\text{g}$$

Therefore 4 g of sodium chlorate will dissolve.

d i 53 +/–1 °C
ii The solubility at 17 °C is 7 ±1 g per 100 g, therefore 20 – 7 = 13 g must precipitate out of the solution. Answers of 13 ±1 g are acceptable.

CHAPTER 2

1 ▶

Element	Compound	Mixture
hydrogen	magnesium oxide	sea water
calcium	copper(II) sulfate	honey
		blood
		mud
		potassium iodide solution

2 ▶ a mixture **b** mixture **c** element
d element **e** compound **f** compound

3 ▶ Substance X is the pure substance – it melts at a fixed temperature. Substance Y is impure – it melts over a range of temperatures.

4 ▶ a crystallisation **b** (simple) distillation
c fractional distillation **d** chromatography
e filtration

5 ▶ For example: Stir with a large enough volume of cold water to dissolve all the sugar. Filter to leave the diamonds on the filter paper. Wash on the filter paper with more water to remove any last traces of sugar solution. Allow to dry.

6 ▶ a M **b** R
c 0.45 ±0.01 (measure to the centre of the spot and remember to measure from the base line and not from the bottom of the paper)
d G and T **e** P

CHAPTER 3

1 ▶ a the nucleus **b** electrons
c proton **d** proton and neutron

2 ▶ a 9
b sum of protons + neutrons in the nucleus
c 9p, 10n, 9e
d The protons and electrons have equal but opposite charges. The atom has no overall charge, therefore there must be equal numbers of protons and electrons.

3 ▶ a 26p, 30n, 26e
b 41p, 52n, 41e
c 92p, 143n, 92e

4 ▶ a Atoms with the same atomic number but different mass numbers. They have the same number of protons, but different numbers of neutrons.
b 35Cl: 17p, 18n, 17e; 37Cl: 17p, 20n, 17e

5 ▶ $\frac{6 \times 7 + 93 \times 7}{100} = 6.93$

6 ▶ $\frac{24 \times 78.99 + 25 \times 10.00 + 26 \times 11.01}{100} = 24.32$

7 ▶ $\frac{204 \times 1.4 + 206 \times 24.1 + 207 \times 22.1 + 208 \times 52.4}{100} = 207.241$

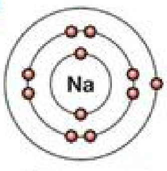
8 ▶ a 77 protons, 114 neutrons, 77 electrons
b Iridium-193 has 2 more neutrons in the nucleus.
c More iridium-193 because the relative atomic mass is closer to 193 than 191.

9 ▶ This statement is true – it only applies to 1 element, hydrogen (^{1}H).

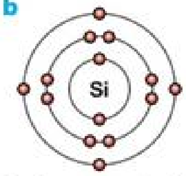
CHAPTER 4

1 ▶ a i strontium **ii** chlorine **iii** nitrogen
iv caesium **v** neon
b metals: caesium, molybdenum, nickel, strontium, tin
non-metals: chlorine, neon, nitrogen

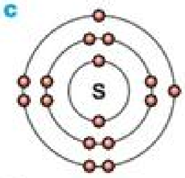
2 ▶ a



b



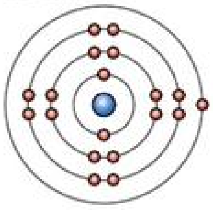
c



3 ▶ a 2, 7 **b** 2, 8, 3 **c** 2, 8, 8, 2

4 ▶ a 5 **b** 7 **c** 4 **d** 8

5 ▶ a A, F **b** A
c C and D because 5 shells are occupied
d C because there are 7 electrons in the outer shell (energy level)
e B, D
f Calcium – it has 20 electrons and therefore must have 20 protons in the nucleus. The atomic number is therefore 20. Calcium is the element with atomic number 20.
g 82, lead
h



6 ▶ Palladium is a metal and so is likely to have any of the following properties:

- good conductor of electricity
- forms a basic oxide
- is shiny when polished or freshly cut
- is malleable
- is ductile
- is a good conductor of heat

The first two are mentioned specifically on the syllabus.

7 ▶ They have a full outer shell (energy level) and so they have no tendency to form compounds by losing/gaining electrons or sharing electrons.

8 ▶ Argon and potassium OR iodine and tellurium.

The elements would then be in a different group in the Periodic Table. They would not have the same number of electrons in the outer shell as other members of the group and would react in a completely different way. For example, potassium would be in Group 0 with the noble gases, and argon, which is very unreactive, would be in Group 1, with the highly reactive alkali metals.

CHAPTER 5

1 ▶ a $Fe + 2HCl \rightarrow FeCl_2 + H_2$
b $Zn + H_2SO_4 \rightarrow ZnSO_4 + H_2$
c $Ca + 2H_2O \rightarrow Ca(OH)_2 + H_2$
d $2Al + Cr_2O_3 \rightarrow Al_2O_3 + 2Cr$
e $Fe_2O_3 + 3CO \rightarrow 2Fe + 3CO_2$
f $2NaHCO_3 + H_2SO_4 \rightarrow Na_2SO_4 + 2CO_2 + 2H_2O$
g $2C_8H_{18} + 25O_2 \rightarrow 16CO_2 + 18\ H_2O$
h $Fe_3O_4 + 4H_2 \rightarrow 3Fe + 4H_2O$
i $Pb + 2AgNO_3 \rightarrow Pb(NO_3)_2 + 2Ag$
j $2AgNO_3 + MgCl_2 \rightarrow Mg(NO_3)_2 + 2AgCl$
k $C_3H_8 + 5O_2 \rightarrow 3CO_2 + 4H_2O$

2 ▶ a 44 **b** 60 **c** 142 **d** 132
e 286; (The common mistake would be not to multiply the whole water molecule by 10. So the mass of the $10H_2O$ is 180. Students will commonly and wrongly come up with 36 for this by multiplying the H_2 by 10 but not the O as well. Work out the mass of the whole H_2O first and then multiply it by the number in front. That way you won't make this mistake.)
f 392

3 ▶ a 13.9% **b** 35%
c 21.2%; (Be careful of the cases where there are two nitrogen atoms in the fertiliser (all except KNO_3). The masses of the nitrogen in those cases will be 28 and not 14.)

4 ▶ In each case, work out the M_r by adding up the relative atomic masses (A_r values), and then attach the unit "g" to give the mass of 1 mole.

a 27 g

b 331 g

c 4.30 × 16 = 68.8 g

d 0.70 × 62 = 43.4 g

e 0.015 × 85 = 1.275 g

f 0.24 × 286 = 68.64 g *Don't forget the water of crystallisation*

Strictly speaking the answers to *d), e)* and *f)* shouldn't be quoted to more than 2 significant figures, because the number of moles is only quoted to that precision.)

5 ▶ In each case, work out the mass of 1 mole as above, and then work out how many moles you've got in the stated mass. You can use the equation:

$$\text{number of moles} = \frac{\text{mass}}{\text{mass of 1 mole}}$$

a $\frac{20}{40} = 0.5\,\text{mol}$

b $\frac{3.20}{160} = 0.0200\,\text{mol}$

c $\frac{2000}{79.5} = 25.2\,\text{mol}$; *Don't forget to convert kg to g!*

d $\frac{50}{249.5} = 0.2\,\text{mol}$

e $\frac{1\,000\,000}{56} = 17\,900\,\text{mol}$ (or 17 857, although this is precise to more significant figures than the A_r).

f $\frac{0.032}{64} = 5.0 \times 10{-}4\,\text{mol}$ (0.0005 mol)

6 ▶ **a** 4 × 58.5 = 234 g

b $\frac{37}{74} = 0.5\,\text{mol}$

c $\frac{1000}{40} = 25\,\text{mol}$

d 0.125 × 79.5 = 9.94 g (9.9375 g)

e $\frac{4}{0.1} = 40\,\text{g}$

f $\frac{1}{0.004\,\text{g}} = 250\,\text{g}$

7 ▶ **a**

	P	H
Combining mass	9.39 g	0.61 g
No. of moles of atoms	$\frac{9.39}{31} = 0.30$	$\frac{0.61}{1} = 0.61$
Ratio of moles	1	2

Empirical formula is PH_2

b

	K	N	O
Combining mass	5.85 g	2.10 g	4.80 g
No. of moles of atoms	$\frac{5.85}{39} = 0.15$	$\frac{2.10}{14} = 0.15$	$\frac{4.80}{16} = 0.3$
Ratio of moles	1	1	2

Empirical formula is KNO_2

c

	Na	S	O
Combining mass	3.22 g	4.48 g	3.36 g
No. of moles of atoms	$\frac{3.22}{23} = 0.14$	$\frac{4.48}{32} = 0.14$	$\frac{3.36}{16} = 0.21$
Ratio of moles (divide by smallest number)	1 simplifies to 2	1 2	1.5 3

Empirical formula is $Na_2S_2O_3$

d

	Carbon	Hydrogen	Bromine
Given %	22.0	4.6	73.4
No. of moles of atoms	$\frac{22.0}{12} = 1.833$	$\frac{4.6}{1} = 4.6$	$\frac{73.4}{80} = 0.9175$
Ratio of moles (divide by smallest number)	2	5	1

Empirical formula is C_2H_5Br

8 ▶ **a** The mass of oxygen is 2.84–1.24 = 1.60 g

	P	O
Combining mass	1.24 g	1.60 g
No. of moles of atoms	$\frac{1.24}{31} = 0.04$	$\frac{1.60}{16} = 0.10$
Ratio of moles	1	2.5

Whole numbers must be used, therefore multiply by 2 to get the empirical formula P_2O_5.

b P_2O_5 has an M_r of 142

$$\frac{284}{142} = 2$$

Therefore there must be two lots of the empirical formula in a molecule.

Molecular formula is P_4O_{10}

9 ▶ **a**

	Carbon	Hydrogen	Oxygen
Given %	66.7	11.1	22.2
Combining mass in 100 g	66.7 g	11.1 g	22.2 g
No. of moles of atoms	$\frac{66.7}{12} = 5.558$	$\frac{11.1}{1} = 11.1$	$\frac{22.2}{16} = 1.3875$
Ratio of moles (divide by smallest number)	4	8	1

Empirical formula is C_4H_8O

b The mass of the empirical formula is 4 × 12 + 8 × 1 + 16 = 72. Since this is equal to the relative formula mass, the molecular formula is the same as the empirical formula, that is C_4H_8O.

10 ▶ You know the mass of anhydrous sodium sulfate (1.42 g).
You can work out the mass of water of crystallisation (3.22 − 1.42 g = 1.8 g).
You can work out the mass of 1 mole of sodium sulfate, Na_2SO_4 = 142 g;
and the mass of 1 mole of water = 18 g.

Number of moles of sodium sulfate = $\frac{1.42}{142}$ = 0.01 mol.
Number of moles of water = $\frac{1.8}{18}$ = 0.1 mol.

So for every 1 mole of sodium sulfate, there are 10 moles of water.
The value of *n* is 10.

11 ▶ mass of anhydrous calcium sulfate = 44.14 − 37.34 = 6.80 g
mass of water of crystallisation = 45.94 − 44.14 = 1.80 g
mass of 1 mole of calcium sulfate, CaSO4 = 136 g

number of moles of sodium sulfate = $\frac{6.80}{136}$ = 0.05 mol
mass of 1 mole of water = 18 g

number of moles of water = $\frac{1.8}{18}$ = 0.1 mol

number of moles of water = 0.1 = 2
number of moles of calcium sulfate 0.05
the value of *n* = 2

12 ▶ a 0.36 mol

b From the chemical equation, the number 2 in front of the HCl indicates that 2 mol HCl react with 1 mol $CaCO_3$, therefore 0.4 mol $CaCO_3$ react with 2 × 0.4 = 0.8 mol HCl.

c 6 mol HCl react to form 3 mol H_2S

Therefore the number of moles of H_2S is half the number of moles of HCl.

0.4 mol HCl form 0.2 mol H_2S

d 3 mol CO form 2 mol Fe

The number of moles of Fe is $\frac{2}{3}$ the number of moles of CO.

$0.9 \times \frac{2}{3}$ = 0.6 mol iron

e $0.8 \times \frac{3}{2}$ = 1.2 mol hydrogen

13 ▶ a number of moles of iron = $\frac{10}{56}$ = 0.179 mol

b From the chemical equation, the number of moles of bromine that reacted with this number of moles of iron is $\frac{3}{2} \times 0.179$ = 0.277 mol.

c From the chemical equation, the number of moles of $FeBr_3$ will be the same as the number of moles of iron = 0.179 mol.

d mass of 1 mol $FeBr_3$ = 56 + 3 × 80 = 296
mass of $FeBr_3$ = 0.179 × 296 = 53 g

(A common mistake here is to multiply the number of moles of $FeBr_3$ by the mass of $2FeBr_3$. The 2 has already been used when you worked out that 2 mol Fe formed 2 mol $FeBr_3$ – do not use it again. The equation for working out the mass is
*mass = number of moles × mass of **1** mole).*

14 ▶ a $\frac{1.0}{190}$ = 0.0053 mol

b 0.0053 mol

c 0.0053 × 48 = 0.25 g

d number of moles of NaCl = 0.0053 × 4 = 0.0212 mol
mass of NaCl = 0.0212 × 58.5 = 1.2 g

e You can carry out a moles calculation as above:
1 tonne = 1 000 000 g

moles of $TiCl_4$ = $\frac{1\,000\,000}{190}$ = 5300 mol

moles of Ti = 5300 mol
mass of Ti = 5300 × 48 = 254 400 g
Alternatively, you can reason that, if 1 g $TiCl_4$ forms 0.25 g Ti, 1 tonne $TiCl_4$ will form 0.25 tonne Ti.

15 ▶ mass of 1 mole of $AlCl_3$ = 27 + 3 × 35.5 = 133.5 g

moles of Aluminum chloride = $\frac{2.67}{133.5}$ = 0.0200 mol

moles of AgCl = 3 × 0.0200 = 0.0600 mol
mass of 1 mole of AgCl = 108 + 35.5 = 143.5 g
mass of AgCl = 0.0600 × 143.5 = 8.61 g

16 ▶ a mass of 1 mol Cr_2O_3 = 2 × 52 + 3 × 16 = 152 g

number of moles of Cr_2O_3 = $\frac{50}{152}$ = 0.33 mol

number of moles of Al = 2 × 0.33 = 0.66 mol
mass of Al = 0.66 × 27 = 17.8 g

b number of moles of Cr = 2 × 0.33 = 0.66 mol
mass of Cr = 0.66 × 52 = 34.3 g

c 5 kg is 5000 g
number of moles of Cr_2O_3 = $\frac{5000}{152}$ = 33 mol

number of moles of Cr = 2 × 33 = 66 mol
mass of Cr = 66 × 52 = 3430 g or 3.43 kg
Alternatively, we can reason that 5 kg is 100 times as much as 50 g. If we start with 100 times as much Cr_2O_3, we will make 100 times as much Cr.

d 5 tonnes is 5 000 000 g
number of moles of Cr_2O_3 = $\frac{5\,000\,000}{152}$ = 33 000 mol

number of moles of Cr = 2 × 33 000 = 66 000 mol
mass of Cr = 66 000 × 52 = 3 430 000 g or 3.43 tonnes
Alternatively, we can reason that, if 5 kg of Cr_2O_3 produces 3.43 kg Cr, then 5 tonnes of Cr_2O_3 will produce 3.43 tonnes of Cr.

17 ▶ a mass of 1 mol CuO = 63.5 + 16 = 79.5 g

number of moles of CuO = $\frac{4.00}{79.5}$ = 0.0503 mol

number of moles of $CuSO_4$ = 0.0503 mol
number of moles of $CuSO_4.5H_2O$ = 0.0503 mol
mass of 1 mol $CuSO_4.5H_2O$ = 63.5 + 32 + 4 × 16 + 5 × (16 + 2) = 249.5 g
mass of $CuSO_4.5H_2O$ = 0.0503 × 249.5 = 12.55 g

b the theoretical yield is 12.55 g
the actual yield is 11.25 g
$\frac{11.25}{12.55} \times 100 = 89.64\%$

18 ▶ a mass of 1 mol ethanol = 2 × 12 + 6 × 1 + 16 = 46 g
number of moles of ethanol = $\frac{20.0}{46} = 0.435$ mol
number of moles of ethyl ethanoate = 0.435 mol
mass of 1 mol ethyl ethanoate = 4 × 12 + 2 × 16 + 8 × 1 = 88 g
mass of ethyl ethanoate = 0.435 × 88 = 38.3 g

b theoretical yield = 38.3 g
actual yield = 30.0 g
percentage yield = $\frac{30.0}{38.3} \times 100 = 78.3\%$

19 ▶ a 0.5 mol HCl would react with 0.25 mol Na_2CO_3.
There is more than 0.25 mol Na_2CO_3, therefore Na_2CO_3 is in excess.

b 0.02 mol O_2 would react with $\frac{0.02}{5} = 0.004$ mol C_3H_8.
There is more than 0.004 mol C_3H_8, therefore C_3H_8 is in excess.

c 28 g of CO is $\frac{28}{28} = 1$ mol
1 mol CO would react with $\frac{1}{3} = 0.33$ mol Fe_2O_3.
There is more than 0.33 mol Fe_2O_3, therefore Fe_2O_3 is in excess.

d 16 g O_2 is $\frac{16}{32} = 0.5$ mol
16 g SO_2 is $\frac{16}{64} = 0.25$ mol
0.25 mol SO_2 would react with 0.125 mol O_2
There is more than 0.125 mol O_2, therefore O_2 is in excess.

20 ▶ a 1.0 g of $CaCO_3$ is $\frac{1.0}{100} = 0.010$ mol
0.010 mol $CaCO_3$ would react with 2 × 0.010 = 0.020 mol HCl
There is less than 0.020 mol HCl, therefore there is not enough HCl to react with all the $CaCO_3$. Therefore $CaCO_3$ is in excess.

b To calculate the number of moles of CO_2 you must use the number of moles of HCl because not all the $CaCO_3$ reacted.
moles of HCl = 0.015 mol
moles of CO_2 = 0.5 × 0.015 = 0.0075 mol
mass of CO_2 = 0.0075 × 44 = 0.33 g
(If you got the answer 0.44 g you used the number of moles of $CaCO_3$. $CaCO_3$ was in excess; therefore not all of it will react.)

CHAPTER 6

1 ▶ a $\frac{2.4}{24} = 0.10$ mol

b $\frac{480}{24} = 20$ mol

c $\frac{100}{24000} = 0.00417$ mol

d $\frac{1500}{24000} = 0.0625$ mol

2 ▶ a 2.0 × 24 = 48 dm^3 (48 000 cm^3)
b 0.10 × 24 = 2.4 dm^3 (2400 cm^3)
c $1 \times 10^{-3} \times 24 = 0.024$ dm^3 (24 cm^3)

3 ▶ a 200 cm^3 of chlorine is $\frac{200}{24\,000} = 0.00833$ mol
(be careful with units here – if the volume is in cm^3 you must use 24 000 as the molar volume)
mass of 1 mol of Cl_2 = 2 × 35.5 = 71 g
mass of 0.00833 mol Cl_2 = 0.00833 × 71 = 0.592 g

b mass of 1 mol of O_2 = 2 × 16 = 32 g
number of moles of O_2 = $0.\frac{16}{32} = 0.005$ mol
0.005 mol O_2 has a volume of 0.005 × 24 000 = 120 cm^3 (0.12 dm^3)

c 1 dm^3 of the gas is $\frac{1}{24} = 0.0417$ mol
the mass of 0.0417 mol is 1.42 g
mass of 1 mol of the gas = $\frac{1.42}{0.0417} = 34.1$ g

4 ▶ $\frac{0.240}{24} = 0.0100$ mol
From the chemical equation, the number of moles of H_2 is the same as the number of moles of Mg: 0.0100 mol.
volume of hydrogen = 0.0100 × 24 = 0.24 dm^3 (240 cm^3)

5 ▶ $\frac{1}{24} = 0.0417$ mol O_2
From the chemical equation, the number of moles of KNO_3 is twice the number of moles of O_2
2 × 0.0417 = 0.0833 mol
mass of 1 mol KNO_3 = 39 + 14 + 3 × 16 = 101 g
mass of 0.0417 mol KNO_3 = 0.0833 × 101 = 8.42 g

6 ▶ mass of 1 mol MnO_2 = 55 + 2 × 16 = 87 g
number of moles of MnO_2 = $\frac{2.00}{87} = 0.0230$ mol
from the chemical equation: 1 mol MnO_2 produces 1 mol Cl_2
number of moles of Cl_2 produced = 0.0230 mol
volume of Cl_2 produced = 0.0230 × 24000 = 552 cm^3 (0.552 dm^3)

7 ▶ mass of 1 mol H_2SO_4 = 98 g
number of moles of H_2SO_4 $\frac{4.90}{98}$ mol = 0.0500 mol
this number of moles is in 1 dm^3 of solution
concentration = 0.0500 mol/dm^3 (0.0500 to show that the answer is precise to 3 significant figures)

8 ▶ mass of 1 mol KOH = 39 + 16 + 1 = 56 g
mass of 0.200 mol = 0.200 × 56 = 11.2 g
concentration = 11.2 g/dm^3

9 ▶ In each of these questions the number of moles is given by:
number of moles = volume in dm^3 × concentration in mol/dm^3
to convert a volume in dm^3 to cm^3 divide by 1000

a $\frac{25.0}{1000} \times 0.100 = 0.00250$ mol

b $\frac{200}{1000} \times 0.200 = 0.0400$ mol

c $\frac{75.0}{1000} \times 0.150 = 0.01125$ mol

d $\frac{22.4}{1000} \times 0.280 = 0.00627$ mol

10 ▶ concentration (mol/dm^3) = $\frac{\text{number of moles (mol)}}{\text{volume (dm}^3)}$

a concentration = $\frac{0.100}{2} = 0.0500$ mol/dm^3

b volume in dm^3 = $\frac{25.0}{1000} = 0.050$ dm^3

concentration = $\frac{0.0200}{0.0250} = 0.800$ mol/dm^3

c volume in dm^3 = $\frac{27.8}{1000} = 0.0278$ dm^3

concentration = $\frac{0.00150}{0.0278} = 0.0540$ mol/dm^3

11 ▶ volume (dm^3) = $\frac{\text{number of moles (mol)}}{\text{concentration (mol/dm}^3)}$

a $\frac{0.500}{0.100} = 5.00$ dm^3 (5.00 indicates that the answer is to 3 significant figures)

b $\frac{0.00500}{0.0200} = 0.250$ dm^3 (250 cm^3)

c $\frac{0.0200}{0.500} = 0.0400$ dm^3 (40.0 cm^3)

12 ▶ no. of moles of copper(II) sulfate = $\frac{20}{1000} \times 0.100 =$ 0.00200 mol

equation shows that 1 mol CuSO4 produces 1 mol $BaSO_4$

no. of moles $BaSO_4$ formed = 0.00200 mol

mass of 1 mol $BaSO_4$ = 137 + 32 + 4 × 16 = 233 g

mass of 0.00200 mol $BaSO_4$ = 0.00200 × 233 = 0.466 g

13 ▶ 25.0 cm^3 of 2.00 mol/dm^3 HCl contains $\frac{25.0}{1000} \times 2.00$ mol = 0.0500 mol

From the chemical equation, the number of moles of $CaCO_3$ that reacts is half the number of moles of HCl, that is 0.5 × 0.0500 = 0.0250 mol.

mass of 1 mol $CaCO_3$ = 100 g

mass of 0.0250 mol $CaCO_3$ = 0.0250 × 100 = 2.50 g

number of moles of CO_2 = 0.0250 mol

volume of CO_2 = 0.0250 × 24 000 = 600 cm^3

14 ▶ number of moles of hydrogen peroxide = $\frac{30.0}{1000} \times 0.0200$ = 0.000600 mol (6.00×10^{-4})

from the chemical equation, the number of moles of O_2 produced is half the number of moles of H_2O_2

number of moles of O_2 = 0.000300 mol (3.00×10^{-4})

volume of oxygen = 0.000300 × 24 000 = 7.20 cm^3

15 ▶ a no. of moles of NaOH solution = $\frac{25.0}{1000} \times 0.400$ mol = 0.0100 mol

the equation shows that you need half as many moles of sulfuric acid = 0.00500 mol

volume (dm^3) = $\frac{\text{number of moles (mol)}}{\text{concentration (mol/dm}^3)}$

volume = $\frac{0.00500}{0.200} = 0.0250$ dm^3 or 25.0 cm^3

b mass of 1 mol $CaCO_3$ = 100 g

number of moles of $CaCO_3$ = $\frac{10.0}{100} = 0.100$ mol

from the chemical equation 0.100 mol $CaCO_3$ reacts with 2 × 0.100 = 0.200 mol HCl

volume (dm^3) = $\frac{\text{number of moles (mol)}}{\text{concentration (mol/dm}^3)}$

volume = $\frac{0.200}{2.00} = 0.100$ dm^3 or 100 cm^3

16 ▶ *In each of these questions the number of moles is given by*

number of moles = volume in dm^3 × concentration in mol/dm^3

to convert a volume in dm^3 to cm^3 divide by 1000

a no. of moles of NaOH solution = $\frac{25.0}{1000} \times 0.100$ mol = 0.00250 mol

the equation shows that you need the same number of moles of nitric acid = 0.00250 mol

concentration (mol/dm^3) = $\frac{\text{number of moles (mol)}}{\text{volume (dm}^3)}$

20.0 cm^3 is $\frac{20.0}{1000} = 0.0200$ dm^3

concentration = $\frac{0.00250}{0.0200} = 0.125$ mol/dm^3

b no. of moles of nitric acid = $\frac{30.0}{1000} \times 0.100$ mol = 0.00300 mol

the equation shows that you need half the number of moles of sodium carbonate = 0.5 × 0.00300 = 0.00150 mol

concentration (mol/dm^3) = $\frac{\text{number of moles (mol)}}{\text{volume (dm}^3)}$

25.0 cm^3 is $\frac{25.0}{1000} = 0.0250$ dm^3

concentration = $\frac{0.00150}{0.0250} = 0.0600$ mol/dm^3

c no. of moles of potassium carbonate solution = $\frac{25.0}{1000}$ × 0.250 mol = 0.00625 mol

the equation shows that you need twice the number of moles of ethanoic acid = 2 × 0.00625 = 0.0125 mol

concentration (mol/dm^3) = $\frac{\text{number of moles (mol)}}{\text{volume (dm}^3)}$

12.5 cm^3 is $\frac{12.5}{1000} = 0.0125$ dm^3

concentration = $\frac{0.0125}{0.0125} = 1.00$ mol/dm^3

17 ▶ a no. of moles of hydrochloric acid = $\frac{18.8}{1000} \times 0.0400$ mol = 0.000752 mol (7.52×10^{-4})

the equation shows that you need half the number of moles of calcium hydroxide

number of moles of calcium hydroxide = 0.5 × 0.000752 = 0.000376 mol (3.76×10^{-4})

concentration (mol/dm^3) = $\frac{\text{number of moles (mol)}}{\text{volume (dm}^3)}$

25.0 cm^3 is $\frac{25.0}{1000} = 0.0250$ dm^3

concentration = $\frac{0.000376}{0.0250} = 0.0150$ mol/dm^3

b mass of 1 mol $Ca(OH)_2$ = 40 + 2 × (16+1) = 74 g
there are 0.0150 mol in 1 dm^3
the mass of 0.0150 mol is 0.0150 × 74 = 1.11 g
therefore the concentration is 1.11 g/dm^3

18 ▶ a 0.1 mol HNO_3 reacts with 0.05 mol Na_2CO_3. There is more than this present, therefore Na_2CO_3 is in excess.

b no. of moles of $Na_2CO_3 = \frac{20.0}{1000} \times 0.100$ mol = 0.00200 mol

0.0200 mol HNO_3 reacts with 0.0100 mol Na_2CO_3. There is less than this present, therefore HNO_3 is in excess.

c no. of moles of $Na_2CO_3 = \frac{25.0}{1000} \times 0.300$ mol = 0.00750 mol

no of moles of $HNO_3 = \frac{20.0}{1000} \times 0.400$ mol = 0.00800 mol

0.00800 mol HNO_3 reacts with 0.00400 mol Na_2CO_3. There is more than this present, therefore Na_2CO_3 is in excess.

CHAPTER 7

1 ▶ a i An atom or group of atoms which carries an electrical charge.

ii Attractions between positively and negatively charged ions holding them together.

b Correct electronic structures for:

i Na 2,8,1 and Cl 2,8,7

ii Li 2,1 and O 2,6

iii Mg 2,8,2 and F 2,7.

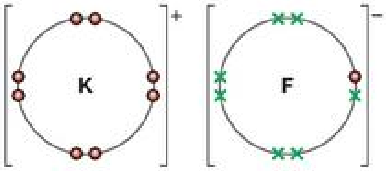
Diagrams (similar to those in the chapter) showing transfer of electrons, and the charges and electronic structures of the ions formed (or words to the same effect).

In (i), show 1 electron transferred from Na to Cl leaving Na^+ $[2,8]^+$ and Cl^- [2,8,8]

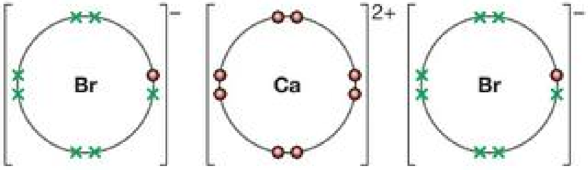
In (ii), show 2 lithium atoms each giving 1 electron to O leaving 2 × Li^+ $(2)^+$ and O_2^- [2,8]2

In (iii), show 1 Mg giving an electron each to 2 fluorines leaving Mg^{2+} $[2,8]^{2+}$ and 2 × F^- $[2,8]^-$

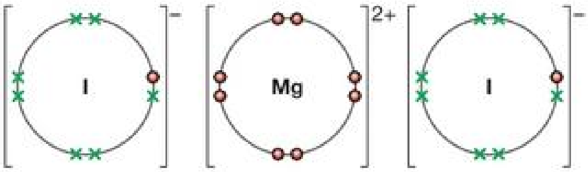
2 ▶ a



b



c



3 ▶

		a formula	**b name**
i	magnesium	Mg^{2+}	
ii	strontium	Sr^{2+}	
iii	potassium	K^+	
iv	oxygen	O^{2-}	oxide
v	sulfur	S^{2-}	sulfide
vi	caesium	Cs^+	
vii	chlorine	Cl^-	chloride
viii	iodine	I^-	iodide
ix	aluminium	Al^{3+}	
x	calcium	Ca^{2+}	
xi	nitrogen	N^{3-}	nitride

4 ▶
PbO
$MgSO_4$
K_2CO_3
$Ca(NO_3)_2$
$FeSO_4$
$Al_2(SO_4)_3$
$CoCl_2$
$AgNO_3$
NH_4NO_3
Na_2SO_4
$NaBr$
$ZnCl_2$
$(NH_4)_2S$
$Fe(OH)_3$
$CuCO_3$
$Ca(OH)_2$
CaO
FeF_3
RbI
Cr_2O_3

5 ▶ a The electrostatic forces of attraction between oppositely charged ions are strong and require a lot of energy to break.

b The ions are held tightly in place in the giant lattice structure and are not free to move.

c The ions are free to move (it is important to use the word **ions** here; any mention of electrons will score 0 in an exam).

6 ▶ Potassium chloride will have a lower melting point than calcium oxide. The charges on the ions in KCl (K^+ and Cl^-) are lower than in CaO (Ca^{2+} and O^{2-}). There are weaker electrostatic forces of attraction between oppositely charged ions in KCl than in CaO; these forces require less energy to break than the forces in CaO.

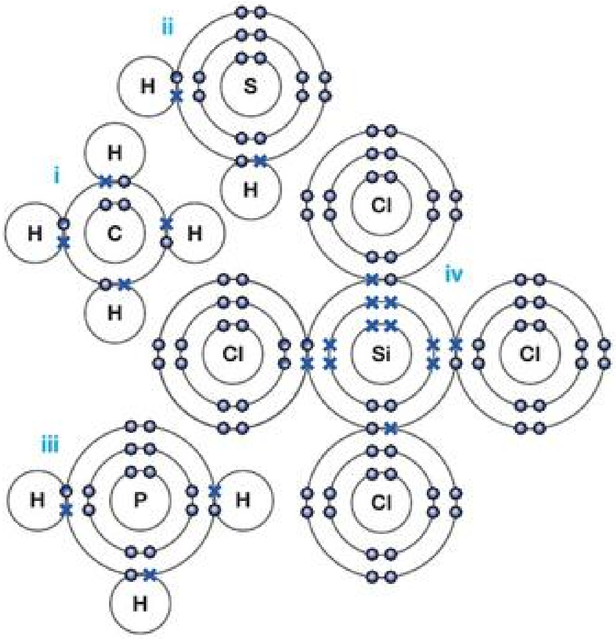
CHAPTER 8

1 ▶

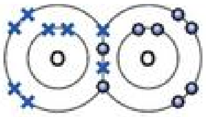
a	MgO	ionic
b	CH_3Br	covalent
c	H_2O_2	covalent
d	$FeCl_2$	ionic
e	NaF	ionic
f	HCN	covalent

2 ▶ a A pair of electrons that is shared between two atoms. The atoms are held together because the nucleus of each is attracted to the shared pair.

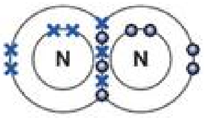
b *(It doesn't matter whether students use dots or crosses or just different colours- or what positions (N, S, E, W) the hydrogens occupy in the H_2S or PH_3.)*



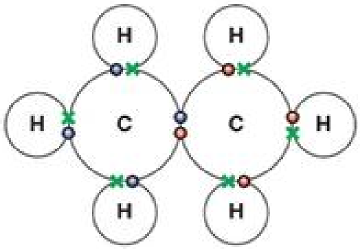
c i



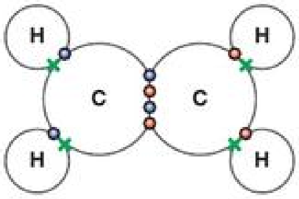
ii



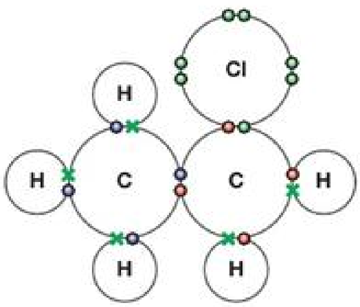
3 ▶ a



b



c



(It doesn't matter what variations of colours or dots and crosses are used. In the chloroethane case, the Cl could equally well have been drawn together with either of the other two hydrogen atoms on the right-hand carbon atom.)

4 ▶ Carbon dioxide has a simple molecular structure; diamond has a giant covalent structure. When carbon dioxide sublimes, only the weak intermolecular forces of attraction must be broken – but when diamond sublimes, the strong covalent bonds must be broken. A lot more energy is required to break the strong covalent bonds in diamond than the weak intermolecular forces in carbon dioxide.

5 ▶ a Simple molecular because it is a liquid at room temperature. Only weak intermolecular forces of attraction must be broken to melt solid hexane. Compounds with giant structures have high melting points and boiling points and will be solids at room temperature.

b Pentane has a lower boiling point. The intermolecular forces of attraction are weaker in pentane because the relative formula mass is lower. Weaker intermolecular forces require less energy to break.

c It will not conduct electricity because there are no ions present and all the electrons are held tightly in atoms or covalent bonds.

6 ▶ a To break apart diamond, strong covalent bonds must be broken, which requires a large amount of energy. Much less energy is required to break the weak forces of attraction between the layers in graphite.

b C_{60} fullerene has a molecular structure but graphite has a giant structure. To melt C_{60} fullerene, only weak intermolecular forces must be broken, but to melt graphite strong covalent bonds must be broken. Much less energy is required to break the weak intermolecular forces in C_{60} fullerene than the strong covalent bonds in graphite.

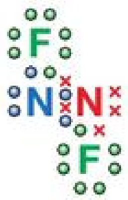
c Each C atom in graphite only forms 3 bonds so there is one electron left over on each on each atom. These delocalised electrons are free to move throughout the layers.

d All the outer shell electrons in diamond are held tightly in covalent bonds and unable to move around.

7 ▶ (Weakest intermolecular forces of attraction) hydrogen, phosphorus trifluoride, ammonia, ethanol, water, ethanamide (strongest intermolecular forces of attraction). Higher intermolecular attractions produce higher boiling points – more energy has to be supplied to overcome stronger forces of attraction between molecules.

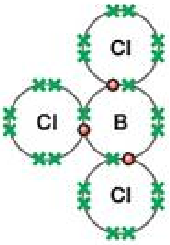
8 ▶ a Nitrogen usually forms 3 bonds because it has 5 electrons in its outer shell. Each N forms 1 bond to F, therefore there must be a double bond between the two N atoms. Formation of a double bond results in each N having 8 electrons in its outer shell.

b



(It doesn't matter what variations of colours or dots and crosses are used. The F atoms could also be drawn in different positions.)

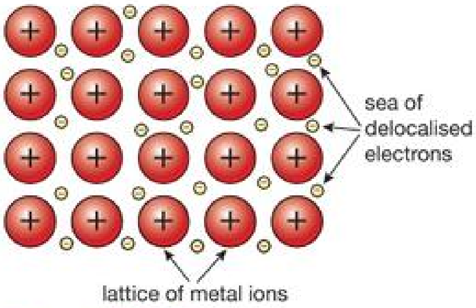
9 ▶ a



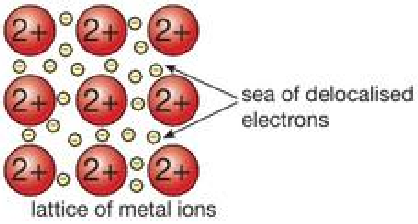
b The B atom does not have 8 electrons in its outer shell.

CHAPTER 9

1 ▶ a



b



(The diagrams should show at least 9 ions but can be of any size beyond that. Electrons could be shown as e^-.)

2 ▶ a Mg 2, 8, 2. The two outer electrons will be lost from each Mg atom to form the sea of delocalised electrons. There will be a regular arrangement of Mg^{2+} ions.

b Na will form Na^+ ions, Mg will form Mg^{2+} ions and Al will form Al^{3+} ions. There will be stronger electrostatic attraction between the metal ions and the delocalised electrons when the charge on the ion is higher. Al^{3+} has the strongest attraction between the metals ions and the delocalised electrons, therefore most energy has to be supplied to overcome the forces of attraction.

c Delocalised electrons are free to move.

d The layers of metal ions are able to slide over each other without changing the bonding.

3 ▶ a giant covalent
b molecular
c molecular
d giant ionic
e giant metallic
f molecular
g giant metallic

CHAPTER 10

1 ▶

	cathode	anode
a	lead	bromine
b	zinc	chlorine
c	hydrogen	iodine
d	sodium	iodine
e	copper	chlorine
f	hydrogen	chlorine
g	hydrogen	oxygen
h	hydrogen	oxygen

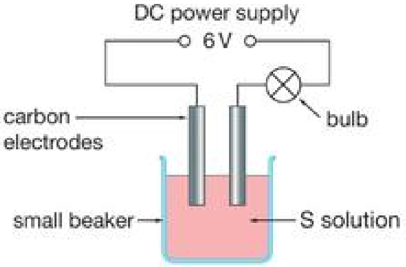
2 ▶ a $Mg^{2+} + 2e^- \rightarrow Mg$
b $Al^{3+} + 3e^- \rightarrow Al$
c $2Br^- \rightarrow Br2 \rightarrow 2e^-$
d $2O2^- \rightarrow O2 + 4e^-$
e $2Cl^- \rightarrow Cl2 + 2e^-$
f $Ni2^+ + 2e^- \rightarrow Ni$
g $4OH^- \rightarrow O2 + 2H2O + 4e^-$
h $2H2O \rightarrow O2 + 4H^+ + 4e^-$
i $2H2O + 2e^- \rightarrow H2 + 2OH^-$

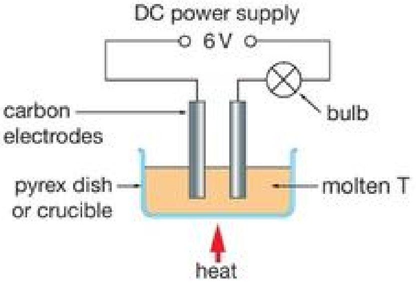
3 ▶ a Ions weren't free to move.
b anode
c iodine: $2I^-(l) \rightarrow I_2(g) + 2e^-$
d $K+(l) + e^- \rightarrow K(l)$
e anode: bromine
cathode: sodium
f anode: $2Br^- \rightarrow Br_2 + 2e^-$
cathode: $Na^+ + e^- \rightarrow Na$

4 ▶ a i $Pb^{2+}(l) + 2e^- \rightarrow Pb(l)$
ii $2Br^-(l) \rightarrow Br_2(g) + 2e^-$
iii oxidised: bromide ions. Reduced: lead(II) ions.
b i $2H^+(aq) + 2e^- \rightarrow H_2(g)$
ii $2Cl^-(aq) \rightarrow Cl_2(g) + 2e^-$
iii oxidised: chloride ions. Reduced: hydrogen ions.
c i $2H^+(aq) + 2e^- \rightarrow H_2(g)$
ii $2Br^-(aq) \rightarrow Br_2(aq\ or\ l) + 2e^-$
iii oxidised: bromide ions. Reduced: hydrogen ions.
d i $Cu^{2+}(aq) + 2e^- \rightarrow Cu(s)$
ii $4OH^-(aq) \rightarrow 2H_2O(l) + O_2(g) + 4e^-$
iii oxidised: hydroxide ions. Reduced: copper(II) ions.
e i $2H^+(aq) + 2e^- \rightarrow H_2(g)$
ii $4OH^-(aq) \rightarrow 2H_2O(l) + O_2(g) + 4e^-$
iii oxidised: hydroxide ions. Reduced: hydrogen ions.
f i $Mg^2+(l) + 2e^- \rightarrow Mg(s\ or\ l)$
ii $2I^-(l) \rightarrow I_2(g) + 2e^-$
iii oxidised: iodide ions. Reduced: magnesium ions.
g i $2H^+(aq) + 2e^- \rightarrow H_2(g)$
ii $2Cl^-(aq) \rightarrow Cl_2(g) + 2e^-$
iii oxidised: chloride ions. Reduced: hydrogen ions.

5 ▶ The melting point of S is too high to reach using a Bunsen, and so you would have to test a solution in water.

On the other hand, T would melt easily, and won't dissolve. Heat it until it melts.





(You could also do the electrolysis of the solution using the more complicated apparatus in the chapter, but since there is no need to collect anything, there isn't much point.)

If the substances are electrolytes, the bulbs will light up, and there will be signs of activity around the electrodes (gases given off, solids deposited, etc).

6 ▶ a $Cu^{2+}(aq) + 2e^- \rightarrow Cu(s)$

b i The $Cu^{2+}(aq)$ ions are responsible for the blue colour and these are removed from the solution, therefore the blue colour fades.

water dissociates

$H_2O \rightleftharpoons H^+ + OH^-$

Oxygen is produced at the anode. The half equation for this is:

$4OH^- \rightarrow 2H_2O + O_2 + 4e^-$

Because the OH^- is removed from solution, more water must dissociate to replace them. This produces an excess of H^+ ions in solution, so the solution is acidic.

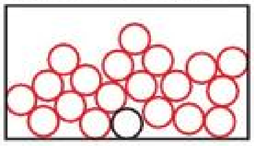
ii There is no change in colour because the concentration of $Cu^{2+}(aq)$ remains the same; when 1 $Cu^{2+}(aq)$ ion is removed at the cathode another one replaces it at the anode.

There is no change in acidity because the OH^- ions are not removed from the solution to form oxygen.

END OF UNIT 1 QUESTIONS

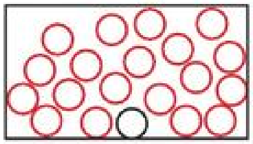
1 ▶ a −255 °C (1) The temperature is between the melting point and boiling point.

b



Particles randomly arranged (1) and mostly touching each other. (1)

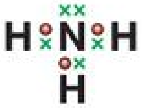
The diagram below would only score 1 mark – for the random arrangement



c number of protons: 1 (1)
number of neutrons: 2 (1)
number of electrons: 1 (1)

d i 2, 5 (1)

ii



three covalent bonds shown, each with a dot and a cross (1)

the remaining 2 electrons on N (1)

e NH_4SO_4 is incorrect (1) because the ammonium ion is NH_4^+ and the sulfate ion is SO_4^{2-}

f fractional distillation (1)

2 ▶ a The elements in the Periodic Table are arranged in order of atomic number (1). The vertical columns are called groups (1) and contain elements which have the same number of electrons (1) in their outer shell (1).

b H (1) and Ar (1)

c i The second property is not a property of metals. Metal oxides are basic (1)

and would react with acids rather than with alkalis such as sodium hydroxide. (1)

ii The grey circles represent silicon atoms. (1)

A silicon atom has 4 electrons in its outer shell and will form 4 covalent bonds. (1)

An oxygen atom has 6 electrons in its outer shell and will only form 2 covalent bonds. (1)
(Note: although some of the 'grey atoms' only appear to form 2 bonds this is because only part of the giant structure is shown. None of the 'red atoms' form 4 bonds.)

iii SiO_2 would be a solid at room temperature because it has a giant structure. (1)

A lot of energy is required to break all the strong covalent bonds. (1)

3 ▶ a idea of electron transfer (1)
electron transfer from Sr to Br (1)
the correct number of electrons transferred (1)

b high melting point (1)
strong electrostatic forces of attraction between oppositely-charged ions (1)
require a lot of energy to break (1)

c The relative atomic mass of an element is the weighted average mass of the isotopes of the element. (1)
It is measured on a scale on which a carbon-12 atom has a mass of exactly 12. (1)

d $\frac{50.69 \times 79 + 49.31 \times 81}{100}$ (1)

79.99 (1)

e $Sr(NO_3)_2$ (1)

4 ▶ a Diamond has a giant covalent structure (1), where all the atoms are held together by strong covalent bonds – a lot of energy is required to break these bonds. (1)

b i Graphite has the higher melting point. (1)

Graphite has a giant structure but C_{60} fullerene has a simple molecular structure. (1)

To melt graphite, all the strong covalent bonds between carbon atoms must be broken – this requires a lot of energy. (1)

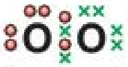
To melt C_{60} fullerene, only the weak intermolecular forces of attraction must be broken – this requires less energy. (1)

ii Graphite has delocalised electrons. (1)

Delocalised electrons are free to move (throughout the structure). (1)

iii C_{60} has a molecular structure rather than a giant structure. (1)

Electrons cannot move between molecules. (1)

5 ▶ a  (1)

The correct diagram is above. (There is a double bond between the O atoms.)

b K_2O is the correct formula (1)

c O═C═O (1)

The correct diagram is above. (Carbon forms 4 bonds and oxygen forms 2 bonds.)

6 ▶ a mass of lead = 24.16 – 17.95 = 6.21 g (1)

b mass of oxygen = 24.80 – 24.16 g = 0.64 g (1)

c

	Pb		**O**
combining masses	6.21 g		0.64 g
no of moles of atoms	6.21/207 = 0.03		0.64/16 (1) = 0.04
ratio of moles	3	:	4 (1)

empirical formula: Pb_3O_4 (1)

7 ▶ a number of moles of copper = $\frac{2.00}{63.5}$ = 0.0315 mol (1)

From the chemical equation, the same number of moles of copper(II) nitrate will be produced.

number of moles of $Cu(NO_3)_2$ is 0.0315 mol (1)

M_r of $Cu(NO_3)_2$ = 63.5 + 2 × (14 + 3 × 16) = 187.5

mass of $Cu(NO_3)_2$ = 187.5 × 0.0315 = 5.91 g (1)

b The student would use crystallisation. (1)

Heat the solution in an evaporating basin to drive off some of the water until the solution becomes saturated. (1)

Allow to cool then filter off the crystals that form. (1)

c percentage yield = $\frac{\text{actual yield}}{\text{theoretical yield}} \times 100$

$= \frac{5.23}{7.61} \times 100$ (1)

= 68.7% (1)

8 ▶ a M_r of FeS_2 = 56 + 2 × 32 = 120

480 kg is 480 000 g

number of moles of FeS_2 = $\frac{480\,000}{120}$ = 4000 mol (1)

From the chemical equation, the number of moles of Fe_2O_3 is half the number of moles of FeS_2.

number of moles of Fe_2O_3 = 2000 mol (1)

Mr of Fe_2O_3 = 2 × 56 + 3 × 16 = 160

mass of Fe_2O_3 = 2000 × 160 = 320 000 g or 320 kg (1)

b From the chemical equation 4000 mol FeS_2 produces 8000 mol SO_2. (1)

volume = 8000 × 24 = 192 000 dm^3 (1)

c i $2SO_2 + O_2 \rightarrow 2SO_3$

all formulae correct (1)

correct balancing (1)

ii From the equation 2 mol SO_2 react with 1 mol O_2. So the number of moles of O_2 will be half as many. Therefore the number of moles of O_2 will be 4000 mol. (1)

volume = 4000 × 24 = 96 000 dm^3 (1)

For the second mark we could just reason that since half as many moles are required, then the volume will also be half.

9 ▶ a A saturated solution is a solution which contains as much dissolved solid as possible at a particular temperature. (1)

b number of moles = $\frac{32.8}{1000} \times 0.100 = 3.28 \times 10^{-3}$ mol or 0.00328 mol (1)

c From the chemical equation, the number of moles of $Sr(OH)_2$ is half the number of moles of HCl.

number of moles of $Sr(OH)_2 = 1.64 \times 10^{-3}$ or 0.00164 mol (1)

volume of $Sr(OH)_2$ in dm^3 is $\frac{25}{1000} = 0.025$ dm^3 (1)

concentration of $Sr(OH)_2 = \frac{0.00164}{0.025} = 0.0656$ mol/dm^3 (1)

d M_r of $Sr(OH)_2$ = 88 + 2 × (16 + 1) = 122

mass of $Sr(OH)_2$ in 1 dm^3 of solution is 122 × 0.0656 = 8.00 g (1)

1 dm^3 is 1000 cm^3, therefore mass of $Sr(OH)_2$ present in 100 cm^3 or 100 g of water is one tenth of this, that is 0.800 g (1)

e *(The three points in bold are essential and then 1 mark each for 2 further points.)*

an empty evaporating basin is weighed (1)

some of the strontium hydroxide solution is poured into the evaporating basin (1)

care must be taken to not pour in any solid (1)

weigh the evaporating basin and strontium hydroxide solution (1)

the evaporating basin is heated over a tripod and gauze using a Bunsen burner (1)

until all the water is driven off / heat to constant mass (1)

weigh the evaporating basin and solid strontium hydroxide (1)

10 ▶ a Number of moles of sodium hydroxide = $\frac{25.0}{1000} \times 0.100 = 2.50 \times 10^{-3}$ mol or 0.0025 mol (1)

From the chemical equation, the number of moles of sulfuric acid is half of this.

Number of moles of sulfuric acid = 1.25×10^{-3} mol or 0.00125 mol (1)

Volume of sulfuric acid in dm^3 = 0.0200 dm^3 (1)

Concentration of sulfuric acid is $\frac{0.00125}{0.0200}$ = 0.0625 mol/dm^3 (1)

b **i** lattice of positive ions (1)

sea of delocalised electrons (1)

electrostatic attraction between the positive ions and delocalised electrons (1)

ii the layers of positive ions/atoms (1)

can slide over each other (1)

iii number of moles = $\frac{100}{1000} \times 0.0625 = 0.00625$ mol or 6.25×10^{-3} mol (1)

iv 0.100 g of Mg is $\frac{0.100}{24}$ = 0.00417 mol or 4.17×10^{-3} mol (1)

Therefore the sulfuric acid is in excess because only 0.00417 mol would be required to react with all the Mg and there is more present than this. (1)

v The number of moles of magnesium must be used to work out the number of moles of H_2 because the sulfuric acid is in excess.

From the chemical equation, the number of moles of H_2 is the same as the number of moles of Mg.

The number of moles of H_2 is 0.00417 mol or 4.17×10^{-3} mol. (1)

volume of hydrogen = $0.00417 \times 24000 = 100\,cm^3$ (1)

vi the percentage yield = $\frac{94}{100} \times 100 = 94\%$ (1)

c **i** hydrogen gas (1)

ii $4OH^- \rightarrow O_2 + 2H_2O + 4e^-$

OR $2H_2O \rightarrow O_2 + 4H^+ + 4e^-$

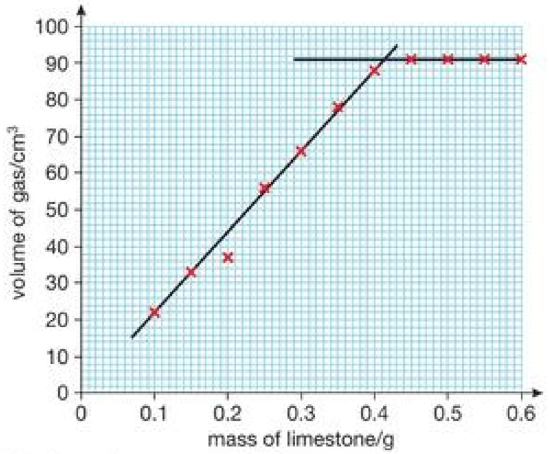
for formulae for all species correct (1)

for correctly balanced (1)

11 ▶ a measuring cylinder/pipette/burette (1)

b volume is 33 cm^3 (1)

c



plotting points correctly (2)

line of best fit (1)

d **i** Student 3's result (1)

The volume of gas recorded is too low and does not lie on the line of best fit. (1)

ii Some gas could have escaped from the apparatus / there was a leak in the apparatus / they could have used less than 0.15 g limestone / they used a different concentration of hydrochloric acid that had too low a concentration / they used too low a volume of hydrochloric acid. (1)

e All the hydrochloric acid has been used up. (1)

There is no more hydrochloric acid to react with any additional limestone, so no more gas can be produced. (1)

f 0.42 g (1)

(This is the point at which the two lines cross because this is the point at which adding any more $CaCO_3$ does not produce any more gas.)

g **i** $CaCO_3(s) + 2HCl(aq) \rightarrow CaCl_2(aq) + H_2O(l) + CO_2(g)$

ii Number of moles of $CO_2 = \frac{91}{24000} = 3.79 \times 10^{-3}$ mol or 0.00379 mol. (1)

From the chemical equation, the number of moles of $CaCO_3$ is the same as the number of moles of CO_2.

Number of moles of $CaCO_3$ is 3.79×10^{-3} mol or 0.00379 mol. (1)

Mr of $CaCO_3$ is $40 + 12 + 3 \times 16 = 100$

mass of $CaCO_3 = 0.00379 \times 100 = 0.379$ g (1)

iii $\frac{0.379}{0.42} \times 100$ (1)

= 90 % (1)

You have worked out above the mass of limestone that reacts with the hydrochloric acid is 0.42 g. The volume of CO_2 produced by this mass of limestone is 91 cm^3. 91 cm^3 of CO_2 is produced by 0.379 g of $CaCO_3$, therefore this is the mass of $CaCO_3$ present in 0.42 g of limestone.

UNIT 2 ANSWERS

CHAPTER 11

1 ▶ They have the same number of electrons in the outer shell (1 electron) and all react in the same way.

2 ▶ a A = lithium

b B = potassium; C = hydrogen; D = potassium hydroxide

c $2K(s) + 2H_2O(l) \rightarrow 2KOH(aq) + H_2(g)$

d The paper goes blue/purple.

e Lots of heat evolved. Melting point of potassium is low.

f E is sodium and F is sodium oxide

sodium + oxygen → sodium oxide

$4Na(s) + O_2(g) \rightarrow 2Na_2O(s)$

3 ▶ a FALSE **b** TRUE **c** TRUE

d FALSE, the formula of lithium chloride is LiCl

4 ▶ a More dense. Density increases down the group.

b 1

c Edexcelium hydroxide and hydrogen.

d More reactive than francium. Reactivity increases down the group.

Reactivity increases as the size of the atom increases. aAn edexcelium atom is larger than a francium atom. The outer electron would be more easily lost from edexcelium – it is less strongly attracted by the nucleus.

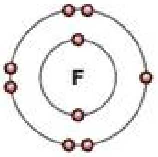
e $2Ed + 2H_2O \rightarrow 2EdOH + H_2$

f Alkaline, because OH^- ions are formed.

g Ed_2O

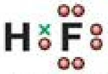
CHAPTER 12

1 ▶ a



b A fluorine atom has 7 electrons in its outer shell – the group number indicates the number of outer shell electrons.

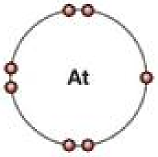
c



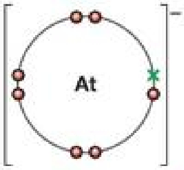
d There are weaker intermolecular forces of attraction between fluorine molecules than between chlorine molecules. Weaker forces require less energy to break. The intermolecular forces are weaker because fluorine has a lower relative molecular mass.

e No reaction because chlorine is less reactive than fluorine and therefore cannot displace it.

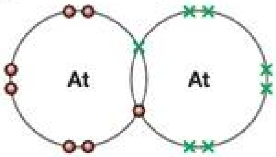
2 ▶ a



Astatine atom



Astatide ion



Astatine molecule

b Astatine would be a solid – melting point increases down the group and iodine is a solid.

c Reactivity decreases down the group so astatine would be less reactive than iodine.

Astatine is a larger atom than iodine and so has a lower attraction for electrons.

d pH 1–2

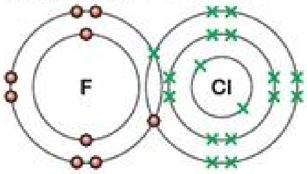
e Caesium astatide would be a colourless/white solid because it is an ionic compound. It would probably be soluble in water because many ionic compounds are soluble in water and most of the alkali metal halides are soluble in water (e.g. sodium chloride, potassium iodide etc.).

f $Cl_2(aq) + 2At^-(aq) \rightarrow At_2(s) + 2Cl^-(aq)$

The chlorine is reduced in this reaction because it gains electrons. The At^- is oxidised in the reaction because it loses electrons. Oxidation and reduction both occur, therefore it is a redox reaction.

3 ▶ a $Cl_2(g) + F_2(g) \rightarrow 2ClF(g)$

b



c $F_2 < ClF < Cl_2$

The boiling point increases as the relative molecular mass increases and the strength of the intermolecular forces increases.

d i ClF_3

ii $ClF_3(g) + 2H_2O(l) \rightarrow 3HF(aq) + HCl(aq) + O_2(g)$

CHAPTER 13

1 ▶ a 78.1% **b** 21.0 % **c** 0.04% **d** 0.9%

2 ▶ a $95 - 80 = 15\,cm^3$ of oxygen

$$\frac{15}{95} \times 100 = 15.8\%$$

b The answer is less than expected. The apparatus was not left long enough; there was not enough time for all the oxygen in the air to react. The experiment could be improved by leaving the apparatus set up for longer.

3 ▶ a The student should follow a procedure such as:

- Weigh a boiling tube.
- Pour 1 g of the metal carbonate into the boiling tube and weigh the boiling tube again.
- Connect a delivery tube to the boiling tube. Connect the other end of the delivery tube to a gas syringe or put in to a measuring cylinder filled with water.
- Heat the boiling tube.
- Allow the apparatus to cool.
- Record the volume of gas collected.
- Re-weigh the boiling tube and contents.

b Carbon dioxide.

c $PbCO_3(s) \rightarrow PbO(s) + CO_2(g)$

d Thermal decomposition.

e Sodium carbonate is more thermally stable than the other carbonates; it does not decompose when heated.

f The M_r of $PbCO_3$ is 267, whereas the M_r of $CuCO_3$ is 123.5.

1 g of $CuCO_3$ is more moles than 1 g of $PbCO_3$ – more than twice as many moles.

When more moles of solid are heated, more moles of gas will be produced, so a greater volume of gas will be produced.

g The mass goes down because CO_2 is given off. In the first experiment the mass goes down by 0.15 g, which must be the mass of $89\,cm^3$ of gas.

From the first experiment:
1 cm^3 of gas has a mass of $\frac{0.16}{89} = 0.00180$ g
100 cm^3 has a mass of 100 × 0.00180 = 0.180 g

h The student did not heat the carbonate for long enough so not all the carbonate decomposes.
Some of the gas escaped/leaked from the apparatus.

4 ▶ Carbon dioxide is one of the gases responsible for the greenhouse effect. These gases absorb IR (infrared) radiation that has been emitted from the Earth's surface. They then re-radiate it in all directions, warming the atmosphere. Heating of the atmosphere could lead to climate change.

CHAPTER 14

1 ▶ a sodium, aluminum, iron, copper
b i magnesium oxide, copper
ii $Mg(s) + CuO(s) \rightarrow MgO(s) + Cu(s)$ *(Include state symbols in all equations for preference.)*
iii Copper(II) oxide (CuO) has been reduced to copper (Cu) because it has lost oxygen - reduction is the loss of oxygen.
iv Copper(II) oxide (CuO) is the oxidizing agent because it oxidizes the magnesium (gives oxygen to it) and is, in the process, reduced.
c i Zinc is higher in the reactivity series because it takes the oxygen from the cobalt(II) oxide
ii A reducing agent is a substance which reduces something else. Zinc removes oxygen from the cobalt(II) oxide. Removal of oxygen is reduction.
iii Zinc because it gains oxygen - oxidation is gain of oxygen.
d aluminium, manganese, chromium (Statement 1: Al is above Cr. Statement 2: Mn is below Al. Statement 3: Mn is above Cr. Putting this together gives the final list.)

2 ▶ a oxidised; gain of oxygen
b reduced; loss of oxygen
c oxidised; loss of electrons
d reduced; gain of electrons

3 ▶ Magnesium is above lead because it removes the oxygen from the lead(II) oxide.

4 ▶ a Either: grey iron filings become coated with brown solid. Or: solution fades from blue to colourless (very pale green).
b iron (Fe) has been oxidised (to Fe_2+) because it has lost electrons - oxidation is loss of electrons.
c $Fe(s) + CuSO_4(aq) \rightarrow FeSO_4(aq) + Cu(s)$

5 ▶ a nickel, copper, silver
b i Either: colour of solution changes from blue to green. Or: nickel becomes coated with brown solid.
ii $Ni(s) + CuSO_4(aq) \rightarrow NiSO_4(aq) + Cu(s)$
iii $Ni(s) + Cu^{2+}(aq) \rightarrow Ni^{2+}(aq) + Cu(s)$
Nickel has been oxidised by loss of electrons.

6 ▶ a X is between iron and hydrogen in the reactivity series. It displaces hydrogen from dilute hydrochloric acid, and copper from copper(II) sulfate, and so must be above hydrogen and copper. It won't displace iron from iron(II) sulfate, and so must be below iron.
b i yes: X nitrate and silver
ii no reaction
iii no reaction (at least, not in the short term)
iv yes: X chloride and copper
v yes: X sulfate and hydrogen

7 ▶ a hydrogen
b aluminium chloride
c $2Al(s) + 6HCl(aq) \rightarrow 2AlCl_3(aq) + 3H_2(g)$
d Aluminium is covered by a very thin, but very strong, layer of aluminium oxide which prevents the acid getting at the aluminium underneath. On heating, the acid reacts with the oxide and removes it. The aluminium then shows its true reactivity, and produces a vigorous reaction.

8 ▶ Drop a very small piece into cold water. If it reacts, judge its reactivity relative to K, Na, Ca or Mg.

If it doesn't react, add a small piece to dilute hydrochloric acid and warm if necessary. Rapid reaction in the cold would place it as 'similar to magnesium'. A few bubbles of hydrogen in the cold, but more on heating would place it as 'similar to iron or zinc'.

If there is no reaction, then it is 'below hydrogen'.

9 ▶ a The iron/steel must be exposed to oxygen (air) and water.
b Painting prevents the oxygen and water from coming into contact with the iron/steel.
c It is iron/steel coated with zinc.
d It would take much longer before the car went rusty. Zinc is more reactive than iron and so corrodes in preference to the iron. The zinc prevents iron rusting even when the coating is scratched. When paint is scratched the steel underneath will rust – this will not happen when the steel is galvanised, therefore the life of the car is extended.

10 ▶ a

	Pearsonium chloride solution	Mollium chloride solution	Rosium chloride solution	Amelium chloride solution
pearsonium	✗	✗	✗	✗
mollium	✓	✗	✓	✓
rosium	✓	✗	✗	✗
amelium	✓	✗	✓	✗

b mollium > amelium > rosium > pearsonium
c mollium + pearsonium chloride → mollium chloride + pearsonium

CHAPTER 15

1 ▶ Iron is below carbon in the reactivity series and so can be extracted by heating with carbon.

$Fe_2O_3(s) + 3C(s) \rightarrow 2Fe(l) + 3CO(g)$

Aluminium is above carbon in the reactivity series and so heating aluminium oxide with carbon will not produce a reaction. Aluminium must be extracted by electrolysis.

$Al^{3+} + 3e^- \rightarrow Al$

2 ▶ a Sodium is high in the reactivity series, and so will need to be produced by electrolysis. It can be manufactured by electrolysing molten sodium chloride using suitable electrodes (industrially, carbon anode, steel cathode), keeping the sodium and chlorine apart to prevent them from reacting back to give sodium chloride again.

Sodium would be released at the cathode:
$Na^+(l) + e^- \rightarrow Na(l)$

b It needed the discovery of electricity.

c Any other metals high in the reactivity series – e.g. potassium, lithium, calcium, magnesium.

3 ▶ Because lead is below iron in the reactivity series it is also below carbon. Lead can be extracted from its ore by heating with carbon.

4 ▶ a Chromium(III) oxide contains the Cr^{3+} ion. The oxide ion has the formula O^{2-}, therefore the formula of chromium(III) oxide is Cr_2O_3.

$Cr_2O_3 + 2Al \rightarrow 2Cr + Al_2O_3$

b Al is the reducing agent because it takes the O away from the Cr_2O_3 – it reduces it.

c Chromium is less reactive than aluminium because the aluminium is able to take the oxygen away from the chromium oxide.

5 ▶ a $2FeTiO_3 + 7Cl_2 + 6C \rightarrow 2TiCl_4 + 2FeCl_3 + 6CO$

b $TiCl_4 + 2Mg \rightarrow MgCl_2 + Ti$

c Magnesium is more reactive than titanium as it is able to take the chlorine away from the $TiCl_4$; the magnesium is able to reduce the $TiCl_4$.

d Magnesium is more reactive than carbon, so it could be extracted from its ore by electrolysis or by heating with a more reactive metal such as sodium.

e Titanium is more expensive than magnesium. Although it is expensive to extract magnesium using electrolysis, the magnesium is used in the extraction of titanium, therefore titanium must be more expensive.

6 ▶ a i It has a low density. *(Note: saying that it has a **low density** is usually better than just saying it is **light**)*

ii Alloys are stronger than the pure metals. Alloys contain some atoms of different sizes; this makes it more difficult for the layers of positive ions to slide over each other.

iii Advantages:

An aluminium body is lighter than a steel body and so the car will use less fuel. An aluminium body will not corrode.

Disadvantage:

Aluminium is more expensive than steel.

b i a good conductor of electricity and ductile (can be drawn out into wires)

ii does not react with water and malleable (can be hammered into shape)

c High-carbon steel is brittle and not very malleable so it would be difficult to make it into the correct shapes for car bodies. It would also not bend/deform very well during a crash – the fact that mild steel deforms upon impact (because it is malleable) is important for absorbing some of the force upon impact *(from a Physics point of view, the change in momentum occurs over a longer period of time).*

CHAPTER 16

1 ▶

	methyl orange	phenolphthalein	litmus
a	yellow	pink	blue
b	red	colourless	red

2 ▶

solution	pH	strongly acidic	weakly acidic	neutral	weakly alkaline	strongly alkaline
potassium iodide	7			✓		
propanoic acid	4.2		✓			
sodium carbonate	9.5				✓	
potassium hydroxide	13					✓
iron(III) chloride	2.4	✓				
nitric acid	1.3	✓				

3 ▶ a $Na_2O + 2HNO_3 \rightarrow 2NaNO_3 + H_2O$

b $2KOH + H_2SO_4 \rightarrow K_2SO_4 + 2H_2O$

4 ▶ Neutralisation – reaction a) involves an acid reacting with a base (sodium oxide) and reaction b) involves an acid reacting with an alkali (KOH).

5 ▶ Measure out 25.0 cm^3 of potassium hydroxide solution using a pipette. Transfer the potassium hydroxide solution to a conical flask. Add a few drops of an indicator. Put the sulfuric acid into the burette. Add the acid to the alkali until the indicator changes colour.

CHAPTER 17

1 ▶ a copper(II) oxide, copper(II) hydroxide, copper(II) carbonate

b $CuO(s) + H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow CuSO_4(aq) + H_2O(l)$ $Cu(OH)_2(s) + H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow CuSO_4(aq) + 2H_2O(l)$ $CuCO_3(s) + H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow CuSO_4(aq) + CO_2(g) + H_2O(l)$

2 ▶ a A = copper; B = copper(II) oxide; C = copper(II) sulfate; D = copper(II) carbonate; E = carbon dioxide; F = copper(II) nitrate

b i $CuO(s) + H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow CuSO_4(aq) + H_2O(l)$

ii $CuCO_3(s) + 2HNO_3(aq) \rightarrow Cu(NO_3)_2(aq) + CO_2(g) + H_2O(l)$

3 ▶ a i Description could include: Silvery metal. Colourless acid. Slow bubbles of gas on warming. Formation of green solution. Possible disappearance of nickel if very small quantities were used.

Pops with lighted splint held to mouth of tube.

ii hydrogen

iii $Ni(s) + H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow NiSO_4(aq) + H_2(g)$

b i Description could include: Green solid. Colourless acid. Bubbles of gas produced in the cold. Formation of green solution. Green powder disappears if excess acid is used.

Testing for gas: Bubble through lime water to give a white precipitate (milky, cloudy).

ii $NiCO_3(s) + 2HCl(aq) \rightarrow NiCl_2(aq) + CO_2(g) + H_2O(l)$

iii $CO_3^{2-}(s) + 2H^+(aq) \rightarrow CO_2(g) + H_2O(l)$

Some teachers may prefer to write this as:

$NiCO_3(s) + 2H^+(aq) \rightarrow Ni^{2+}(aq) + CO_2(g) + H_2O(l)$

4 ▶

soluble	**insoluble**
sodium chloride	lead(II) sulfate
zinc nitrate	calcium carbonate
iron(III) sulfate	lead(II) chloride
potassium sulfate	copper(II) carbonate
aluminium nitrate	silver chloride
ammonium chloride	barium sulfate
magnesium nitrate	calcium sulfate (almost insoluble)
sodium phosphate	nickel(II) carbonate
potassium dichromate(VI)	chromium(III) hydroxide

5 ▶ a Dilute sulfuric acid in a beaker/flask. Heat gently. Add copper(II) oxide a little at a time until no more reacts. Filter into an evaporating basin. Evaporate gently until a sample will crystallise on cooling. Leave to crystallise. Separate and dry crystals.

b i $CuO(s) + H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow CuSO_4(aq) + H_2O(l)$

ii $CuSO_4(aq) + 5H_2O(l) \rightarrow CuSO_4.5H_2O(s)$

6 ▶ a using a pipette: Need to be able to measure the volume of sodium carbonate solution accurately so that exactly the same volume can be used later without the indicator.

few drops of methyl orange were added: An indicator to show when the solution becomes 'neutral'. (In fact the colour change happens around pH 4. The pH changes very quickly around the end point for the indicator, and the difference in volume of acid added to take the pH from the desired pH 7 to the actual pH 4 for the indicator will be a fraction of a drop.)

until the solution became orange: Exactly the right volume of acid has been added (the 'neutral' colour for methyl orange).

without the methyl orange: Otherwise the crystals would be contaminated by methyl orange.

evaporated until... Shows when the solution is sufficiently concentrated to crystallise on cooling. If a sample will crystallise, so will the bulk of the solution.

left to cool... Crystals form on cooling because the solubility of the sodium sulfate is lower in the cold.

b i $Na_2CO_3(aq) + H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow Na_2SO_4(aq) + CO_2(g) + H_2O(l)$

ii $Na_2SO_4(aq) + 10H_2O(l) \rightarrow Na_2SO_4.10H_2O(s)$

7 ▶ a A solution of any soluble silver salt (silver nitrate is always used) plus a solution of any soluble chloride including dilute hydrochloric acid

$Ag^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq) \rightarrow AgCl(s)$.

b A solution of any soluble calcium salt (calcium chloride or nitrate) plus a solution of a soluble carbonate (sodium, potassium or ammonium carbonate).

$Ca^{2+}(aq) + CO_3^{2-}(aq) \rightarrow CaCO_3(s)$

c A solution of a soluble lead(II) salt (most commonly, lead(II) nitrate) plus a solution of any soluble sulfate including dilute sulfuric acid

$Pb^{2+}(aq) + SO_4^{2-}(aq) \rightarrow PbSO_4(s)$.

d A solution of a soluble lead(II) salt (most commonly, lead(II) nitrate) plus a solution of any soluble chloride including dilute hydrochloric acid.

$Pb^{2+}(aq) + 2Cl^-(aq) \rightarrow PbCl_2(s)$

8 ▶ Mix solutions of barium chloride or barium nitrate and sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate or ammonium carbonate. Filter, wash and dry the precipitate.

$Ba^{2+}(aq) + CO_3^{2-}(aq) \rightarrow BaCO_3(s)$

9 ▶ a A: dilute sulfuric acid + solid zinc (or zinc oxide, hydroxide or carbonate)

$H_2SO_4(aq) + Zn(s) \rightarrow ZnSO_4(aq) + H_2(g)$

or $H_2SO_4(aq) + ZnO(s) \rightarrow ZnSO_4(aq) + H_2O(l)$

or $H_2SO_4(aq) + Zn(OH)_2(s) \rightarrow ZnSO_4(aq) + 2H_2O(l)$

or $H_2SO_4(aq) + ZnCO_3(s) \rightarrow ZnSO_4(aq) + H_2O(l) + CO_2(g)$

b C: solutions of a soluble barium salt + soluble sulfate (including H_2SO_4)

$Ba^{2+}(aq) + SO_4^{2-}(aq) \rightarrow BaSO_4(s)$

There is no point in writing full equations for precipitation reactions like this. The ionic equation is always easier.

c B: dilute nitric acid + potassium hydroxide or carbonate solution

$HNO_3(aq) + KOH(aq) \rightarrow KNO_3(aq) + H_2O(l)$

or $2HNO_3(aq) + K_2CO_3(aq) \rightarrow 2KNO_3(aq) + H_2O(l) + CO_2(g)$

d A: dilute nitric acid + solid copper(II) oxide or hydroxide or carbonate.

$2HNO_3(aq) + CuO(s) \rightarrow$ Cu(NO3)2(aq) + H2O(l)

or $2HNO_3(aq) + Cu(OH)_2(s) \rightarrow Cu(NO_3)_2(aq) + 2H_2O(l)$

or $2HNO_3(aq) + CuCO_3(s) \rightarrow Cu(NO_3)_2(aq) + H_2O(l) + CO_2(g)$

(Unlike the other simple acids, nitric acid also reacts with copper metal, but it doesn't produce hydrogen, and is not on the Edexcel International GCSE syllabus. Any equation using copper to produce hydrogen should be disallowed.)

e C: solutions of a soluble lead(II) salt (normally the nitrate) + a soluble chromate(VI). (Since you don't know anything specifically about chromates, choose one of sodium, potassium or ammonium chromate (VI) – these are bound to be soluble because all sodium, potassium and ammonium salts are soluble.)

$Pb^{2+}(aq) + CrO_4^{2-}(aq) \rightarrow PbCrO_4(s)$

10 ▶

a	acid: H_3O^+	base: CO_3^{2-}
b	acid: H_2SO_4	base: MgO
c	acid: HNO_3	base: NH_3

d acid: H_2SO_4 base: H_2O
e acid: HCl base: NH_3
f acid: CH_3COOH base: NH_3

CHAPTER 18

1 ▶ a chlorine **b** ammonia **c** carbon dioxide
d hydrogen **e** oxygen

2 ▶ a Clean a nichrome or platinum wire by dipping it into concentrated hydrochloric acid and then into a flame until no colour shows. Moisten the wire with concentrated hydrochloric acid, dip it into the solid, and then back into flame. Lithium ions give a red flame colour.

b Warm the solid very gently with sodium hydroxide solution. Test any gases given off with a piece of damp red litmus paper. If it turns blue, ammonia is being given off from an ammonium compound.

c Make a solution in pure water. Add dilute hydrochloric acid + barium chloride solution. A white precipitate shows the sulfate ions.

d Add dilute hydrochloric acid or dilute nitric acid. (Not sulfuric acid which forms an insoluble layer of calcium sulfate around the calcium carbonate, which stops the reaction.) Look for a colourless odourless gas turning limewater milky.

e Make a solution in pure water. Add dilute nitric acid + silver nitrate solution. A yellow precipitate shows the iodide ions.

3 ▶ a A = iron(III) chloride; B = iron(III) hydroxide; C = silver chloride

b B: $Fe^{3+}(aq) + 3OH^-(aq) \rightarrow Fe(OH)_3(s)$ or: $FeCl_3(aq) + 3NaOH(aq) \rightarrow Fe(OH)_3(s) + 3NaCl(aq)$
C: $Ag^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq) \rightarrow AgCl(s)$ or $3AgNO_3(aq) + FeCl_3(aq) \rightarrow 3AgCl(s) + Fe(NO_3)_3(aq)$

4 ▶ a D = iron(II) sulfate; E = iron(II) hydroxide; F = barium sulfate

b E: $Fe^{2+}(aq) + 2OH^-(aq) \rightarrow Fe(OH)_2(s)$
or: $FeSO_4(aq) + 2NaOH(aq) \rightarrow Fe(OH)_2(s) + Na_2SO_4(aq)$
F: $Ba^{2+}(aq) + SO_4^{2-}(aq) \rightarrow BaSO_4(s)$
or $BaCl_2(aq) + MgSO_4(aq) \rightarrow BaSO_4(s) + MgCl_2(aq)$

5 ▶ a G = potassium carbonate; H = potassium nitrate; I = carbon dioxide *(Note: g could also be potassium hydrogen carbonate, but, because hydrogen carbonates haven't been covered in the course, a student is unlikely to come up with it.)*

b $CO_3^{2-}(s) + 2H^+(aq) \rightarrow CO_2(g) + H_2O(l)$ or $K_2CO_3(s) + 2HNO_3(aq) \rightarrow 2KNO_3(aq) + CO_2(g) + H_2O(l)$

6 ▶ a J = ammonium bromide; K = ammonia; L = silver bromide

b $Ag^+(aq) + Br^-(aq) \rightarrow AgBr(s)$

7 ▶ a Dissolve the mixture in the minimum possible amount of hot water, and then allow it to cool again. The small amount of the more soluble potassium carbonate will stay in solution, but crystals of potassium nitrate will be formed on cooling. Filter these off, and wash them on the filter paper with a small amount of very cold water. Allow them to dry.

b Take a sample and add any named dilute acid. If the crystals are free of potassium carbonate, there won't be any fizzing.

8 ▶ a Add a few drops of the liquid to some anhydrous copper(II) sulfate. If the colour changes from white to blue then water is present.

b The boiling point of the liquid must be measured. If the liquid boils at 100 °C it is pure water. The freezing/melting point can also be measured – pure water freezes/melts at 0 °C.

c The test-tube becoming warm indicates that an exothermic reaction has occurred. An exothermic reaction with sodium hydroxide solution could mean that the colourless liquid is an acid – neutralisation reactions are exothermic. The fact that there is no other visual reaction indicates that there is no metal present that has an insoluble hydroxide.

The second test indicates that the solution does not contain carbonate ions – carbonate ions would produce fizzing with dilute hydrochloric acid.

The third test indicates that no sulfate ions are present – the solution cannot be sulfuric acid.

The last test indicates the presence of chloride ions. With the results of the other tests, this suggests that the solution is dilute hydrochloric acid.

The student could confirm this by adding an indicator, to see whether the liquid is acidic.

END OF UNIT 2 QUESTIONS

1 ▶ a They all have 1 electron in the outer shell. (1)

b Potassium oxide. (1)

c The piece of lithium floats; hydrogen gas is formed; the final solution is alkaline.

d i it forms a 1+ ion in compounds; it reacts with water and air

ii The density increases from lithium to sodium but decreases from sodium to potassium (1)

The trend is not clear for the whole group (1)

2 ▶ a Because there will be no reaction (1)

between a halogen and its halide ion / chlorine cannot reaction with chloride ions / bromine cannot reaction with bromide ions / iodine cannot reaction with iodide ions (1)

b

	potassium chloride solution	potassium bromide solution	potassium iodide solution
chlorine solution		orange solution formed	brown solution formed
bromine solution	no reaction		brown solution formed
iodine solution	no reaction	no reaction	

c chlorine + potassium bromide → potassium chloride + bromine (1)

d $Cl_2(aq) + 2Br^-(aq) \rightarrow 2Cl^-(aq) + Br_2(aq)$
$Cl^-(aq)$ (1)
$Br_2(aq)$ (1)
balancing (1)

e chlorine gains electrons to form chloride ions (1)
bromide ions lose electrons to form bromine (1)
gain of electrons is reduction and loss of electrons is oxidation (1)

f i $5Cl_2$ (1)

ii test: damp litmus paper/universal indicator paper (1)
positive result: the paper is bleached (goes white) (1)

iii test: add dilute nitric acid (1) followed by silver nitrate solution (1)
positive result: white precipitate (1)

3 ▶ a nitrogen (1)

b i The oxygen in the air is used up as it reacts with the iron. (1)
Water is pushed in by the atmosphere to take its place/the pressure in the measuring cylinder is reduced. (1)

ii All the oxygen has reacted and so there is nothing to react with the iron.

iii Hydrated iron(III) oxide. (1)

iv There is no oxygen present (1); Oxygen is required for the splint to burn. (1)

v The total amount of oxygen present in the original sample of air is 94 – 75 = 19 cm^3 of oxygen. (1)
9 cm^3 of oxygen is used up after one day, therefore there is 19 – 9 = 10 cm^3 of oxygen still present after one day. (1)
This is in a total volume of 85 cm^3 (1) (reading on the measuring cylinder).
Percentage oxygen = $\frac{10}{85} \times 100 = 11.8$ %. (1)

vi These will produce hydrogen when they react with the water present (1)
Hydrogen gas will take up space in the measuring cylinder, therefore the volume change will not show the volume of oxygen used up. (1)

vii Suggest one change that the student could make to the *apparatus* so he does not have to wait so long for the results. (1)
Use more iron filings/more finely-divided (higher surface area) iron filings/warm the apparatus. (1)

c Sulfur reacts with oxygen. A teacher burns a piece of sulfur in a gas jar of oxygen.

i blue

ii $S + O_2 \rightarrow SO_2$ (1)

iii the litmus solution will be red (1)
No-metal oxides are acidic and dissolve in water (if soluble, like SO_2) to form acidic solutions. (1)

d i $4Na + O_2 \rightarrow 2Na_2O$
all formulae (1)
balancing (1)

ii hydroxide ion (1)

4 ▶ a Put dilute sulfuric acid into a beaker and heat it on a tripod and gauze using a Bunsen burner.(1)
Add excess copper(II) oxide (1)
Filter off the excess copper(II) oxide (1)

b Test: add hydrochloric acid followed by barium chloride solution (1)
Positive result: white precipitate (1)

c copper(II) hydroxide (1)

d i In a new line: Any 2: Concentration of copper(II) sulfate (1)
Volume of copper(II) sulfate solution (1)
How finely divided the metal is (1) *(if the metal is very finely divided it will react more quickly and the heat will be given out more quickly, so there is less chance for heat to be lost to the surroundings. This will give a more accurate value for the temperature change)*

ii Zinc > nickel > silver (1)

iii The temperature rise would be zero (1)
Copper will not react with copper(II) sulfate / copper ions (1)

iv The mass of 1 mole of zinc (65 g) is very similar to the mass of 1 mole of nickel (59 g) (1)
Because the student used the same mass of each metal, the number of moles of nickel and zinc is very similar. (1)
Because silver does not react it does not matter how much the student uses (1)

v Nickel gets oxidized. (1)
Ni loses electrons to form Ni^{2+} and oxidation is loss of electrons. (1)

e Heat the solution to drive off the water and form (small) crystals of hydrated copper(II) sulfate. (1)
Keep heating the solid. (1)

f i Dip a piece of (nichrome) wire into concentrated hydrochloric acid and then into the solid. (1)
Put the solid into the blue/roaring/non-luminous flame of a Bunsen burner. (1)

ii blue-green (1)

5 ▶ a An **ore** is a sample of rock that contains enough of a mineral for it to be worthwhile to extract the metal. (1)

b

	thermal decomposition	**neutralisation**	**redox**
reaction 1			✓
reaction 3	✓		

c $MoO_3 + 3C \rightarrow Mo + 3CO$
products (1)
balancing (1)

d carbon is the reducing agent (1)
it reduces the MoO_3 by removing the oxygen (1)

e Molybdenum is below carbon in the reactivity series (1)
Carbon must be more reactive than molybdenum to be able to take the oxygen away from molybdenum oxide. (1)

f Because aluminium has to be extracted from its ore using electrolysis. (1)

Electrolysis is very expensive because it uses a large amount of electricity, therefore aluminium is more expensive than carbon. (1)

g Add sodium hydroxide solution and warm. (1)

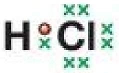
If ammonium ions are present a colourless gas will be given off that turns moist red litmus paper blue. (1)

6 ▶ a Mix together solutions (1) of lead(II) nitrate and sodium sulfate (1). Filter the mixture (1) Wash the residue with distilled/pure water (1); Leave the solid in a warm oven to dry. (1)

b Because lead(II) iodide is yellow and insoluble in water. (1)

The precipitate could just be lead(II) iodide. (1)

7 ▶ a



Dot and cross in the covalent bond. (1)

All other electrons. (1)

b A proton/hydrogen ion/H^+ is transferred from the HCl to the water. (1)

HCl is an acid because it donates a proton/hydrogen ion/H^+ (1)

H_2O is a base because it accepts a proton/hydrogen ion/H^+ (1)

c

Reagent	Solid or solution?		Salt	Other product
magnesium	solid	hydrochloric acid	magnesium chloride	hydrogen
copper(II) oxide	solid	hydrochloric acid	copper(II) chloride	water
sodium hydroxide	solution	hydrochloric acid	sodium chloride	water
silver nitrate	solution	hydrochloric acid	silver chloride	nitric acid

d i a white precipitate is formed (1)

ii hydrochloric acid contains chloride ions (1)

Will always give a positive test for chloride ions. (1)

e $CuCO_3(s) + 2HCl(aq) \rightarrow CuCl_2(aq) + H_2O(l) + CO_2(g)$

reactants (1)

products (1)

balance (1)

8 ▶ a iron(II) (1) chloride (1)

b B = iron(II) hydroxide (1) $Fe(OH)_2$ (1)

c D = iron(III) hydroxide (1) $Fe(OH)_3$ (1)

d redox (1)

The iron(II) is oxidised to iron(III) (1)

9 ▶ a Na_2SO_4 (1)

b Sodium hydroxide solution/sulfuric acid is measured out using a pipette and put into conical flask/beaker. (1)

Sulfuric acid/sodium hydroxide placed in burette. (1)

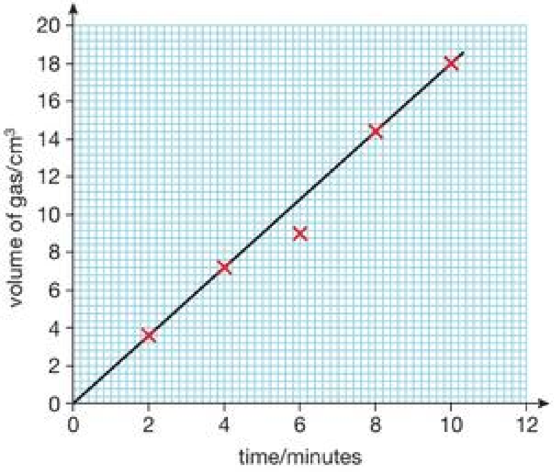
Named indicator added e.g. methyl orange/phenolphthalein but not universal indicator. (1)

Acid/alkali added to alkali /acid acid until indicator changes colour (1)

Procedure repeated without indicator using same volumes. (1)

Sodium carbonate/sodium hydrogencarbonate could also be used instead of sodium hydroxide.

c i



all point plotted correctly (2) –1 for each mistake

line of best fit (1)

ii the point at 6 minutes (1); 10.8 ± 0.2 cm³ (1)

iii as the time increases the volume of gas increases (1)

directly proportional relationship (1)

just stating that the volume is directly proportional to the time scores (2)

iv test: burning splint (1)

positive result: squeaky pop (1)

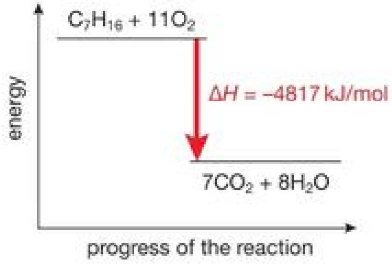
UNIT 3 ANSWERS

CHAPTER 19

1 ▶ a A reaction in which heat energy is given out to the surroundings.

Correctly balanced equations for any two exothermic reactions e.g. any combustion reactions (metals, hydrogen, hydrocarbons, etc, in oxygen), neutralisation reactions involving oxides or hydroxides and acids, magnesium and acids. For example, $2H_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightarrow 2H_2O(l)$ or $NaOH(aq) + HCl(aq) \rightarrow NaCl(aq) + H_2O(l)$

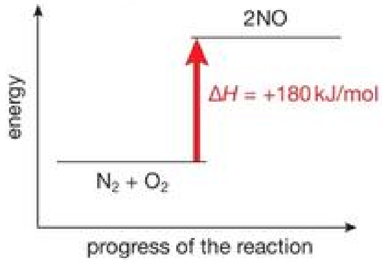
b



c Energy is needed to break the bonds in heptane and in oxygen. Energy is released when new bonds are made to produce the carbon dioxide and water. More energy is released when the new bonds are made than was used to break the old ones.

2 ▶ a A reaction in which heat energy is absorbed from the surroundings.

b



3 ▶ a exothermic **b** exothermic **c** endothermic
d exothermic **e** endothermic **f** exothermic

4 ▶ The cans have two chambers. The outer one contains the beverages or food to be heated. The inner chamber contains calcium oxide and water. The calcium oxide and water are kept separate by a seal. Pushing a button on the bottom of the can breaks the seal and allows the calcium oxide and water to come into contact. You get the reaction below which is exothermic.

$CaO(s) + H_2O(l) \rightarrow Ca(OH)_2(s)$

5 ▶ a Bonds broken: 4 × C–H = 4 × (+413) = +1652 kJ
1 × Br–Br = + 193 kJ
total = +1845 kJ
Bonds made: 3 × C–H = 3 × (–413) = –1239 kJ
1 × C–Br = – 290 kJ
1 × H–Br = – 366 kJ
total = –1895 kJ
Overall change = +1845 – 1895 = –50 kJ (exothermic)

b Bonds broken: 1 × H–H = +436 kJ
1 × Cl–Cl = +243 kJ
total = +679 kJ
Bonds made: 2 × H–Cl = 2 × (–432) = –864 kJ
Overall change = +679 – 864 = –185 kJ (exothermic)

c Bonds broken: 2 × H–H = 2 × (+436) = +872 kJ
1 × O=O = +498 kJ
total = +1370 kJ
Bonds made: 4 × O–H = 4 × (–464) = –1856 kJ
Overall change = +1370 – 1856 = –486 kJ (exothermic)

d Bonds broken: 1 × N≡N = +944 kJ
3 × H–H = 3 × (+436) = +1308 kJ
total = +2252 kJ
Bonds made: 6 × N–H = 6 × (–388) = –2328 kJ
Overall change = +2252 – 2328 = –76 kJ (exothermic)

6 ▶ a Her first two results weren't reliable. There was too much difference between them.

b Any two from: Wear a lab coat; avoid touching the hot copper can; tie long hair back.

c Heat energy change = $Q = mc\Delta T$
Mass of water being heated = m = 100 g
c is the specific heat capacity of the water (it is the water that is being heated)
c = 4.18 J/g/°C
Temperature change of water = ΔT = 55.0 – 19.0 = 36.0 °C
Heat evolved = $Q = mc\Delta T$ = 100 × 4.18 × 36.0 J = 15048 J = 15.0 kJ to 3 significant figures

d Mass of hexane burnt = 35.62 – 35.23 g = 0.39 g

Heat evolved per gram = $\frac{15.048}{0.39}$ = 38.6 kJ/g to 3 significant figures

The combustion reaction is exothermic, therefore heat energy released per gram = –38.6 kJ/g

e Number of moles of hexane, C_6H_{14} burnt =

$$n = \frac{\text{mass } (m)}{\text{relative molecular mass (Mr)}} = \frac{0.39}{86} = 0.00453 \text{ mol}$$

The molar enthalpy change of combustion of hexane (Δ*H*)

$$= \frac{\text{heat energy change } (Q)}{\text{number of moles of ethanol burned } (n)}$$

$$= \frac{15.048}{0.00453} = 3320 \text{ kJ/mol to}$$

3 significant figures

The combustion reaction is exothermic, therefore Δ*H* = –3320 kJ/mol

f Any two from: Misreading one of the weighings of the spirit burner so that it looked as if less hexane had been burnt than was really the case; misreading the thermometer to give a final temperature higher than it should have been; adding less than 100 cm³ of water to the flask, so that the temperature went up more than it should because the heat was going into a smaller volume of water.

g Any two from: Heat loss to the surroundings; heat is lost to warm up the copper calorimeter or the thermometer; incomplete combustion of the fuel.

7 ▶ a Heat energy change = $Q = mc\Delta T$
Mass of solution being heated = m = 50 g, the mass of the lithium chloride is relatively small and it is ignored in the calculation.
c is the specific heat capacity of the diluted solution of lithium chloride, which we assume to be the same as the heat capacity of water c = 4.18 J/g/°C
Temperature change of water = ΔT = 33.5 – 17.0 = 16.5 °C
Heat evolved = $Q = mc\Delta T$ = 50 × 4.18 × 16.5 J = 3448.5 J = 3.45 kJ to 3 significant figures

b Number of moles of lithium chloride dissolved =

$$n = \frac{\text{mass } (m)}{\text{relative formula mass (Mr)}} = \frac{5.15}{42.5} = 0.121 \text{ mol}$$

c The enthalpy change of solution

$$\Delta H = \frac{\text{heat energy change } (Q)}{\text{number of moles of lithium chloride dissolved } (n)}$$

$$= \frac{3.45}{0.121} = 28.5 \text{ kJ/mol to 3 significant figures}$$

The dissolving of lithium chloride is exothermic, therefore ΔH = -28.5 kJ/mol

d Any two from: Heat loss to the surroundings; heat is lost to warm up the solution container or the thermometer; incomplete transfer of the salt from the weighing boat into the water; some salt crystal does not dissolve completely in water.

8 ▶ a The number of moles of NaOH(n) = concentration(C) × volume(V) = $0.50 \times \frac{200}{1000} = 0.10$ mol

b Heat given out by the reaction = $Q = mc\Delta T = 300 \times 4.18 \times 4.5 = 5643$ J = 5.64 kJ to 3 significant figures

Here we assume the density of the reaction mixture is the same as water and the specific heat capacity of the mixture is the same as heat capacity of water.

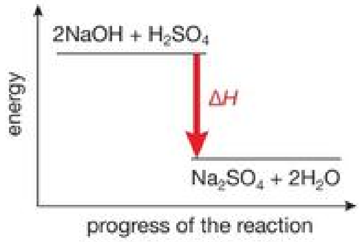
c The enthalpy change of neutralisation

$$\Delta H = \frac{\text{heat energy change } (Q)}{\text{number of moles of NaOH reacted } (n)}$$

$$= \frac{5.65}{0.10} = 56.4 \text{ kJ/mol to 3 significant figures}$$

The neutralisation reaction is exothermic, therefore $\Delta H = -56.4$ kJ/mol.

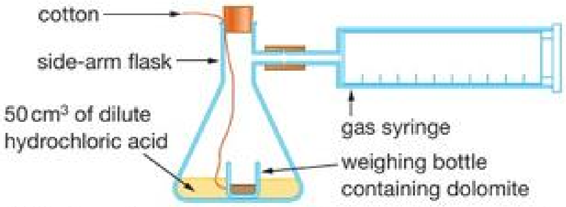
d



e As double the amount of reactants react, the amount of heat energy released from the reaction doubles. The same amount of solution gets heated up so the temperature rise should double.

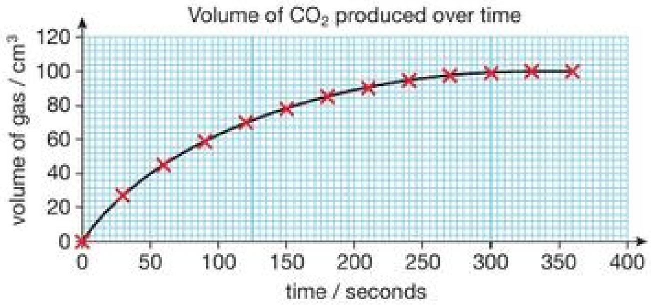
CHAPTER 20

1 ▶ a


cotton
side-arm flask
50 cm³ of dilute hydrochloric acid
gas syringe
weighing bottle containing dolomite

Collection of gas over water into an inverted measuring cylinder is an acceptable alternative. Pieces of dolomite are put in a weighing bottle into the conical flask before the reaction starts. This is to make sure that the reaction can be started without losing any carbon dioxide.

b Graph should be completely smooth with the axes properly labelled.



c At the very beginning of the reaction. The reaction can only happen when acid particles collide with the solid dolomite. Numbers of acid particles per unit volume are greatest at the beginning of the reaction before any get used up. Therefore the greatest number of collisions per second and the fastest reaction is at the beginning.

d 70 seconds (read this off the graph and allow some tolerance depending on the size of graph paper available.)

e Volume produced within the first 80 seconds = 55 cm

(The average rate = $\frac{55}{80} = 0.688$ cm³/s to 3 significant figures)

f i There would be a lower initial rate; same volume of gas.

ii There would be a lower initial rate; half the volume of gas (50 cm³).

iii The initial rate would be the same; half the volume of gas (50 cm³). (The initial rate depends on the original concentration of the acid that is still the same.)

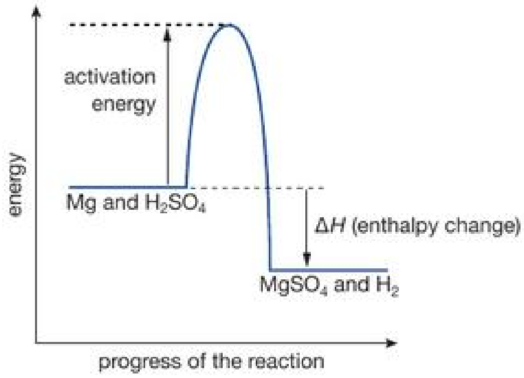
iv The initial rate would be faster; same volume of gas.

2 ▶ a Time taken for the reaction would increase. A reaction happens when acid particles collide with the magnesium. The concentration of acid is less, so there is less number of acid particles per unit volume. There will be fewer collisions per second, and therefore a slower reaction.

b Time taken for the reaction would decrease. The acid particles are moving faster and so collide with the magnesium more often. Reaction only happens if the energy of the collision equals or exceeds activation energy. At higher temperatures more acid particles have energy greater than or equal to the activation energy, so a greater proportion of the collisions are successful.

c Answers could include: Acid will be used up quickly immediately around the magnesium – stirring brings fresh acid into contact with it; bubbles of hydrogen form around the magnesium, preventing acid from reaching it – stirring helps to dislodge the bubbles; bubbles of hydrogen lift the magnesium to the surface (sometimes above the surface) of the acid, lowering contact between acid and magnesium – stirring helps to prevent this.

d

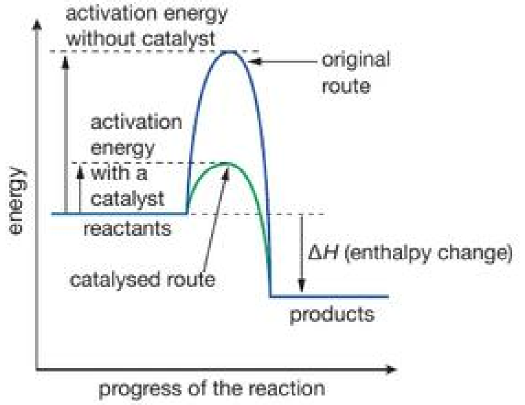


3 ▶ a Reactions only happen if collisions have energies equalling or exceeding activation energy. Catalysts provide an alternative route for the reaction with a lower activation energy. More particles now have energy greater than or equal to the activation energy, so there will be more successful collisions per unit time.

b To find out whether it speeds the reaction up: You could do this most simply by having two test-tubes with equal volumes of the same hydrogen peroxide solution side-by-side. Add some iron(III) oxide to one and look for the faster production of bubbles.

To show that it is unchanged: Use a known mass of iron(III) oxide. When the reaction stops, filter through previously weighed filter paper, allow to dry, and re-weigh. Show that the mass of iron(III) oxide is unchanged. (If it had changed, and you hadn't lost any during the separation process, it must have reacted in some way.)

c



CHAPTER 21

1 ▸ a The reversible symbol '⇌' shows that the reaction can go both ways. The reactants can form products and the products can react to form the reactants.

b White solid decomposes to form colourless gases.

c Ammonium chloride, ammonia and hydrogen chloride

2 ▸ a Right

b Left

c Left

d No change

e No change

3 ▸ a 'Dynamic' means that the reactions are still happening and the rate of the forward reaction is equal to the rate of the reverse reaction. 'Equilibrium' means that the concentrations of the reactants and the products remain constant.

b The proportion of sulfur trioxide will increase. An increase in pressure shifts the position of equilibrium to the right because this side has fewer moles of moles of gas molecules.

c The position of equilibrium shifts to the right. A decrease in temperature favours the forward exothermic reaction.

4 ▸ a Less carbon monoxide and hydrogen would be produced. (A high pressure favours the reverse reaction, as the left hand side of the reaction has fewer number of moles of gas molecules.)

b A high temperature favours the endothermic forward reaction and shifts the position of equilibrium to the right hand side of the reaction.

c Using a catalyst increases the rate of the reaction, as it provides an alternative pathway for the reaction with lower activation energy. More particles will have energy greater than or equal to the activation energy so there will be more successful collisions per unit time. More products will be made quickly and relatively low temperature and pressure can be used in the presence of a catalyst. This saves energy and money. Adding a catalyst has no effect on the position of equilibrium, as the rate of the forward reaction and the rate of the reverse reaction are increased by an equal amount.

5 ▸ a A high pressure favours the reaction producing fewer moles of gas, shifting the position of equilibrium to the right hand side.

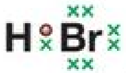
b Very high pressures are expensive to produce for two reasons: all the reaction vessels and pipework have to be built much more strongly, and it takes a lot more energy to drive the compressors producing the very high pressures. The extra ammonia produced isn't worth the extra cost, so a compromise of 200 atmospheres pressure is used.

c At a low temperature. Lower temperature favours the forward exothermic reaction, shifting the position of equilibrium to the right hand side to produce more ammonia.

d At low temperatures the reaction is extremely slow even in the presence of a catalyst. 450 °C is chosen because it gives a compromise between the rate and the yield of the reaction.

END OF UNIT 3 QUESTIONS

1 ▸ a



correct number of outer shell electrons for both H and Br (1)

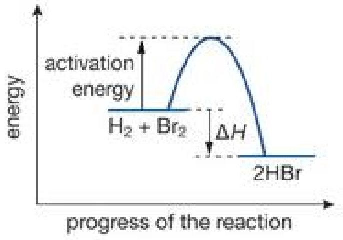
sharing of 1 pair of electrons between the two atoms (1)

b

bond	bond energy / kJ/mol
H–H	436
Br–Br	196
H–Br	368

Bonds broken: 1 × H–H = +436 kJ
1 × Br–Br = + 196 kJ
total = +632 kJ
Bonds made: 2 × H–Br = – 736 kJ
Overall change = +632 – 736 = –104 kJ (exothermic)

c i and **ii**



a line labelled with product name or formula below the line of reactants (1) use of single-headed arrows to represent activation energy (1) and enthalpy change (1), as shown

2 ▶ a i 19.3 (1), 16.6 (1), 2.7 (1)

ii A

b i $Q = mc\Delta T = 100.0 \times 4.2 \times (23.2 - 15.9) = 3.066\,\text{kJ}$

calculation of temperature change (1)

using the correct mass (100 g, award mark if 105 g is used) (1)

correct answer for Q (1)

ii $n = \text{mass of calcium chloride}/M_r = \dfrac{5}{(40 + 35.5 \text{ *}2)}$

$= \dfrac{5}{111} = 0.0450$ mol to 3 significant figures.

calculation of M_r (1)

correct answer to 2–4 significant figures (1)

iii $\Delta H = \dfrac{3.066}{0.0450} = 68.1$ kJ/mol to 3 significant figures.

The molar enthalpy change is −68.1 kJ/mol as the dissolving is exothermic.

dividing Q by n (1)

correct answer (must have a negative sign) (1)

c heat loss to the surrounding air through beaker (1)

some magnesium chloride is left on the weighing boat/did not dissolve in water completely (1)

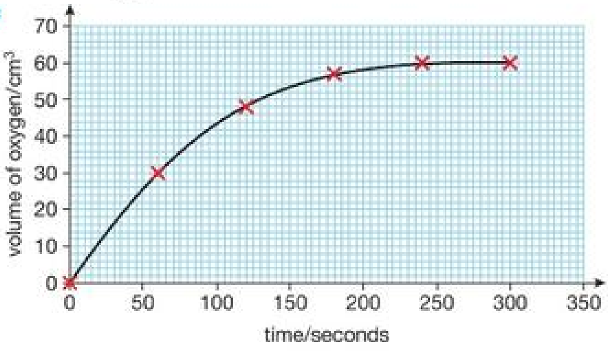
3 ▶ a $2H_2O_2(aq) \rightarrow 2H_2O(l) + O_2(g)$

correct formulae of reactants and products (1)

correct balancing (1)

b To prevent the loss of oxygen at the beginning of the reaction. (1)

c



correct labelling of axes with units (1)

correct points plotted (2)

a smooth curve of best fit, going through all of the points (1)

d i 125 seconds

ii 43 cm^3

iii $\dfrac{53}{150} = 0.353\,\text{cm}^3/\text{sec}$

correct numerical answer (1)

correct unit (1)

e Reaction has stopped (1) because all the hydrogen peroxide is used up (1).

f i B (1)

ii Weigh a sample of manganese(IV) oxide and add to hydrogen peroxide (1). Oxygen is produced at a faster rate with manganese(IV) oxide than without (1). Filter the reaction mixture and dry the solid (1). Re-weigh the solid and the mass should be the same as before if it acts as a catalyst (1).

g Shallower curve than the original (1). but the end volume remains the same (1).

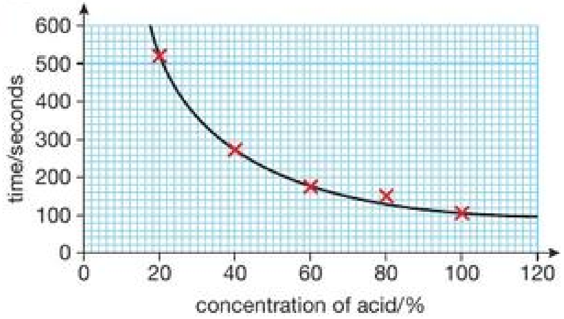
h Shallower curve than the original (1) and only 30 cm^3 (half the volume) of gas is produced (1).

4 ▶ a the mass (1). and the surface area / the size (1).

b To let the gas escape but keep the liquid inside the conical flask. (1)

c i B

ii



correct labelling of axes with units (1)

correct points plotted (2)

a smooth curve of best fit, going through all but one point (1)

iii 150 seconds

iv C

d i The mass of CO_2 given off is directly (1) proportional (1) to the concentration of the acid.

ii Increasing the concentration of the acid increases the rate of reaction. (1) This is because there are more acid particles within a fixed volume (1) so the frequency of successful collision between the acid and the marble chip increases (1).

5 ▶ a i The gas particles have more kinetic energy (1) so more particles have energy greater than or equal to the activation energy (1). There are more successful collisions per unit time (1).

ii The rate increases (1) as gas particles are closer together and there are more frequent collisions (or more successful collisions per unit time) (1).

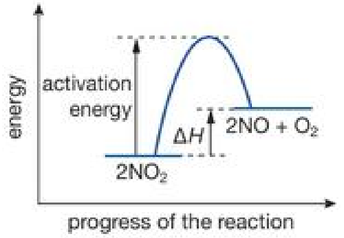
iii Reactions happen on the surface of the catalyst (1) and gauzes have greater surface area (1).

b The use of a catalyst increases the rate of the reaction without itself being used up (1). It saves money which would be spent on increasing temperature or pressure (1).

6 ▶ a reversible reaction (1), enthalpy change (1)

b The forward reaction is endothermic. (1)

c



d **i** Increasing the temperature favours the forward endothermic reaction. (1)

The position of equilibrium shifts to the right. (1)

The reaction mixture becomes more colourless. (1)

ii Increasing the pressure favours the left hand side of the reaction as it has fewer moles of moles of gases. (1)

The position of equilibrium shifts to the left. (1)

The reaction mixtures becomes more brown. (1)

e No change in the position of equilibrium (1) The use of a catalyst increases the rate of both the forward and reverse reaction equally (1).

7 ▶ a A and D

b **i** Increasing the pressure favours the right hand side of the reaction which has fewer moles of moles of gas molecules. (1)

The position of equilibrium shifts to the right. (1)

The yield of NH_3 increases. (1)

ii As temperature increases, the percentage of NH_3 at equilibrium decreases. (1)

iii ΔH for the forward reaction is negative. (1)

Increasing temperature favours the reverse endothermic reaction. (1)

iv Increasing temperature increases the rate of reaction. (1)

More particles will have energy greater than or equal to the activation energy. (1)

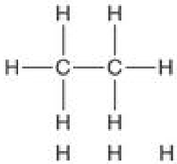
The frequency of successful collisions increases. (1)

UNIT 4 ANSWERS

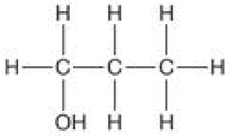
CHAPTER 22

1 ▶ a **i** methane
ii propane
iii hexane
iv propene
v ethene
vi but-1-ene
vii propan-1-ol
viii butan-2-ol

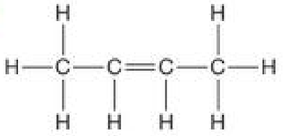
b **i**



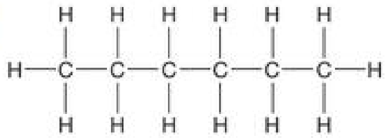
ii



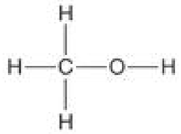
iii



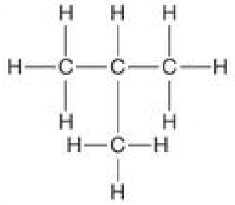
iv



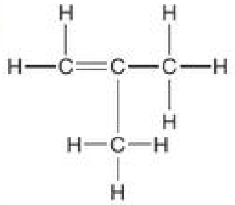
v



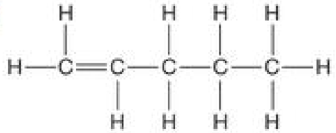
vi



vii



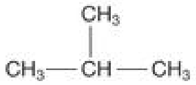
viii



2 ▶ a The existence of molecules with the same molecular formula but different structural formulae.

b $CH_3—CH_2—CH_2—CH_3$

butane



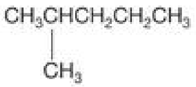
$CH_3—CH(CH_3)—CH_3$

2-methylpropane

(In these and subsequent formulae, if you aren't asked specifically for displayed formulae, these quicker forms are acceptable.)

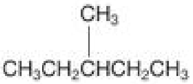
c $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$

hexane



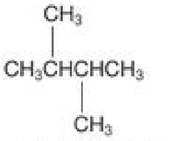
$CH_3CH(CH_3)CH_2CH_2CH_3$

2-methylpentane



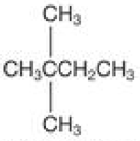
$CH_3CH_2CH(CH_3)CH_2CH_3$

3-methylpentane



$CH_3CH(CH_3)CH(CH_3)CH_3$

2,3-dimethylbutane



$CH_3C(CH_3)_2CH_2CH_3$

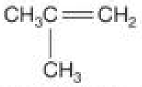
2,2-dimethylbutane

d $CH_3CH_2CH{=}CH_2$

but-1-ene

$CH_3CH{=}CHCH_3$

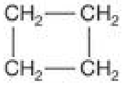
but-2-ene

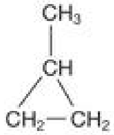


$CH_3C(CH_3){=}CH_2$

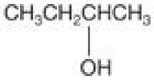
(2-methylpropene)

e

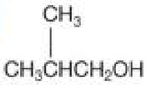




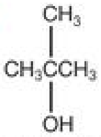
3 ▶ a i (first answer is shown in the textbook as an example)

ii 

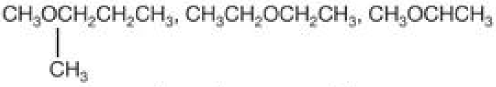
$CH_3CH_2\underset{OH}{CH}CH_3$

iii 

$CH_3\overset{CH_3}{CH}CH_2OH$

iv 

$CH_3\overset{CH_3}{\underset{OH}{C}}CH_3$

b 

$CH_3OCH_2CH_2CH_3$, $CH_3CH_2OCH_2CH_3$, $CH_3O\underset{CH_3}{CH}CH_3$

These compounds are known as ethers.

4 ▶ a addition

b combustion

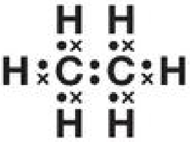
c addition

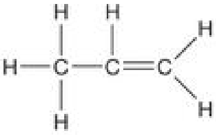
d substitution

e combustion

f substitution

5 ▶ a C, it contains element other than carbon and hydrogen.

b 

c 

d C_nH_{2n+2}

e Same functional group / similar chemical properties; Shows a gradation in physical properties; Each member differs from the next by a $-CH_2-$.

f $C_5H_{12} + 8O_2 \rightarrow 5CO_2 + 6H_2O$

CHAPTER 23

1 ▶ a Carbon and hydrogen.

b The crude oil (mixture of hydrocarbons) is heated until it boils. The vapour passes into a fractionating column. The temperature is higher at the bottom of the column than at the top. Different fractions condense and are drawn off at different heights in the column. The hydrocarbons with the highest boiling points (longer chains) condense towards the bottom of the column. The smaller hydrocarbon molecules travel further up the column until they condense and are drawn off.

c Gasoline – petrol for car; Diesel – fuel for lorries or buses

d Any two from: refinery gas, kerosene, fuel oil or bitumen.

e The average size of the molecules in gasoline is smaller than in diesel. Diesel is darker in colour and more viscous than gasoline.

f Any between n = 5 – 10 for C_nH_{2n+2}

g i $2C_4H_{10} + 13O_2 \rightarrow 8CO_2 + 10H_2O$

ii Carbon monoxide is poisonous as it reduces the blood's ability to carry oxygen around the body.

2 ▶ a The sulfur (or sulfur compound) burns to make sulfur dioxide. The sulfur dioxide reacts with water and oxygen in the atmosphere to produce sulfuric acid that falls as acid rain.

b The spark in the engine causes nitrogen to react with oxygen to give various oxides of nitrogen.

c Sulfur dioxide reacts with water and oxygen in the atmosphere to produce sulfuric acid. The sulfuric acid in acid rain can react with calcium carbonate and corrode the buildings.

3 ▶ a Crude oil produces too many larger hydrocarbons / not enough of the more useful smaller ones. Smaller alkanes can be used as fuel for cars. Cracking also produces alkenes that can be used to make polymers.

b Heat the vaporised fraction in the presence of a silicon dioxide or aluminium oxide catalyst at 600-700 °C.

c $C_{11}H_{24} \rightarrow 2C_2H_4 + C_7H_{16}$

d Any other valid cracking equation starting with $C_{11}H_{24}$. For example:

$C_{11}H_{24} \rightarrow C_2H_4 + C_9H_{20}$

or $C_{11}H_{24} \rightarrow C_2H_4 + C_3H_6 + C_6H_{14}$

or lots of other variants. In each case, at least one hydrocarbon should be an alkane (C_nH_{2n+2}), and at least one an alkene (C_nH_{2n}).

4 ▶ This is entirely open to your imagination and ability to think both logically and laterally. It is impossible to suggest 'right' answers.

CHAPTER 24

1 ▶ a Contains only C-C single bonds and has no double or triple bonds.

b i $C_{11}H_{24}$

ii Liquid

iii $C_{11}H_{24}(l) + 17O_2(g) \rightarrow 11CO_2(g) + 12H_2O(l)$

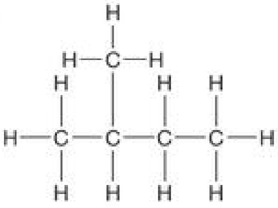
iv $2C_{11}H_{24} + 23O_2 \rightarrow 22CO + 24H_2O$

Carbon monoxide is poisonous, as it reduces the ability of the blood to carry oxygen around the body.

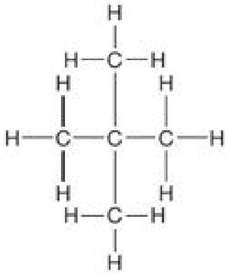
2 ▶ a C_5H_{12}

b C_4H_{10}

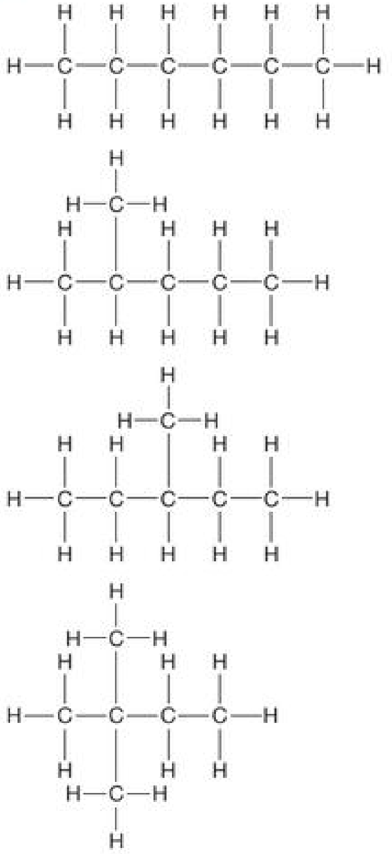
c C_6H_{14}

3 ▶ a 

and



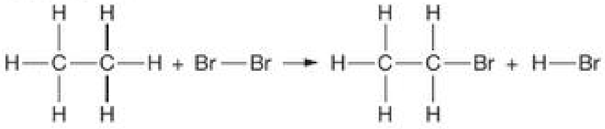
b Any 2 of the following:



4 ▶ a UV light

b Substitution

c



5 ▶ a $C_4H_{10} + Cl_2 \rightarrow C_4H_9Cl + HCl$

b $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2Cl$ (1-chlorobutane) $CH_3CH(Cl)CH_2CH_3$ (2-chlorobutane)

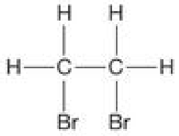
CHAPTER 25

1 ▶ a i Any two from: same general formula; same functional group or similar chemical properties; shows a gradation in physical properties; each member differs from the next by a $-CH_2-$.

ii Compounds containing one or more carbon carbon double or triple bond.

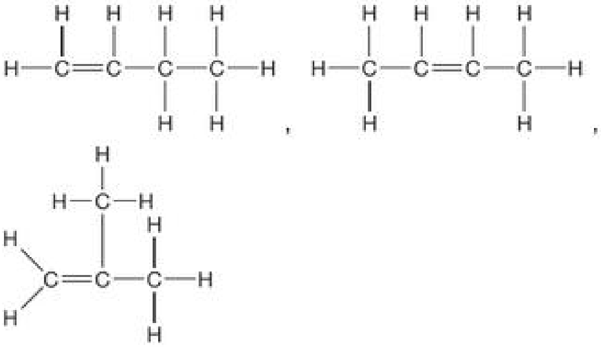
b i Starting: orange; Finishing: colourless

ii

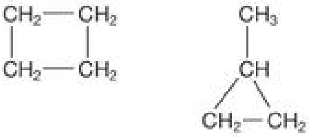


1,2-dibromoethane

c

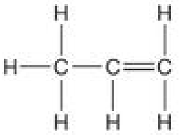


d

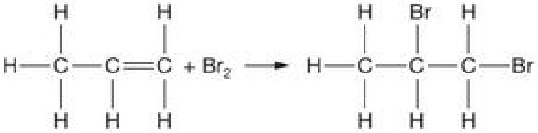


2 ▶ a a carbon-carbon double bond

b



c



d i $CH_3CH_3 + Br_2(g) \rightarrow CH_3CH_2Br + HBr(g)$

ii In this (substitution) reaction, one of the hydrogens has been replaced by a bromine during the reaction. In the previous (addition) reaction, nothing was lost when the two molecules combined together.

3 ▶ a 1,2-dichloropropane $CH_2ClCHClCH_3$

b ethane CH_3CH_3

4 ▶ a Cracking.

Conditions: 1) The presence of a silicon dioxide (silica) or aluminium oxide (alumina) catalyst 2) heat the vaporized alkanes at high temperatures of 600 – 700 °C.

b Test: shake with bromine water

Result with propane: no colour change (solution remains orange)

Result with propene: solution changes colour from orange to colourless

5 ▶ a $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2OH$ (butan-1-ol) or $CH_3CH_2CH(OH)CH_3$ (butan-2-ol)

b $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2Cl$ (1-chlorobutane) or $CH_3CH_2CHClCH_3$ (2-chlorobutane)

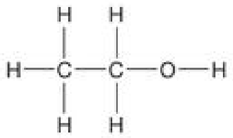
c $CH_3CH_2CHBrCH_2Br$ (1,2-dibromobutane)

CHAPTER 26

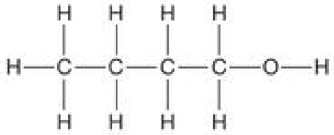
1 ▶ a i CH_3OH

ii $CH_3CH_2CH_2OH$

b i



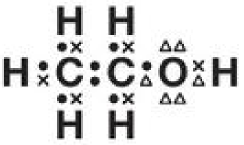
ii



c i Butan-1-ol

ii Ethanol

2 ▶ a



b Any two from: 300 °C; 60–70 atmosphere pressure; phosphoric acid catalyst

c i Sugar cane

ii Yeast provides the enzyme (biological catalyst) for the reaction; 30–40 °C is the optimum temperature for the reaction. If the temperature is too low, the rate of the reaction is too slow. If the temperature is too high, the enzyme will be denatured; In the presence of air (aerobic conditions), enzymes in the yeast produce carbon dioxide and water instead of ethanol.

iii Countries like Brazil have plenty of land and warm climate to grow sugar cane. There is also a lack of crude oil resource in these countries, so it is too expensive to hydrate ethene to produce ethanol.

d $C_2H_5OH + 3O_2 \rightarrow 2CO_2 + 3H_2O$

3 ▶ a $C_6H_{12}O_6 \rightarrow 2C_2H_5OH + 2CO_2$

b i potassium dichromate(VI) in dilute sulfuric acid

ii orange to green

iii $CH_3CH_2OH + 2[O] \rightarrow CH_3COOH + H_2O$

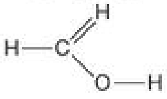
c $C_2H_5OH \rightarrow C_2H_4 + \underline{H_2O}$

CHAPTER 27

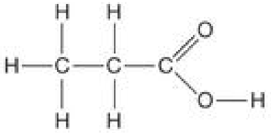
1 ▶ a i CH_3COOH

ii $CH_3CH_2CH_2COOH$

b i



ii

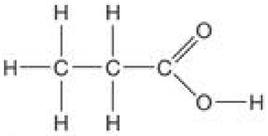


c i Butanoic acid

ii Ethanoic acid

2 ▶ C

3 ▶ a



b Orange to green.

c Propan-1-ol is very flammable and should not be heated with an open flame. The vapour can easily catch fire when heated with a Bunsen burner.

d i bubbles/fizzes/effervescence; Mg decreases in size

$Mg(aq) + 2CH_3COOH(aq) \rightarrow (CH_3COO)_2Mg(aq) + H_2(g)$

ii bubbles/fizzes/effervescence

$Na_2CO_3(aq) + 2CH_3COOH(aq) \rightarrow 2CH_3COONa(aq) + CO_2(g) + H_2O(l)$

4 ▶ a $CH_3COOH + NaHCO_3 \rightarrow CH_3COONa + CO_2 + H_2O$

b Neutralisation.

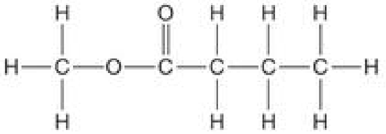
c Bubbles will form.

CHAPTER 28

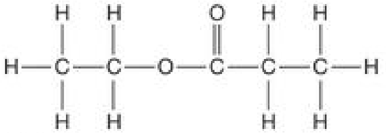
1 ▶ a i $CH_3COOCH_2CH_3$

ii $CH_3CH_2CH_2COOCH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$

b i



ii



c i Methyl propanoate.

ii Ethyl methanoate.

2 ▶ a $CH_3COOCH_2CH_3$ $CH_3COOCH_2CH_2CH_3$

$CH_3CH_2COOCH_2CH_3$ $CH_3CH_2COOCH_2CH_2CH_3$

b
- Add 1 cm³ of ethanoic acid and 1 cm³ of ethanol into a boiling tube, then add a few drops of concentrated sulfuric acid.
- Warm at about 80 °C.
- Allow the contents of the tube to cool. When cool, pour the mixture into a beaker containing sodium carbonate solution.
- A layer of ester will separate and float on top of the water.
- Repeat with other combinations of acid and alcohol.

c Esters can be detected by smelling the product: gently waft the odour towards nose. For example, propyl ethanoate smells like pear.

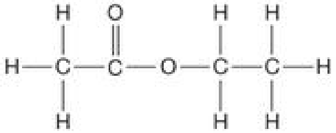
d Food flavourings and perfumes.

3 ▶

	Alcohol	**Carboxylic acid**
a	Methanol CH_3OH	Propanoic acid CH_3CH_2COOH
b	Propan-1-ol $CH_3CH_2CH_2OH$	Methanoic acid HCOOH

c Butan-1-ol $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2OH$ Ethanoic acid CH_3COOH

4 ▶ a



b Ethanoic acid.

c By heating with potassium dichromate(VI) in dilute sulfuric acid.

d $CH_3COOH(l) + CH_3CH_2OH(l) \rightleftharpoons CH_3COOCH_2CH_3(l) + H_2O(l)$

e Heat at about 80 °C with a few drops of concentrated sulfuric acid as a catalyst.

5 ▶ Test 1: Take out 3 cm^3 of each of the three samples and put them into three separate test-tubes. Add a few pieces of Mg or a spatula tip worth of Na2CO3 solid into each of the test-tubes. The one that bubbles contains ethanoic acid.

Test 2: To the remaining two samples, take out another 3cm^3 of each and put them into two separate boiling tubes. Add a few drops of potassium dichromate(VI) in dilute sulfuric acid. Heat the boiling tubes in a warm water bath. The one that changes colour from orange to green contains ethanol.

CHAPTER 29

1 ▶ a Unsaturated: containing one or more carbon carbon double or triple bond.

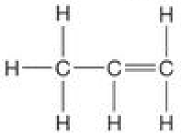
Hydrocarbon: compounds containing carbon and hydrogen only.

b $C_2H_4 + 3O_2 \rightarrow 2CO_2 + 2H_2O$

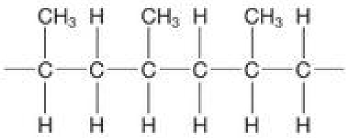
c Ethene can be used to make addition polymer polyethene, which is used for making plastic bags, milk bottles etc.

2 ▶ a Joining up of lots of little molecules (the monomers) to make one big one (a polymer).

b

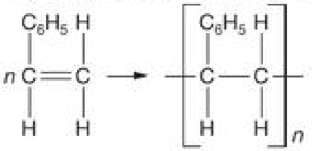


c (The "continuation" bonds at each end are an important part of this structure. Marks will be lost in an exam if they are omitted.)

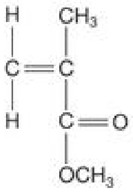


d Joining two or more molecules together without anything being lost in the process.

e



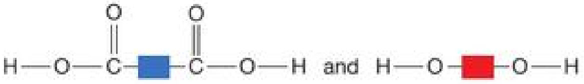
f Drawing the molecule to show its relationship with the structure of the polymer as drawn in the question:



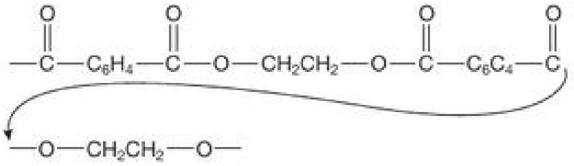
g Either: buried in landfill sites because there would be no emission of poisonous carbon monoxide or no carbon dioxide to contribute to global warming or no sulfur dioxide to contribute to acid rain. Or: incineration because no space is filled up for landfills or energy can be generated to provide heat for office buildings.

3 ▶ a Condensation polymer

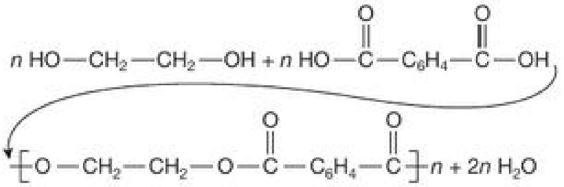
b



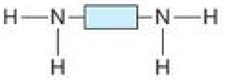
4 ▶ a



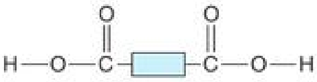
b



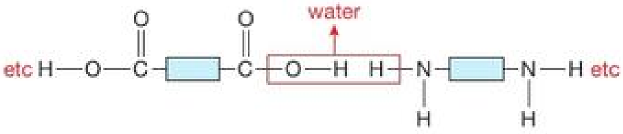
5 ▶ a Drawing 1,6-diaminohexane as:



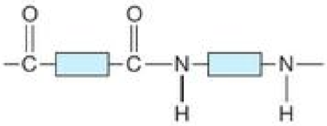
and hexandioic acid as:



i In a condensation reaction, when two molecules join together a small molecule is lost in the process. When the two molecules above join together, a molecule of water is lost every time they come together. In a condensation polymerisation reaction, this happens repeatedly.



ii



b i There will be four more CH_2 groups in the "box" in the part of the diagram which comes from the dioic acid.

ii The bonding between the two monomers will be identical, as will the size of the diamine.

END OF UNIT 4 QUESTIONS

1 ▶ a D (1)

b Used as liquefied petroleum gas / domestic heating or cooking. (1)

c Gasoline. (1)

d Crude oil is separate into fractions by fractional distillation. (1)

It is heated until it boils and the vapour enters a fractionating column (1), which is cooler at the top and hotter at the bottom (1). The fractions with a lower boiling point condense nearer to the top of the column and can be tapped off / the fractions with a higher boiling point condense nearer to the bottom of the column and can be tapped off (1).

e As the number of carbon atoms increase, the boiling point of a hydrocarbon increases. (1)

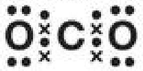
This is because the intermolecular forces increases so it takes more energy to break them during boiling. (1)

f $2C_{15}H_{32} + 31O_2 \rightarrow 30CO + 32H_2O$

correct formulae of products (1)

correct balancing of the equation (1)

g i



ii C

h i 600–700 °C (1); silica / alumina as a catalyst, accept 'aluminium oxide / silicon dioxide / aluminosilicate / zeolite or the correct formulae. (1)

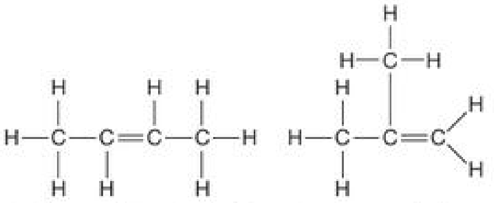
ii To make more of the smaller-chain fractions, for example, gasoline to use as petrol. (1)

To produce more alkenes that can be used for making polymers (plastics). (1)

iii C_9H_{20} (1)

iv The compound contains one or more carbon – carbon double or triple bond. (1)

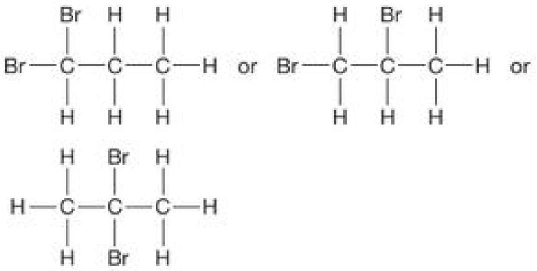
v



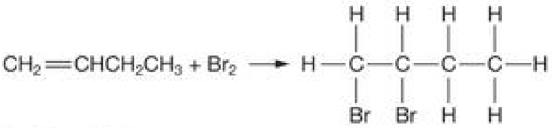
2 ▶ a E contains an element that is not carbon or hydrogen. (1)

b i 1,3-dibromopropane 1 mark for dibromopropane

ii



c



$CH_2{=}CHCH_2CH_3 + Br_2 \rightarrow$

d i B and D

ii C_nH_{2n+2}

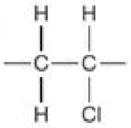
iii Same functional group / same or similar chemical properties. (1)

Shows a trend in physical properties. (1)

Or Each member differs from the next by a $-CH_2-$ unit. (1)

e i Poly(chloroethene) or polyvinylchloride (1)

ii



iii They are inert. (1)

Or non-biodegradable. (1)

Or if they are burned, they release toxic gases including carbon monoxide or hydrogen chloride. (1)

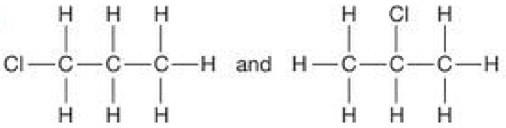
iv No colour change / bromine water remains orange. (1)

Polymer of compound A is saturated / contains no C=C bond. (1)

f i UV light (1)

ii Substitution. (1)

iii



3 ▶ a

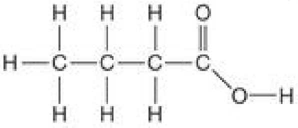
	C	H	O
Mass (in 100 g)	55	9	36
$/A_r$	/12	/1	/16
Number of moles	4.58	9	2.25
/smallest number of moles	/2.25	/2.25	/2.25
Ratio	2	4	1

The empirical formula is C_2H_4O.

b $2 \times 12 + 4 \times 1 + 1 \times 16 = 44$

$\frac{88}{44} = 2$

The molecular formula is $C_4H_8O_2$.

c  butanoic acid (1)

d $\overset{(l)}{CH_3CH_2CH_2COOH} + CH_3OH \rightleftharpoons \underset{\text{Methylbutanoate (l)}}{CH_3CH_2CH_2COOCH_3} + \overset{(l)}{H_2O}$

4 ▸ a Test 'Add bromine water'

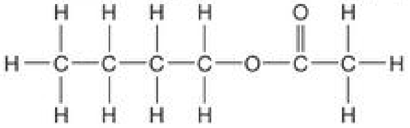
Result with compound 1 Solution changes colour from orange to colourless

Result with compound 2 Solution stays orange

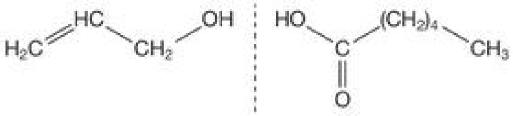
b 1 mark for the correct structure; 1 mark for the continuation bonds

c Poly(but-2-ene) (1)

5 ▸ a i 1 mark for the ester linkage; 1 mark for the correct structure of butyl and ethanoate group



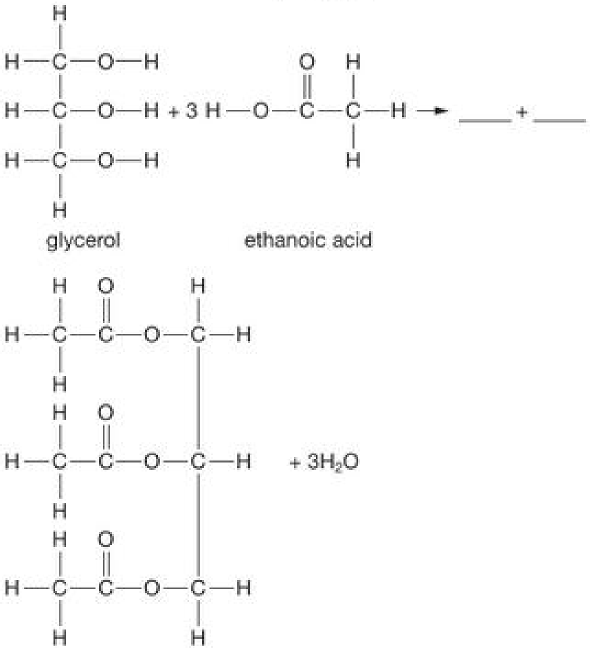
ii Potassium dichromate. (VI); Dilute sulfuric acid. (1); Heat. (1)

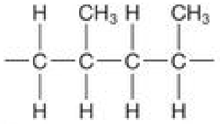
b 

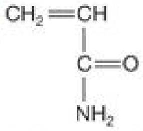
c i The reaction is reversible. (1)

ii Concentrate sulfuric acid. (1)

d No effect on the position of equilibrium. (1); Catalyst increase the rate of the forward reaction and the rate of the reverse reaction equally. (1)

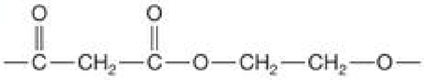
e 

6 ▸ a 

b 

c i In condensation polymerisation, two different types of monomers are used (1)

A small molecule such as water or hydrogen chloride is produced in condensation polymerisation as well as the polymer (1)

ii 

d i A polyester that is biodegradable (1)

ii C

7 ▸ a i Phosphoric acid (1); 300 °C or 60–70 atm pressure. (1)

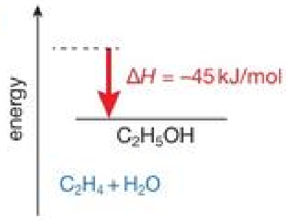
ii Bond breaking $4 \times C{-}H + 1 \times C{=}C + 2 \times O{-}H =$

$4 \times 412 + 612 + 2 \times 463 = 3186$ kJ/mol. (1)

Bond forming $5 \times C{-}H + 1 \times C{-}C + 1 \times C{-}O + 1 \times O{-}H =$

$5 \times 412 + 1 \times 348 + 1 \times 360 + 1 \times 463 = 3231$ kJ/mol. (1)

Overall $3186 - 3231 = -45$ kJ/mol. (1)

iii 

b i Fermentation (1)

ii To provide the enzyme (zymase) which speeds up the reaction. (1)

iii In the presence of oxygen, yeast would produce carbon dioxide and water rather than ethanol. (1)

iv Warm climate or plenty of land to grow sugar canes (1); Lack of oil resources to produce ethane. (1)

c i Dilute sulfuric acid (1); Heating. (1)

ii $CH_3CH_2OH + 2[O] \rightarrow CH_3COOH + H_2O$

iii Orange (1) to green. (1)

iv $Mg(s) + 2CH_3COOH(aq) \rightarrow (CH_3COO)_2Mg(aq) + H_2(g)$

1 mark for the correct formulae of products; 1 mark for correct balancing.

d i Water is formed in the reaction. (1)

ii Pour the reaction mixture into water (or sodium carbonate solution) (1); The alcohol and the acid will dissolve but the ester will float on the surface of water. (1)